Manual for FOMA® SH700i '05.2

Table of Contents/ Precautions
Before Using the FOMA Terminal
Calling/Receiving
Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls
Phonebook
Sound/Screen/ Light Settings
Security Settings
Camera
i-mode
Mail
i-αppli
i-motion
Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data
Other Useful Functions
Network Services
Data Communication
Text Input
Appendix
Index/ Quick Manual

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for purchasing the FOMA SH700i.

Make sure to thoroughly read this manual and the manuals for accessories before and during use to ensure proper operation. If any of the contents in this manual are unclear, please contact number listed in “For General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.

The FOMA SH700i is designed to make your everyday life more convenient. Careful use will ensure a long service life.

Using the FOMA Terminal

- Because it relies on radio signals, the FOMA terminal cannot be used in places with no signal (such as tunnels, underground, or in buildings), in places with a weak signal or outside the FOMA service area. There may be times when the terminal cannot be used in the upper floors of a building even with no obstructions in sight. There may also be times when the signal is strong and you are not moving but the call is interrupted.
- Make sure not to disturb others when using in public places, places with many people or quiet places.
- Because the FOMA terminal uses electrical signals, it is possible for a third party to listen in on a conversation. However, the W-CDMA system automatically applies privacy to every call, a third party that tries to listen in only hears static.
- The FOMA terminal converts conversations into a digital signal and sends it to the other party. If the other party moves to an area with a weak signal or the digital signal cannot be completely reconverted, the other party may not hear the conversation correctly.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, Inc.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Using this Manual

Use this manual to find explanations of operations or when using the FOMA terminal for the first time.

There are several ways to find information in this manual.

Table of contents (☞P. 2)

The table of contents is divided into chapters based on function. Find chapters by function.

Index (☞P. 572)

Search quickly by looking up the function name.

Indexed pages (☞Cover)

Find chapters by flipping through this manual and looking at the sides of pages.
The beginning of each chapter has a listing of the contents.

Features (☞P. 4)

What can the FOMA terminal do? How is it different from other mobile phones? Read the features to find out answers to these types of questions.

Quick manual (☞P. 580)

Frequently used functions are described in the Quick manual. Tear out the Quick manual to keep as reference when away from home.

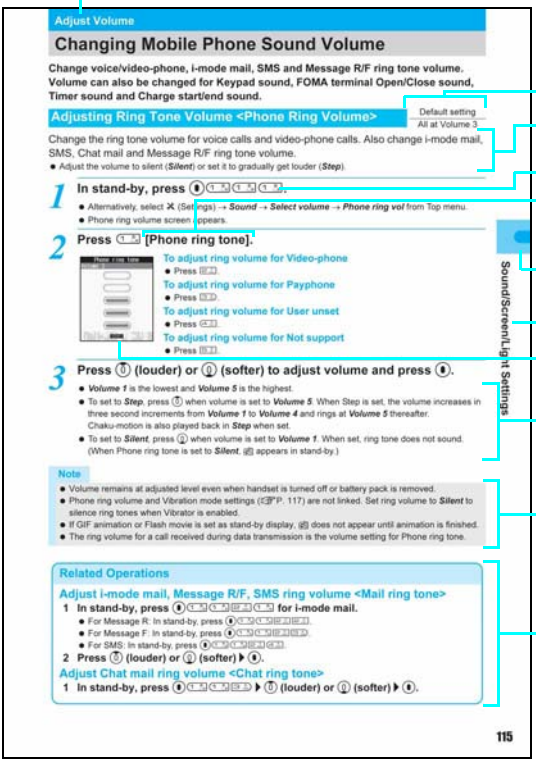
- Note that “FOMA SH700i” is referred to as the “FOMA terminal” in this manual.
- This manual describes functions using the miniSD Memory Card. Please note that miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately (☞P. 369 for details).
- Reproduction of this manual in part or in whole is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual may change without warning.

Structure of this Manual

(Quick Manual ☞P. 580)

Layout of Manual

The layout of this manual is as illustrated below.



The function name is shown.

Default settings are shown.

Outline of the function and important notes regarding use are explained.

The operation is detailed in steps.

Function name and settings are shown.

This index marks each chapter at a different height for easy searching.

Search chapters using indexed pages.

The screen corresponding with the function is shown.

Additional information, precautions, and advice are explained.

Precautions and advice for the terminal are detailed.

Related operations are explained in a simplified style.

Note

- Refer to P. 27 for key notations used in this manual.
- Refer to “Menu List” on P. 528 to P. 533 for default settings.
- This manual refers to miniSD Memory Cards as ***miniSD Memory Card*** or ***miniSD***.

Table of Contents

Structure of this Manual 1
Features of the FOMA SH700i 4
Maximizing Use of the FOMA SH700i 6
Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed) 8
Handling Precautions 18
Intellectual Property 20
Standard Parts Packaged with Unit and Main Optional Parts 22

Before Using the FOMA Terminal 23

Component Names and Functions, Viewing the Display, Making Menu Selections, Supportbook, UIM, Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack, Charging the Mobile Phone, Battery Level, Power ON/OFF, Select Language, Initial Settings, Date Settings, Notify Caller ID, Own Number

Calling/Receiving 49

Making Calls, Redial, Add 186/184, Pause Dial, WORLD CALL, Sub Address, Reconnect Control, Noise Reduction, Hands-free, Answering Calls, Any Key Answer, Close Operation, Received Calls, Earpiece Volume, On Hold, On Hold Tone, Hold Tone, Drive Mode, Missed Calls, Record Message, Quick Message, Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls 73

Using Video-phone, Making Video-phone Calls, Receiving Video-phone Calls, Chara-den, Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party, Video-phone Set, Picture Memo

Phonebook 91

Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal, Add to Phonebook, Add to FOMA Card Phonebook, Saving from Redials and Received Calls, Group Settings, Search Phonebook, Edit Entries, Delete Entries, Set Secret, 2-touch Dialing

Sound/Screen/Light Settings 111

Sound Settings, Adjust Volume, Vibrator, Quality Alarm, Mail Ring Duration, Ring Output, Manner Mode, Original Manner Mode, Main Display Setting, Call/Receive Displays, Send/Receive Display, Picture Call Set, Sub Display Setting, Power Saver Mode, User Set, Personalize, Changing Top Menu Design, Called LED, Font Style

Security Settings 139

FOMA Terminal Security Code, Change Security Code, FOMA Card (UIM) Settings, Disabling PIN Lock, Lock Functions, All Lock, Self Mode, PIM Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Key Guard, Show Call/Received, Secret Mode, Accept Calls, Reject Calls, Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure, Set Mute Seconds, Reject Unknown, Other Security Settings

Camera 161

Before Using the Camera, Shoot Still Picture, Shoot Movie, Changing Settings While Shooting, Changing Camera Settings, Send Message, Bar Code Reader, Character Reader (OCR)

i-mode 197

i-mode, View Sites, Site Layout and Operation, マイメニュー (My Menu), Change the i-mode Password, Internet Access, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Save Image, i-melody, Save Download Dictionary, Chara-den Download, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To, Setting i-mode, Message R/F, Receive Message R/F, Check New Message, View Message R/F, Using Certificates

Mail 243

The FOMA Terminal Mail Function, i-mode Mail, Mail Menu, Create/Send i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Using and Sending a Template, Attachments, Save i-mode Mail, Auto Receive, Receive Option, Check New Message, Reply i-mode Mail, Forward i-mode Mail, Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook, Receive Image Mail, Receive i-motion Mail, Check File, Check Message Image, Save Template, Outbox/Inbox, Received/Sent Messages, Mail Setting, Compose and Send Chat Mail, Create/Send SMS, Receive SMS, SMS Settings, Saving SMS to FOMA Card, Delete SMS

i-αppli 307

i-αppli, i-αppliDX, Download, Running i-αppli Software, Auto Start, i-αppli To Function, i-αppli Stand-by, Managing i-αppli Software, Using Various i-αppli Functions

i-motion 325

i-motion, Downloading i-motion, i-motion Auto Replay

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data 329

Image Viewer, Edit Image, Video Player, Edit Movie, Chara-den Player, Melody Player, miniSD Memory Card, Copy to miniSD, Backup/Restore, View miniSD Data, Copy → Main, Managing miniSD Memory Card, Managing Data, Ir Exchange, Sending and Receiving Data Individually, Sending and Receiving All Data Items, Using Ir Exchange with i-αppli Software, Infrared Remote Control, Voice Recorder, KEITAIViewer, Using the Information in Book/Dictionary, Character Reader, Managing Book/Dictionary

Other Useful Functions 403

Check Settings, Multiaccess, Assistant View, Auto Power ON, Auto Power OFF, Timer, Alarm, ToDo List, Save Schedule, Shortcut Menu, Owner Information, Voice Memo (During Call)/Voice Memo (Stand-by), Calculator, Money Calculator, Talk Time/Charge, Text Memo, Earphone/Microphone with Switch, Auto Answer Set, Reset Settings, Delete User Data

Network Services 451

Using Network Services from the FOMA Terminal, Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Barring Service, Notify Caller ID Service, Caller ID Request Service, Dual Network Service, English Guidance, Service Number, Setting Arrival Call Act, Set Arrival Act, Remote Control, Multi Number (service not yet available), Additional Services (USSD)

Data Communication 467

Data Communication, General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication, Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC, Installing the Communication Setting File, Communications Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software, FirstPass PC Software, Communications Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software, Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX), AT Command List

Text Input 509

Text Input, 5-touch, Saving Phrases, Copy Characters, Kuten Code Input, Registering Words (User Dictionary), Clear Memory Terms, Download Dictionary, Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess, 2-touch

Appendix 527

Menu List, Dial Key Assignments (5-touch), Dial Key Assignments (2-touch), Symbol/Special Character List, Phrase List, JIS Kuten Code List, Using the Calculator, Multiaccess Combinations, Assistant View Combinations, Service, Options and Accessories, Use with External Devices, Data Link Software, Troubleshooting, List of Error Messages, Warranty and After-sales Services, Software Update, Scanning Function, Main Specifications, Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

Index/Quick Manual 571

Index, Quick Manual

Features of the FOMA SH700i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as a global standard for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

The World of i-mode

Use the i-mode terminal display to access i-mode, an online service used to access useful information from i-mode menu sites (programs) or i-mode supported sites, or easily send and receive e-mail.

i-mode (monthly fees apply)

View screens of up to 100 KB. Enjoy more detailed information than before. ☞P. 198

i-shot compatible ☞P. 248

i-motion mail

Attach movies (shot with the internal camera) or i-motion (downloaded from sites or the Internet) to i-mode mail. ☞P. 271

Large Flash movies compatible

Large Flash movies compatible. Enjoy richer expressions than before. Set Flash movies as the stand-by display. ☞P. 208

i-mode mail

Attach still pictures and movies up to 500 KB. ☞P. 245

i-motion compatible

Download and enjoy images and music from sites or the Internet. Set i-motion as Chaku-motion to use as ring tone or receive display. ☞P. 327

Chat mail compatible ☞P. 293

i-αppli and i-αppliDX compatible

Enjoy i-αppli in even more ways; set i-αppli as the stand-by display, receive real time information using data transmission and access data in the FOMA terminal. ☞P. 201

Face-to-face Communication

Video-phone

Talk with people far away while viewing images of them. Hear the other party's voice from the speaker. Switch to main camera to send live images of the surrounding area. ☞P. 74

Chara-den compatible

When using Video-phone, select a downloaded character or a character preset in the handset as a substitute image in place of the user's image. Press keys to change the character's expressions or movements. ☞P. 201, P. 359

Deco-mail

Deco-mail compatible

Create and send expressive mail by adding text color, changing character size or background color, or inserting Deco-mail pictures or images shot with the internal camera. ☞P. 254

Security Settings

There are various lock functions and security settings for the FOMA terminal.

- Lock functions ☞P. 146
- Secret mode ☞P. 153
- PIM lock ☞P. 150
- Show called/received ☞P. 152

Numerous Network Services

- Dual Network Service (monthly fees apply) ☞P. 461
- Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply) ☞P. 452
- Call Waiting Service (monthly fees apply) ☞P. 455
- Short Message Service (SMS) ☞P. 299
- Call Forwarding Service ☞P. 456

1.26 Million Effective Pixel Camera and High-definition Display

1.26 million effective pixel CCD camera

(Recorded pixels: 1.23 million (main camera), 0.1 million (sub camera))
Shoot and play back still pictures and movies with the built-in digital camera. Multishot and shooting with frames are also available. Use the CCD camera (1.26 million effective pixels) or the CMOS sub-camera (110,000 effective pixels) to shoot images of yourself or to use Video-phone. ☞P. 162

Edit images with a wide array of options (SPEEDYLAB)

Use still pictures shot with the camera as the stand-by display, compare before and after images when editing, and edit images with Correct image, Face effects and Combine panorama. Additionally, edit movies using a variety of functions such as Insert effect, Resize, Edit telop, Edit voice, Capture still and Image cutter (for mail/manual). ☞P. 336, P. 353

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

A Wide Array of Functions

Scan text or bar codes

Scan printed URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers and bar codes (JAN codes or QR codes). Save scanned text in phonebook or play scanned images and melodies. ☞P. 190, P. 193

Infrared exchange/Infrared remote control

Data can be exchanged between FOMA terminals or with other infrared compatible devices using the Infrared exchange function. Additionally, use with devices that are TV Ir remote control compatible. ☞P. 388, P. 393

Assistant View

When a function is active, such as a voice call, start another function and confirm or copy data. During a voice call, confirm data in the phonebook or schedule. While composing a message, use addresses or phone numbers in the phonebook. ☞P. 406, P. 546

Zoom menu

Perform basic phone, mail and camera operations with larger characters in Zoom menu. ☞P. 33

Multiaccess

Use multiple data transmissions, such as voice calls or some packet transmissions (receiving i-mode mail or transmitting data with PCs), simultaneously. ☞P. 404, P. 546

Various Manner Modes

Set Normal manner mode, Silent manner mode or Original manner mode depending on the occasion. ☞P. 120

Expanded Functionality with PCs

miniSD Memory Card compatible

FOMA terminal supports compact miniSD Memory Cards. Exchange data between the FOMA terminal and miniSD Memory Cards, or use miniSD Memory Card with a PC. Save movies directly to the miniSD Memory Card to shoot and play long movie files. ☞P. 174, P. 369

Chaku-motion compatible

Download i-motion from i-mode sites to the FOMA terminal and use as ring tone and receive display. Use not only melodies but also songs as the ring tone. ☞P. 201, P. 327

Melodies (64 tones: PCM Sound Source)

Also use downloaded melodies and voices (sound effects) as the ring tone. ☞P. 112

KEITAIViewer

Purchase e-book/dictionaries (such as novels, picture books, and English-Japanese dictionaries) and save to the miniSD Memory Card. Read or search through them with the FOMA terminal. ☞P. 396

Supportbook

Supportbook (preset) is a simple operations guide on the FOMA terminal. Use this function when unsure of operations. ☞P. 35, P. 399

Voice recorder

Use the sub microphone to record voices while the FOMA terminal is closed. Record up to approximately five hours on 32MB miniSD Memory Cards. ☞P. 393

Maximizing Use of the FOMA SH700i

The functions of the FOMA SH700i are described below.

Video-phone

☞P. 74

Face-to-face communication using the sub camera

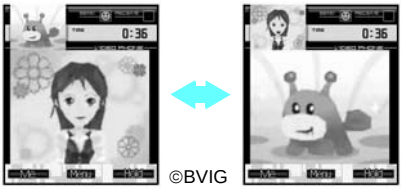
Have conversations while looking at each other's faces.

Shoot live movies with the main camera

Use main camera and microphone to send image + voice of surroundings in real time.

Chara-den

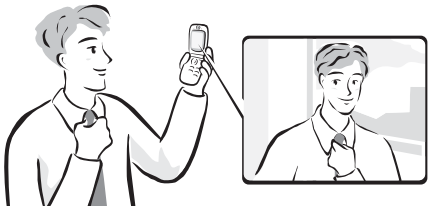
Enjoy communication even more during video-phone calls.



©BVIG

Vanity mirror

Before using the video-phone, view own image in FOMA terminal display. Useful for checking and fixing appearance.
Use Vanity mirror when making a video-phone call.



Power saver mode/User settings

☞P. 127

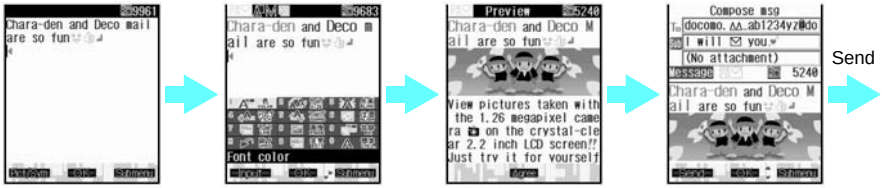
Turn on Power saver mode and set display with User settings to conserve battery power and lengthen period of use.

Deco-mail

☞P. 254

Easily make Deco-mail from i-mode mail by changing text size/background color or pasting images.

Message entry screen → Palette screen → Preview screen → Sending message screen → Send



Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-Guide Program Schedule Remote Control)

☞P. 315 or “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”

This convenient application combines a TV program schedule with a TV remote control and does not incur a monthly usage fee.
Download EPG (Electric Program Guide) from the server and easily see what programs are being shown at a particular time or send information about interesting programs to friends. Also, use as a remote control for the TV.

Access program information and G-Code® for the following eight days.

Connect to the server and download program details.

※ The screen shown is only an example. Actual screen may differ. Channels for your area will be shown.

Supportbook

☞P. 35

Supportbook (preset) is a simple operations guide on the FOMA terminal. Use this function when unsure of operations.

Various Manner Modes

☞P. 120

Set Normal manner mode, Silent manner mode or Original manner mode depending on the occasion.

Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed)

- Before use, read these Safety Precautions carefully and use your FOMA properly. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions contain information intended to prevent bodily injury to the user and to surrounding people, as well as damage to property, and must be observed at all times.

The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury or damage that may occur if information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used improperly.

⚠Danger	This symbol indicates that “death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use.”
⚠Warning	This symbol indicates that “death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use.”
⚠Caution	This symbol indicates that “bodily injury and/or property damage may result from improper use.”

The following symbols indicate specific directions.

Don't	**Indicates a prohibited action.**		
No disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble the device.	No liquids	Indicates not to use the device near water or get it wet.
No wet hands	Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.		

Instruction	**Indicates that instructions specified are compulsory (must be followed).**
Unplug	Indicates that the power cord must be unplugged from the power outlet.

Safety Precautions are explained in the following six sections.

- Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, and Adapters (Charger) (General) . . . . . P. 9
- Handling the FOMA Terminal . . . . . P. 10
- Handling the Battery Pack . . . . . P. 12
- Handling the Adapters and Charger . . . . . P. 14
- Handling Mobile Phones Near Electronic Medical Equipment. . . . . P. 16
- Handling the FOMA Card . . . . . P. 17

⚠Danger

Use only the battery packs, adapters, and chargers specified by the DoCoMo group companies for use with the FOMA terminal.

Instruction

The use of devices other than those specified may result in the malfunction of the FOMA terminal or battery pack. Leaking, overheating, exploding or fire may occur.

- Battery pack SH04
- Desktop holder SH03
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01

※ For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo retailer.

⚠Warning

Do not use the FOMA in locations such as gas stations where there is a risk of explosion or fire.

Don't

Use of the FOMA in dusty environments or in locations where there are propane, gasoline or other flammable gases may cause an explosion or fire.

Do not throw or otherwise subject to strong force or impacts.

Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other equipment may also be damaged or catch fire.

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or pressure cookers.

Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal, charger and adapters may overheat, emit smoke, catch fire or the internal circuitry may be damaged.

⚠Caution

Keep the FOMA out of the reach of young children.

Instruction

A small child may swallow or suffer other bodily injury.

If being used by a child, have a guardian teach them the proper handling procedures. In addition, check that the child is using the FOMA as directed.

Instruction

May result in bodily injury.

Do not use or leave the FOMA in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or disfigure other devices and cause damage. Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.

Do not store the FOMA in locations that are subject to dust, humidity, or high temperatures.

Don't

May cause a malfunction.

Do not leave the FOMA on unstable surfaces, such as on a wobbling table or sloped surface.

Don't

The FOMA may fall and cause injury or be damaged.

⚠Warning

Never use the FOMA while driving a motor vehicle.

Don't

May interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Stop your vehicle in a safe place or activate Drive mode. In accordance with changes in the Road Traffic Law, drivers using handsets while driving are subject to criminal punishment as of November 1, 2004.

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify.

No disassembly

May cause accidents such as fires, bodily injury, electric shock or equipment malfunction.

Do not connect to the Desktop holder, AC adapter or DC adapter while the FOMA is wet.

No liquids

May cause a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.

Turn off the FOMA in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals.

Instruction

The FOMA may interfere with the operation of sensitive devices and electronic medical equipment. In addition, make sure that the Auto power ON function is set to ***OFF*** before turning the FOMA OFF.
Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facilities regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises. In addition, actions such as speaking on a mobile phone aboard aircraft are prohibited and may be punishable by law.

Turn the FOMA terminal off near high-precision electronic devices or devices that use weak electronic signals.

Instruction

The FOMA may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

Take particular care with the following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, or other electronic medical equipment. Fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.
If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by signals.

If you are using electronic medical equipment, do not put the FOMA in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.

Don't

Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.

Do not look directly at the illuminated picture light, or point it directly into someone's eyes.

Don't

May damage eyesight. May also cause momentary sight loss or startle someone and cause an accident.

If you have a weak heart, take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring tone volume for incoming calls.

Instruction

Various settings may have effects on your heart.

Do not aim the Ir (Infrared) data port towards the eyes.

Don't

May cause eye injury. In addition, do not aim or direct the Ir data port towards another Ir device as this may cause the device to malfunction.

Do not use or leave in high temperature, such as near an open flame or stove.

Don't

May cause overheating, accidents such as igniting of fire, or malfunction.

⚠Caution

Using the FOMA in an automobile may sometimes affect the electronic equipment in some vehicle models.

Instruction

In such cases, stop using the FOMA, as this could impede safe driving.

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its strap, etc.

Don't

The FOMA may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA or other property.

Do not leave the internal camera lens exposed to direct sunlight or other powerful light source for a long period of time.

Don't

The lens may focus the beam, causing a fire or malfunction.

Use of the FOMA may cause skin irritations such as itchiness, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA and seek medical treatment.

Instruction

The following parts are metal (chrome-plated).
OK key, movie key (side key). Also, there are metallic parts under the output terminal, charger terminal, and miniSD Memory Card slot cover.

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA outdoors, immediately turn it off and move to a safe location.

Instruction

There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

Never place a magnetic card near or in the FOMA terminal.

Don't

The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

When closing the FOMA terminal, do not close it on the strap or card, etc.

Don't

May cause damage to the display.

Do not get the FOMA terminal wet.

No liquids

Contact with water, pet urine, and other liquids may cause overheating, electric shock, malfunctions or bodily injury. Be attentive to where and how you use the FOMA.

Before use, confirm that there are no foreign objects attached to the back of the FOMA terminal.

Instruction

Push-pins or thumbtacks attached to the magnet in the rear speaker may cause unexpected injuries.

Do not allow water or other liquids, metal, flammable material, or other foreign objects to enter the FOMA card port on the FOMA terminal.

Don't

May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

Do not allow water or other liquids, metal, flammable material, or other foreign objects to enter the miniSD Memory Card slot on the FOMA terminal.

Don't

May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

Handling the Battery Pack

Check the type of battery using the information printed on the battery pack label.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

⚠Danger

Do not disassemble or modify the battery pack. In addition, do not solder directly to the FOMA.

No disassembly

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not use or charge batteries that are wet with water, rain, seawater, pet urine, etc.

No liquids

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.

Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not use or leave the battery pack in places where it is exposed to high temperatures, such as near an open flame or heating appliance.

Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not touch terminals with metallic objects such as wires. In addition, do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.

Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Keep the battery pack dry.

No liquids

Exposing the battery pack to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunctions. Be attentive to where and how you use the FOMA.

If you are having difficulty fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing the correct direction before you attach it.

Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not puncture, hit with a hammer or step on the battery pack.

Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

If the battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.

Instruction

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.

⚠Warning

If you notice anything unusual about the battery pack, such as unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately remove it from the FOMA terminal and do not use it.

Don't

Continued use of the faulty battery pack may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.

Instruction

Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop use and move it away as far as possible from any flame or fire.

Instruction

The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified time has elapsed, stop charging.

Instruction

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.

⚠Caution

Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage.

Don't

May cause fires and environmental damage. Place tape over the terminals to insulate unnecessary battery packs, and take them to a DoCoMo retailer or institution that handles used batteries in your area.

If the battery pack will not be used for a long time, remove from the FOMA terminal, and store in a cool, dry place.

Instruction

The battery pack may suffer performance loss and reduced service life if not stored in a cool, dry place.

Do not store or leave the battery empty.

Don't

If the battery pack will not be used for a long time, charge once every 6 months or so.

⚠Warning

Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is connected to a power outlet or cigarette lighter. Also, take care not to allow any part of your body (fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal.

Don't

Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock, equipment malfunction or bodily injury.

Do not place the charger and desktop holder on an unstable surface during charging. Do not cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.

Don't

The FOMA terminal may detach, overheat, or cause a fire or malfunction.

Never use the adapter and charger in places where it is likely to get wet from water, rain, seawater, pet urine, etc.

No liquids

May cause accidents such as overheating or catching fire or malfunction (insufficient charging).

Never use the AC adapter, desktop holder or the DC adapter in humid or steamy locations such as a bathroom.

Don't

May cause electric shock.

Do not plug too many appliances into a single socket.

Don't

May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

Do not throw or otherwise subject to strong force or impacts.

Don't

May cause bodily injury, electric shock, or overheating due to adapter (and charger) damage.

To prevent fires, do not charge in places where flammable gases accumulate.

Don't

May cause explosions or fires.

Do not leave the cord of the adapter (or charger) near heating appliances.

Don't

May melt the cord insulation, causing a fire or electric shock.

Do not handle the cord and plug of the adapter (charger) with wet hands.

No wet hands

May cause electric shock.

Keep the adapter (charger) dry.

No liquids

Contact with water, pet urine, and other liquids may cause overheating, electric shock, or malfunctions. Be attentive to where and how you use the FOMA.

Do not use if the adapter's (charger's) cord or power cord is damaged.

Don't

May cause electric shock, overheating, or fire.

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify.

No disassembly

May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

Always use the specified power supply and voltage.

Instruction

Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction.
When using overseas, use the overseas-compatible FOMA AC adapter 01.
AC adapter: AC100V (To be connected only to domestic 100V outlets)
DC adapter: DC12V/24V (for negative ground automobiles only)

If the fuse in the DC adapter or in-car adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.

Instruction

Using the incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.

Wipe off any dust on the plug.

Instruction

Leaving the dust may cause a fire.

Unplug the power cord from the outlet when not using for a long time.

Unplug

Failure to do so may cause an electric shock, equipment malfunction, or fire.

⚠Warning

Should water or pet urine enter the adapter (charger), remove the plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter immediately.

May cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.

The DC adapter and in-car adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles. Never use these adapters in positively grounded vehicles.

May cause a fire.

If the cigarette lighter socket has foreign objects in it, such as ash, the plug may overheat due to poor contact. Always clean before use.

May cause electric shock, short-circulating or fire.

When plugging the AC adapter into the power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.

May cause electric shock, short-circulating or fire.

⚠Caution

Use the adapter (charger) between temperatures of 5°C to 35°C.

Use in temperatures not in this range may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. In addition, the battery pack may suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.

Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the adapter (charger).

Failure to do so may result in electric shock.

Do not use the adapter (charger) if the plug in the power outlet or the cigarette lighter socket is loose, or when the power plug is hot.

Continued use may result in a fire or electric shock.

Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter (charger) from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not pull by the cord or power cord.

Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

Do not charge the battery pack if it is wet.

May cause the battery pack to overheat, catch fire or explode.

Do not place heavy objects on the power cords for the adapter (charger).

May cause an electric shock or fire.

Handling Mobile Phones Near Electronic Medical Equipment

The safety precautions detailed here conform to the guidelines drawn up by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from signals emitted by mobile phones.

⚠Warning

If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or an implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, always carry or use your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from your implant.

Instruction

Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.

Turn off your FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.

Instruction

Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.

Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities.

Instruction

- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If Auto power ON function is set to ***ON***, disable this function before turning off your mobile phone.

Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of signals on the equipment.

Instruction

Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

⚠Warning

Never place the FOMA card inside a microwave oven or pressure cooker.

May cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, lost data, or malfunctions.

⚠Caution

Use the FOMA card only in equipment specified by DoCoMo.

Using other equipment may cause data loss or malfunctions. For more information regarding designated equipment, contact a DoCoMo retailer.

Keep the FOMA card out of the reach of young children.

A small child may swallow or suffer other bodily injury.

Never bend or place a heavy weight on the FOMA card.

May cause a malfunction.

Do not heat or burn the FOMA card.

May cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, lost data, or malfunctions.

Do not store the FOMA card in direct sunlight, high temperatures, or high humidity.

May cause a malfunction.

Do not get the FOMA card wet.

Contact with liquids such as water or pet urine may cause malfunctions.

Be careful when detaching the FOMA card (IC).

May cause injuries to your hand or fingers.

Do not touch the IC haphazardly, or short the IC.

May cause data loss or malfunctions.

Do not drop or otherwise subject the FOMA card to severe impact.

May cause a malfunction.

Do not damage the IC.

May cause a malfunction.

Do not store the FOMA card in a dusty location.

May cause a malfunction.

Do not use or leave the FOMA card near open flames, heaters, or other high temperature locations.

May cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, lost data, or malfunctions.

Do not disassemble or modify the FOMA card.

May cause data loss or malfunctions.

Handling Precautions

General Notes

- Do not expose to water. FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter or charger are not waterproof. Do not use in humid or steamy areas such as bathrooms and avoid exposing to rain and other forms of moisture. If FOMA terminal is carried close to skin, perspiration may cause internal components to corrode and result in malfunction. Note that if problem is found to be due to moisture, handset and parts are not covered by warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even where repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since damage is not covered by warranty.
- Clean only with a soft, dry cloth. The surface of the handset's LCD has a special coating to improve the visibility of the color display. Forceful rubbing of LCD with a dry cloth may scratch LCD surface. Handle the handset carefully and clean using a soft, dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period. Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents, as these agents may erase the printing on the handset or cause discoloration.
- Do not use in places where magnetic fields exist, such as near electrical appliances, AV equipment or OA equipment, or where there are electromagnetic waves (near microwave ovens, speakers, TVs, radios, fax machines, fluorescent lamps, word processors, kotatsu, inverter air conditioners, electromagnetic cooking appliances, etc.). Magnetic and electric interference may create static and cause difficulty during conversation (microwave ovens, in particular, interfere with reception).
- Interference may arise when trucks, cars or motorcycles pass nearby.
- Do not leave the handset where it can get dirty easily.
- The back of the FOMA terminal (speaker) and the earpiece contain parts that generate magnetic waves. Keep ATM cards and other objects likely to be affected by magnetic waves away from the rear of the FOMA terminal (speaker) and microphone. Cards may become unusable.
- Occasionally clean connection terminals with a dry cotton swab.
  Unclean connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Additionally, keep terminal clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab to prevent charge performance loss.
- Use FOMA terminal in areas with a temperature between 5°C and 35°C.
- Do not place the handset near an air conditioning vent. Condensation formed due to rapid changes in humidity may cause internal corrosion and lead to malfunction.
- Do not leave handset in a location subject to excessive force.
  Carrying the handset in a tightly packed bag, or sitting on the handset in your pocket may result in damage to LCD or other internal components, which are not covered by warranty. Clean the handset periodically as dust and other particles on LCD or keys may scratch LCD.
- Read the manuals supplied with the battery pack and adapters and charger carefully.
- If FOMA terminal is used in a criminal manner that affects the public, the owner may be subject to punishment under legal and/or regulatory guidelines (such as nuisance prevention ordinance).

Please respect the privacy of others when using a camera-enabled mobile phone to shoot and send images.

Notes About FOMA Terminal

- Using the handset close to landline phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far away as possible from such items before use.
- Keep a separate record of any data stored in FOMA terminal. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data.
- Do not put the handset in back pocket and then sit on it. Additionally, do not put handset where it may be subjected to excessive weight or pressure, such as the bottom of a briefcase. May cause malfunction.
- Do not close FOMA terminal on strap. May damage the handset and cause malfunction.
- Avoid using the handset in extremely high or low temperatures. Use FOMA terminal in areas with a temperature between 5°C and 35°C.
- FOMA terminal may become warm with continuous use or during charging. This is not a malfunction.
- Continuous talking and consecutive camera use may result in the battery becoming warm. This is not a malfunction.
- Leaving the miniSD Memory Card slot cover open may result in damage from force. Always close miniSD Memory Card cover after inserting or removing miniSD Memory Card.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Notes About miniSD Memory Card

- Do not insert or remove miniSD Memory Card while the FOMA terminal is turned on. While accessing miniSD Memory Card (SD flashes), do not turn power off, remove battery or subject handset to impact. May damage data or result in the malfunction of the miniSD Memory Card.
- To remove miniSD Memory Card, press miniSD Memory Card lightly until a click is heard and then pull out. Pulling forcefully will damage the FOMA terminal or miniSD Memory Card.

Handling Battery Pack

- Battery pack is a consumable product. Though usage time varies with use, change battery if battery level is extremely low even after fully charging. Purchase a new battery pack for specified handset.
- Estimated service life for battery pack is one year. Service life may shorten depending on use.
- Shorting battery pack by touching terminals with a metal object causes a large amount of electricity to flow and may overheat the battery. Handle with care.
- Do not dispose of used battery packs with ordinary garbage. Place tape over terminals to insulate unnecessary battery packs and take to a DoCoMo retailer or refer to local regulations on how to dispose of used batteries.
- Always charge the battery before the first use or after not using battery for a long time.
- The usage time for a battery depends on the usage and deterioration of battery pack.
- Charge battery in areas with a temperature between 5°C and 35°C.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

- Always charge battery pack with the specified adapter and charger. Failure to use the specified adapter or charger may result in an accident. Use adapter and charger only for charging battery pack.
- Adapter or charger may become warm during charging. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- Do not charge battery pack in the following locations:
  - ■ Areas where ambient temperature is lower than 5°C or higher than 35°C
  - ■ Areas with high humidity or dust, or in areas exposed to strong vibrations
  - ■ Close to landline phones, TVs or radios
- Do not use DC adapter to charge battery when the car is not running. May cause car battery to run down.
- When using an electrical outlet with a feature to prevent the plug from being removed accidentally, follow instructions in the outlet user's guide.

Notes About FOMA Card

- Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.
- Always keep IC area clean.
- Be careful when inserting or ejecting card.
  Do not use unnecessary force when removing IC portion. Do not apply unnecessary force when inserting card into FOMA terminal.
- FOMA card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Customer is responsible for malfunctions arising from inserting FOMA card into a different IC-card reader/writer.
- To protect the environment, please take any unnecessary FOMA cards to your local DoCoMo retailer.
- Keep a separate record of any data stored in FOMA card. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data.
- Clean only with a soft, dry cloth.

Intellectual Property

Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

- Data with third party copyrights such as text, images, music and software that is downloaded or acquired via Internet web pages, shot by the FOMA terminal, or acquired from TV or other video cannot be duplicated, altered or publicly transmitted without rightful party's consent. Only duplicating, quoting, etc. for personal use is permitted under copyright laws.
  Even if for personal use, filming and recording may be prohibited for demonstrations, performances and exhibitions.
  Also, shooting another's image or posting another's image on Internet web pages without their consent may constitute a violation of one's right to their image.
- If the FOMA terminal is used in a manner which seriously creates a public nuisance, the owner may be subject to punishment under legal and/or regulatory guidelines (such as nuisance prevention ordinance).

Registered Trademarks and Trademarks

- "FOMA／フォーマ", "mova／ムーバ", "ｉメロディ／アイメロディ", "mopera／モペラ", "ｉアプリサーチ／アイアプリサーチ", "ｉエリア／アイエリア", "FirstPass", "キャラ電", "デコメール", "着モーション", "ｉショット／アイショット", "マルチアクセス", "ｉモーションメール／アイモーションメール", "ｉアプリ／アイアプリ", "ｉアプリDX", "ｉモーション／アイモーション", "ｉモード", "WORLD CALL", "デュアルネットワーク", "M-stage V ライブ", "クイックキャスト", "Security scan", "musea/ミュゼア", "sigmarion／シグマリオン", the "mova" logo, the "i-mode" logo, the "i-motion" logo, the "FOMA" logo, the "WORLD CALL" logo, and the "FirstPass" logo are trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc. or registered trademarks.
- キャッチホン (Call Waiting) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- NetFront and NetFront are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- Windows is registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.
  (The official name for Windows is Microsoft® Windows® operating system.)
- IrFront® is a registered trademark or trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- AVE-TCP is a registered trademark or trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are registered trademarks or trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the U.S.A and other countries.
- miniSD™ The miniSD™ icon is a registered logo of the SD Association.
- Powered by JBlend™ © 1997-2005 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
  JBlend and JBlend related trademarks are registered trademarks or trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- **CP8 PATENT**
- This handset features LCFONT, developed by Sharp Corporation, to make the LCD easier to view and read.
  LCフォント/LCFONT and FONT® are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
  All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.
  © 2004 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE Mobile, and the Gガイドモバイル logo are trademarks in Japan of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. Gガイド, G-GUIDE, the Gガイド logo, Gコード, and G-Code are registered trademarks in Japan of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc.
- All other company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Other Intellectual Property

- This product is equipped with NetFront v3.0 for FOMA for Internet functions.
  NetFront v3.0 is a product of ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Some software in this product includes modules developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product uses WAVE from ACCESS Co., Ltd. as a simple window manager.
  Copyright © 1997-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This FOMA uses IrFront® from ACCESS Co., Ltd. for Ir data exchange functions.
  Copyright © 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, customers have licensed permission for the following use of this product to engage in non-profit personal use. Other uses are not permitted.
  - Encoding MPEG-4 standard video (henceforth referred to as MPEG-4 video).
  - Decoding an MPEG-4 video that a customer not engaged in personal commercial activities has encoded.
  - Decoding a licensed MPEG-4 video obtained from a provider.

  For details on other intended uses, contact MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard. An additional license and payment of royalties are necessary in the following cases.
  - Data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis.
  - Data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use.

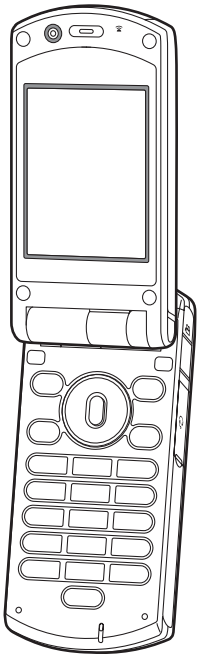
  Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. Contact MPEG LA, LLC for additional details.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;

4,901,307	5,490,165	5,056,109	5,504,773	5,101,501	5,506,865
5,109,390	5,511,073	5,228,054	5,535,239	5,267,261	5,544,196
5,267,262	5,568,483	5,337,338	5,600,754	5,414,796	5,657,420
5,416,797	5,659,569	5,710,784	5,778,338		

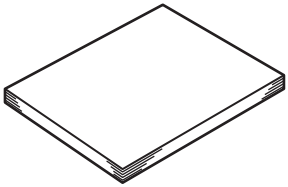
- This product uses AVE-TCP from ACCESS Co., Ltd. for Internet communication functions.
  Copyright © 1986-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product uses Macromedia® Flash™ technology from Macromedia, Inc.
  Copyright © 1995-2005 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.

Standard Parts Packaged with Unit and Main Optional Parts

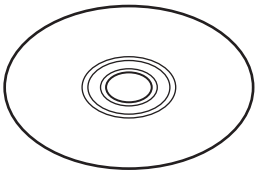
Standard package



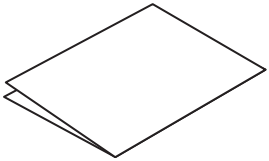
FOMA SH700i terminal (1)
(includes warranty and rear cover SH03)



This manual
※Quick manual can be found on P. 580.

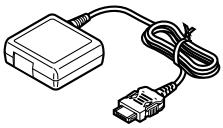


CD-ROM (1)

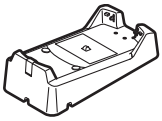


“FOMA SH700i ｉアプリのご紹介”
(FOMA SH700i i-αppli User’s Guide)
(1)

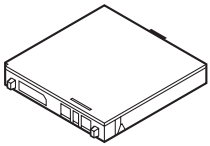
Main optional parts



FOMA AC Adapter 01
(includes warranty and user’s guide)



Desktop holder SH03
(includes user’s guide)



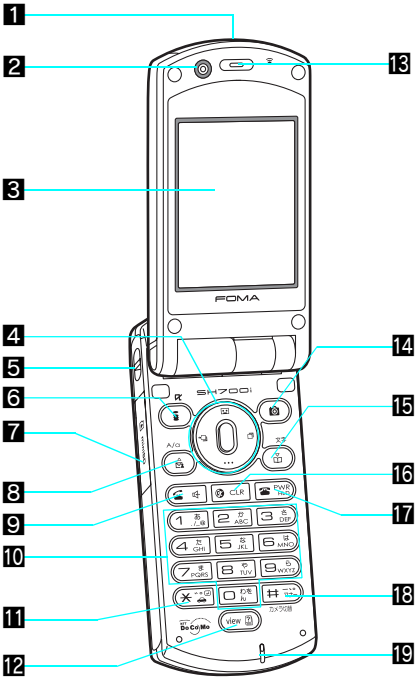
Battery pack SH04
(includes user’s guide)

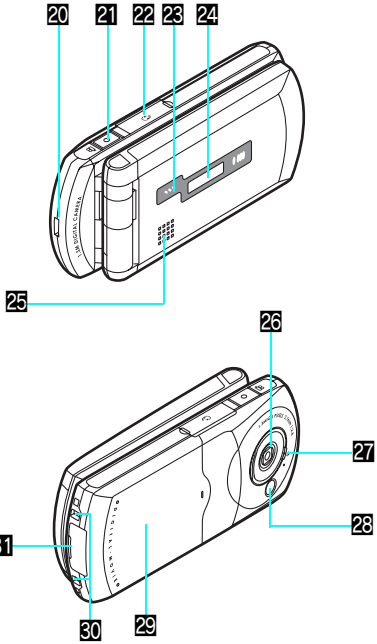
※ Refer to P. 548 for details on other optional parts.

Before Using the FOMA Terminal

- Component Names and Functions 24
- Viewing the Display 28
- Making Menu Selections 31
- Displaying the Supportbook . . . . . <Supportbook>35
- Using a FOMA Card . . . . . <UIM>36
- Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack 39
- Charging the Mobile Phone 41
- How to Check the Battery Level . . . . . <Battery Level>44
- Turning the Power On and Off . . . . . <Power ON/OFF>45
- Switching Display to English . . . . . <Select Language>45
- Making the Initial Settings . . . . . <Initial Settings>46
- Setting the Date and Time . . . . . <Date Settings>46
- Sending Your Own Phone Number to the Other Party. . . . . <Notify Caller ID>47
- Checking Your Phone Number. . . . . <Own Number>47

Component Names and Functions

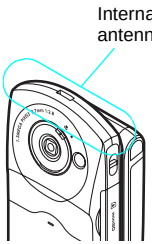




※ The FOMA terminal has an internal antenna.

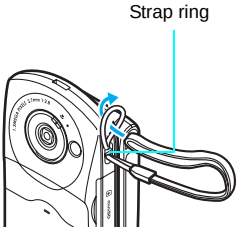
The internal antenna area

- Do not touch or cover the internal antenna area with your hands.
- Do not cover the internal antenna area with a sticker. The call quality will deteriorate.



Attaching a commercially available strap

- With the FOMA terminal closed, pass the strap through the strap ring and pass the other end through the loop on the other side.



1 Infrared exchange port

Port for sending and receiving infrared data. (☞P. 389)

2 Sub camera

Use to shoot own image or to send video shot during a video-phone call to the other party.

3 Display (☞P. 28)

4 Multi-guide key (four-way key and OK key) (☞P. 27)

- Press to display and select function menus, Redial, Received calls, Record message/Voice memo, and the Shortcut menu as well as use these functions.

5 Strap ring (☞P. 24)

6 i-mode/Guidance key

- Press to make or receive a video-phone call. (☞P. 75, P. 78)
- Press to use i-mode (☞P. 198).
- Press to execute the function displayed at the bottom left of the screen in guidance. (☞P. 27)
- Press for 1+ seconds to display the i-αppli screen. (☞P. 311)

7 miniSD Memory Card slot cover

Slot for miniSD Memory Card is under this cover. (☞P. 370)

Be sure to close the cover when using a miniSD.

8 Mail/A/a key

- Press to use mail functions (☞P. 251).
- Switches between upper and lower case when entering text. (☞P. 516)
- Press for 1+ seconds in text input screen to display insert phrase screen. (☞P. 517)
- Press twice to check new messages. (☞P. 266)

9 Start/Hands-free key

- Press to make or receive a voice call.
- Press for 1+ seconds during a voice call to switch to Hands-free. (☞P. 51)
- Press during a video-phone call to switch to Hands-free. (☞P. 77)

10 Dial/Text entering keys

- Press to enter a phone number. (☞P. 50)
- Press to enter text. (☞P. 510)

11 ✱/Line break/Drive mode key

- Press to enter an asterisk, dakuten (゛), handakuten (゜) or a line break. (☞P. 511)
- Press for 1+ seconds to set or cancel Drive mode. (☞P. 66)

12 View key

- To start Assistant View: Press during a voice call or while using other functions to check data from other functions, such as the phonebook or mail. (☞P. 406)
- To view Supportbook: Press in stand-by to view Supportbook (preset). (☞P. 35)
- To save a shortcut in the Shortcut menu: Press for 1+ seconds when is displayed on the screen to save a shortcut. (☞P. 431)
- To display a still picture full screen: Press while playing back a still picture in Data box before or after shooting in Camera mode to display the picture in full screen. (☞P. 185)

13 Earpiece

- Emits out the other party's voice.
- When in stand-by, listen to Record message/Voice memo using the earpiece.

14 Camera/Guidance key

- Press to use Camera mode. (☞P. 170)
- Press to execute the function displayed at the bottom right of the screen in guidance. (☞P. 27)
- Press for 1+ seconds to display My picture of Data box. (☞P. 330)

15 Phonebook key

- Press to use the phonebook. (☞P. 94)
- Press to change the type of text to be entered. (☞P. 514)
- In text input screen, press for 1+ seconds to use Internet phrases. (☞P. 517)

16 Clear/i-αppli stand-by key

- Use to delete phone numbers and text. (☞P. 514)
- Press to return to the previous menu or page.
- To start i-αppli: Press when i-αppli stand-by is set. (☞P. 319)
- Press to play or pause when GIF animation or Flash movies are set in stand-by. Press while setting i-motion to play or stop.

17 Power/End/On hold key

- Press for 2+ seconds to turn the power on or off. (☞P. 45)
- Press to end a call or i-mode, or to put calls on hold. (☞P. 64)

Continued on next page ▶▶

18 #/Manner mode/Camera mode key

- Press to enter a #, prolonged sound (ー), comma (、), kuten (。), exclamation mark (!), question mark (?), or chuten (・).
- Press for 1+ seconds to set or cancel Manner mode. (☞P. 120)
- Switches between the main camera and the sub camera while shooting images. (☞P. 177)

19 Microphone

Sends out your own voice.

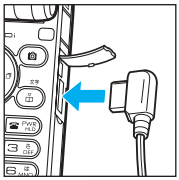
20 Internal antenna

Do not touch or cover the antenna area with your hands.
(☞P. 24)

21 Movie key (side key)

- Press to use Movie mode. (☞P. 174)
- Press for 1+ seconds to show i-motion screen of Data box. (☞P. 346)
- Press with the FOMA terminal closed to switch sub display. (☞P. 30)
- Press for 1+ seconds with the FOMA terminal closed to activate picture light. Press the movie key (side key) while picture light is lit to switch the color of the light from white, red, green, blue, yellow, purple and light blue consecutively. Wait for 30 seconds, press movie key (side key) again for 1+ seconds or close the FOMA terminal to turn off picture light.
- When a call is received while the FOMA terminal is closed, the caller's phone number and name appear on the sub display. Press the movie key (side key) when ▶ appears at the end of the name/phone number/message to show remaining characters.
- Press for 1+ seconds while receiving when FOMA terminal closed to set/deactivate Manner mode. (☞P. 120)

22 Earphone/Microphone terminal



- Connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately). (☞P. 447)

When using an earphone plug adapter (sold separately), an earphone/microphone with a switch can also be used.

23 Called LED/Charging LED

- Flashes when there is an incoming call.
- Stays lit while charging.

24 Sub display (☞P. 28)

25 Speaker

- Emits ring tones and other sounds.
- Listen to other party's voice during hands-free voice/video-phone calls.

26 Main camera

Use to shoot an image of your surroundings or send a video of your surroundings shot during a video-phone call to the other party.

27 Closeup switch

Switches between Closeup and Normal mode. (☞P. 175)

28 Picture light/Message LED

- Provides extra light for shooting images in dark places. (☞P. 177)
- Flashes when there is an incoming call.
- Flashes yellow when Screen display time is set to ***LED display on*** in User set in Power saver mode. (☞P. 129)

29 Rear cover (☞P. 39)

30 Charger terminal

Terminal for recharging with the desktop holder. (☞P. 43)

31 External connector terminal

Terminal for connecting external devices, such as an AC adapter, a DC adapter (☞P. 42), or a FOMA USB cable (sold separately).

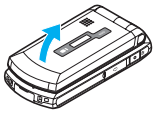
※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

How to Open the FOMA Terminal

When using the FOMA terminal, open it.

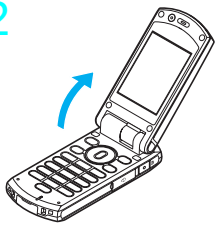
- Keeping the FOMA terminal closed when carrying is recommended.

1

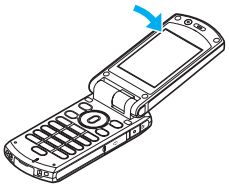


Open carefully with both hands.

2



3



Push the display back as far as it will go.

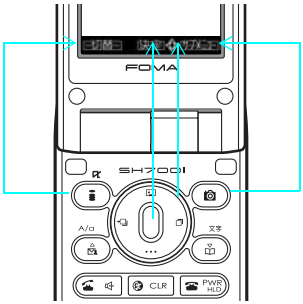
Note

- Do not forcefully pull the rubber covers of the earphone/microphone terminal, miniSD Memory Card slot and the external connector terminal. May cause damage.

How to Use the Multi-guide Key and Guidance Key

Use the Multi-guide key (four-way key and OK key) to select and set menus. Move the cursor with the four-way key and set the selection using the OK key. Or to display a sub menu, use the camera key, and use the i-mode key to end an operation.

These keys are assigned different functions depending on the situation, so the functions assigned for the situation are displayed in the bottom of the screen as guidance.

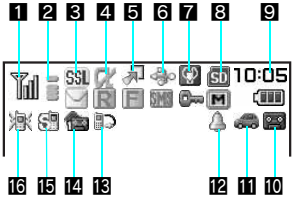


Key	Description
	Activates functions shown at the bottom left of the screen. (Guidance key)
	Activates functions shown at the bottom center of the screen. (Guidance key)
	Activates functions shown at the bottom right of the screen. (Guidance key)
	An arrow appears indicating the possible direction.

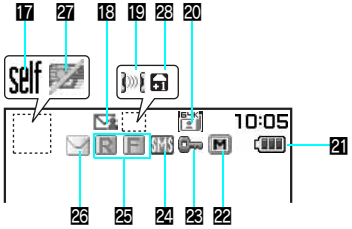
Viewing the Display

The display allows you to check the current status after the power is turned on or while setting up functions.
The display lights for a set period of time when a key is pressed. The default setting is *15 seconds*. (☞P. 128)

Icons displayed at the top of the screen

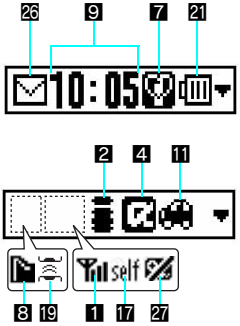


Icons displayed at the top of the screen



Icons displayed at the bottom of the screen

Icons displayed in the sub display



1 Signal status (☞P. 50)
Indicates the strength of the signal.

2 i-mode
Indicates the i-mode status.

3 SSL (☞P. 206)
Indicates that an SSL-enabled site or Internet web page is currently being viewed.

4 i-αppli (☞P. 311)
Indicates the i-αppli status.
: i-αppli is running
i-αppli stand-by is being displayed.
: i-αppli stand-by is set*
: i-αppliDX is running
i-αppliDX stand-by is being displayed.
i-αppliDX stand-by is being displayed in the sub display
: i-αppliDX stand-by is set*
* Indicates that an i-αppli is in stand-by, but cannot be used.

5 Shortcut menu (☞P. 431)
Appears when the function can be added to the Shortcut menu.

6 External device connection (☞P. 470)
Appears when a PC or other external device is connected.
: External device connected
(green): During hands-free (☞P. 59)

7 Manner mode (☞P. 120)
Appears when Manner mode is set.

8 miniSD Memory Card (☞P. 369)
(gray): miniSD Memory Card is inserted
(pink): Data on miniSD Memory Card is being viewed
(flashes): miniSD Memory Card is being accessed

9 Clock display (☞P. 46)
Indicates the time that is set.

10 Record message (☞P. 68)
Appears when Record message (voice/video-phone calls) is set. When there are messages, to appears, indicating the total number of both types of messages.

11 Drive mode (☞P. 66)
Appears when Drive mode is set.

12 Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm (☞P. 410, P. 424, P. 415)
Displayed when a Schedule alarm, ToDo alarm or alarm is set for that day.

13 Earphone/microphone connection (☞P. 447)
Displayed if an flat-plug earphone/ microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected when Auto answer is set.

14 New voice mail message (☞P. 454)
Indicates the number of recorded voice mail messages (one to nine messages). appears if the number of messages exceeds 10.

15 Silent (☞P. 115)
Appears when the ring volume is set to ***Silent***.

16 Vibrator (☞P. 117)
Appears when the vibrator is set.

17 Self mode (☞P. 149)
Appears when Self mode is set, and the handset cannot make/receive calls, send/ receive i-mode mail or SMS, use i-mode functions or use Ir exchange.

18 Assistant View (☞P. 406)
Indicates the original application that is running when checking data using Assistant View.
: ToDo list : Phonebook
: Text memo : Schedule
: Mail : During call
: i-mode

19 Appears during infrared exchange and while communicating with an external device.
: Appears when exchanging data with another device using the infrared exchange function. (☞P. 388) Flashes when sending data using infrared remote control. (☞P. 393)
(green): Connected to an external device and transmitting packets.
(red): Connected to an external device and sending/receiving packet data.
: Connected to an external device and transmitting 64K data.
: Appears on the sub display when FOMA terminal is closed during Ir exchange with i-αppli.

20 Indicates that a voice or video-phone call is in progress. (☞P. 50, P. 51, P. 74)
Shows the status during a voice call or a video-phone call.
: Video-phone call (32K) in progress.
: Video-phone call (64K) in progress.
: Voice call in progress.
(red): Hands-free call (32K video-phone) in progress.
(red): Hands-free call (64K video-phone) in progress.
(red): Hands-free call (voice) in progress.

21 Battery level/Charging (☞P. 44)
Indicates the status of the battery pack.

22 Memory alert
Indicates the memory status.
(yellow): Appears when the available memory is less than 800 KB.
(red): Appears when the available memory is less than 100 KB.

23 Restriction indicator (☞P. 153, P. 146)
Indicates the status of the restriction settings.
: Secret mode
: Appears when secret data is being edited.
: Keypad dial lock
: All locked
: PIM is locked.
: Keypad dial lock and PIM lock are set.
: Key guard is set.

24 SMS received (☞P. 301)
Indicates the SMS receive status.
(red): Appears when SMS is received.
(black): Appears when SMS on the FOMA terminal handset is full.
(blue): Appears when the FOMA card SMS is full.
(yellow): Appears when SMS on the FOMA terminal handset and the FOMA card are full.

25 Message R icon and Message F icon (☞P. 231)
Indicates the receive status of the Message R/F and the storage status of the Message R/F at the center. However, the status may not always be indicated, even if there are messages stored at the center.

26 i-mode mail received (☞P. 263)
Indicates the i-mode mail receive status and the storage status of i-mode mail at the center. However, the status may not always be indicated, even if there are messages held at center. The status of the memory to store received mail is also indicated.

27 FOMA card error
Indicates the type of FOMA card error.
: Appears when FOMA card is malfunctioning or not inserted.
: Appears when FOMA card not issued by DoCoMo is inserted.

28 Video-phone brightness
−2 −1 +1 +2
The brightness is not shown when it is ±0.

Continued on next page

29 Operation guidance
Indicates the functions that can be used with keys such as (i), (●) and (📷).

30 Display navigation
Indicates the directions in which the screen can be scrolled using the Multi-guide key.
- May not apply, depending on how the site was constructed.

Other icons

Refer to respective pages for information on icons for the functions shown below.

- Received calls (☞P. 62)
- Camera mode (☞P. 166 to P. 168)
- Mail (☞P. 274 to P. 278)
- SMS (☞P. 274 to P. 278)
- Phonebook (☞P. 93)
- Message R/F (☞P. 231 to P. 236)
- My picture of Data box (☞P. 331 and P. 332)

Note

- miniSD Memory Cards are referred to as ***miniSD*** or ***SD*** on the FOMA terminal. (☞P. 369)
- Some of the screen shots in this manual have been modified or abbreviated.
- The display for the FOMA terminal is manufactured using high-precision technology, but it may occasionally contain dots that fail to light or that remain permanently lit. This is not a malfunction.

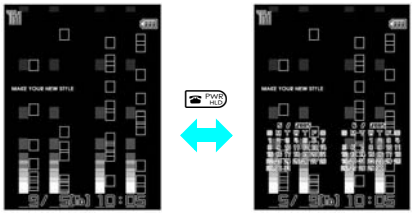
Viewing the display

- The explanations in this manual are made using screens based mostly on default settings. The actual screens may differ depending on settings changed after purchase.
- Depending on the site, some screen shots may not look the same as the actual site screens when a Flash movie is displayed.

Switching Between Displays

Switching the Main Display

Press (PWR HOLD) to switch between the Stand-by image and the calendar when Calendar is set in the stand-by display. (Calendar display ☞P. 123)

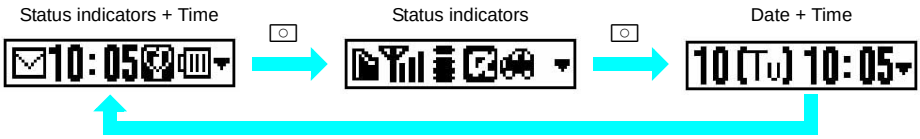


Stand-by image　　Calendar (2 months)

- When the calendar is set to ***2 months***, the current month and the next month appear. When set to ***6 months***, six months appear in pairs (starting with the current month) with odd number months on the left. If you press (●), the previous and following months appear. If you set the calendar to ***6 months***, the previous and following two months appear.
- The calendar cannot be shown in the i-αppli stand-by display.
- If a GIF animation, Flash movie or i-motion is set as the stand-by display, playback stops when switched to Calendar.
- When the calendar is set to ***1 month (Large)***, icons appear to the right of dates with schedule entries.

Switching the Sub Display

Press (○) (📷) with the FOMA terminal closed to switch sub display in the following order.



- When “Status indicators” or “Date + Time” appears, “Status indicators + Time” reappears approximately ten seconds later.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Making Menu Selections

Functions are set or registered after a menu appears.

- Menus can be displayed using the following methods.
  - Select a function starting from the Top menu.
  - Retrieve a function by entering a function number (☞P. 32).
  - Select a function from the Shortcut menu (☞P. 431).
  - Select a phone function, mail function or the camera function screen with large font (Zoom menu) (☞P. 33).
  - Select an option from the sub menu shown in guidance (☞P. 34).
- In the Top menu, the Shortcut menu (☞P. 431), or the Zoom menu, press ⓘ [Switch] to switch menus. To show the menu previously used, press ● in stand-by.

Selecting Functions from the Top Menu

Use or set up functions categorized under nine menus.
(Refer to P. 528 to P. 533 for details on the Setting menu.)

- Select an icon and then scroll through the functions to display them in guidance.
- The icons can be changed (Icon settings ☞P. 133).

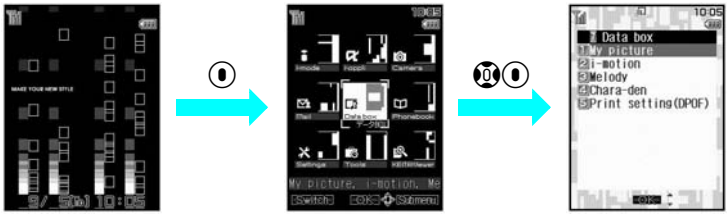
Icon	Menu	Function
i-mode	i-mode	1 Menu
		2 Message
		3 Bookmark
		4 Check new message
		5 Screen memo
		6 Last URL
		7 URL history
		8 Go to location
		9 i-mode setting
i-αppli	i-αppli	1 Software list
		2 i-αppli volume
		3 Soft description
		4 Auto start
		5 Error display
		6 Trace info*
Camera	Camera	1 Shoot still pic
		2 Shoot movie
		3 Character reader
		4 Bar code reader
Mail	Mail	1 Inbox
		2 Outbox
		3 Unsent messages
		4 Compose message
		5 Compose SMS
		6 Chat mail
		7 Check new message
		8 Check new SMS
		9 Receive option
		0 Mail setting
Data box	Data box	1 My picture
		2 i-motion
		3 Melody
		4 Chara-den
		5 Print setting (DPOF)

Icon	Menu	Function
Phonebook	Phonebook	Search phonebook
Settings	Settings	1 Sound
		2 Display
		3 General settings
		4 Services
		5 Phone settings
		6 Security
		0 Own number
		✕ Initial settings
		# Reset settings
Tools	Tools	1 Voice recorder
		2 Receive Ir data
		3 Schedule
		4 ToDo list
		5 Alarm
		6 Timer
		7 Text memo
		8 Calc
		9 Money calc
		0 miniSD manager
		✕ Bar code reader
		# Character reader
KEITAI Viewer	KEITAI Viewer	e-book

* Does not appear on menu when there is no Trace info.

Continued on next page ▶▶

In stand-by, press ●, select a menu or an icon using ○ and press ●. Select a function using ○ and press ●.



- To access the above function from the Top menu, the following instruction appears in this manual: "Alternatively, select (Data box) → ***My Picture*** → ***Camera*** from Top menu."
- To reselect a function, press CLR and the previous screen reappears.
- If Zoom menu or Shortcut menu appears when ● is pressed in the stand-by, press ○ to switch to Top menu. Press ● in stand-by to show the menu previously used.

Retrieving a Function by Entering a Function Number

Functions can be retrieved quickly by entering a function number.

The explanations in this manual are based on the entry of function numbers to select menus.

The first number in the function number is 1 through 6 for the setting menus, 7 for the Data box menu, 8 for the Tools menu or 9 for the KEITAIViewer menu.

Refer to P. 528 to P. 533 for details on the function numbers for each function (key operations). In this example, function number ***1211*** is used to select ***Phone ring tone***.

Example: When selecting *Phone ring tone* using function number *1211*

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 2 1 1.

- The specified function (phone ring tone) screen appears.

Note

- Functions cannot be retrieved by entering function numbers from the Shortcut menu or the Zoom menu.

Use the In-call menu

Press ● during a call to display the following functions that can be used during a call.

- Hold (☞P. 51)
- Voice memo (☞P. 436)
- Date settings (☞P. 46)
- Own number (☞P. 47)

Press CLR multiple times and the call screen reappears.

Selecting a Function from the Zoom Menu <Zoom Menu>

The Zoom menu displays frequently used functions enlarged. Use the Zoom menu to perform basic phone functions, mail functions and camera functions using an enlarged character display.

Menu	Function	Screen	Reference
Phone functions	View phonebook	Search phonebook	P. 104
	Redial	Display one item	P. 52
	Received calls	Display one item	P. 62
	Own phone number	Phone number verification	P. 47
Mail functions	Write mail	Compose message*1	P. 251
	View all received messages	Inbox*2	P. 274 to P. 278
	View all sent messages	Outbox*2	
	View unsent messages	Unsent messages*2	
Camera functions	Shoot picture	Shoot still picture	P. 170
	View picture	My picture folder list of Data box (FOMA terminal handset)	P. 330
	Shoot movie	Shoot movie	P. 174
	View movie	i-motion folder list of Data box (FOMA terminal handset)	P. 346

*1 The entry screens for the mail recipient, title and message text are not enlarged.

*2 These screens are not enlarged.

At the time of purchase, press ● in stand-by and press [Switch] twice to show the Zoom menu. Select a function using ○ and press ●.

(Stand-by) (Zoom menu) When ***Mail functions*** is selected

- Press [Switch] to switch from Top menu → Shortcut menu → Zoom menu.
- To reselect a function, press CLR.
- Press ● in stand-by to show the menu previously used.

Note

- The phonebook is displayed in large font.
- Data box image list view can be changed but image list view is shown in nine frames when operated from Zoom menu again.
- Refer to P. 170 and onward for camera operations.

Selecting Functions from the Submenu

When guidance Submenu appears, press ● to show the functions (sub menu) that can be used in that screen.

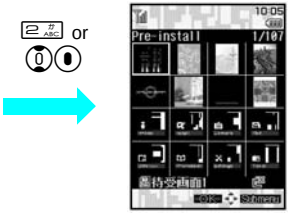
This manual explains how to select sub menus based on the entry of function numbers.

However, some sub menus do not have function numbers. In such cases, select the function using ○ and press ●.

Example: When switching the image list to *16-part display*

(Submenu) Items that cannot be selected are shown in gray.

When ***Switch view mode*** is selected



When ***16-part display*** is selected

- To reselect a function, press CLR.

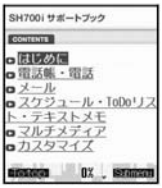
Displaying the Supportbook

Supportbook (preset) is a simple operation guide that uses the FOMA terminal handset KEITAIViewer. Use this function when unsure of operations. (☞P. 396) Alternatively, when composing a message with Assistant View, press view to use Supportbook (preset). (☞P. 406)

- Useful tips and functions are displayed in the form of a conversation to allow for rapid comprehension.
- When opening from stand-by, the top page of Supportbook is shown. When opening from Assistant View, page or top page corresponding to function Assistant View was activated from is shown. (☞P. 406)

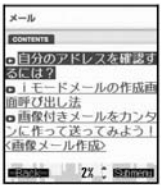
Example: When checking own address

1 In stand-by, press view.

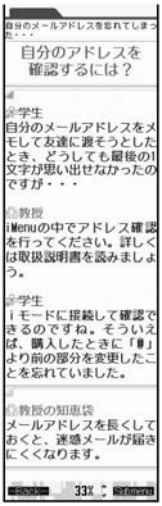


- Alternatively, select (KEITAIViewer) → ***Supportbook (preset)*** from Top menu.

2 Select メール (Mail) and press ●.



3 Select 自分のアドレスを確認するには？ (How do you check your own address?) and press ●.



- Under the title, 自分のアドレスを確認するには？ an example in conversation format and 教授の知恵袋 (advice) appears.

学生 (student): I was trying to tell my mail address to my friend but I forgot the last letter!

教授 (professor): Check your mail address in iMenu. Take a look at the manual to find out more.

学生 (student): So you can check your mail address using the i-mode service. Come to think of it, I changed the part before the @ mark when I bought my phone!

教授の知恵袋 (advice): You'll receive less spam if you create a long mail address.

Using a FOMA Card

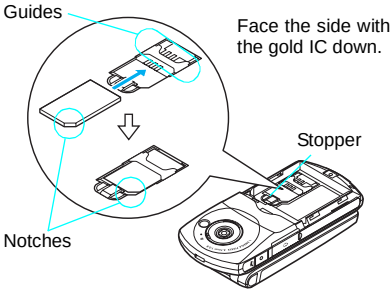
A FOMA card is an IC-card that records personal information, such as phone numbers. A FOMA card can also store phonebook data and SMS. By switching FOMA cards, multiple FOMA terminals can be used for different purposes as needed.

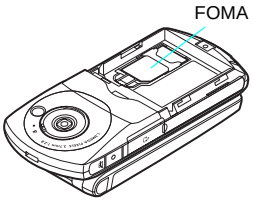
- If a FOMA card is not inserted, communications functions, such as voice/video-phone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail and SMS transmissions, Message R/F reception and data transmission on the FOMA terminal cannot be used.
- Refer to the FOMA card user's guide for more information on the FOMA card.
- Do not accidentally touch or damage the IC-card when inserting or removing a FOMA card.

Inserting and Removing a FOMA Card

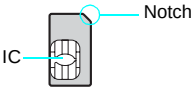
※ Refer to step 1 of "Turning the Power Off" on P. 45 to turn off the power and remove the battery pack. Then insert or remove the FOMA card.

Inserting a FOMA card





1 With the IC side of the FOMA card face down, insert FOMA card under the guide, as shown in the illustration on the left.

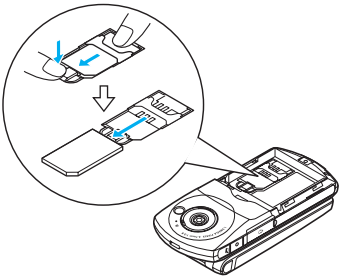


2 In the position shown in the illustration on the left, slowly slide FOMA card and push in until the stopper clicks.

- Card will stay in place once inserted all the way.

Removing a FOMA card

When removing the FOMA card, close the FOMA terminal.



1 While pressing down on stopper, slide FOMA card with the other hand as shown in the illustration on the left.

2 After the FOMA card protrudes slightly, slowly pull it straight out.

- Do not allow the FOMA card to fall when removing it.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Note

- Inserting or removing the FOMA card with force may cause damage to the card. Use caution.
- Do not misplace the FOMA card once it is taken out.
- The FOMA terminal power may turn off if the IC area of the FOMA card is dirty. Wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth.

FOMA Card Security Codes

- Set both the PIN and PIN2 security codes for the FOMA card. Both are set to ***0000*** at the time of registration, but can be changed.
- PIN code is a four to eight digit code that is entered when the FOMA terminal is turned on so that an unauthorized third party cannot use the FOMA terminal. Enter PIN code to enable making calls and performing various transmissions.
- PIN2 code is a four to eight digit code used for authentication when connecting to sites, Internet and online services. Enter PIN2 code in the FOMA terminal when performing Client certificate operations (issuance of Client certificate when using FirstPass) or accessing FirstPass compatible sites. (☞P. 237)

※ Refer to “Setting PIN Code” on P. 142 for details on PIN and PIN2 codes.

Note

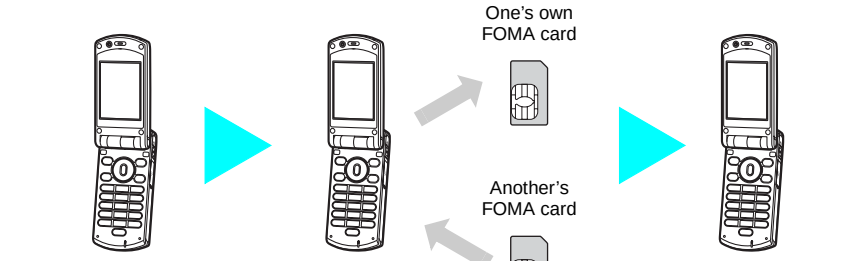
- Use previously set PIN and PIN2 codes when inserting an old FOMA card into a newly purchased FOMA terminal. The PIN and PIN2 codes are ***0000*** if left unchanged.

FOMA Card Restriction Functions <FOMA Card Restriction Functions>

The FOMA card has built-in restriction functions as security functions for protecting personal data and files.

- When the FOMA card is inserted into the FOMA terminal and data or files are retrieved using any of the following methods or when an i-αppli is running, FOMA card restriction functions are automatically set in the retrieved data or files.
  - ■ When a file such as an image or melody is downloaded from a site or Internet web page
  - ■ When a site or Internet web page is saved as a screen memo (this does not include screen memos that do not include images)
  - ■ When i-mode mail with a file attached is received
  - ■ When an i-αppli is running
- Data, files or software with FOMA card restriction functions run only when in use with the FOMA card inserted at time of acquisition. Display, play, attach to i-mode mail, run software, send data using Ir function and copy to miniSD Memory Card can be executed.
- The above operations cannot be performed if the FOMA card inserted at time of data/file retrieval or i-αppli startup is replaced with a different FOMA card.

※ Explanation that follows refers to the FOMA card inserted at time of data/files retrieval as “one’s own FOMA card” and other FOMA cards as “another’s FOMA card.”



Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- When one's own FOMA card is replaced with another's FOMA card, the data or files for which FOMA card restriction functions are set cannot be set as stand-by displays or ring tones.
- When a FOMA card is replaced with a different FOMA card, the FOMA card restriction functions are activated and if data or files retrieved from a site are set as stand-by displays or ring tones, settings return to the default settings. When one's own FOMA card is re-inserted, the settings return.

<Example: When setting Melody A, for which FOMA card restriction functions are set, as a ring tone>

When one's own FOMA card is taken out or is replaced with another's FOMA card, Select ring tone returns to default settings. When one's own FOMA card is put back, the ring tone returns to Melody A.

- FOMA card restrictions cannot be set for data received using Ir exchange or data transmission functions, and still pictures, Continuous mode images, or movies shot with the FOMA terminal.
- It is possible to move or delete data or files for which FOMA card restriction functions were set even when another's FOMA card is inserted.
- Running i-αppli or downloading i-motion, by selecting highlighted text in i-mode mail display screen cannot be performed when FOMA card restriction functions are set.
- If the FOMA card is replaced after an i-αppli is set as the stand-by display, the set i-αppli cannot be activated in stand-by, and the image set in the stand-by display settings appears.

Types of FOMA Cards and Differences in Functions

Note the following differences between ***FOMA card (blue)*** and ***FOMA card (green)*** used on the FOMA terminal.

Function	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)	Reference
Number of phone number digits available in the FOMA card phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P. 99
Client certificate operations for FirstPass	Not available	Available	P. 237
Use of WORLD WING	Not available	Available	—
Service number	Not available	Available	Refer to "For General Inquiries" or "For Repair Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

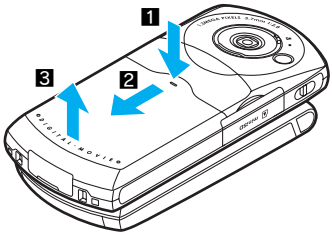
About WORLD WING

- WORLD WING is a DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service that makes it possible to use the mobile phone number registered in Japan while abroad by replacing the FOMA card (green) to a DoCoMo compatible international mobile phone (GSM format). WORLD WING is a paid service that requires registration. For further details, contact number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack

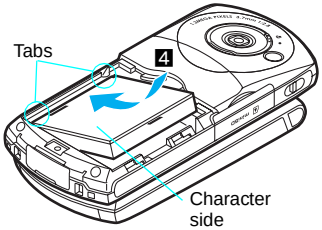
Use the SH04 battery pack exclusive to the FOMA terminal.
Always turn the power off before inserting or removing the battery pack.

Inserting the battery pack



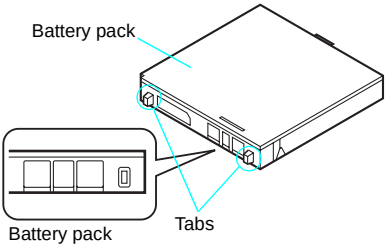
1 **Lightly press rear cover in the direction of the arrow (1) and slide approximately 2 mm (2).**

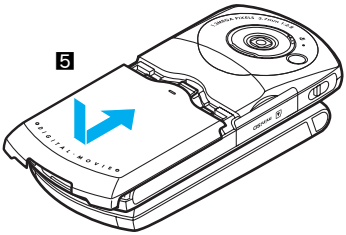
2 **Lift the rear cover in the direction of the arrow (3) and remove it.**



3 **Insert the battery pack (4).**

- The battery pack has tabs that make it easy to insert. Insert with the character side of the battery pack facing up.





4 **Reattach the rear cover (5).**

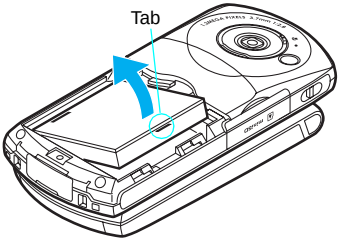
- Position the handset and the rear cover as shown in the illustration and then press the rear cover and slide into place.

Note

- Using unnecessary force when inserting or removing the battery pack may damage the battery pack and connection terminal (charger terminal) on the FOMA terminal.
- Refer to the battery pack SH04 user's guide for details.
- Firmly close the rear cover. If not closed firmly, the rear cover may come off and the battery pack may fall out due to vibration.
- If the battery pack connection terminal side or FOMA terminal battery pack (charger terminal) is dirty the FOMA terminal power may turn off. Additionally, the battery may not be sufficiently recharged. Wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth or cotton swab.

Removing the battery pack

Always turn the power off before removing.



1 Follow steps 1 and 2 on P. 39 to remove the rear cover.

2 Remove the battery pack.

- The battery pack has tabs that make it easy to remove. Press the tabs with your fingers without placing too much force. Lift the battery pack to remove.

Note

- When the battery pack is removed, the following registrations and settings are changed.

Registrations and settings that return to the default settings or are erased when the battery is removed
■Data being edited

Registrations and settings that return to the default settings or are erased when the FOMA is left with no battery or an empty battery
■Date settings ■Redial ■Received calls ■User dictionary ■Money calculator ■Alarm settings ■Stand-by display ■Voice memo, Record message number display ■Auto signature*1 ■Voice memo (during call), Stand-by voice memo, Record message (voice calls), Record message (video-phone), Record message content ■Messages that appear in stand-by (i-αppli security error, missed calls, new mail, recorded message, voice mail) ■Select language ■Set vacation (☞P. 419) ■Set day color (☞P. 421) ■Data box settings*2 ■Memory term items*3 ■Camera settings (still picture, movie) ■Camera (still picture, movie) key list settings ■Chara-den Set ON time, Screen size, Save to ■i-mode cache ■Host settings ■Settings returned to default using Reset i-mode (☞P. 230) ■Settings returned to default using Reset settings for each function*4 (☞P. 528 to P. 533) *1 Saved signatures remain. *2 Sorting of lists, Playback light, viewing status of miniSD Memory Card or FOMA terminal handset, Slideshow settings, Display size (Actual size, Zoom), Switch view mode (List, 9-part display, 16-part display), Melody playback volume *3 Memorized pictographs, symbols, on/kun conversions, kana conversion result keywords and vocabulary *4 The entries in Accept calls and Reject calls are deleted, and the cumulative call duration is also reset to 0:00.

- When using the battery pack for the first time or after exchanging, battery pack must be charged. Battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase.
- To protect the environment, please dispose of used batteries at a DoCoMo dealer or retailer, or a participating recycling center.

Li-ion

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Charging the Mobile Phone

Cautions when Charging

The battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase. Be sure to charge the battery using the exclusive AC or DC adapter (sold separately) before use.

Estimated charge times and LED display

The following figures are estimated charge times for charging an empty battery pack with the FOMA terminal turned off.

Charger name	Charge time
FOMA AC adapter 01	Approximately 120 minutes
FOMA DC adapter 01	Approximately 120 minutes

- Charging LED illuminates in orange when charging and turns off when charging is completed.
- Check that the battery pack has been properly inserted when charging LED flashes orange. The LED also flashes orange when the battery pack has reached the end of its service life.
- The battery pack can also be charged with the FOMA terminal turned on. (The on the display flashes during charging.) When charging is complete, the charging LED turns off and the on the display changes to .

Estimated times of use when fully charged

Criteria	Battery Pack SH04
Continuous stand-by time	Approximately 370 hours (at rest)/320 hours (when mobile)
Continuous talk (transmission) time	Approximately 130 minutes (voice call)/80 minutes (video-phone call)

- Continuous talk time is estimated as the usage time at normal transmission signal strength, and continuous stand-by time is estimated as the usage time while moving with the FOMA terminal closed at normal signal strength. Talk and stand-by times may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, stand-by display and Power saver mode settings, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission) and stand-by times. Even if you do not make calls or use i-mode, if you shoot and edit images, compose i-mode mail, use a downloaded i-αppli, set a downloaded i-αppli as the stand-by display, talk (transmission) and stand-by times will be reduced. Some i-αppli software may continue transmission even after downloading. To avoid this, set not to connect in advance.
- The actual usage time is a combination of stand-by time and talk time, and the longer the call duration, the shorter the stand-by time becomes.

Battery pack service life

- When the usage time of the battery pack is reduced to about half that of a new battery pack, consider this to be the end of the service life.
- The estimated service life for a battery pack is about one year. However, the service life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.

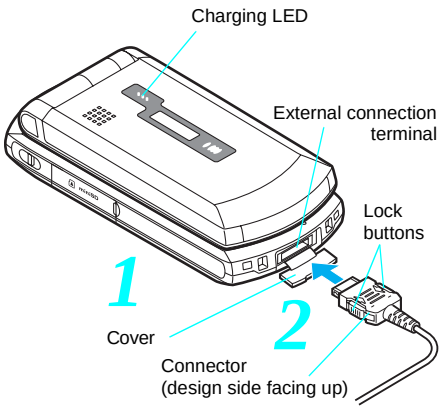
Cautions when charging

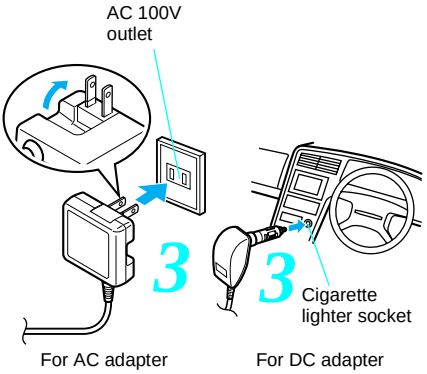
- Do not charge for long periods of time with the power left on. If the FOMA terminal is left on after charging is complete, the battery pack charge decreases.
  In such cases, the AC or DC adapter charges the battery again. However, depending on when the FOMA terminal is disconnected from the AC or DC adapter, the battery charge level may be low, the battery alert tone may sound, or the battery may only be usable for a short time.
- When the battery is empty and terminal is recharging, charging LED may not illuminate immediately.
- If the alert tone sounds and the power cannot be turned on, charge the battery for a while.
- If the battery empty alert is displayed and charging begins within 60 seconds of the alert tone, the status returns to normal.
- When charging, terminal may not turn on even when charging LED is illuminated in orange. Charge longer and try turning power on again.
- Frequently recharging the battery when power is still remaining may shorten the life of the battery pack. It is recommended to use the battery to a certain level before recharging.

Charging Using the AC Adapter/DC Adapter

Read “FOMA AC adapter 01 (sold separately)/FOMA DC adapter 01 (sold separately) user’s guide” carefully.

- Battery pack can be charged with the FOMA terminal open.

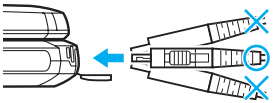




1 Open the external connector terminal cover.

2 Check the direction (see diagram) of the AC or DC adapter connector and insert horizontally into the external connection terminal.

- Check the direction of the connector, keep it parallel with the FOMA terminal and firmly push all the way in until it clicks.

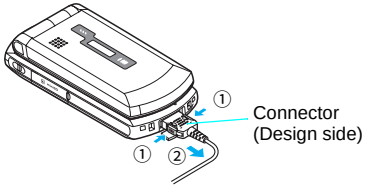


3 For an AC adapter, lift the plug and insert into an AC 100V outlet. For a DC adapter, plug into a car cigarette lighter socket.

- Charge start sound is heard and charging LED illuminates in orange.

4 When the Charge end sound is heard and the charging LED turns off, charging is complete.

- When removing the connector, hold the lock buttons on both sides (①) and unplug by pulling out levelly (②). Close the external connector terminal cover.



- Pull the adapter out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if it will not be used for a long time.

Note

- The battery pack cannot be charged by itself.
- Check the direction and angle (see diagram) of connector, such as an AC adapter, and connect carefully without using unnecessary force. Do not forcibly insert or remove. May cause damage to the external connector terminal.
- Do not forcefully pull the rubber covers on the earphone/microphone terminal or the external connector terminal. May damage cover.
- When the battery level is zero and the terminal is recharging, charging LED may not illuminate immediately.

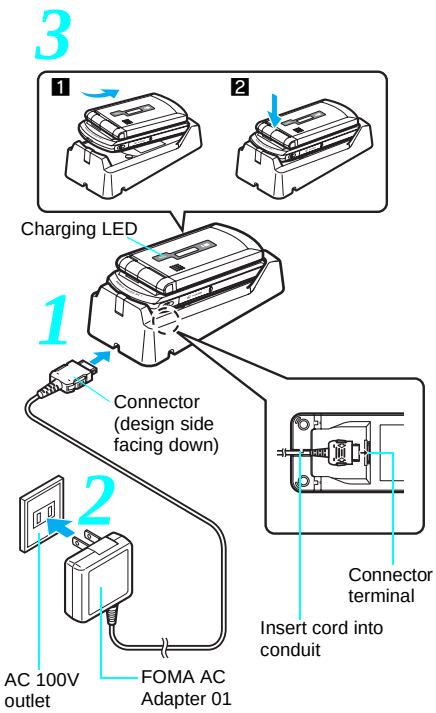
Note

When using a DC adapter

- Do not use with the car engine shut off. May drain the car battery.
- The DC adapter is for use in negative grounded vehicles (12V and 24V DC compatible).
- The DC adapter power is interlocked with the car the ignition switch, but the interlock may not work with some vehicles. Make sure that the power is turned off before leaving the car.
- Note that even if the FOMA terminal is turned on, turning off the ignition or pulling the DC adapter out of the cigarette lighter socket will turn the FOMA off. To make a call or stay in stand-by, first disconnect the connector from the FOMA terminal.
- The glass tube fuse (2A) is a consumable, so enquire at a local automobile supply shop when replacing.

Charging Using the Desktop Holder

Read “Desktop holder SH03 (sold separately) user’s guide” carefully.



1 Face the design side of the AC adapter connector down and insert it into the connector terminal of the desktop holder.

- Keeping the connector parallel with the desktop holder, firmly push it all the way in until it clicks.
- The connection port for the desktop holder is on the back.

2 Lift the AC adapter plug and insert into an AC 100V outlet.

3 Place the FOMA terminal into the desktop holder.

- Place the FOMA terminal as shown in 1, and push it in the direction of the arrow shown in 2 until it clicks.
- Charge start sound is heard and charging LED illuminates in orange.
- Battery pack can be charged with FOMA terminal open.

4 When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.

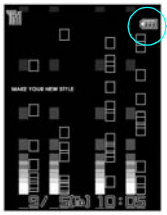
- Hold the desktop holder and lift the FOMA terminal out.
- Pull the AC adapter out of the outlet when left unused for a long period of time.

Note

- The battery pack cannot be charged by itself.
- When Charge start sound is not heard (not including when Charge start sound is set to ***Silent***, Manner mode is set or when terminal is turned off) or when charging LED does not illuminate, check that the FOMA terminal is placed securely in the desktop holder.
- When the battery level is zero and the terminal is recharging, charging LED may not illuminate immediately.
- When placing in desktop holder, be careful that the strap is not caught in between the FOMA terminal and the desktop holder.

How to Check the Battery Level

Check the approximate battery level in the display.



: Battery level is still sufficient
: Battery level is low
: Battery is almost empty
: Battery is empty (power will turn off soon)
: Battery pack is being charged

- Also check battery level in the sub display.

Checking the Battery Level with Sound and Display

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, select (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Battery level*** from Top menu.
- Graphic for battery level appears. (A different sound is heard for each battery level.)
- The battery level sounds are heard at the volume set in Keypad sound.
- Wait three seconds or press CLR and the General settings menu reappears.

Graphic			
Sound	Three beeps	Two beeps	One beep
Status	Battery is sufficiently full	Battery is running low	Battery is almost empty

If the Battery Runs Out

The screen to the right appears on the main display, the alert tone sounds and the power turns off after about 60 seconds.

- During a voice/video-phone call, the alert tone sounds, and the call is disconnected after about 20 seconds. At the same time, the display to the right appears and after about 60 seconds, the power turns off.
- When PWR is pressed during a call, the call is disconnected. Turn off the power and recharge the battery.

Note

- Alert tone does not sound when Manner mode (☞P. 120) or Drive mode (☞P. 66) is set.

Turning the Power On and Off

Turning the Power On

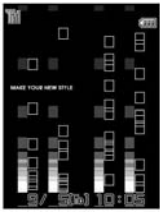
When the power is turned on, the display backlight lights and it is possible to make and receive calls (stand-by status).

1 Press (Power) for 2+ seconds.

- The wakeup screen appears followed by the initial settings screen. Proceed to set the initial settings on P. 46.
- If initial settings are not yet completed, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.
- To set initial settings in English, press and perform “Switching Display to English” as described on P. 45, then restart the FOMA terminal.

When initial settings have already been set

- When the power is turned on, the screen to the right appears. This screen is called the ***stand-by display***.



When *Enter PIN code* appears

- Enter the PIN code (☞P. 142).

Turning the Power Off

1 Press (Power) for 2+ seconds.

- The power turns off.
- It may take some time for the power to turn off. (The end screen appears on the display until the power turns off.)

Note

- Before connecting to an external device, confirm that all transmissions are complete and then turn off the FOMA terminal.

Select Language

Switching Display to English

Default setting
日本語

Switch display language between Japanese and English for functions, messages, and menu items.

1 In stand-by, press .

- Alternatively, select (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Select language*** from Top menu.
- Select language screen appears.

2 Press [English].

- Display switches to English.

To switch to Japanese

- Press .

Note

- Display language may be switched depending on inserted FOMA card setting.

Making the Initial Settings

The initial settings screen appears automatically when the power is turned on for the first time, and the following items can be set.
(When the initial settings are complete, the stand-by display appears.)

Setting	Function	Reference
Date settings	Sets the date and time on the FOMA terminal.	P. 46
Change security code	Register the terminal security code required to use various functions on the FOMA terminal.	P. 141
Keypad sound	Set whether or not to emit a sound when keys are pressed.	P. 116

- When items that have not been set remain, the setting screen appears when the FOMA terminal is turned on.

1 In stand-by, press ●(メール).

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Initial settings*** from Top menu.

2 Set the date and time.

- Use 24-hour format. When entering month, day and time, add ***0*** before numbers between 1 and 9 (Example: 01, 02, 03, etc.).

3 Register a terminal security code (four to eight digits). (☞P. 141)

- The default setting is ***0000***.

4 Set the keypad sound.

To emit keypad sounds

- Press 1.

To make the keypad silent

- Press 2.

Note

Canceling the initial settings

- Press 電源 while setting. The date and time are set even if Date settings is canceled.
- Set date and time from 00:00 January 1, 2000 to 23:59 December 31, 2099.

Setting the Date and Time

Set the date and time on the FOMA. The date and time can be set during a call.

1 In stand-by, press ●3 DEF 8 TUV.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Date settings*** from Top menu.

To set the date and time during a call

- Press ●3 DEF during a call.

2 Enter the year, month, day and time.

- Use 24-hour format. When entering month, day and time, add ***0*** before numbers between 1 and 9 (Example: 01, 02, 03, etc.).
- If you make a mistake, move the cursor using ◎ and re-enter.

3 Press ●.

- The date and time are set.
- Press ⏻ and stand-by reappears.

Note

- Times appear in 24-hour format.
- Set date and time from 00:00 January 1, 2000 to 23:59 December 31, 2099.
- The date and time that are set are saved even if the battery pack is removed, but if the battery pack remains removed or is empty for over one month, the settings may be reset. When this happens, set again after charging the battery.
- If the date and time are not set correctly, dates are not correctly recorded for Redial, Received calls, Record message (voice/video-phone calls), and camera image titles/shooting dates. In addition, functions that use the clock, such as Auto power ON/OFF, Alarm, Schedule, SSL (authentication), i-αppli Auto start or starting i-αppli DX cannot be used correctly.
- When date and time settings are reset, Auto disable for Manner mode is disabled.

Notify Caller ID

Sending Your Own Phone Number to the Other Party

Default setting: Do not notify

Display your number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice/video-phone call.

- Caller ID is important personal information. Be very careful about your caller ID setting.

Set whether or not to send your caller ID using the methods below.

	Method	Notify caller ID	Do not notify caller ID
Setting up in advance	Notify caller ID (☞P. 459)	Set ***Yes***	Set ***No***
Setting up when making a call	Add ***186/✱31#/184/#31#*** before the phone number	Add ***186/✱31#***	Add ***184/#31#***
	Enter the phone number and select a sub menu (☞P. 53)	Press ● [Send own no.]	Press ● [No caller ID]

- Specifications made when making a call take priority over the Notify caller ID setting. If no specifications are made when a call is made, the Notify caller ID setting is followed.

Note

- If you hear guidance requesting that the caller ID be sent, first make the Notify caller ID setting and then call again.
- The Notify caller ID function appears only on compatible phone devices.

Own Number

Checking Your Phone Number

It is possible to check your own phone number (Own number).

1 In stand-by, press ● わを ん.

- Alternatively, select ✱ (Settings) → ***Own number*** from Top menu.
- Your phone number appears.
- During a call, press ● ☆*.
- If phone PIM is locked, ***Security code?*** appears. Enter the terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.
- To check personal information other than your phone number, press ● [Details], enter the current terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.
- Refer to P. 434 for details on saving or changing owner information.

▶MEMO◀

Calling/Receiving

■**Making Calls**

- Making Calls 50
- Redialing Previously Called Numbers . . . . . <Redial>52
- Setting Caller ID to Send/Not Send for a Single Call . . . . . <Add 186/184>53
- Sending Touch-tone Signals with Simple Operations . . . . . <Pause Dial>54
- Making International Calls . . . . . <WORLD CALL>55
- Making Calls with Sub Address Set . . . . . <Sub Address>57
- Reconnecting Disconnected Calls Automatically . . . . . <Reconnect Control>58
- Reducing Noise Interference to Hear Calls Clearly . . . . . <Noise Reduction>58
- Using Handset in a Car . . . . . <Hands-free>59

■**Answering Calls**

- Answering Calls 59
- Answering Calls by Pressing Any Key . . . . . <Any Key Answer>61
- Closing the FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls . . . . . <Close Operation>61
- Using Received Calls . . . . . <Received Calls>62
- Adjusting the Volume During a Call . . . . . <Earpiece Volume>64

■**When Calls Cannot Be Answered/Could Not Be Answered**

- Placing Calls on Hold . . . . . <On Hold>64
- Setting On Hold Tone . . . . . <On Hold Tone>65
- Setting Hold Tone . . . . . <Hold Tone>65
- Not Receiving Calls While Driving . . . . . <Drive Mode>66
- Checking Missed Calls . . . . . <Missed Calls>67
- Recording Messages when Call Cannot be Answered . . . . . <Record Message>68
- Recording Messages when Incoming Call Cannot be Answered. . . . . <Quick Message>71
- Playing/Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos . . . . . <Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos>71

Making Calls

Check that there are sufficient battery and signal levels.

1 In stand-by, dial the phone number starting with the area code.

- Always dial the area code, even when the number is in the same area.
- Dial up to 80 digits. When the number exceeds 13 digits, it appears on two lines. After 26 digits has been exceeded, the last 26 digits appear on two lines.
- In the dialing screen, press [0 R] for 1+ seconds to enter **+**.
  When making international calls, enter this before the phone number. When **+** is entered, the phone number after **+** is called.

For a mobile phone or PHS

Mobile phone	090-XXXX-XXXX 080-XXXX-XXXX	Other party's number (11 digits)
PHS	070-XXXX-XXXX	

When a mistake is made while dialing

- Press [CLR] to erase the last digit.
- Press [CLR] for 1+ seconds to erase all the digits. (Stand-by reappears.)
- If [ ] is pressed and then the number is dialed, pressing [CLR] does not erase the digits. Press [PWR]. (Stand-by reappears.)

2 Press [ ].

When name and still picture are saved in the phonebook

- Unlike ordinary telephones, mobile phones send call tones in short beeps before the standard ring tone.
- [ ] appears during a voice call.

When the number is saved in the phonebook

- The other party's name and number appear. Image also appears if set in advance.

When the other party is busy

- There is a busy signal. Press [PWR] to disconnect and try again later.

When short beeps sound during the call

- The battery level is low. The call disconnects in approximately 20 seconds. End the call and recharge the battery.

When a guidance message plays requesting caller ID

- The other party has Caller ID Request Service set to ***Activate***. Set caller ID and call again. (☞P. 47, P. 53)

3 Press [PWR] after call.

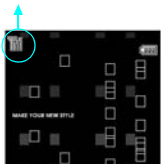
When Assistant View (☞P. 406) is active during a call

- Press [PWR] to end Assistant View. Press [PWR] again to end call.

Checking the signal level

Approximate signal level appears.

Strong ↔ **Weak**



- When 圏外 appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Move to a place where the icon disappears.
- The call may be interrupted even when [ ] appears and the signal is strong.
- When self appears, the handset is in Self mode (☞P. 149). While in Self mode, the handset cannot make/receive calls, send/receive i-mode mail or SMS, receive Message R/F, use i-mode functions or use Ir exchange/remote control.

Note

- Calls can be made even when steps 1 and 2 are reversed. If no operations are performed for five seconds after dialing, the call is made. When a mistake is made while dialing, press PWR to disconnect and call again.
- If the Close operation (☞P. 61) is set to ***Finish call***, calls can be disconnected by closing the handset.
- Enter 80 digits or more when sending a message using touch-tone signals (☞P. 54). (Deletes entered digits from the beginning.)
- During a call, approximate call duration appears on the screen.
  When the call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the display resets to 0:00.
- The FOMA terminal may become warm after continuous use. This is not a malfunction.
- Calls cannot be made if no FOMA card is inserted.
- Do not cover the internal antenna area when making a call.

Related Operations

Use hands-free <Hands-free>

1 During a voice call, press for 1+ seconds.

- appears during hands-free operation.
- To adjust the earpiece volume: Press or .
- To disable: Press for 1+ seconds.

Place calls on hold <Hold>

1 During a voice call, press [Hold] or .

2 To resume call, press [Release].

Make another call during a voice call <3-way calling>

1 Dial new party's phone number during a call press .

- During a call, press to access the phonebook.
- To switch calls: Press .

2 To disconnect current call, press .

- To switch to the other call: After ring tone sounds, press .

Note

Using Hands-free

- Speak from between 20 and 40 cm away.
- When Hands-free is enabled, the other party's voice comes through the speaker or flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).
- Cannot be operated when receiving a call.
- Increasing earpiece volume may make conversation difficult. In such cases, press and lower the volume.

Hold

- The hold tone (☞P. 65) plays through the speaker.
- Hold tone does not play on the caller's side when Manner mode is set.
- The hold tone (☞P. 65) plays and the call is placed on hold.
- If the Close operation (☞P. 61) is set to ***Hold***, calls are put on hold when the handset is closed.
- Calls stay on hold even when the FOMA terminal is closed.

Call Waiting Service

- Register to Call Waiting Service and set to ***Activate*** to answer voice calls received during a voice call. Refer to P. 455 for details.

Redialing Previously Called Numbers

The FOMA terminal keeps a record of the 30 most recent calls made (Redial). Retrieve these phone numbers to make calls.

- When 30 calls are exceeded, phone numbers are erased starting with the oldest.
- If the same number was called multiple times, only the most recent is recorded.

1 In stand-by, press 0 (▭).

Redial list

- Phone numbers and dates are listed starting with the most recent.

When the number is saved in the phonebook

- The party's name appears.
- If the same number is saved in the phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.

Redial types

: Video-phone call
: International call
No icon: Voice call

To switch to the Received calls list

- Press 0.

2 Select phone number and press ☎.

- Call is placed to phone number displayed.
- Phone numbers called with ***184*** and ***186*** are recorded as separate calls.

To make video-phone calls

- Press 0 [V-phone].

To show the redial details screen

- Select phone number and press 0.

Note

- When the redial display for Show call/received (☞P. 152) is set to ***OFF***, the history is saved but Redial does not appear.
- Record date does not appear properly if date on FOMA terminal is not set properly.

Operations from the sub menu

- When ▭ is pressed from the redial list or details screen, a sub menu appears with the following operations.
- Items that cannot be accessed appear in gray.

Redial sub menu

Items in the redial list screen	Items in the redial details screen	Function
1 Add to phonebook	1 Add to phonebook	Saves phone number in the phonebook.
2 Delete	2 Delete one	Deletes a saved phone number. (☞P. 53)
—	3 No caller ID	To not send caller ID when calling.
—	4 Send own no.	To send caller ID when calling.
—	5 Select prefix	Adds a prefix number. (☞P. 55)
—	6 Delete added #	Deletes prefix number.
—	7 Int'l call	Adds an international prefix set in IDD prefix setting. (☞P. 56)
—	8 Sel Multi number	Select when using Multi number. (☞P. 465)
—	9 V-phone image	Selects image to send when making video-phone call. (☞P. 83)
0 Compose message	0 Compose message	Composes a message. If the mail address is not saved in the phonebook, the outgoing number is entered for the address.
✖ Create schedule	✖ Create schedule	Saves phone number and redial date in the schedule.
—	# Dialing speed	Switches between 32K or 64K transmission speed for video-phone calls. (☞P. 88)

Related Operations

Delete redials <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press 0 (▢) ▶ select phone number ▶ ◉ 2 1.

- To delete all redials: Press ◉ 2 2.

2 Select *Yes* ▶ ●.

- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Note

Deleting redials

- Redials are not erased when the handset is turned off. Delete redials so other people cannot see them.
- Set the following functions to delete all redials.
  ■ Keypad dial lock (☞P. 151) ■ Phonebook PIM lock (☞P. 150) ■ Delete user data (☞P. 448)
- If the FOMA terminal battery is removed or if battery level is not sufficient for a period of time, redials are deleted.

Add 186/184

Setting Caller ID to Send/Not Send for a Single Call

Select to send or to not send your phone number to the other party.

To not send caller ID

Enter phone number, press ◉ 2 and press ☎ [Phone] or ● [V-phone].

To send caller ID

Enter phone number, press ◉ 3 and press ☎ [Phone] or ● [V-phone].

Note

- Make calls by setting caller ID from sub menus in the phonebook, redial or received calls history details screen.
- Enter ***186*** before the phone number and press ◉ 2 to not send caller ID.
- If ***186*** is selected from prefix selection after entering the phone number, caller ID is sent.
- Enter ***184*** before the phone number and press ◉ 3 to send caller ID.
- If ***184*** is selected from prefix selection after entering the phone number, caller ID is not sent.
- When ***184*** or ***186*** is added to a phone number, the phone number is saved as a different number in the redial list.

When a call is received

- Refer to “Answering Calls” on P. 59 for details on when receiving calls from callers with caller ID and without caller ID.

Related Operations

Add *186* or ✱*31*# (Notify caller ID)

1 Press 1 8 6 or ✱ 3 1 # ▶ phone number ▶ ☎ [Phone] or ● [V-phone].

Add *184* or #*31*# (To not notify caller ID)

1 Press 1 8 4 or # 3 1 # ▶ phone number ▶ ☎ [Phone] or ● [V-phone].

Note

Sending caller ID for a single call

- This function is available regardless of the network service’s caller ID setting.

Sending Touch-tone Signals with Simple Operations

Use pagers* and services such as ticket reservations and bank balance inquiries, with simple operations by saving the combinations of phone numbers and messages in the phonebook.

Saving Touch-tone Data to the Phonebook

1 Enter the phone number in the phonebook. (☞P. 94)

2 Press 0 and enter the number to send.

- Press 0 to enter a pause ***P***.
- Enter the number and press 0 to add more numbers.

3 Press ● and enter the other phonebook items.

- Refer to P. 94 and P. 95 for details.

Sending Messages Using Touch-tone Signals

1 Make a call from the phonebook with a touch-tone signal.

- Refer to P. 104 to P. 106 for details.
- When the call is connected, the numbers after ***P*** appear on the screen.

2 Press i [PB send] at the appropriate time to send.

- The numbers after ***P*** are sent with touch-tone signals.
- When multiple numbers separated by ***P*** are saved, press i [PB send] for each number.
- Some equipment may not be able to receive signals properly.

Sending Numbers Using the Dial Keys During a Call

Send touch-tone signals one at a time during a call by pressing the dial keys.

1 Make a call.

2 When the call is connected, press the corresponding number on the keypad.

- The number is sent as a touch-tone signal.

Making International Calls

“WORLD CALL” is DoCoMo’s International Calling Service

WORLD CALL is an international calling service available from DoCoMo mobile phones.

※ “WORLD CALL” is registered when FOMA services are registered. (Registration for “WORLD CALL” is optional.)

Calling Method

009130 ➡ 010 ➡ Country code ➡ Area code ➡ Other party’s phone number ➡ ☎

※ The calling method shown above can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

※ For area codes that start with a ***0***, omit the ***0*** when dialing. (However, include the ***0*** when calling Italy.)

- Call to about 220 countries and regions worldwide.
- “WORLD CALL” charges are billed with the monthly mobile phone charges.
- Check an estimate of the most recent call duration on the display. (☞P. 442)
- When using phonebook, Received calls or Redial, ***009130010*** is automatically added to make calls.

When calling specific overseas 3G mobile phone customers, use International video-phone by making the call in video-phone mode after the dialing method above.

- Refer to the DoCoMo web page for information on available countries and providers.
- Depending on the other party's video-phone terminal, the image that appears on the FOMA terminal may be distorted, or connection may not be possible.

The change in procedures for making international calls

Because “MY LINE” service is not available for mobile communications, WORLD CALL also cannot be used with “MY LINE”. With the offering of the “MY LINE” service, the dialing procedures for international calls have changed. The former dialing procedure (procedure listed above without “010”) cannot be used.

※ For further details on WORLD CALL, contact number listed in “For General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.

※ To make an international call through a company other than DoCoMo, contact the representative companies directly for instructions.

Making International Calls with Simple Operations <Select Prefix>

Default setting: WORLD CALL [009130-010]

Enter only the country code, area code and the phone number to make international calls.

1 In stand-by, enter the country code, area code, other party’s phone number and press ◉ 4 GHI.

- Prefix selection screen appears.

2 Press 1 あ [009130-010].

- To make an international call through a company other than DoCoMo, select a saved prefix.

3 Press ☎.

* As of January 2001, DoCoMo paging service is named “QUICKCAST”.

International prefix

Save up to five additional numbers for international calling. The number is added when making calls from phonebook, Received calls or Redial.

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL 9 WXYZ, select ---------- to save a new number and press ●.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Int'l prefix*** → Number from Top menu.

To change or delete a saved number

- Select number, press ● and press 1 [Change] or 2 ABC [Delete].

2 Enter prefix and press ●.

- Press 0 for 1+ seconds to add **+**.
- Up to 16 digits can be entered.
- Numbers cannot be added, changed or deleted while Keypad dial lock is set (☞P. 151).

Note

- When Reset settings (☞P. 448) is performed, the only available prefix is ***009130-010***.

Related Operations

Make a call from the phonebook or Received calls

1 In the phonebook, received calls or redial details screen, press ◉ ▶ *Select prefix* ▶ ● ▶ prefix ▶ ● ▶ ☎.

Setting Numbers Other than WORLD CALL <IDD Prefix Setting>

Default setting: World call [009130-010]

Save up to three names and numbers for the international prefix other than WORLD CALL.

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL ✕ 2 ABC, select ---------- to save a new number and press ●.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Int'l calling*** → ***IDD prefix setting*** → number from Top menu.

To change or delete a saved number

- Select number, press ● and press 1 [Change] or 2 ABC [Delete].

To set Auto prefix

- Select number, press ● and press 0 [Prefix/cancel]. ④ appears to the right of the name.
- Repeat the step to cancel Auto prefix.

2 Enter name and press ●.

- Enter up to 14 single-byte characters.

3 Enter prefix and press ●.

- Enter up to 16 digits.

Note

- When settings are reset (☞P. 448), the only available prefix is ***009130-010***.

Adding international prefix and making an international call <Int'l calls>

1 In stand-by, enter the country code, area code, other party's phone number and press [6 MNO].

- International calls screen appears.

2 Select prefix and press [●].

To erase prefix number

- Press [5 JKL].

Adding International Prefix Automatically <Auto Assist Set>

Default setting: Auto prefix

Set to automatically add prefixes set in IDD prefix setting to phone numbers when making international calls.

1 In stand-by, press [●] [5 JKL] [*] [1].

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Int'l calling*** → ***Auto assist set*** from Top menu.
- Auto assist set screen appears.

2 Press [1] [Auto prefix].

To not add

- Press [2 ABC].

Setting Auto prefix

Enter **+** to automatically add international prefix for international calls.

- Press [0] for 1+ seconds to enter **+**.

1 In stand-by, enter +, the country code, area code, other party's phone number and press [Call].

- International call is made.

Sub Address

Making Calls with Sub Address Set

Default setting: ON

Make calls with sub address set. Using sub address allows calls to be made to specific terminals when calling an ISDN terminal.

- A sub address is a number assigned to a terminal when there are multiple ISDN terminals for a single ISDN line. It is used in selecting contents for M-Stage V-Live.

1 In stand-by, press [●] [5 JKL] [0].

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Sub address*** from Top menu.
- Sub address settings screen appears.

2 Press [1] [ON: set sub address].

To disable

- Press [2 ABC].

Making calls with sub address set

Add [*] after phone number and dial sub address.

- Ask the other party for their phone number and sub address.

1 In stand-by, enter phone number, [*], sub address and press [Call].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- If ✱ is entered at the beginning of the phone number or after ***184***, ***186***, ✱***31#***, ***#31#*** or a set prefix, the numbers after ✱ are recognized as the phone number.

Reconnect Control

Reconnecting Disconnected Calls Automatically

Default setting
Alarm on (high)

Calls may be disconnected in areas with weak signals such as entering a tunnel or being surrounded by buildings. If signal strength immediately becomes better, the call is automatically reconnected. An alarm sounds when reconnecting.

- Alarm settings are ***Alarm on (high)***, ***Alarm on (low)*** and ***No alarm***.
- Reconnect control is also available for video-phone calls.

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL 2 ABC 1 .,@.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Alarm during call*** → ***Reconnect*** from Top menu.
- Reconnect control screen appears.

2 Press 1 .,@ [Alarm on (high)].

To set alarm to low

- Press 2 ABC.

To set alarm to off

- Press 3 DEF.

Note

- Amount of time that can elapse to reconnect varies depending on signal strength. The estimated time is approximately ten seconds.
- The other party hears no sound until the call is reconnected (up to ten seconds). The call is charged during this time.

Noise Reduction

Reducing Noise Interference to Hear Calls Clearly

Default setting
ON

Reduce the surrounding noise to make conversations clearer.

- Noise reduction is also available for video-phone calls.

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL 1 .,@.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Noise reduction*** from Top menu.
- Noise reduction screen appears.

2 Press 1 .,@ [ON: enabled].

To disable

- Press 2 ABC.

Note

- It is recommended that this function be kept set to ***ON***.
- Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on surrounding noise and the tone of voice.

Using Handset in a Car

Use the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) to connect hands-free devices for FOMA terminal such as car navigation, and make/receive voice/video-phone calls from device.

This is an optional function that will be available when compatible equipment is released.

- As of February 2005, compatible equipment has not been released.
- Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details.
- Talking on FOMA terminal while driving is dangerous and may result in an accident.

※ Please set FOMA terminal to Drive mode or pull over to a safe place and use.

Note

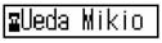
- Functions such as display settings and ring tones follow FOMA terminal settings for incoming calls.
- If hands-free device has sound enabled, device plays ring tone even when FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or ***Silent***.
- While in Drive mode, functions follow FOMA terminal settings for incoming calls.
- When a video-phone call is made from the phonebook or Redial, transmission speed follows device settings. When speed is not set, video-phone calls are made at 64K.
- When video-phone calls are made or received, substitute image is sent to the other party.
- When FOMA terminal sound is enabled while connected to a device, Close operation is followed if handset is closed during a call. If device sound is enabled, call continues when FOMA terminal is closed regardless of Close operation.
- Record message settings are followed even when handset is connected to the device.
- Some handset functions may not be available depending on device characteristics and specifications.

Answering Calls

When receiving a voice call, verify using ring tone, picture light/called LED, vibrator, etc.

1 When a voice call is received, the ring tone sounds and the picture light/called LED flashes.

When name and still picture are saved in the phonebook



Sub display

When caller ID is received

- The phone number appears on the screen. If the other party's name and phone number are saved in the phonebook, they appear on the screen.

When Picture call is set

- When a still picture or movie/i-motion is saved in the phonebook (☞P. 96), the name, phone number and image appear on the screen. However, they do not appear if the caller does not send caller ID.

If caller ID is not received

- Depending on the reason, one of the following messages appear.

User unset: When the caller wishes to withhold caller ID
Payphone: When the call is made from a payphone
Not support: When the call is received from abroad or from a landline phone via international forwarding service that does not support caller ID (Depending on the phone company, caller ID may appear.)

When FOMA terminal is closed

- Check with the sub display. (Up to five double-byte characters appear at once. For six or more characters, press ○ (▲▼) to scroll.)

To stop the ring tone (Quick silent)

- While receiving a call, press ▽ or press ● for 1+ seconds.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press .

- Speak to the caller.
- If ● is pressed while receiving a call, the incoming call menu appears. Select from ***Reject calls***, ***Record message***, ***Forward calls*** and ***Auto forward***.

Also use keys other than to answer.

- When Any key answer is set to ***ON***, answer the call by pressing any key other than , , , ●, and ○ (). (☞P. 61)

3 Press after call.

Note

- Calls to the FOMA terminal cannot be made from phones with no direct outside line, such as an internal building phone.
- Set mute seconds (☞P. 158) to delay ring tone sounding until set number of seconds pass when received from an unregistered number or a number without caller ID. Set Reject unknown (☞P. 159) to prevent callers not registered in Phonebook from being connected.
- Save specified phonebook in a list and set Reject calls/Accept calls. (☞P. 154 to P. 157)
- Receive notification of missed calls with Voice mail notification (☞P. 454) when the handset is turned off or outside the service area. An SMS is received after returning to the service area or when power is turned on.

When the handset beeps during a call indicating an incoming call

- When any of services such as Voice Mail, Call Forwarding or Call Waiting is subscribed to and set to ***Activate***, the following operations can be performed when the handset beeps during a call.
  - ■ Voice Mail Service .....Press ● to forward the call to the Voice Mail Service center. (☞P. 452)
  - ■ Call Forwarding Service.....Press ● to forward the call to the set forward number. (☞P. 456)
  - ■ Call Waiting Service.....Put current call on hold and answer the incoming call. (☞P. 455)

Key operations when receiving a call

Style	On hold (☞P. 64)	Quick silent	Record message (☞P. 68)	Reject calls/ Record message/ Forward calls/ Auto forward	Manner mode (☞P. 120)
When handset is open		or ● (for 1+ seconds)	(for 1+ seconds)	●	(for 1+ seconds)
When handset is closed	—	—	—	—	○ (for 1+ seconds)

- If a video-phone call is received during a voice call, ***Rcv v-phone call? (Current call will be disconnected)*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press to answer.

When a call is received during editing

- If a call is received while editing phonebook or outgoing messages, editing is temporarily suspended. When this happens, edited data is automatically saved. When the conversation is finished, the screen before the call was received reappears and editing can be resumed. However, characters that are in the process of being converted and not confirmed may not be saved.
- If is pressed when returned to editing screen, ***Your changes will be lost. End anyway?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to return to stand-by. Data being edited is deleted.

Any Key Answer

Answering Calls by Pressing Any Key

Default setting
ON

Set to enable answering of calls with [0], [*], [1] and [9].

- Other than the dial keys, incoming calls can be received with [i], [A], [C], [B], [●], [view] or [CLR].
- Video-phone can be answered only with [↩] or [i].

1 In stand-by, press [●] [5] [6].

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Any key answer*** from Top menu.
- Any key answer screen appears.

2 Press [1] [ON: enabled].

To disable Any key answer

- Press [2].

Close Operation

Closing the FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

Default setting
Finish call

Set FOMA terminal operations for when closed during a call.
Select *Hold sound* (hold tone sounds), *Finish call* (call finishes) or *Silent* (call is put on hold without hold tone).

1 In stand-by, press [●] [5] [5].

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Close operation*** from Top menu.
- Close operation screen appears.

2 Press [1] [Hold sound].

To set to *Silent*

- Press [3].

To set to *Finish Call*

- Press [2].

Note

When set to *Silent* or *Hold sound*

- When set to ***Hold sound***, hold tone plays. Hold tone can be changed (☞P. 65). For video-phone calls, the image set in Hold image (☞P. 85) is sent to the other party.
- When set to ***Silent***, hold tone (☞P. 65) does not play. For video-phone calls, if the substitute image set (☞P. 85) is a still picture, the still picture is sent to the other party. Chara-den is sent to the other party if set.
- In the sub display, ***Silent*** or ***On hold*** appears for voice calls, and ***Silent video-phone*** or ***Video-phone on hold*** appears for video-phone.
- Open the FOMA terminal to resume the call.
- If a device such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected, the call can continue while the handset is closed, regardless of ***Hold sound***, ***Silent***, or ***Finish call*** settings.
  - For video-phone calls, the set substitute image (☞P. 85) is sent to the other party. Open the FOMA terminal to send camera image to the other party. (☞P. 83)
- If the earphone/microphone is disconnected while the FOMA terminal closed, the call is mute when set to ***Silent*** and ***Finish call***, and put on hold when set to ***Hold sound***. The call resumes when the earphone/microphone is reconnected or the handset is opened.

Using Received Calls

The FOMA terminal keeps a record (Received calls) of the 30 most recent calls made. Retrieve these phone numbers to make calls.

- When 30 calls are exceeded, phone numbers are erased starting with the oldest.

Making Calls from Received Calls

1 In stand-by, press 0 (↗).

Received calls list

- Phone numbers and dates are listed starting with the most recent.

When the number is saved in the phonebook

- The name appears on the screen.
- If the same number is saved in the phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.

Types of history

✆: Calls that were answered or put on hold
✉: Calls that left a recorded message
☎: Calls that were not answered or were forwarded to a forwarding number or Voice Mail Service center, calls that were rejected because of Reject calls (☞P. 156), Accept calls (☞P. 154), Reject unknown (☞P. 159), Reject by reason of non-disclosure (☞P. 158) and Drive mode (☞P. 66)

Types of calls

: Video-phone : 64K data communications
: International call No icon: Voice call

When *Missed calls* appears in stand-by

- Appears when an incoming call was not answered (Missed call). Press ● and the most recently received call appears. (☞P. 67)

To switch to redial list

- Press 0.

2 Select phone number and press ☎.

- Call is placed to phone number displayed.

To make a video-phone call

- Press ● [V-phone].

To show the received calls details screen

- Select phone number and press ●.

Note

- While phonebook PIM (☞P. 150) is locked or Delete user data (☞P. 448) is performed, Redial, Received calls and Received/Sent mail history are cleared. Redial and Received calls for further calls made and received are saved and can be used to make calls. Calls cannot be made from Received calls while Keypad dial lock is set (☞P. 151).
- When phonebook PIM is locked, only the phone number appears. When phonebook PIM lock is disabled, the name registered in the phonebook appears.
- When Set mute seconds (☞P. 158) is not set to ***0 seconds***, Missed call history is set to ***OFF*** and a call is received, if the call is disconnected during mute seconds duration or is disconnected due to weak signal strength, the number does not appear in Received calls. Press ● in the received calls list and perform Show all to display such calls.
- When the call could not be answered, press ● in the received calls details screen, select ***Ringing time*** and press ● to view the call ring time. A ring time of ***0:00*** is displayed when a call is rejected due to Accept/Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject by reason of non-disclosure and Drive mode settings. Ringing time does not appear for items with ✆ (a call that has been answered or disconnected while on hold).

Note

- When a call is received from a caller using Dial-in, a number different from the caller's Dial-in number may appear.
- When Show received calls (☞P. 152) is set to ***OFF***, received calls do not appear.
- Press (i) in Received calls list to show Received messages list.
  Refer to P. 283 for screen layout and using the Received messages.
- Record date will not appear properly if date on FOMA terminal is not set properly.

Operations from the sub menu

- When (📷) is pressed from the Received calls list or details screen, a sub menu appears with the following operations.
- Items that cannot be accessed appear in gray.

Received calls sub menu

Items from Received calls list	Items from Received calls details screen	Function
1 Add to phonebook	1 Add to phonebook	Saves phone number in the phonebook.
2 Delete	2 Delete one	Deletes a saved phone number.
—	3 No caller ID	To not send caller ID when calling.
—	4 Send own no.	To send caller ID when calling.
—	5 Select prefix	Adds a prefix number. (☞P. 55)
—	6 Delete added #	Deletes prefix number.
—	7 Int'l call	Adds an international prefix set in IDD prefix setting. (☞P. 56)
—	8 Sel Multi number	Select when using Multi number. (☞P. 465)
—	9 V-phone image	Selects image to send when making video-phone call. (☞P. 83)
0 Compose message	0 Compose message	Composes a message. If the mail address is not saved in the phonebook, the incoming number is entered for the address.
✕ Create schedule	✕ Create schedule	Saves phone number and received call date in the schedule.
# Display all/Limit display	# Display all/ Limit display	When Set mute seconds is not set to ***0 seconds*** and Show rcvd calls is set to ***OFF***, switch to view all calls or only certain calls when received calls are cut off during mute seconds duration. (Appears gray if no received calls that apply are present.)
—	■Ringing time	Displays ring time for a missed call.
—	■Dialing speed	Switches between 32K or 64K transmission speed for video-phone calls. (☞P. 88)

Related Operations

Delete Received calls <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press 0 (→) ▶ select phone number ▶ 📷 2 1.

- To delete all Received calls: Press 📷 2 2.

2 Select *Yes* ▶ ●.

- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Note

Deleting Received calls

- Received calls are not erased when the handset is turned off. Delete Received calls so that other people cannot see them.
- Set the following functions to delete all Received calls.
  ■ Keypad dial lock (☞P. 151) ■ Phonebook PIM lock (☞P. 150) ■ Delete user data (☞P. 448)
- If the FOMA terminal battery is removed or if battery level is not sufficient for a period of time, Received calls are deleted.

Earpiece Volume

Adjusting the Volume During a Call

Default setting
Volume 3

Adjust the earpiece volume to five different levels.

- Volume cannot be adjusted while receiving a call.
- Refer to P. 116 for details on adjusting earpiece volume when in stand-by.

1 During a call, press ⓪ or ⓪.

Earpiece volume

- During a video-phone call, press ●.

2 Press ⓪ (louder) or ⓪ (softer) to adjust volume and press ●.

Note

- Volume remains at adjusted level even when handset is turned off or battery pack is removed.

On Hold

Placing Calls on Hold

Place calls on hold which cannot be answered right away.

- The other party is charged for the call while on hold.

1 While ring tone is sounding, press PWR HLD.

- A series of beeps sound and the call is placed on hold.

What the caller hears

- The on hold tone (☞P. 65) plays and the call is placed on hold.

To disconnect the call on hold

- Press PWR HLD. (The call is saved in Received calls.)

If the caller disconnects while on hold

- The call is disconnected. (The call is saved in Received calls.)

2 Press ☎ to answer.

Note

- Calls stay on hold even after closing the FOMA terminal. ***On hold*** appears in the sub display. (On hold setting and Close operation (☞P. 61) setting are not linked.)
- Beeps do not sound in Manner mode.

On Hold Tone

Setting On Hold Tone

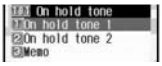
Default setting
On hold tone 1

Set the on hold guidance that the other party hears. Select *On hold tone 1* (Japanese), *On hold tone 2* (English) or recorded voice memo.

On hold tone 1....[ただいま電話に出ることができません。そのままお待ちになるか、しばらくたってからおかけ直しください。]

On hold tone 2....[I can't take your call now. Please hold the line for a moment or call me back later, thank you.]

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 8 1.



- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Hold/On hold tone*** → ***On hold tone*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 [On hold tone 1].

- Press ● [Play] to play on hold tone. Press ● [Stop] to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

To set the guidance to English

- Press 2.

To set recorded voice memo

- Press 3 2, select voice memo and press ● [OK].

Note

- When a voice memo is set as On hold tone, setting returns to default if voice memo is deleted.

Hold Tone

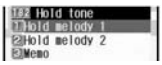
Setting Hold Tone

Default setting
Hold melody 1

Set the hold tone to *Hold melody 1*, *Hold melody 2* or recorded voice memo for when the other party is on hold.

- The hold tone plays at the same volume as the earpiece volume.

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 8 2.



- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Hold/On hold tone*** → ***Hold tone*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 [Hold melody 1].

- Press ● [Play] to play hold tone. Press ● [Stop] to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

To set Hold melody 2

- Press 2.

To set recorded voice memo

- Press 3 2, select voice memo and press ● [OK].

Note

- If a voice memo is set as Hold tone, setting returns to default if voice memo is deleted.

Not Receiving Calls While Driving

Drive mode (guidance for when driving) is an automatic answering service used to ensure driving safety. When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that Drive mode is enabled and the call is disconnected. When a video-phone call is received, *Driving mode* appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected.

- Drive mode can be enabled/disabled only in stand-by. Drive mode can also be enabled/disabled when outside the service area.
- Calls can be made normally while in Drive mode.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

1 In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds.

- ***Set*** appears and Drive mode is enabled (appears).

Disabling Drive Mode

1 In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds when Drive mode is enabled.

- ***Disabled*** appears and Drive mode is disabled.

When Drive mode is set

Ring tone does not play when a voice/video-phone call is received. ***Missed call*** appears and the call is saved in Received calls. (☞P. 62)

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that Drive mode is enabled and the call is disconnected. When a video-phone call is received, ***Driving mode*** appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected. If the handset is turned off or in a place with no signal, the guidance for outside service area plays.
- FOMA terminal will not vibrate when i-mode mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received even if Vibration mode is set. Although ring tone does not sound, the call is answered automatically, and received call icon appears.
- When data transmission is received, vibrator, ring tone and called LED do not activate.

When the Voice Mail Service is set to *Activate* while Drive mode is set

When a voice call is received, ring tone does not play and caller is connected to Voice Mail Service center. The call is saved in Received calls. (☞P. 62)

- A message indicating that the caller will be connected to the Voice Mail Service center is played and is automatically connected to the center. (Message is not heard when Voice Mail Service ring time is set to ***0 seconds*** and the call is immediately connected to the center. Call is not saved in Received calls.)
- When a video-phone call is received, ***Driving mode*** appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected. Caller is not connected to the Voice Mail Service center.

When Call Forwarding Service is set to *Activate* while Drive mode is set

Call is automatically forwarded to the set destination. The call is saved in Received calls. (☞P. 62)

- A message indicating that the caller will be forwarded is played and is automatically forwarded to the set destination. (Message is not heard when Call Forwarding Service ring time is set to ***0 seconds*** and the call is immediately connected to the destination. Call is not saved in Received calls.)
- When a video-phone call is received, call is forwarded immediately. However, if the forwarding number is not a 3G-324M compliant video-phone (☞P. 74), the call ends.

When Call Waiting Service is set to *Activate* while Drive mode is set

Ring tone does not play when a voice/video-phone call is received. The call is saved in Received calls. (☞P. 62)

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that Drive mode is enabled and the call is disconnected.
- When a video-phone call is received, ***Driving mode*** appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected.

When Caller ID Request Service is set to *Activate* while Drive mode is set

When a voice call is received that is User unset, the call is not connected and is not saved in Received calls. When a voice call that is not User unset or a video-phone call is received, the ring tone does not play but the call is saved in Received calls.

- Callers with no caller ID hear a message indicating that Caller ID Request is enabled and the voice call is disconnected. Callers with caller ID hear a message indicating that Drive mode is enabled and the voice call is disconnected.
- When a video-phone call is received, ***Driving mode*** appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected.

When a call is received from a number registered in the Nuisance Call Barring Service while Drive mode is set

When a voice/video-phone call is received, the call does not connect and the number is not saved in Received calls.

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that the call is rejected and the call is disconnected.
- When a video-phone call is received, ***Failed to connect*** appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected.

Note

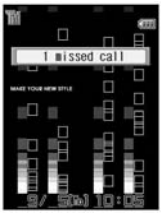
- This function cannot be used during data or fax transmissions.
- Refer to P. 452 for Voice Mail Service, P. 456 for Call Forwarding Service, P. 455 for Call Waiting Service, P. 460 for Caller ID Request Service and P. 459 for Nuisance Call Barring Service.
- Remote lock all is available even while in Drive mode. Disconnect after Drive mode message starts. When set, beeping tone indicating All lock is played instead of Drive mode guidance.
- If GIF animation or Flash movie is set as stand-by display, 🚗 does not appear until animation is finished.
- Drive mode takes priority over Manner mode.
- If alarm time arrives while in Drive mode, alarm does not sound. Picture light and vibrator also do not activate.

Missed Calls

Checking Missed Calls

If incoming call is not answered, *Missed call* and number of missed calls appear in stand-by (Missed calls display).

- When missed calls are checked, or CLR is pressed for 1+ seconds, ***Missed call*** disappears.
- When the FOMA terminal is closed and ○ (📠) is pressed for 1+ seconds, ***Missed calls*** disappears.



1 When *Missed call* appears in stand-by, press ●.

- Received calls appears.
- ☎ appears next to missed calls.
- Press 0 (📞) to also check Received calls. (☞P. 62)

2 Select phone number and press ●.

- Missed call details appear.
- Use the same operations as Received calls to make calls and check other entries in Received calls.

Note

- When a call is received from a caller using Dial-in, a number different from the caller's Dial-in number may appear.
- Calls cannot be checked while All lock (☞P. 146) is enabled.

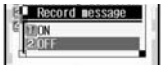
Recording Messages when Call Cannot be Answered

Set Record message to record messages when a call cannot be answered. When a voice call is received, an outgoing message is played and the caller's message is recorded. When a video-phone call is received, a reply image is sent and the caller's message and image are recorded.

- Record message is not available when FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area. This function is convenient when used in conjunction with Network Voice Mail Service.
- Record up to three Record messages for voice calls (about 15 seconds each). Voice memos recorded during a voice call or in stand-by are also included in these three Record messages for voice calls.
- Record up to two Record messages for video-phone calls (about 15 seconds each).
- The number of recorded messages appearing in stand-by is the total number of Record messages for voice/video-phone calls.

Setting Record Message <Record Message>

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL 4 GHI 1 .@.



- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Record message*** → ***Record message*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 .@. [ON: enabled].

Record message

- Record message is set. Press PWR and stand-by reappears (appears).
- When a message is recorded, icons appear to show the number of messages. Example: (for one message), (for two messages), etc. When the fifth message is recorded, automatically disappears.

When *You already have 3 voice memos saved* appears

- Three Record messages (voice calls) and less than two Record messages (video-phone) have been recorded.

When *You already have two messages saved* appears

- Two Record messages (video-phone) and less than three Record messages (voice calls) have been recorded.

When *Unable to record anymore* appears

- Three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (video-phone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and try again. (☞P. 71)

Note

- For Voice Mail Service, record up to 20 messages of three minutes each. (☞P. 452)
- Refer to P. 436 for details on Voice memo during calls and in stand-by.
- If GIF animation or Flash movie is set as stand-by display, does not appear until animation is finished.
- When Record message is not set, press 0 for 1+ seconds when a call is received to record a message for that call (Quick message) (☞P. 71).

Disabling Record message

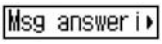
1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL 4 GHI 1 .@.

- Record message setting screen appears.

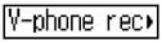
2 Press 2 ABC [OFF: disabled].

- Record message is disabled. Press PWR to return to stand-by and disappears.
- When setting/disabling Record message in Manner mode, set in Manner mode settings (☞P. 120).

1 When a call is received, Record message is activated after set answering duration (☞P. 70).



When outgoing message is playing



When outgoing message is playing (video-phone)

- An outgoing message is played when a voice call is received.

When a video-phone call is received

- After ***Preparing message. Please wait*** appears, the reply image for Record message (video-phone) appears.

What the caller sees and hears

- The caller sees a reply image and hears a message.

To answer a call while the message is playing

- Press [ ] while the outgoing message is playing.

To answer a video-phone call while the message is playing

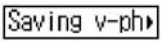
- While the reply image is displayed, press [i] [V-phone] to send your camera image and talk or press [ ] to use the substitute image set in Substitute image (☞P. 85) and talk.

2 Record the caller's message.

Indicator

Scale

Voice call Recording message



Video-phone Recording message

- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- After message is recorded, the handset returns to stand-by.

For Record message (voice calls)

- During recording, the caller's voice can be heard through the earpiece. (When Manner mode is set, caller's voice cannot be heard through the earpiece.)
- The caller hears a beep when recording starts.

For Record message (video-phone)

- During recording, the other party's image does not appear on the screen but is recorded.

To answer a call while Record message (voice call) is recording

- During recording, press [ ]. Recording will continue until [ ] is pressed.

To answer a video-phone call while Record message (video-phone) is recording

- Press [i] [V-phone] to send your camera image and talk or press [ ] to use the substitute image set in Substitute image (☞P. 85) and talk. Recording will continue until [i] or [ ] is pressed.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- When there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (video-phone), ✉ disappears and Record message does not respond when a voice/video-phone call is received. Delete unnecessary messages to reactivate.
- Record messages (voice/video-phone calls) may not be saved if three seconds or less.
- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. It is recommended that a memo be kept of contents for Record message (voice/video-phone calls).
- Recording may be cut off depending on signal strength.
- Set the reply image for Record messages for video-phone. (☞P. 81)
- During Record messages (video-phone), the reply image set on the FOMA terminal is sent to the other party with ***Record message*** on the image.
- Recorded messages will not be deleted when power is turned off.
- During recording, calls from a third party cannot be answered. Third party hears a busy signal.
- If Voice Mail Service (☞P. 452) is set, calls are saved at the Voice Mail Service center even if there are three Record messages (voice calls).
- If Record message is not set, set during incoming call to record message. (☞P. 71, P. 80)
- Messages that indicate outside the service area, changed phone number, voice mail starting, etc. cannot be recorded.
- Record message is not available when Drive mode (☞P. 66) is set.
- Press ● 2 while ***** message(s)*** is displayed in stand-by to view record message playback screen.

Related Operations

Set the message response time <Answering duration>

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 4 2 ▶ enter answering duration (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) ▶ ●.

- To set response time to start Record message immediately: Enter ***000***.

Reply messages <Reply message>

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 4 3.

2 Select type of messages ▶ ●.

- To set original message: Press 3 2 ▶ select message ▶ i [OK].
- To play message: Press i [Play].
- To stop message: Press i [Stop].

Note

Answering duration

- Answering duration applies to Record messages for both voice calls and video-phone calls.
- The default setting is ***8 seconds***.
- Cannot be set to the same time as Auto answer. (☞P. 447)
- When set simultaneously with Voice Mail Service (☞P. 452) or Call Forwarding Service (☞P. 456), the priority will depend on the set ringing time. To prioritize Record message, set ringing time shorter than for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

Reply message

- The default setting is ***Reply message 1*** for Reply message and 伝言メモ画像 for video-phone reply image.
- To use an original message, record Voice memo (☞P. 436) in advance.
- Returns to default setting when original reply message is deleted in “Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos” (☞P. 72).

Recording Messages when Incoming Call Cannot be Answered

Record a message for an incoming call when Record message is not set.

1 During incoming voice call, press 0 for 1+ seconds.

- Alternatively, press 0 2 during incoming voice call for Record message.
- Recording starts after outgoing message is played.
- Refer to P. 80 for recording message during incoming video-phone call.

If *You already have 3 voice memos saved* appears

- Three Record messages for voice calls and less than two for video-phone calls are recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again. (☞P. 72)

When *Unable to record anymore* appears

- Three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (video-phone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and try again. (☞P. 72)

Note

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. It is recommended that a memo be kept of Record message contents.

Playing/Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

Play or delete recorded messages and voice memos.

Playing Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

Playback volume follows the Earpiece volume (☞P. 64) settings.

1 In stand-by, press 0 (📼) and press 2.

- When the calendar appears in the display, press PWR 0.

When ** *message(s)* appears

- In stand-by, press 0.

Memo list for recorded messages that have not been played

- 📠 appears next to memos that have not been played.

Types of message/memo

- 📞: Voice memo during call
- 📠: Record message
- 🎤: Voice memo in stand-by

Types of calls

- 📹: Video-phone
- No display: Voice calls

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select memo and press ● [Play].

- Memo is played.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- Name and number do not appear for User unset calls and voice memos in stand-by.

To stop playback

- Press ● [Stop].

To play from the beginning during playback

- Press ● [Stop] and press ● [Play] again.

To play other memos during playback

- Press ● [Stop], select memo and press ● [Play].

Note

- Refer to P. 436 for details on recording voice memos.

Playing/Deleting recorded messages or voice memos

- Playback of recorded messages and voice memos automatically stops when a call is received.
- Playback of recorded messages and voice memos automatically stops when alarm sounds at set alarm time.
- When Manner mode is set while Record message (video-phone) is playing, a confirmation screen appears. Select ***Yes*** to play.
- Record date of recorded messages and voice memos does not appear properly if date on FOMA terminal is not set properly.
- When Show received calls (☞P. 152) is set to ***OFF***, memo list does not appear and recorded messages and voice memos cannot be played or deleted.

While Recorded messages/Voice memos PIM is locked (☞P. 150)

- In step 1, press 0 (📠) and the terminal security code entry screen appears. When terminal security code (four to eight digits) is entered, PIM lock is temporarily disabled. Proceed to step 2.
- PIM lock is re-enabled when handset returns to stand-by.

Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

1 In memo list (☞ P. 71), select memo and press 📷 1あ.

- Confirmation screen appears.

To delete all memos

- Press 📷 2ABC.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

- Using Video-phone 74
- Making Video-phone Calls 75
- Receiving Video-phone Calls 78
- Chara-den 81
- Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party 83
- Set the Image During Video-phone Calls . . . . . <Video-phone Set>86
- Changing Video-phone Settings 88
- Save Other Party's Image as a Still Picture . . . . . <Picture Memo>89

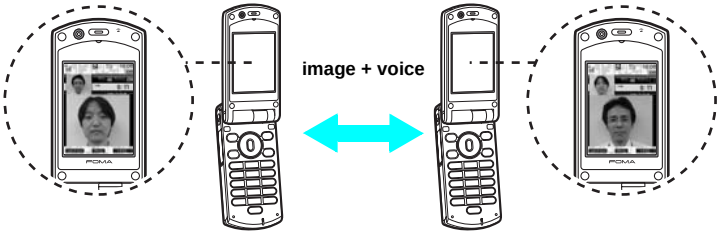
Using Video-phone

Make calls while viewing each other's image.

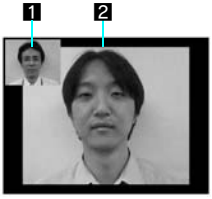
- Video-phone transmits at 32K (kbps) and 64K (kbps).
- Connection charges for digital transmissions are the same whether transmission speed is 64K or 32K.
- Digital transmission fees are incurred even when a substitute image or Chara-den is sent/received in place of a video of oneself.
- Make international video-phone calls using ***WORLD CALL***, DoCoMo's international telephone service. (☞P. 55)
- Video-phone communication is available only between handsets compatible with DoCoMo video-phone.
- DoCoMo video-phones comply with 3G-324M*2, as defined by the international 3GPP*1 standard. Connection not available with video-phones using other standards.

*1 3GPP (3rd-Generation Partnership Project): A regional standardization organization to establish the common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

*2 3G-324M: International standard for video-phone systems for third-generation mobile video-phones.



Viewing the Screen During Video-phone Calls



Screen size:
full-screen*

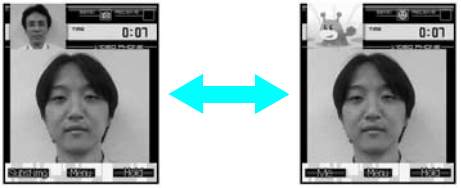
1 Sub screen: Your camera image (default)
2 Main screen: Other party's camera image (default)
3 Brightness: -2 -1 +1 +2
(Does not appear when brightness is set to **±0**.)
4 Send image icon
Shows the format and status of the image being sent.
: Appears while sending camera image.
: Appears while sending substitute image.
: Appears while sending an image from My picture of Data box.
: Appears while pausing camera image.
: Appears while sending Chara-den in Full action mode.
: Appears while sending Chara-den in Part action mode.
5 Appears during video-phone call
Shows the status of video-phone transmission speed or hands-free mode.
: Appears when transmission speed is 64K.
: Appears when transmission speed is 32K.
: Appears when hands-free mode is 64K.
: Appears when hands-free mode is 32K.
6 Receive image icon
: Appears when shooting and saving images of the other party.
7 Communication time: Displays up to 9 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds.

* Turn the FOMA terminal sideways to view in full-screen.

- This screen is a reference; actual screen may differ.

Chara-den

During a video-phone call, display a character in place of one's own image. Characters move their mouths in accordance with sounds and are maneuvered using key operations. (☞P. 359)



©BVIG

Making Video-phone Calls

Check that there are sufficient battery and signal levels.

- Send a substitute image or Chara-den to the other party instead of one's own image.
- To talk while viewing each other's images during a video-phone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (☞P. 445) or use Hands-free (☞P. 77).

1 In stand-by, dial the phone number starting with the area code.

- Always dial the area code, even when the number is in the same area.
- Dial up to 80 digits. When the number exceeds 13 digits, it appears on two lines. When the number exceeds 26 digits, the last 26 digits appear in two lines.
- In the dialing screen, press [0 R/P] for 1+ seconds to enter **+**.
  When making international calls, enter this before the phone number. When **+** is entered at the beginning of a number, call operations will be performed to the part after the **+**.

For a mobile phone or PHS

Mobile phone	090-XXXX-XXXX 080-XXXX-XXXX	Other party's number (11 digits)
PHS	070-XXXX-XXXX	

When a mistake is made while dialing

- Press [CLR] to erase the last digit.
- Press [CLR] for 1+ seconds to erase all the digits. (Stand-by reappears.)
- If [Talk] is pressed and then the number is dialed, pressing [CLR] does not erase the digits. Press [PWR]. (Stand-by reappears.)

2 Press [i] [V-phone].

Vanity mirror

- Own image is displayed to enable checking your appearance before answering a call.
- If Camera image sending is set to ***OFF*** and a call is made, the substitute image or Chara-den set in Substitute image (☞P. 85) appears. Chara-den appears for Chara-den call (☞P. 361).

When names are registered in the phonebook

- Phone number and name appear.

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Talk when the other party answers the phone.

- When the other party answers, ***Connected video-phone After connecting, press to switch to hands-free*** appears. Digital transmission fees are incurred from this point.
- The other party's image appears in the main screen and your image taken with the camera appears in the sub screen.

To send touch-tone signals <DTMF mode>

- Press dial keys to enter numbers to send.
- For Chara-den, press ● and use the dial keys to enter numbers to send.

To view own phone number

- Press ● .

To send a substitute image during a video-phone call

- Press [Subst img]. To select Chara-den, press [Subst img] for 1+ seconds. (☞P. 81)

To use Hands-free

- Press . (☞P. 77)

4 Press after call.

Note

- Video-phone calls cannot be made to emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) from the FOMA terminal.
- The call is not connected when a video-phone call is placed to an unsupported handset. If Redial voicecall is set to ***ON***, the number is automatically redial as a voice call (☞P. 89). In such cases, voice call charges are incurred. Note that this operation may not work if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or a ISDN video-phone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (☞P. 74) (as of February 2005), or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.
- When making video-phone calls to a compatible FOMA terminal, it is recommended that the 64K transmission speed be used. 32K transmission is for connecting to devices such as PHS phones that cannot use 64K due to network conditions. If a 64K video-phone call is made to a party in a 32K area, transmission speed is automatically switched to 32K and redialed. Redial can be used with the operation last performed.

Set speed when dialing	Redial voicecall	Dialing order
64K	ON	64K → 32K → Voice call
	OFF	64K → 32K
32K	ON	32K → Voice call
	OFF	32K

- When sending own image from a location with little light, noise such as white lines increase. Also, direct sunlight or light from lamps may darken or distort images. Use video-phone under suitable lighting conditions.
- When a voice/video-phone call is received during a video-phone call, the number is recorded in Received calls and ***Missed calls*** appears in stand-by.
- During video-phone call, i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at the i-mode center. After a video-phone call, i-mode mail or Message R/F messages held at the i-mode center can be retrieved by checking for new messages.
- Short messages (SMS) are received automatically during video-phone calls.
- When the sending/receiving of audio or video fails, the video-phone call is not automatically restored. Make the video-phone call again.
- When a video-phone call is started, Redial voicecall is not performed.
- Because video-phone calls are digital communication, they are counted as ***Digital transmission***. (☞P. 442)
- Voice calls or i-mode operations cannot be performed during a video-phone call.
- If the battery runs out of power during a video-phone call, an alert sounds, the call is disconnected in approximately 20 seconds, and the power turns off in approximately 60 seconds.
- Digital transmission fees are incurred even when a substitute image or Chara-den is displayed during a video-phone call.

Note

When the video-phone does not connect

- When the video-phone does not connect, a message explaining the reason appears. The other party's actual conditions may vary depending upon the type of phone and their subscribed network services.

Message	Reason
Check the number and retry	You are dialing the wrong number.
Busy	The other party is engaged in a call.
Your call is being forwarded	The other party's handset is set to forward video-phone calls.
Disconnected due to outside of service/ power off	The other party is outside the service area, or their mobile phone is turned off.
Driving mode	The other party is set to Drive mode.
Select on for Call ID Notification	Connected without notifying caller ID. (When calling V-Live or Visual Net.)
Failed to connect	Set to send caller ID and call again. ● May appear in cases other than those listed above.

Talking with Hands-free <Hands-free>

During a video-phone call, play the other party's voice through the speaker and talk while viewing their image.

- Please use in a place where it will not disturb others.

1 During a video-phone call, press .

- The hands-free icon appears.
  - : Appears for 64K hands-free mode.
  - : Appears for 32K hands-free mode.
- If is pressed again, hands-free will be disabled.

When Manner mode is set

In Manner mode. Switch to hands-free? appears. Select ***Yes*** and press .

Note

- When the surroundings are noisy, the voice may cut in and out and the call may not be satisfactory. In such cases, use of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (☞P. 445) is recommended.
- If sound breaks up during a Hands-free call, lower earpiece volume.

Putting a Call on Hold while Talking <Hold>

Put a caller on hold during a video-phone call.

1 During a video-phone call, press [Hold].

- The call is put on hold, and a substitute image appears. (☞P. 85)

What the caller hears

- The other party hears the hold tone (☞P. 65), and a substitute image is sent.

2 When ready to answer, press [V-phone].

- Speak to the caller. Your image is sent to the other party.

To talk when transmitting a substitute image

- Press .

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Hold image (☞P. 85) can be used to set the substitute image that is transmitted.
- While a call is on hold, the substitute image is sent to the other party with ***Hold*** superimposed.
- Refer to P. 65 for details on setting Hold tone.

Adjusting the Other Party's Voice Volume During a Video-phone Call <Earpiece Volume>

Default setting
Volume 3

Select from five earpiece volume levels during a video-phone call.

- Volume cannot be adjusted when receiving a call.

1 During a video-phone call, press ● 2 ABC.

- Earpiece volume screen appears.

2 Press ○ (louder) or ○ (softer) to adjust and press ●.

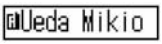
Note

- If Earpiece volume is raised for a call, noise may occur depending on the surroundings. Use at an appropriate volume.

Receiving Video-phone Calls

- When answering video-phone calls, both party's images appear on the display.
- Send a substitute image or Chara-den to the other party instead of one's own image and answer the phone.
- When receiving a video-phone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (☞P. 445) or use Hands-free (☞P. 77) to talk while viewing each other's image.

1 When a video-phone call is received, the ring tone sounds and the picture light/called LED flashes.



Sub display

When names are registered in the phonebook

- The name appears. However, names and phone numbers do not appear if the caller does not send ID.

When FOMA terminal is closed

- Check with the sub display. (Up to five double-byte characters appear at once. For six or more characters, press ○ (🎥) to scroll.)

2 Press ⓘ [V-phone].

- The other party's image appears in the main screen and your image taken with the camera appears in the sub screen.

To receive calls sending substitute images

- Press ☎ to receive a call.
- Set Chara-den as substitute image (☞P. 85) to receive calls with Chara-den.

To use Hands-free

- During a call, press ☎. (☞P. 77)

3 Press PWR/HLD after call.

Note

- Substitute image (☞P. 85) can be used to set the substitute image that is transmitted.
- When a video-phone call is received during a voice call, select to continue the call or disconnect the call and receive video-phone call. If selecting to disconnect the voice call, the current call is disconnected.
- Even if Voice Mail Service is set to ***Activate***, the video-phone call is continued and the call is not connected to the Voice Mail Service center.
- Even when Call Forwarding Service is set to ***Activate***, the video-phone call is not forwarded if the set forwarding destination is not set to a device that supports video-phone and conforms to the 3G-324M (☞P. 74) standard. Check forwarding destination before setting.
- When a video-phone call is received while in Drive mode, the ring tone does not sound, and the picture light/called LED does not flash. The call will be recorded as a ***missed call*** in Received calls.
- When images are not received from the other party, a black screen appears.
- When a video-phone call is received from a number registered to the Nuisance Call Barring Service, calls are rejected without any guidance message.

Key operations when receiving a call

Answer with own image	Answer with substitute image	On hold (☞P. 65)	Quick silent	Record message for video-phone (☞P. 80)	Reject calls/ Record message (video-phone)/ Forward calls	Set Manner mode (☞P. 120)
i		PWR/HLD	# or ● (for 1+ seconds)	⏱ (for 1+ seconds)	● ***Incoming menu***	# (for 1+ seconds)

- For video-phone calls, all key operations except those listed above are not available even when Any key answer (☞P. 61) is set to ***ON***.

When using the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately)

- When a video-phone call is received while the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, pressing the switch for 2+ seconds will answer the call with the set substitute image. Switch between substitute image and camera image during a call. (☞P. 83)
- When the Auto answer set (☞P. 447) is set to ***ON*** and the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, after the specified ring time, the substitute image is automatically sent. Switch between substitute image and camera image during a call. (☞P. 83)

Placing Calls on Hold <On Hold>

When unable to answer a call right away, put the call on hold.

- Digital transmission fees are charged to the caller even while on hold.

1 While ring tone is sounding, press PWR/HLD.

- A series of beeps sound and the call is placed on hold.
- When ***Connected video-phone*** appears, the substitute image for on hold appears. (☞P. 85)

What the caller hears

- When the phone is connected, On hold tone (☞P. 65) sounds, and a substitute image is sent.

To disconnect the call on hold

- Press PWR/HLD. (The call is saved in Received calls.)

If the caller disconnects while on hold

- The call is disconnected (Saved in Received calls).

2 Press i [V-phone] when ready to answer.

- Speak to the caller. Your image is sent to the other party.

To talk when transmitting a substitute image

- Press ☎.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- On hold image (☞P. 85) can be used to set the substitute image that is transmitted.
- While a call is on hold, the On hold image is sent to the other party with ***On hold*** superimposed.
- Refer to P. 65 for details on the On hold tone settings.
- Beeps do not sound while in Manner mode.

Recording Messages When Unable to Answer <Record Message>

When Record message is not set, record a message for a single incoming call.

- Record message (video-phone) is not available when FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area.
- Record up to two messages (15 seconds per one message).
- Refer to P. 68 for details on the Record message settings.

1 While receiving a video-phone call, press ●2 ABC.

- Alternatively, press 0 for 1+ seconds while receiving video-phone calls for Record message.
- After ***Preparing message. Please wait*** appears, the reply image for Record message (video-phone) appears.
- The Video-phone reply image (☞P. 81) can be used to set the substitute image that is transmitted.

When two Record messages (video-phone) are already recorded

- ***You already have two messages saved*** or ***Unable to record*** (when three Record messages for voice calls are recorded) appears and Record message is not activated.

What the caller hears

- Record message guidance (☞P. 68) plays and Record message (video-phone) reply image is sent.

2 Record the message.

- During recording, the other party's image does not appear on the screen but is recorded.
- When recording is finished, stand-by reappears.

To answer a video-phone call while Record message (video-phone) is recording

- When sending a camera image and speaking, press ● [V-phone] and for a substitute image, press ☎.

Note

- Refer to P. 71 for details on playing and deleting Record messages (video-phone).
- When Record message is set by Record message settings (☞P. 68) or Manner mode settings (☞P. 120), Record message will automatically answer.
- Recordings may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. It is recommended that a memo be kept of Record message contents.
- Reply images for Record messages (video-phone) can be set in the Video-phone reply image (☞P. 81).
- When Record message (video-phone) is replying, ***Record message*** appears on top of the set reply image.

Related Operations

Set the still picture for Record message (video-phone) <V-phone reply image>

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 4 4 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ still picture ▶ i [OK].

- To check the still picture: Select still picture ▶ ● [Agree].

Note

Video-phone reply image

- Use JPEG and GIF images saved to My picture of Data box that are set to ***QCIF: 176×144*** (W×H). (GIF animation is not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.
- The default setting is 伝言メモ画像.

Chara-den

- Refer to P. 359 for details on Chara-den.

Send Chara-den as Substitute Image <Send Substitute Image>

Default setting: ブンブン (Dimo)

During video-phone calls, send a character to the other party in place of a camera image.

1 During a video-phone call, press i [Subst img] for 1+ seconds.

- Chara-den list appears.

2 Select Chara-den and press i[OK].

- Chara-den is sent as the substitute image.

Note

- If Chara-den is already set as substitute image (☞P. 85), press i [Subst img] during a video-phone call to send. When a video-phone call is received, press ☎ to answer the call with the Chara-den.
- When DTMF mode (☞P. 76) is set to ***ON***, Chara-den key operations become not available to allow the dial keys to send touch-tone signals.
- 通話中画像１ is set as the substitute image when Reset settings (☞P. 448) is performed after deleting ブンブン(***Dimo***).

Preset Chara-den

The following Chara-den are preset.

Character (girl)

This Japanese office lady character is capable of showing emotions such as happiness and sadness and can perform various body actions such as waving her hands and tilting her head.

Full-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
1	喜ぶ (Happy)
2	怒る (Angry)
3	哀しむ (Sad)
4	投げキッス (Blow a kiss)
5	驚く (Surprised)
6	ゴメン (Apology)
7	恥ずかしー (Embarrassed)
8	ずっこけ(Whoa ho ho!)
9	バーン！ (Bang!)

Part-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
1 1	(右腕)手を振る (ループ) (Wave right hand (loop))
1 2	(左腕)手を振る (ループ) (Wave left hand (loop))
1 3	(顔)うなずく (Nod head)
1 4	(右腕)おいでおいで (ループ) (Beckon with right hand (loop))
1 5	(左腕)おいでおいで (ループ) (Beckon with left hand (loop))
1 6	(顔)左右ブルブル (Shake head sideways)
1 7	(顔)右に傾ける (Tilt head to the right)
1 8	(顔)左に傾ける (Tilt head to the left)

ブンブン (Dimo)

Dimo is capable of showing emotions such as happiness and anger and can perform various body actions.

©BVIG

Full-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
1	喜ぶ (Happy)
2	怒る (Angry)
3	悲しむ (Sad)
4	ありがとう (Thanks)
5	ラブラブ (In love)

Number (key operation)	Action
6	ごめんなさい (Apology)
7	ノーリアクション (No reaction)
8	バイバイ (Bye bye)
9	びっくり (Surprised)

- ブンブン (Dimo) does not support Part-action mode.

Changing Chara-den During a Call <Change Chara-den>

Switch to send a different Chara-den during a video-phone call.

1 While sending a Chara-den as a substitute image, press ● 3 3, select a Chara-den and press [OK].

- Switches to the new Chara-den.

Switching Between Full-action and Part-action <Change Action>

Switch between full-action and part-action while displaying a Chara-den.

1 Press 0 or ● 6 2 while sending a Chara-den as a substitute image.

- Switches between modes.

Making a Chara-den Perform an Action

Make the Chara-den perform an action.

- In Full-action mode, express emotions such as ***happy*** and ***angry***.
- Change to Part-action mode to move body parts, jump and dance.
- Perform different actions together in Part-action mode.
- Depending on the Chara-den, movement of the mouth may synchronize with sound from a microphone. (The mouth of the female character moves. The mouth of ブンブン(***Dimo***) does not.)
- Types of actions vary for each Chara-den.

1 Press ● or ● 6 MNO 3 DEF while sending a Chara-den as a substitute image.

To display the Action list details

- Press (i) [Details].

2 Select an action and press ● or press an action number. (☞P. 82)

- Performs the selected action.
- Alternatively, enter the action number by pressing 1 あ to 9 わ, or # ↑ to have the character perform an action.
- Refer to P. 82 for preset Chara-den actions.

To abort action

- Press C ひき.

Note

- Depending on the Chara-den, some actions are performed automatically.

Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party

Changing Image to Send During Call <Change Send Image>

Send a preset substitute image instead of a camera image.

1 During a video-phone call, press (i) [Subst img].

- The set substitute image is sent.

To revert to camera image

- Press (i) [Me] when substitute image is shown.

To select and send a Chara-den

- During a video-phone call, press (i) for 1+ seconds and select a Chara-den.
- When the video-phone call is finished, the Chara-den is disabled.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Zoom in and zoom out <Zoom in/Zoom out>

1 During a video-phone call, press ● or ●.

2 Press ● (zoom in) or ● (zoom out).

- Maximum zoom: Press .
- Minimum zoom: Press .

Switch between main camera and sub camera <Main/sub camera>

1 During a video-phone call, press ● .

- To change to sub camera: Press ● again.

Send a still picture from Data box <Play file>

1 During a video-phone call, press ● ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ still picture ▶ [OK].

- To revert to camera image: Press [Me] or ● .

Note

Zoom in/Zoom out

- Set up to 11 zoom levels for the main camera and 2 zoom levels for the sub camera.
- Zoom is not available while sending Chara-den or substitute images.
- Zoom is not available in full screen display (sub camera).
- Zoom is not available for the other party's image.
- When camera is switched or video-phone call ends, zoom is disabled.

Main/Sub camera

- Reverts to sub camera after video-phone call ends.
- While using main camera, if the surrounding area gets hotter or if the battery level is or less, ***Unable to use the main camera at the moment*** appears and switches to substitute image.
- When DTMF mode (☞P. 76) is set to ***OFF***, press to switch.

File playback

- Use JPEG and GIF images saved to My picture of Data box that are set to ***QCIF: 176×144*** (W×H). (GIF animation is not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available. Images shot with the FOMA terminal are available regardless of file restrictions.
- Still pictures saved onto a miniSD Memory Card are not available directly. Copy to the ***Camera*** folder or ***i-mode/Other*** folder in My picture of FOMA terminal handset.
- Files do not appear when the multimedia PIM is locked. When the terminal security code (four to eight digits) is entered, the PIM lock is temporarily disabled. The file appears.

Setting Image for Calling <Camera Image Sending>

Default setting: ON

Set whether to send own image or substitute image to the other party.

- The set substitute image is automatically sent when setting is ***OFF***.

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 3 2 2.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Video-phone set*** → ***Set sending image*** → ***Camera image sending*** from Top menu.
- Camera image sending screen appears.

2 Press 2 [OFF: does not send own image].

To send own camera image

- Press 1.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Changing Substitute Image When Making a Call <Video-phone Image>

1 Enter phone number and press [📷] [8 TUV].

- Video-phone image screen appears.

To call from redial details/received calls details/phonebook details screen

- Press [📷] [5 JKL].

2 Press [2 ABC], select Chara-den and press [i] [OK].

To send caller's camera image

- Press [1 あ].

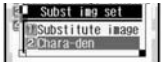
Setting a Substitute Image <Substitute Image>

Default setting
ブンブン (Dimo)

Set a still picture or Chara-den (☞P. 359) as the substitute image during a video-phone call.

- Use JPEG and GIF images saved to My picture of Data box that are set to ***QCIF: 176×144*** (W×H). (GIF animation is not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.

1 In stand-by, press [●] [5 JKL] [3 DEF] [2 ABC] [1 あ].



- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Video-phone set*** → ***Set sending image*** → ***Subst img set*** from Top menu.
- Substitute image screen appears.

2 Press [1 あ] [Substitute image].

- My picture screen appears.

To send Chara-den

- Press [2 ABC] and select Chara-den.

3 Select folder, press [●], select image and press [i] [OK].

Note

- Press [i] [Subst img] during a video-phone call to send the set substitute image.
- While sending substitute image, the still picture is sent to the other party with ***Camera Off*** superimposed. If setting Chara-den, ***Camera Off*** does not appear.
- 通話中画像１ is set as the substitute image when Reset settings (☞P. 448) is performed after deleting ブンブン(***Dimo***).

Related Operations

Change On hold and Hold images <On hold image/Hold image>

1 In stand-by, press [●] [5 JKL] [3 DEF] [2 ABC].

2 For On hold image settings, press [3 DEF].

- To set On hold substitute image: Press [4 GHI].

3 Select folder ▶ [●] ▶ image ▶ [i].

Note

- The default settings are 応答保留画像 (On hold image) and 保留画像 (Hold image).
- Use JPEG and GIF images saved to My picture of Data box that are set to ***QCIF: 176×144*** (W×H). (GIF animation is not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.

Setting Outgoing Image Quality <Image Quality>

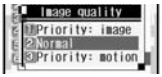
Default setting: Normal

Set the quality of the image sent during a video-phone call.

Categories

Priority: image	To place emphasis on shape and color
Normal	To create a balance of clarity and movement
Priority: motion	To place emphasis on movement

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL 3 DEF 6 MNO.



- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Video-phone set*** → ***Image quality*** from Top menu.

To set during a video-phone call

- Press ● 6 MNO 4 GHI.

To set while sending Chara-den

- Press ● 7 PQRS 4 GHI.

2 Select image quality and press ●.

Note

- The image quality setting during a video-phone call is only temporary. When a video-phone call is ended, image quality reverts to the quality set in stand-by with ● 5 JKL 3 DEF 6 MNO.
- Image quality settings for the sender and receiver during a video-phone call differ.

Video-phone Set

Set the Image During Video-phone Calls

Change the image displayed during video-phone calls.

- Set the following items. Refer to P. 87 for setting details.

Item	Setting details	Default setting
Brightness	Select from five main display brightness levels.	±0
Screen size	Magnify the main screen size.	Large
Display setting	Change both party's display method.	Show me small
Subscreen position	Set the location of the subscreen.	Upper left
Lighting	Set the light duration for the display for a video-phone call.	Always ON
Self-portrait	Set self-portrait to Reverse off, Reverse on, or Pause.	Reverse on

Screen size

Large

Normal

Full-screen*

* Turn the FOMA terminal sideways to view in full-screen.

Display settings

● Select from the following four settings.

Item	Setting details
Show me small	The other party's image is large and mine is small.
Other	Only the other party's image appears.
Show me big	The other party's image is small and mine is large.
Me	Only my image appears.

Show me small

Other

Show me big

Me

Subscreen position

Upper left

Lower right

Related operations

Adjust brightness <Brightness>

1 During a video-phone call, press ⓪ (brighter) or ⓪ (darker).

Set screen size <Screen size>

1 During a video-phone call, press ● 6 1 or View.

● In stand-by: Press ● 5 3 3.

2 For Normal size, press 2.

● For full-screen: Press 3.

● To return to Large size: Press 1.

Set display method <Display setting>

1 During a video-phone call, press ● 6 2.

● In stand-by: Press ● 5 3 4.

2 Select display method ▶ ●.

Set the location of the subscreen <Subscreen position>

1 During a video-phone call, press ● 6 3.

● In stand-by: Press ● 5 3 5.

2 Select location ▶ ●.

Set light <Lighting>

1 During a video-phone call, press ● 6 5.

● In stand-by: Press ● 2 6 3 1 3 (☞P. 128).

2 Press 2 for *Always ON*.

● Same as normal: Press 1.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related operations

Send own image as still picture <Pause>

1 During a video-phone call, press ● 7 1.

- To undo: Press ● [End].

Set own image as normal image <Reverse>

1 During a video-phone call, press ● 7 2.

2 For *Reverse off*, press 1.

- For Reverse on: Press 2.

Note

- The above operations are available when Camera image sending (☞P. 84) is set to ***ON***.

Brightness

- , , , appears at the top of the display. Does not appear for ***±0***.
- Brightness is reset after video-phone call ends.

Screen size

- Subscreen size cannot be changed.
- ***Large*** is 1.3 times larger than ***Normal***.
- Screen size settings remain even after video-phone call is ended.

Display setting

- Video-phone display settings remain even after video-phone call ends.

Subscreen position

- If subscreen is set to ***Lower right***, call duration and sent/received image icons appear on the lower left.
- Subscreen position remains even after video-phone call ends.

Lighting

- If ***Same as normal*** is set, the duration is what was set for Display light time (☞P. 128).
- Increasing light duration shortens consecutive stand-by duration.
- Light setting remains even after video-phone call ends.

Self-portrait (Pause or Reverse)

- The image orientation appears correctly to the other party regardless of settings.
- Paused camera image can also be sent.
- ***Reverse on*** reverses image orientation as if viewing in a mirror. ***Reverse off*** returns image to normal.
- While sending Chara-den and substitute images, Self-portrait is not available.
- While paused, ***Stopped*** appears on top of the image of the other party's FOMA terminal.
- Self-portrait is reset after video-phone call ends.

Changing Video-phone Settings

Switching Transmission Speed to 32K <Dialing Speed>

Default setting: 64K

1 Enter phone number and press .

- appears.
- Alternatively, press 3 to switch.

To revert to 64K

- Press .
- Press 3 to switch.

To send from phonebook details/redial details/received calls details screens

- Press , select ***Dialing speed***, press ● and press 2.

Note

- The setting is only enabled for one time.

Automatically Redial as Voice Call <Redial Voicecall>

Default setting: OFF

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL 3 DEF 1 .@.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Video-phone set*** → ***Redial voicecall*** from Top menu.
- Redial voicecall setting screen appears.

2 Press 1 .@. [ON: redial].

To not redial

- Press 2 ABC.

Note

- If a call is redialed as a voice call, voice call charges are incurred.
- If a video-phone communication is started, Redial voicecall is not performed.
- Redial voicecall may not be performed if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or a ISDN video-phone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (☞P. 74) (as of February 2005), or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.

Picture Memo

Save Other Party's Image as a Still Picture

During a video-phone call, take a still picture of the other party.

- Still pictures will be ***QCIF: 176×144*** (W×H) size.

1 During a video-phone call, press ● 5 JKL.

2 Press ● [📷].

- While recording, ***Recording*** appears on top of the image of the other party's FOMA terminal.
- Shutter sound does not sound.
- The still picture is recorded and ***Saving*** appears.
- The picture is saved to the ***Camera*** folder in My picture of Data box.
- The picture can only be sent to a FOMA terminal.

▶MEMO◀

Phonebook

- Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal 92
- Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook . . . . . <Add to Phonebook>92
- Saving to FOMA Card Phonebook . . . . . <Add to FOMA Card Phonebook>99
- Saving from Redials and Received Calls 101
- Setting Groups . . . . . <Group Settings>101
- Making Calls from Phonebook . . . . . <Search Phonebook>104
- Editing Phonebook Entries . . . . . <Edit Entries>108
- Deleting Phonebook Entries . . . . . <Delete Entries>109
- Hiding Private Numbers . . . . . <Set Secret>109
- Calling with a Few Key Strokes . . . . . <2-touch Dialing>110

Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal

Use FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook. Entry items and capacity differ.

FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook and FOMA Card Phonebook

Save name, phone number and mail address for both phonebooks.

- Use FOMA card on other FOMA terminals. To use phonebook on other FOMA terminals, save numbers in FOMA card phonebook.

	FOMA terminal handset phonebook	FOMA card phonebook
Number of entries	500	DoCoMo FOMA card: 50
Number of characters for name	Up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters	Up to 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters
Reading	Single-byte katakana (up to 32 characters)	Double-byte katakana (up to 12 characters)
Group settings	20 groups	11 groups
Icon	Phone number: seven types Mail address: four types	—
Memory numbers	000 to 499	—
Phone numbers	Three per entry (Up to 1,500 phone numbers can be saved in the phonebook.)	One per entry
Mail address	Three per entry (Up to 1,500 mail addresses can be saved in the phonebook.)	One per entry
Memo	One per entry	—
Postal code	One per entry	—
Postal address	One per entry	—
Birthday	One per entry	—
Select ring tone	One per entry	—
Mail ring tone	One per entry	—
Called LED	One per entry	—
Mail/Message LED	One per entry	—
Image (Picture call set)	One per entry	—
Chara-den settings	One per entry	—

—: not available

Add to Phonebook

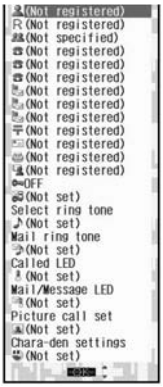
Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook

Register frequently used phone numbers, names, and mail addresses to easily access when calling or sending i-mode mail or SMS.

- Save up to 500 entries in memory slots 000 to 499.
- Save three phone numbers and mail addresses per entry.
- Add still pictures, movies/i-motion, etc. shot with camera to phonebook entries. When a call is received from someone with an image in their phonebook entry, their name, phone number, and image appear.
- Refer to P. 510 for details on text input.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Entry items



FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry screen

Icon	Item	Details	Reference
	Name	Enter name. Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters.	P. 94
	Reading	Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited. Enter up to 32 single-byte katakana.	P. 94
	Group	Sort in groups. Groups 0 to 19 are available. Edit names.	P. 96
	Phone number	Save up to three numbers. Select from one of seven icons for each phone number.	P. 94
	Mail address	Save up to three addresses. Select from one of four icons for each address.	P. 94
	Postal code	Enter postal code.	P. 96
	Postal address	Enter postal address. Enter up to 100 single-byte (50 double-byte) characters.	P. 96
	Birthday	Enter a birthday between January 1, 1900 and December 31, 2099.	P. 96
	Memo	Save memos. Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.	P. 96
	Secret	Keep privacy by hiding phonebook entries.	P. 109
	Secret code	Enter secret code specified by the other party. Use when sending mail.	P. 96
	Select ring tone	Differentiate callers using specific ring tones or Chaku-motion.	P. 96
	Mail ring tone	Differentiate incoming mail using specific mail ring tones.	P. 96
	Called LED	Differentiate incoming calls using specific LED colors.	P. 96
	Mail/Message LED	Differentiate incoming mail using specific mail LED colors.	P. 96
	Picture call set	Differentiate incoming/outgoing calls using images. Specific image appears in phonebook list. One still picture or movie/i-motion shot with the camera can be saved.	P. 96
	Chara-den settings	Set Chara-den for when sending a substitute image during a video-phone call.	P. 96

Note

- When upgrading the handset at the DoCoMo retailer, data may not be copied depending on specifications of the new model.
- Image set in Call/Receive displays (☞P. 124) appears during outgoing calls if i-motion is set for Picture call.
- Vanity mirror (☞P. 75) is prioritized when calling with Video-phone even if Picture call is set.

Note information saved in phonebook separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 369) or Data Link Software (☞P. 549).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Basic Saving Operations

Save name, phone number and mail address.

1 In stand-by, press ▼ for 1+ seconds and press 1.

- Alternatively, press ▼ ● 2 1 in stand-by.
- Name entry screen appears.

2 Enter name and press ●.

FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry screen

- Also enter symbols and pictographs.
- Reading is automatically entered in R. Changes to entered name are not reflected automatically.
- Reading is not automatically entered if symbols and pictographs are entered for name or when using one-touch conversion.

When reading is incorrect

- Select R, press ● and correct reading.

3 Select ☎, press ●, enter phone number and press ●.

- Enter area codes, even for landline phone numbers.
- Enter up to 26 digits.
- Phone number may include ✱ or # but call may not connect.
- i-mode mail or SMS is not sent properly when a number saved to the phonebook with ***184***, ***186***, ***#31#*** or ***✱31#*** added is selected as the recipient.

To make international calls with + added in front of phone number

- Enter phone number after entering **+**. (Press 0 for 1+ seconds to enter **+**.)

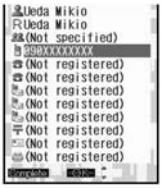
When phone number is entered incorrectly

- Press C to delete the last digit. Press C for 1+ seconds to delete entirely. Enter correct phone number.

To enter a pause

- ***P*** appears when 0 is pressed at location to enter pause.

4 Select phone number type icon and press ●.



Available Icons

☎	Landline phone		Office phone
	Mobile phone		Home fax
	Video-phone		Office fax
	Home phone		

To save multiple phone numbers

- Repeat steps 3 and 4.

5 Select ✉, press ●, enter mail address and press ●.

- Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers and some symbols.
- Pictographs are not available.

To enter @ and period (.)

- Press 1 repeatedly. Press ▼ for 1+ seconds to enter mail address suffix (☞P. 517).

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

6 Select mail address type icon and press ●.

Available Icons

	Mobile phone mail address		Office mail address
	Home mail address		Mail address

To save multiple mail addresses

- Repeat steps 5 and 6.

7 Press i [Complete] and enter memory number (three digits: 000 to 499).

To not specify memory number

- Press ● to save to lowest available memory number between ***010*** and ***499***. Lowest available number between ***000*** to ***009*** is used if not available.

Note

- When Set secret (☞P. 109) is set to ***ON***, phonebook entries cannot be overwritten. Set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON***.
- To save a phone number or mail address when 500 entries are already saved on the FOMA terminal handset, select a memory number to overwrite an already existing phonebook entry. Entries in the FOMA card phonebook are not overwritten.

When *Complete* does not appear in guidance

- Enter name.

Memory numbers

- Entries in memory numbers ***000*** to ***099*** may be called with 2-touch dialing. (☞P. 110)

Alternative methods to specifying memory number

- Enter digit in hundreds column and press ●.
  Entry is saved to lowest available memory number (***100*** to ***199*** if 1 is entered).
- Enter hundreds and tens column and press ●.
  Entry is saved to lowest available memory number (***120*** to ***129*** if 1 2 is entered).

When i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F is received during editing

- Continue editing without displaying receive results.

Copying to FOMA card

- Copy FOMA terminal handset phonebook to FOMA card (☞P. 100) or copy FOMA card phonebook to FOMA terminal handset (☞P. 100).

miniSD Memory Card

- Copy phonebook saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 372) or view phonebook entries saved on miniSD Memory Cards. (☞P. 376)
- Copy phonebook saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (☞P. 377).
- Entries are in phonetic order if all phonebook entries are copied collectively to miniSD Memory Card. Entries are in memory number order if searching by memory number. Entries copied individually are sorted from oldest copied date.

Ir exchange

- Send (☞P. 390) and receive phonebook saved in FOMA terminal handset using Ir exchange (☞P. 390).

Symbols and pictographs

- Enter symbols and pictographs for ***Name***, ***Memo*** and ***Postal address*** in FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Symbols and pictographs may not appear properly when sent to PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode using Ir exchange.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Set groups <Select group>

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select ▶ ● ▶ select group ▶ ●.

Save postal code

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select ▶ ● ▶ enter postal code ▶ ●.

Save postal address

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select ▶ ● ▶ enter postal address ▶ ●.

Save birthday

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select ▶ ● ▶ enter birthday ▶ ●.

Save memo

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select ▶ ● ▶ enter memo ▶ ●.

Save entries as secret <Set Secret>

● Refer to P. 110 for details.

Set Secret code to mail address <Secret code>

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select ▶ ● ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.

2 Press 1.

- To confirm set Secret code: Press 2.
- To disable Secret code: Press 3.

3 Select i-mode mail address ▶ ● ▶ enter secret code (four digits) ▶ *YES* ▶ ●.

Set ring tone and Chaku-motion <Select ring tone/Mail ring tone>

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select *Select ring tone* ▶ ●.

- To personalize mail ring tone: Select ***Mail ring tone*** ▶ ●.

2 Press 1.

- To set Chaku-motion: Press 2.
- To disable: Press 3.

3 Select folder ▶ ● ▶ ring tone ▶ i [OK].

Set called LED color <Called LED and mail/message LED>

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select *Called LED* ▶ ●.

- To personalize mail/message LED: Select ***Mail/Message LED*** ▶ ●.

2 Select color ▶ ●.

- To disable: Select ***Not set*** ▶ ●.

Set image <Picture call set>

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select *Picture call set* ▶ ●.

2 Press 1.

- To set movie/i-motion: Press 2.
- To shoot still pictures with camera: Press 3 ▶ shoot.
- To disable image: Press 4.

3 Select folder ▶ ● ▶ image ▶ i [OK].

Set Chara-den <Chara-den settings>

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select *Chara-den settings* ▶ ●.

2 Press 1.

- To disable Chara-den: Press 2.

3 Select Chara-den ▶ i [OK].

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Note

Select ring tone and Mail ring tone

- Select ring tone from Melody of Data box and Chaku-motion from i-motion.
- Ring tones are prioritized in the following order when multiple ring tones are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Ring tone	Phonebook ring tone → group ring tone → regular ring tone
Mail ring tone	Specified mail ring tone → group mail ring tone → regular mail ring tone

- Movies/i-motion that are image only, have tickers added or have playback restrictions cannot be set as Chaku-motion.
- Movies/i-motion with Ring tone set to ***unavailable*** cannot be set as Chaku-motion. (☞P. 326)
- Movies/i-motion copied from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as Chaku-motion. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular ring tone.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone. To use Select ring tone/Mail ring tone settings, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON***.
- Calls and mail received while phonebook PIM is locked are notified with regular ring tone.
- Save entire mail address to use Mail ring tone. If mail address is ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp***, set only phone number.
- When a movie/i-motion with voice and image is set as mail ring tone, only the voice may be played except when in stand-by.
- When voice only movies or i-motion (i-motion melodies with no video) are set as Chaku-motion, the receive display follows phonebook Picture call settings, group Picture call settings, and call/receive display settings. When none of these are set, the 電話着信 1 image appears.

Called LED and mail/message LED

- Called LED and mail/message LED are prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Called LED	Phonebook called LED → group called LED → regular called LED
Mail/Message LED	Phonebook mail LED → group mail LED → regular mail LED

- Anonymous calls are notified with regular called LED.
- LED lights randomly based on other party's caller ID and date for ***Random***.
- Colors gradate for ***Rainbow***. Each color is repeated for ***Mixed colors***. Colors illuminate in random order for ***Cyclone***, with the speed becoming faster and faster.
- ***Random*** is not available for mail/message LED.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular LED color. To use called LED and mail/message LED settings, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON***.
- Calls and mail received while phonebook PIM is locked, are notified with regular LED color.
- Save entire mail address to use mail/message LED. If mail address is ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp***, set only phone number.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Note (continued)

Secret code

- Only when mail address is ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp***, Secret code is available. Refer to P. 246 for details on Secret code.
- Secret code cannot be set as ***0000***.
- Set Secret codes for one mail address for each phonebook entry.
- Refer to P. 96 to set Secret code.
- Mail may not be sent if ***phone number + Secret code@docomo.ne.jp*** is saved in phonebook. Change entry to ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp*** before saving Secret code.

Picture call

- Still pictures are prioritized as follows.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	Phonebook Picture call → group Picture call (☞P. 103) → Call/Receive displays (☞P. 124)

- i-motion that are voice only (i-motion melodies with no video), movies/i-motion with tickers added, and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions cannot be set for Picture call.
- Depending on data size, still picture set to Picture call may take more time to display.
- When movies or i-motion are set to Picture call, the first frame is displayed.
- When Picture call set (☞P. 126) is set to ***OFF***, no image is displayed when receiving a call.
- Movie/i-motion copied from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset is not available for Picture call. To use shot movies for Picture call, record them on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Not available still pictures and movies/i-motion are crossed out. Appears in gray in lists.
- To delete image set for Picture call from Data box, select ***Delete one***. Select ***Yes*** in confirmation screen to delete.
- Press [📷] [1 *#] [2 ABC] in preview screen to set shot image for Picture call.
- When movies/i-motion with images and voice are set as Select ring tone, setting a still picture as Picture call disables Select ring tone setting. When movies/i-motion with images and voice are set as Picture call, Select ring tone is also set the same.

Chara-den settings

- Substitute images are sent in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	Phonebook Chara-den settings → substitute image for video-phone

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Saving to FOMA Card Phonebook

Save entries to FOMA card phonebook. Entry items differ slightly from FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

- Save up to 50 entries to the FOMA card phonebook.
- Save one phone number and mail address per entry.

Entry Items

Icon	Item	Function
	Name	Enter name. Enter up to 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters. Enter up to 10 characters if single-byte/double-byte characters are mixed.
R	Reading	Reading is entered automatically and can be edited. Enter up to 12 double-byte katakana.
	Group	Sort in groups. Groups 00 to 10 are available. Group names can be changed.
	Phone number	Save one phone number.
	Mail address	Save one mail address.

Basic Saving Operations

1 In stand-by, press ⊡ for 1+ seconds and press 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, press ⊡ ● 2 ABC 2 ABC in stand-by.
- Name entry screen appears.

2 Enter name and press ●.

- Also enter symbols and pictographs.
- Reading is automatically entered in R. Changes to entered name are not reflected automatically.
- Reading is not automatically entered if symbols and pictographs are entered for name or when using One-touch conversion.

When reading is incorrect

- Select R, press ● and correct reading.

3 Select , press ●, select group and press ●.

4 Select , press ●, enter phone number and press ●.

- Enter up to 26 digits for FOMA card (green) and 20 digits for FOMA card (blue).

When phone number is entered incorrectly

- Press C CLR to erase the last digit. Press C CLR for 1+ seconds to delete entirely. Enter correct phone number.

5 Select , press ●, enter mail address and press ●.

- Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers or symbols (not all symbols are available).
- Pictographs are not available.

To enter @ and period (.)

- Press 1 .@ repeatedly. Press ⊡ for 1+ seconds to enter mail address suffix. (☞P. 517)

6 Press i [Complete].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

Copying to FOMA terminal handset

- Reading is saved as single-byte katakana when FOMA card phonebook is copied to FOMA terminal handset (☞P. 100).

Copying FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook to FOMA Card

Share phonebook entries between FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card.

- Outgoing voice/video-phone calls, sending messages and i-mode connection are not available while copying. Assistant View is also not available to activate other functions. Incoming voice/video-phone calls and receiving mail are available.

1 In stand-by, press ○, select name and press ● 8TUV.

To check before copying

- Select name, press ●, press ● #. Proceed to step 3.

2 Press 1 [Copy one].

To copy selected

- Press 2ABC, select name and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and nothing appears for unselected entries. Press ● to switch.

  Select all entries to copy and press ○ [Complete].
- Select up to 50 entries.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Copying begins.

Note

- This function is not available if FOMA card is not inserted.
- Since capacity of FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook differ, only the first phone number/mail address is copied to FOMA card. Characters and character limits also differ. If some data cannot be copied, ***Some data will be deleted OK?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** to copy the first phone number/mail address.
- Set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON*** to copy secret phonebook entries.
- Entry items are saved as follows when copied to FOMA card.
  - ■ Portions of name exceeding 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are discarded.
  - ■ Reading is saved as double-byte katakana. Portions exceeding 12 characters are discarded. Reading for entries copied from FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset is saved as single-byte katakana.
  - ■ Entries are allocated accordingly if same group name exists in FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks. If same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to ***(Not specified)***. Single- and double-byte symbols are differentiated.
- Not all characters are compatible between FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card. Unsupported characters are converted to spaces.
- Source data is not deleted.
- If maximum number of entries is exceeded during copying, ***Memory is full***. ***Unable to save anymore*** appears. Delete unnecessary data and copy data again.

Copying FOMA Card Phonebook to FOMA Terminal Handset

1 In stand-by, press ○, select name and press ● 7PQRS.

To check before copying

- Select name, press ● and press ● *. Proceed to step 3.

2 Press 1 [Copy one].

To copy selected

- Press 2, select name and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and nothing appears for unselected entries. Press ● to switch.
  Select all entries to copy and press [Complete].
- Select up to 50 entries.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Copying begins.

Note

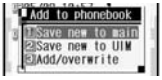
- Entry items are saved as follows when copied to FOMA terminal handset.
  - Reading is saved as single-byte katakana.
  - Phone number and mail address from FOMA card are saved as first phone number and mail address in FOMA terminal handset.
  - Entries are allocated accordingly if same group name exists in FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks. If same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to ***(Not specified)***.
  - Open memory numbers are allocated from ***010*** to ***499***, then ***000*** to ***009***.
- Latin and Greek characters and some symbols not included in the standard single-byte alphanumerics/ symbols set, and double-byte characters not included in kuten code list appear as spaces.

Saving from Redials and Received Calls

Save phonebook entries from Redial, Received calls, Bar code reader, Character reader and mail.

Example: When saving from Received calls

1 In stand-by, press 0 (), select phone number and press 1.



2 Press 1 [Save new to main].

- Selected phone number is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (☞P. 94)

To save to FOMA card

- Press 2.

To add/overwrite

- Press 3.

Group Settings

Setting Groups

Set groups in phonebook to set group names, ring tones, called LED and image shown when calls are received from a member of a group.

- Only group name editing is available for FOMA card phonebook.

Change Group Name <Edit Group Name>

Default setting
See below

Edit group name.

● 00 ***(Not specified)*** cannot be renamed.

The default setting is 00 ***(Not specified)***, 01グループ1 (Group 1) to 19グループ１９ (Group 19) for FOMA terminal handset phonebook and 00 ***(Not specified)***, 01グループ1 (Group 1) to 10グループ１０ (Group 10) for FOMA card phonebook.

1 In stand-by, press ○ and ○7PQRS.

When FOMA card phonebook is selected

● Press ○ and press ○6MNO.

When searching by group

● Press ○ to select a group and press ○3DEF. Proceed to step 3.

2 Select a group and press ●.

Group settings

3 Press 1あ/., enter/edit group name and press ●.

● Group name character limits are as follows.

FOMA terminal handset phonebook: Up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters

FOMA card phonebook: Up to 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters
Enter up to 10 characters if single-byte/double-byte characters are mixed.

To restore default group name

● Press CLR for 1+ seconds and press ●.

4 Press ○ [Complete].

Related Operations

Set ring tone and Chaku-motion for group <Select ring tone/Mail ring tone>

1 In the group setting screen, press 2ABC.

● To set mail ring tone for group: Press 3DEF.

2 Press 1あ/..

● To set Chaku-motion: Press 2ABC.

● To disable: Press 3DEF.

3 Select folder ▶ ● ▶ ring tone ▶ ○ [OK] ▶ ○ [Complete].

Set mail/message LED color for group <Called LED and mail/message LED>

1 In the group setting screen, press 4GHI.

● To set mail/message LED color for group: press 5JKL.

2 Select called LED color ▶ ● ▶ ○ [Complete].

● For each color selected, picture light/called LED color changes.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Set image for group <Picture call set>

1 In the group setting screen (☞P. 102), press 6.

2 Press 1.

- To set movie/i-motion: Press 2.
- To shoot still pictures with camera: Press 3 ▶ shoot.
- To disable image: Press 4.

3 Select folder ▶ ● ▶ image ▶ i [OK] ▶ i [Complete].

Note

Select ring tone/Mail ring tone

- Refer to P. 97 for details on ring tone and mail ring tone priority.
- Not available for FOMA card phonebook.
- Movies/i-motion that are image only, have tickers added or have playback restrictions cannot be set as Chaku-motion.
- Movies/i-motion with Ring tone set to ***unavailable*** cannot be set as Chaku-motion. (☞P. 326)
- Movies/i-motion copied from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as Chaku-motion. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular ring tone.
- Calls and mail from members in groups set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone. To use group ring tone and group mail ring tone settings, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON***.
- Save entire mail address to use group mail ring tone. If mail address is ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp***, set only phone number.
- If movie/i-motion with image and voice is set as Chaku-motion, movie/i-motion image appears regardless of Receive display or Picture call settings.
- When voice only movies or i-motion (i-motion melodies with no video) are set as Chaku-motion, the receive display follows phonebook Picture call settings, group Picture call settings, and call/receive display settings. When none of these are set, the 電話着信 1 image is displayed.

Called LED and mail/message LED

- Refer to P. 97 for details on called LED and mail/message LED priority.
- Not available for FOMA card phonebook.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular called LED color.
- Calls and mail from members in groups set as Secret are notified with regular LED color. To use group called LED and group mail LED settings, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON***.
- Save entire address to use group mail/message LED. If mail address is ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp***, set only phone number.
- ***Random*** is not available for mail/message LED.

Picture call

- When group Picture call is set, appears on group selection screen.
- Refer to P. 98 for image priority.
- Not available for FOMA card phonebook.
- i-motion that are voice only (i-motion melodies with no video), movies/i-motion with tickers added, and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions cannot be set for Picture call.
- Movies/i-motion copied from miniSD to FOMA terminal handset are not available. To use shot movies for Picture call, record them on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular incoming screen.
- Calls from members in groups set as Secret are notified by regular incoming screen. To use group Picture call settings, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON***.
- Not available images are crossed out. Appears gray in lists.

Making Calls from Phonebook

Retrieve phone numbers from phonebook to make calls and send mail. Additionally, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to *ON* to search for phonebook entries saved as secret data.

- When phonebook PIM is locked, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) to make calls from phonebook.

Selecting Phonebook Search Method <Search By>

Search phonebook by reading, group, or memory number.

-reading?	FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks are sorted by reading.
Group?	FOMA terminal handset entries appear first.
Memory no.?	Only FOMA terminal handset entries appear. FOMA card phonebook does not have memory numbers and cannot be sorted.

- Memory numbers do not exist on FOMA card phonebook. Searching by memory number is not available.
- In stand-by, press ▽ to show by the last method used.

1 In stand-by, press ▽ and ● 1.

- Search method selection screen appears.

2 Select search method and press ●.

- Phonebook appears sorted by selected search method.

Related Operations

Open phonebook during voice call

1 During voice call, press view or ▽.

View miniSD Memory Card phonebook <View miniSD data>

1 In stand-by, press ▽ ▶ ● #.

Note

- Search method for miniSD Memory Card phonebook cannot be selected.

Searching by Name <-reading?>

1 In stand-by, press ▽.

Search by reading phonebook list (Other column)

- Alternatively, select 📖 (Phonebook) from Top menu.

When search by reading phonebook list does not appear

- Press ● 1 1.

2 Select name.

- Press 10i to show previous or next page.
- Press ○ to select individually.

To enter reading and search (Quick search)

- Closest entry appears after each character is entered.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

3 Press ●.

Phonebook details screen

- Select icon with ◎ and press ● to perform the following.

☎ 📱 📠	Places call to saved phone number.
✉	Compose message screen addressed to saved mail address appears.
🏠	View saved postal address.
📝	View saved memo.
♪	Plays set ring tone or Chaku-motion.
🌡	Set called LED flashes.
🖼	Set still picture or movie/i-motion appears.
☺	Plays set Chara-den.

4 Press ☎ or ● [☎].

- Call is placed to phone number displayed.

To make video-phone call

- Press ⓘ[V-phone].

Note

- In phonebook list, press ▲ to scroll up one page and ▼ to scroll down one page. Scrolls within group in group search screen.
- Appears in following order for reading search.
  Katakana (phonetic order → dakuten/handakuten) → alphabet → numbers → space → symbols → no reading (Appears after numbers and before symbols if space is at beginning.)

Searching by Group <Group?>

1 In stand-by, press ▼.

Group selection screen

- Alternatively, select 📖 (Phonebook) from Top menu.

When group selection screen does not appear

- Press ● 1 2 .

2 Select a group and press ●.

Phonebook list (グループ 1)

- Phonebook list for specified group appears.
- Entries appear in order by reading (katakana → alphabet → numbers → symbols → no reading).
- Phonebook entries with no group settings are grouped in ***Not specified***.

3 Select name.

- Press ◎ to show previous or next group.
- Press ⓘ to select individually.

To enter reading and search (Quick search)

- Closest entry appears after each character is entered.

Continued on next page ▶▶

4 Press ●.

- Phonebook entry details screen appears.
- Refer to step 3 of “Searching by Name” on P. 105 for operations when each icon is selected.

5 Press ☎ or ● [☎].

- Call is placed to phone number displayed.

To make video-phone call

- Press ▼ [V-phone].

Searching by Memory Number <Memory No?>

- Use 2-touch dialing to call people saved in memory numbers ***000*** to ***099***. (☞P. 110)

1 In stand-by, press ▼.

FOMA terminal handset phonebook list (010 to 019)

- Alternatively, select 📖 (Phonebook) from Top menu.

When memory number search phonebook list does not appear

- Press ● 1 2 3.

2 Enter three-digit memory number.

- Press 10 to show previous/next ten entries.
- Press ▼ to select individually.

To enter memory number and search (Quick search)

- After each digit is entered, corresponding entries appear. Enter three digits for memory numbers. For example, when ***085*** is entered, the following appear.
  - ■ Enter ***0*** for first digit: entry numbers ***000*** to ***009*** appear.
  - ■ Enter ***8*** for second digit: entry numbers ***080*** to ***089*** appear.
  - ■ Enter ***5*** for third digit: entry number ***085*** appears.
- If entered memory number is not saved in phonebook, entry for next largest memory number appears. However if larger memory number does not exist, then smallest memory number closest to ***000*** appears.

3 Press ●.

- Phonebook entry details screen appears.
- Refer to step 3 of “Searching by Name” on P. 105 for operations when each icon is selected.

4 Press ☎ or ● [☎].

- Call is placed to phone number displayed.

To make video-phone call

- Press ▼ [V-phone].

Related Operations

Select calling method and call

1 In stand-by, press ▼ ▶ name ▶ ●.

2 Press ▼ [V-phone] for video-phone.

- To make voice call: Press ☎ or ●.
- To make international call: Press ● 0 ▶ International prefix ▶ ● ▶ ☎.
- To add prefix: Press ● 6 ▶ prefix ▶ ● ▶ ☎.
- To call without sending ID: Press ● 4 ▶ ☎.
- To send ID and call: Press ● 5 ▶ ☎.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Specify image and make video-phone call <V-phone image>

1 **In stand-by, press ▶ name ▶ ●.**

2 **Press ▶ select Chara-den ▶ [OK] ▶ [V-phone].**

- To send own camera image: Press ▶ [V-phone].

Set transmission speed and make video-phone call <Dialing speed>

1 **In stand-by, press ▶ name ▶ ●.**

2 **Press ▶ ■*Dialing speed**** ▶ ●.

3 **Press [64K] or [32K] ▶ [V-phone].**

* ***Dialing speed*** appears when a FOMA card phonebook entry is selected.

Note

Video-phone image setting

- Still pictures cannot be set.
- Video-phone image setting is reset after video-phone ends.

Dialing speed

- The default setting is ***64K***.
- Transmission speed is reset after video-phone ends.
- It is recommended that 64K transmission speed be used when making video-phone calls to compatible FOMA terminals. Use 32K transmission for connecting to devices such as PHS phones that cannot use 64K due to network conditions.
  If a 64K video-phone call is made to a 32K area, transmission speed is automatically switched to 32K and redialed. The same transmission speed is used when redialing.

Changing Phonebook List Appearance <Switch View Mode>

Show images set in Picture call for entries in phonebook list.

1 In stand-by, press and .

- Not available when showing miniSD Memory Card data.

When searching by group

- Press , select group, press ● and .

To switch phonebook details screen

- In phonebook details screen, press .

Note

- Only first phone number and mail address can be displayed or selected when showing still pictures in phonebook list. Select other phone numbers and mail addresses from phonebook details screen.
- Image set for group Picture call is image shown for all members of group. Individually set images are prioritized.
- If another FOMA card is inserted, FOMA card restrictions (☞P. 37) are activated. Substitute image appears if image downloaded from site is set for Picture call (☞P. 96). Settings return when original FOMA card is inserted.

Restricting still picture transfer to miniSD Memory Card <Image transfer>

Set so images set as Picture call are not transferred when phonebook entries are copied to a miniSD Memory Card.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

Continued on next page ▶▶

- When Image transfer is set to ***Yes***, more time may be taken when copying phonebook entries to a miniSD Memory Card.
- Even if Image transfer is set to ***Yes***, images with file restrictions (output restrictions to non-FOMA terminals) are not sent.
- The default setting is ***Yes***.

1 In stand-by, press ⊡.

- Phonebook appears.

2 Press ⊡, select ■*Image transfer* and press ●.

- Image transfer settings screen appears.
- When data on FOMA card is selected, ***Image transfer*** does not appear.

3 Press 2 ABC [No].

To transfer

- Press 1 , select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Edit Entries

Editing Phonebook Entries

Edit items saved in phonebook entries.

1 In stand-by, press ⊡, select name and press ⊡ 3 DEF.

FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry screen

- Editing is not available when All lock, phonebook PIM lock, or Keypad dial lock are set.
- Editing is not available for phonebook entries set to accept/reject calls, and phonebook entries set with Remote lock all License number.

To edit from phonebook details screen

- In phonebook details screen, press ⊡ 1 .

2 Select item, press ● to edit.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving.
- Even if a name is edited, the reading does not automatically change.
- When multiple phone numbers are saved, ***(Not registered)*** appears if the first phone number saved is deleted. However, other phone numbers remain unchanged.

3 Press ⊡ [Complete].

4 Press ●, select *Yes* and press ●.

To save to a different memory number

- Enter memory number and press ●.
- Press C CLR for 1+ seconds, delete memory number and press ● to save to an available memory number. (☞P. 95)

For FOMA card phonebook

- Select ***Yes*** and press ●.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Copy saved details <Copy item>

1 In stand-by, press ▶ name ▶ ● ▶ item ▶ .

Note

Copying saved details

- The following items can be copied: FOMA terminal handset phonebook names, phone numbers one through three, mail addresses one through three, memos, postal addresses, and FOMA card phonebook names, phone numbers, and mail addresses.
- Refer to “Pasting Text” on P. 521 for information on pasting text copied from the phonebook.

Delete Entries

Deleting Phonebook Entries

Delete data saved in phonebook.

- Phonebook entries set to accept/reject calls, and phonebook entries set with Remote lock all License number cannot be deleted (All in group and Delete all are available). Entries cannot be deleted while Keypad dial lock is set.

1 In stand-by, press , select name and press .

2 Press [Delete one].

To delete all entries in a group

- Press , select group to delete, press ●, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To delete all entries on FOMA terminal handset

- Press , enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To delete all entries on FOMA card phonebook

- Press , enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To delete multiple entries

- Press , select name and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and nothing appears for unselected entries. Press ● to switch. Select all entries to delete and press [Complete].
- Select up to 50 entries.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

Related Operations

Delete from phonebook details screen <Delete one>

1 In the phonebook details screen, press ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.

Set Secret

Hiding Private Numbers

Secret phonebook entries are hidden and access is restricted unless Secret mode is set to *ON*.

- Set secret is not available for FOMA card phonebook entries.

Setting Entries as Secret Data <Set Secret>

1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 94), select 🔑 and press ●.

- Secret data setting screen appears.

2 Press 1 [ON].

To disable Set secret

- Press 2.

3 Press i [Complete] and enter memory number (three digits: 000 to 499).

To save to the same memory number

- Press ● without entering a memory number, select ***Yes*** and press ●. (☞P. 95)

Note

- Set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON*** to use 2-touch dialing for secret phonebook entries saved in memory numbers ***000*** to ***099***.
- Mail addresses saved in secret phonebook entries are also restricted unless Secret mode is set to ***ON***.

Opening secret data

- Set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON*** and perform the same steps as when viewing normal entries. (🔑 flashes when secret data is selected in phonebook list.)
- Same operations as normal phonebook are available.

Redials, Received calls, Sent messages, Received messages and Schedule

- Phone number and mail address set as Secret appear instead of name. Set Secret mode to ***ON*** to show name.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone. To use Select ring tone/ Mail ring tone and group ring tone/group mail ring tone settings, set Secret mode to ***ON***.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular LED color. To use called LED, mail/message LED and group called LED, group mail/message LED, set Secret mode to ***ON***.

2-touch Dialing

Calling with a Few Key Strokes

Easily call parties saved in memory numbers 000 to 099 in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

- First phone number is called when multiple are saved.

1 In stand-by, enter last or last two digits.

- Memory number 000 to 009: Enter 0 to 9.
- Memory number 010 to 099: Enter 1 0 to 9 9.

2 Press ☎.

- Call is placed to entry saved for entered memory number.

To make video-phone call

- Press i[V-phone].

Note

- 2-touch dialing is not available when phonebook PIM is locked. (☞P. 150)
- Set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON*** to use 2-touch dialing for secret phonebook entries saved in memory numbers 000 to 099.

Sound/Screen/ Light Settings

■**Sound Settings**

- Changing Mobile Phone Sounds . . . . . .<Sound Settings>112
- Changing Mobile Phone Sound Volume . . . . . <Adjust Volume>115
- Vibrating for Calls and Alarms . . . . . <Vibrator>117
- Sounding Alarm When the Signal is Weak. . . . . <Quality Alarm>118
- Setting Mail Ring Tone Duration . . . . . <Mail Ring Duration>118
- Sounding Ring Tone in Earphone Only . . . . . <Ring Output>119
- Silencing Handset . . . . . .<Manner Mode>119
- Changing Manner Mode. . . . . <Original Manner Mode>121

■**Screen/Light Settings**

- Changing Main Display Stand-by Settings. . . . . <Main Display Setting>122
- Changing Call/Receive Display Settings . . . . . <Call/Receive Displays>124
- Changing Image for Sending/Receiving Messages . . . . . <Send/Receive Display>125
- Setting Whether to Show Phonebook Image Upon Incoming Call. . . . <Picture Call Set>126
- Changing Sub Display Settings . . . . . <Sub Display Setting>126
- Saving Battery Power. . . . . <Power Saver Mode>127
- Setting Original Power Saver Mode . . . . . .<User Set>128
- Arranging the Display. . . . . <Personalize>130
- Changing Top Menu Design. 133
- Setting the Illumination Color . . . . . .<Called LED>136
- Changing Font Width . . . . . .<Font Style>138

Changing Mobile Phone Sounds

Change the ring tone and Chaku-motion. Select preset melodies, melodies from miniSD Memory Cards, melodies received via i-mode mail or melodies downloaded from i-mode. Also change i-mode mail, SMS, Chat mail and Message R/F ring tone.

- Set i-motion downloaded from i-mode or audio/video data saved in FOMA terminal.

Changing Ring Tone and Chaku-motion <Select Ring Tone>

Default setting
See below

The default setting is 着信音１ for Phone ring tone, ***Phone ring tone*** for Video-phone ring tone/Payphone ring tone/User unset/Not support, 着信音２ for Mail ring tone, 着信音２ for Chat mail ring tone and ***Mail ring tone*** for Message R/F and SMS ring tone.

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 2 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Select sound*** → ***Select ring tone*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 [Phone ring tone].

To change Video-phone ring tone

- Press 2.

To change Payphone ring tone

- Press 3.

To change User unset

- Press 4.

To change Not support

- Press 5.

3 Press 1 [Melody].

To set Chaku-motion

- Press 2.
- Movies/i-motion that are image only, have tickers added or have playback restrictions are not available.
- i-motion with Ring tone set to ***unavailable*** cannot be set as Chaku-motion. (☞P. 385)
- i-motion copied from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal are not available. To use shot movies for Chaku-motion, record them on the FOMA terminal.
- Refer to P. 326 for details on setting i-motion as the ring tone.

To silence ring tone

- Press 3.

To make Video-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset and Not support identical to Phone ring tone

- Press 4.

4 Select folder, press ●, select ring tone and press i [OK].

- Melody list appears.

To check ring tone

- Select a ring tone and press ● [Agree]. Press i [Stop] to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

To check when in Manner mode

- After the confirmation screen appears, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Note

- When checking ring tone in step 4, press [camera] [1] during playback to adjust the volume.
- Ring tones are prioritized as follows when multiple ring tones are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Ring tone	Phonebook ring tone → Group ring tone → Video-phone ring tone → regular ring tone

- When a call is received during data transmission, the tone saved as Phone ring tone sounds. The animation for data transmission is used for the incoming image. 着信音1 is used if a movie/i-motion is set.

Related Operations

Change i-mode mail and Chat mail ring tone <Select mail tone/Chat mail tone>

1 In stand-by, press [●] [1] [2] [2] [1] for i-mode mail.

- For Chat mail: In stand-by, press [●] [1] [2] [3].

2 Press [1].

- To set movie/i-motion: Press [2].
- To silence ring tone: Press [3].

3 Select folder ▶ [●] ▶ ring tone ▶ [i] [OK].

Change SMS and Message R/F ring tone <Select mail tone>

1 In stand-by, press [●] [1] [2] [2] [4] for SMS.

- For Message R: In stand-by, press [●] [1] [2] [2] [2].
- For Message F: In stand-by, press [●] [1] [2] [2] [3].

2 Press [1].

- To set movie/i-motion: Press [2].
- To silence ring tone: Press [3].
- To conform to Mail ring tone: Press [4].

3 Select folder ▶ [●] ▶ ring tone ▶ [i] [OK].

Preset ring tones

Song title	Artist	Song title	Artist
Silver Bow	—	Night	—
My Home Town	—	Stardust	—
The Valley	—	OP(標準音)	—
ジュピター	HOLST GUSTAV	OP(ロボット)	—
王家の末裔	—	OP(HipHop)	—
はちすずめ	SAGRERAS JULIO S	OP(Rock Ice)	—
Beat On Motion	—	OP(OPEN)	—
着信音1	—	CL(標準音)	—
着信音2	—	CL(ロボット)	—
Sunrise	—	CL(HipHop)	—
Coffee Break	—	CL(Rock Ice)	—
Noon	—	CL(CLOSE)	—
Business	—	標準音	—
Twilight	—	時間です	—
Sunset	—	It's time	—

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Numbers in phonebook can be set to play selected ring tone. In addition, mail addresses in phonebook can be set to play selected mail ring tone.
- For calls without caller ID, the User unset ring tone sounds.

Forward and store saved i-melody data on a PC using miniSD Memory Card (☞P. 369). (Copy protected data cannot be forwarded.)

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- Refer to "■ Melody icon layout" on P. 367 for details on the icons for each melody.

Changing the Open/Close Sound and Timer Sound <Open Sound/Close Sound/Timer Sound>

Default setting
See below

Change the sound played when opening and closing the handset and the timer sound.

- Open sound does not sound if i-motion is set for the stand-by display.
- Select from melodies in Data box.

The default setting is ***OP (Default tone)*** for Open sound, ***CL (Default tone)*** for Close sound, ***3 seconds*** for Ring duration, ***Default tone*** for Timer sound, and ***15 seconds*** for Ring duration.

Example: When setting Open sound

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 2 4 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Select sound*** → ***Setting sounds*** → ***Open sound*** from Top menu.
- Open sound setting screen appears.

To change Close sound

- Press ● 1 2 4 2.

To change Timer sound

- Press ● 1 2 4 4.

2 Press 2 [Melody].

To change to Default tone

- Press 1.

To silence Open sound, Close sound and Timer sound

- Press 3.

3 Select folder, press ●, select melody and press ⓘ [OK].

To check the melody

- Select a melody and press ● [Agree]. Press ⓘ [Stop] to stop playback.
- When Manner mode is set, after the confirmation screen appears select ***Yes*** and press ●.

When ring duration setting screen appears

- Enter ring duration (two digits: 00 to 99 seconds).

Note

- Movies/i-motion are not available for Open sound, Close sound, Shutter sound and Timer sound.
- Refer to P. 185 for Shutter sound settings.
- Melodies being checked are played at the volume set. When volume is set to ***Silent***, playback is at ***Volume 1***.
- Ring duration for some sounds may not be set.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Changing Mobile Phone Sound Volume

Change voice/video-phone, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F ring tone volume. Volume can also be changed for Keypad sound, FOMA terminal Open/Close sound, Timer sound and Charge start/end sound.

Adjusting Ring Tone Volume <Phone Ring Volume>

Default setting
All at Volume 3

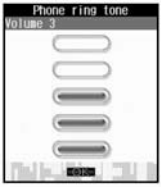
Change the ring tone volume for voice calls and video-phone calls. Also change i-mode mail, SMS, Chat mail and Message R/F ring tone volume.

- Adjust the volume to silent (***Silent***) or set it to gradually get louder (***Step***).

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 1 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Select volume*** → ***Phone ring vol*** from Top menu.
- Phone ring volume screen appears.

2 Press 1 [Phone ring tone].



To adjust ring volume for Video-phone

- Press 2.

To adjust ring volume for Payphone

- Press 3.

To adjust ring volume for User unset

- Press 4.

To adjust ring volume for Not support

- Press 5.

3 Press ⓪ (louder) or ⓠ (softer) to adjust volume and press ●.

- ***Volume 1*** is the lowest and ***Volume 5*** is the highest.
- To set to ***Step***, press ⓪ when volume is set to ***Volume 5***. When Step is set, the volume increases in three second increments from ***Volume 1*** to ***Volume 4*** and rings at ***Volume 5*** thereafter. Chaku-motion is also played back in ***Step*** when set.
- To set to ***Silent***, press ⓠ when volume is set to ***Volume 1***. When set, ring tone does not sound. (When Phone ring tone is set to ***Silent***, 🔇 appears in stand-by.)

Note

- Volume remains at adjusted level even when handset is turned off or battery pack is removed.
- Phone ring volume and Vibration mode settings (☞P. 117) are not linked. Set ring volume to ***Silent*** to silence ring tones when Vibrator is enabled.
- If GIF animation or Flash movie is set as stand-by display, 🔇 does not appear until animation is finished.
- The ring volume for a call received during data transmission is the volume setting for Phone ring tone.

Related Operations

Adjust i-mode mail, Message R/F, SMS ring volume <Mail ring tone>

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 1 2 1 for i-mode mail.

- For Message R: In stand-by, press ● 1 1 2 2.
- For Message F: In stand-by, press ● 1 1 2 3.
- For SMS: In stand-by, press ● 1 1 2 4.

2 Press ⓪ (louder) or ⓠ (softer) ▶ ●.

Adjust Chat mail ring volume <Chat ring tone>

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 1 3 ▶ ⓪ (louder) or ⓠ (softer) ▶ ●.

Adjusting Earpiece Volume <Earpiece Volume>

Default setting
Volume 3

Select from five earpiece volume levels.

1 In stand-by, press ⓪ or ⓠ for 1+ seconds.

- Earpiece volume screen appears.
- If a calendar is shown, press [CLR] to disable the calendar before continuing with operations.

2 Press ⓪ (louder) or ⓠ (softer) to adjust volume and press ●.

Adjusting Keypad Sound Volume <Keypad Sound>

Default setting
Volume 3

Adjust the volume of the sounds emitted when keys are pressed (Keypad sound). Also adjust the volume for Open/Close sound, Timer sound and Charge start/end sound.

- Set to ***Silent*** to silence the Battery level sound, Keypad sound, Open/Close sound, Timer sound, Charge start/end sound and error tone.
- Sounds are disabled in Manner mode.

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 1 4 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Select volume*** → ***Setting sound vol*** → ***Keypad sound*** from Top menu.
- Keypad sound screen appears.

2 Press ⓪ (louder) or ⓠ (softer) to adjust volume and press ●.

Note

- Keypad sound is not active during Chara-den call (☞P. 361), Chara-den playback (☞P. 359) or while shooting Chara-den (☞P. 362).

Related Operations

Adjust Open/Close sound volume <Open sound/Close sound>

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 1 4 2 for Open sound.

- To adjust Close sound volume: In stand-by, press ● 1 1 4 3.

2 Press ⓪ (louder) or ⓠ (softer) ▶ ●.

Adjust Charge start sound and Charge end sound <Charge start sound/ Charge end sound>

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 1 4 4 for Charge start sound.

- To adjust Charge end sound volume: In stand-by, press ● 1 1 4 5.

2 Press ⓪ (louder) or ⓠ (softer) ▶ ●.

Adjust Timer sound volume <Timer sound>

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 1 4 6 ▶ ⓪ (louder) or ⓠ (softer) ▶ ●.

Vibrating for Calls and Alarms

Default setting
Vibration mode: OFF
Mail vibration: OFF

Set Vibrator to notify incoming calls/mail and alarms with a combination of vibration and melody.

- The vibrator pattern for alarms is the same as the pattern set for incoming calls/mail.
- Vibration mode and volume settings are not linked. Set the volume to ***Silent*** to silence ring tones and alarm tones. Set volume separately while Vibrator is set. (☞P. 115, P. 411)
- Also use vibration patterns set to melodies (***With melody***).

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 あ 3 さ 1 あ.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Vibrator*** → ***Vibration mode*** from Top menu.
- Vibration mode screen appears.

To set Mail vibration

- In stand-by, press ● 1 あ 3 さ 2 か.

2 Select vibration pattern and press ●.

- Vibrator is set and the FOMA terminal vibrates. 📳 appears in stand-by. However, icon does not appear if vibrator is set only for mail.
- Vibration pattern is sampled if Pattern 1 to 3 is selected. (Picture light/Called LED flashes.)
- Set the following patterns.

OFF	Vibrator does not activate.
Pattern 1	Vibrates approximately 0.8 seconds → stops for approximately 0.8 seconds and repeats.
Pattern 2	Vibrates for approximately 0.3 seconds → stops for approximately 0.3 seconds → vibrates for approximately 0.3 seconds → stops for approximately 1 second and repeats.
Pattern 3	Continuous vibration
With melody	● Vibrator and melody activate ***(With melody)*** for melodies created with vibration settings added. ● Melodies that do not have vibration settings vibrate in ***Pattern 1***.

Note

- Note that if Vibrator is set and FOMA terminal is left on a table, it may fall when a call is received.
- FOMA terminal Vibrator settings are not reflected in Flash movies (☞P. 227).
- If Original manner mode vibrator is set to ***ON*** and Vibrator is set to ***OFF*** while in Manner mode, Vibrator operates in ***Pattern 1***.
- If GIF animation or Flash movie is set as stand-by, 📳 does not appear until animation is finished.
- Even if With melody is set, vibration is not in conjunction with the main melody.

Quality Alarm

Sounding Alarm When the Signal is Weak

Default setting
Alarm on (high)

The alarm sounds if there is a risk the call is about to disconnect due to weak signal strength, etc.

- Quality alarm is available only for voice calls.
- Alarm settings are ***Alarm on (high)***, ***Alarm on (low)***, and ***No alarm***.

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL 2 ABC 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Alarm during call*** → ***Quality alarm*** from Top menu.
- Quality alarm screen appears.

2 Press 1 [Alarm on (high)].

To set alarm to low

- Press 2 ABC.

To set alarm to *No alarm*

- Press 3 DEF.

Note

- The call may be disconnected without the alarm sounding if the signal suddenly becomes weak.
- Quality alarm does not sound during a video-phone call.

Mail Ring Duration

Setting Mail Ring Tone Duration

Default setting
03 seconds

Set duration of mail ring tone from 01 to 30 seconds or set to not ring.

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 6 MNO.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Mail ring duration*** from Top menu.
- Mail ring duration screen appears.

2 Press 1 [ON: ring].

To not ring

- Press 2 ABC.

3 Enter duration (two digits: 01 to 30 seconds) and press ●.

Note

- Mail ring tone does not sound while call is in progress, running i-αppli or playing i-motion/melodies.

Ring Output

Sounding Ring Tone in Earphone Only

Default setting
Earphone+speaker

Set ring tone to sound from earphone instead of the FOMA terminal speaker when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- If no flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected, the ring tone will sound from the speaker even when set to ***Earphone only***.

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 5 .

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Ring output*** from Top menu.
- Ring output screen appears.

2 Press 1 [Earphone only].

To sound ring tone from earphone and speaker

- Press 2.

Note

- The phone ring volume in the earphone/microphone is set using Phone ring volume (☞P. 115). When the volume is set to ***Silent***, no ring tone sounds from the earphone.
- Never wind the earphone/microphone cord around FOMA terminal. Internal antenna may not work properly.
- Fully insert the earphone/microphone plug. Interrupted sound, static or loud noise may result when partially inserted.
- The following are not malfunctions.
  - ■ Interrupted sound or static when the earphone/microphone is only partially inserted during a call
  - ■ A popping sound upon turning power on

Manner Mode

Silencing Handset

Default setting
Normal

Use Manner mode to avoid disturbing others when in public. A single key operation silences the FOMA terminal.

- Select from Normal, Silent and Original manner mode.
  Settings vary for each mode as indicated below.

Function	Normal	Silent	Original*
Record message	ON	OFF	ON
Ring tone	OFF	OFF	OFF
Mail ring tone	OFF	OFF	OFF
Vibration mode	ON	OFF	ON
Keypad sound	OFF	OFF	OFF
Mic sensitivity	ON	ON	ON
Low power alarm	OFF	OFF	OFF

* Original manner mode settings can be changed. (☞P. 121)

- Camera shutter sound and movie record start/end sound are not silenced. Sound is silenced for Record Chara-den (☞P. 362).

Setting Manner Mode

1 In stand-by, press # for 1+ seconds.

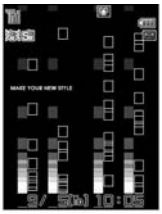
If FOMA terminal is closed when call is received

- Press ○ (📷) for 1+ seconds.
  The Manner mode selected previously is set.

To set Manner mode during a call or while receiving a call

- During a call or while receiving a call, press # for 1+ seconds.
  The Manner mode selected previously is set.

2 Select a Manner mode and press ●.



- ***Set*** appears and Manner mode is set (🔇 appears).
- The Manner mode selected previously is set if no operations are performed for approximately two seconds after step 1.
- If set while receiving, ring tone is silenced and Manner mode is set. This setting remains set until disabled. Caller's message is recorded if incoming call is not answered. Record message is not set if three Record messages (voice calls)/Voice memos and two Record messages (video-phone) are already recorded. Press ☎ to answer the call.

In stand-by or while receiving, with Manner mode set (Normal)

- The following are silenced.
  Keypad sound, error tones (beeps), warning sounds, melody playback (confirmation screen appears), i-αppli melodies/sound effects, open sound, close sound, charge start sound, charge end sound, battery level sound, on hold tone, hold tone during calls, bar code recognition tone, etc.
- The following are changed to vibrations.
  Ring tones, alarm tones, timer sounds, etc.
- Record message is automatically set and cannot be disabled using menu operations (☞P. 68).

Disabling Manner Mode

1 Press # for 1+ seconds in stand-by, during a call or while receiving.

- ***Disabled*** appears and Manner mode is disabled.

If FOMA terminal is closed when call is received

- Press ○ (📷) for 1+ seconds.

Note

Mic sensitivity

- If Manner mode is set during a call, the microphone becomes more sensitive. Microphone sensitivity does not change if Mic sensitivity is set during a Hands-free call.

Related Operations

Disable Manner mode automatically at a specified time <Auto disable>

1 **In stand-by, enter disabling time (four digits: 24-hour format) ▶ # (for 1+ seconds) or ● 5 JKL.**

Silence ring tone when Manner mode is not set <Quick silent>

1 **Press # or ● for 1+ seconds while receiving.**

Note

Automatically canceling Manner mode

- Cancel time is within 24 hours of the time of setting.
- When a screen other than stand-by is shown at the cancel time, or when turned off, Manner mode is canceled upon returning to stand-by.
- Repeat the operations to change cancel time.

Quick silent

- Quick silent silences the current incoming call.

Original Manner Mode

Changing Manner Mode

Default setting
See below

Change the *ON/OFF* settings of the various functions that are activated when Original manner mode is set.

The default setting is ***ON*** for Record message, ***OFF*** for Ring tone, ***OFF*** for Mail ring tone, ***ON*** for Vibration mode, ***OFF*** for Keypad sound, ***ON*** for Mic sensitivity and ***OFF*** for Low power alarm.

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 4 GHI 3 DEF.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Manner mode*** → ***Original*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 [Record message].

- Record message setting screen appears.

To set Ring tone

- Press 2 ABC.

To set Mail ring tone

- Press 3 DEF.

To set Vibration mode

- Press 4 GHI.

To set Keypad sound

- Press 5 JKL.

To set Mic sensitivity

- Press 6 MNO.

To set Low power alarm

- Press 7 PQRS.

3 Press 1 [ON: set].

To disable

- Press 2 ABC.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Record message activates if set to ***ON*** (☞P. 68) even if set to ***OFF*** in Original manner mode.
- Change Original manner mode settings even while Manner mode is set.
- If a connected external device is set to sound, it will sound even if Manner mode is set.

When Mic sensitivity is set

- If Manner mode is set, microphone becomes more sensitive during calls. Microphone sensitivity does not change if Mic sensitivity is set during a Hands-free call.

Main Display Setting

Changing Main Display Stand-by Settings

Displaying an Image

Default setting
待受画面 1

Set images saved in Data box, including preset still pictures, shot still pictures and movies, downloaded still pictures and Flash movies, i-motion, images received via i-mode mail, etc., as main display stand-by.

- Use Data box images such as JPEG/GIF images, GIF animation, Flash movies and i-motion.
- Size of still pictures other than ***Stand-by: 240×320*** can be changed. (☞P. 339)
- Movies/i-motion with voice only (i-motion melodies with no video) and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions are not available. (ASF files are also not available.)
- Refer to P. 319 for i-αppli settings.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 ABC 1 あ 1 あ.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Main display*** → ***Stand-by display*** from Top menu.
- Stand-by display setting screen appears.

2 Press 1 あ [My picture].

- My picture of Data box appears.

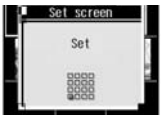
To set a movie/i-motion

- Press 2 ABC.

To set i-αppli

- Press 3 DEF. (☞P. 319)

3 Select folder, press ●, select image and press ▬ [OK]. Then select *Yes* and press ●.



- Stand-by is set.

To check image

- Select an image and press ● [Agree]. Press CLR to stop checking.
- For movies/i-motion, press ● [Pause] to pause playback. Press ● [Play] to continue playback. To stop, press ▬ [Stop].

For movies/i-motion

- For ***sQCIF: 128×96*** and ***QCIF: 176×144*** (W×H) movies/i-motion, select ***Actual size*** or ***Zoom*** to select display size in stand-by. (***Actual size*** and ***Zoom*** are only available for sQCIF and QCIF sizes.)
- Movie/i-motion volume is set with open sound volume. In stand-by, press VIEW for 1+ seconds during i-motion playback to switch audio on or off.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Note

- Even if Flash movies with audio are set as stand-by, they are played without sound.
- i-motion saved on miniSD Memory Card cannot be directly set as stand-by.
- Downloaded Flash movies may playback differently from when on a site or Internet web page.
- The first frame of a Flash movie or GIF animation, movie, or i-motion is set as stand-by. When playback finishes, the last frame is set (for Flash movies and GIF animations). Press CLR during playback to pause Flash movie or GIF animation or stop and rewind movie/i-motion. Press CLR to resume playback.
- If an image is set as stand-by and the original image is deleted, the image remains as stand-by until changed. However, the default image returns if i-motion is set.
- If i-αppli stand-by (☞P. 319) is set, i-αppli appears as stand-by. If i-αppli stand-by is disabled, image set as stand-by display appears.
- When Flash movies or GIF animations are set as stand-by and Power saver mode is reactivated, the first frame appears for stand-by.
- Web To function (☞P. 227) is not available from i-motion stand-by.
- GIF animation may appear differently from when on a site.
- If GIF animation or Flash movie is set as stand-by display, the following icons do not appear until animation is finished. Press CLR to stop, and icon appears.
  - ■ Vibrator (☞P. 117)
  - ■ Record message (☞P. 68)
  - ■ New Voice mail (☞P. 454)
  - ■ Silent (☞P. 115)
  - ■ Schedule/Alarm (☞P. 418)
  - ■ Drive mode (☞P. 66)
  - ■ Auto answer (when earphone is connected) (☞P. 447)
- When a different FOMA card is inserted and a downloaded image is set as stand-by, the FOMA card restriction function (☞P. 37) activates and the default image appears as stand-by. When the original FOMA card is inserted, the settings return.
- If an image from miniSD is set, title does not appear in the setting column.

Displaying the Calendar <Calendar Display>

Default setting: OFF

Display calendar for the current month, current and next months or six months on top of main display stand-by image.
Color for day/date follows settings for day color in schedule. Holidays (☞P. 420) and set vacation days are shown in red.

- Fifteen Japanese national holidays as stipulated in Article 59 of the revised National Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Elderly of 2001 (as of February 2005) are set by default.
- Calendar is not available for i-αppli stand-by.
- If GIF animation, Flash movie or i-motion is set as stand-by, playback stops when switching to Calendar.
- Calendar appears in English when display language is set to English.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 3 .

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Main display*** → ***Calendar display*** from Top menu.
- Calendar display settings screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select display method and press ●.

To display one month (large)

- Press 1.

To display one month

- Press 2 and select display position from ***Upper left***, ***Upper right***, ***Lower left*** or ***Lower right***.

To display two months

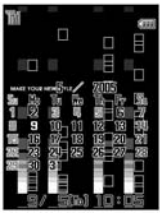
- Press 3.

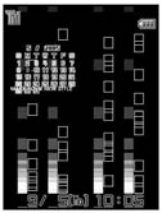
To display six months

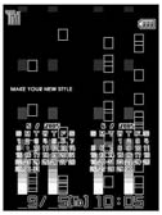
- Press 4.

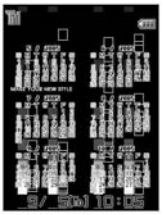
To not display Calendar

- Press 5.


1 month (Large)


1 month


2 months


6 months

- When the calendar is set to ***2 months***, the current month and the next month appear. When set to ***6 months***, six months appear in pairs (starting with the current month) with odd number months on the left.
- Press ↕, and the previous and following months appear. When the calendar is set to ***6 months***, the previous and following two months appear.
- When set to ***1 month (Large)***, icons appear on dates with schedule entries. When set to one or two month calendar, dates with schedule entries are underlined.
- Press ☎ to switch between calendar and stand-by image.

Displaying the Clock <Clock Display>

Default setting: ON

Show date and time on top of main display stand-by image.

- When Clock display is set to ***ON***, time does not appear at the top of the stand-by. (Time appears on other screens.)
- Date and time appear in English when display language is set to English.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 1 2.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Main display*** → ***Clock display*** from Top menu.
- Clock display screen appears.

2 Press 1 [ON: display].

To not display

- Press 2.

Call/Receive Displays

Changing Call/Receive Display Settings

Default setting:
Outgoing: 電話発信1
Incoming: 電話着信1

Change the image that appears when making or receiving a call.

- Use JPEG/GIF images, GIF animation and Flash movies in My picture of Data box. Also set i-motion as receive display (excluding i-motion with voice only (i-motion melodies with no video)).
- Images larger than 240 × 168 pixels are reduced.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 4 5.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Personalize*** → ***Call/Rcv display*** from Top menu.
- Call/Receive display screen appears.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

2 Press 1 [Outgoing voice calls].

- My picture of Data box appears.

To set Incoming voice calls

- Press 2 and either 1 [My picture] or 2 [i-motion].

To set Incoming video-phone

- Press 3 and either 1 [My picture] or 2 [i-motion].

To set Payphone

- Press 4 and either 1 [My picture] or 2 [i-motion].

To set User unset

- Press 5 and either 1 [My picture] or 2 [i-motion].

To set Not support

- Press 6 and either 1 [My picture] or 2 [i-motion].

3 Select folder, press ●, select image and press i [OK].

- Outgoing voice calls screen is set.

To check image

- Select an image and press ● [Agree]. Press CLR and the previous screen reappears.
- For movies/i-motion, press ● [Pause] to pause playback. Press ● [Play] to continue playback. To return to the previous screen, press i [Stop].
- Refer to P. 326 for details on setting i-motion as the ring tone.

Note

- If original still picture set as Incoming/Outgoing calls screen is deleted, the screen returns to default setting.
- Images that cannot be set do not appear.
- Images in miniSD Memory Cards cannot be set for Incoming/Outgoing calls screen. Copy to FOMA terminal before setting.
- Picture call settings (☞P. 126) are prioritized if set to ***ON***.

Send/Receive Display

Changing Image for Sending/Receiving Messages

Default setting
Send: メール送信1
Rcv: メール受信1

Change the image that appears when sending or receiving mail.

- Use JPEG/GIF images and GIF animation from My picture of Data box. Flash movies and movies/i-motion cannot be used.

Example: When setting sending message screen

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 4 6 1 [Send display].

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Personalize*** → ***Send/Rcv display*** → ***Send display*** from Top menu.
- My picture of Data box appears.

To set receiving message screen

- In stand-by, press ● 2 4 6 2.

2 Select folder, press ●, select image and press i [OK].

- Images that cannot be set do not appear.
- Sending message screen is set.

To check image

- Select an image and press ● [Agree]. Press CLR and the previous screen reappears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- If an image set for Send/Receive display is deleted, the screen returns to default setting.
- Still pictures in miniSD Memory Card cannot be set for Sending/Receiving message screen. Copy to FOMA terminal before setting.

Picture Call Set

Setting Whether to Show Phonebook Image Upon Incoming Call

Default setting: ON

Set to enable/disable picture call (☞P. 96).

- When caller ID is not sent or if picture call images/movies are not set in Phonebook, images are not displayed even if Picture call is set to ***ON***. (☞P. 96)

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 ABC 4 GHI 1 あ.@.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Personalize*** → ***Picture call set*** from Top menu.
- Picture call setting screen appears.

2 Press 1 あ.@. [ON: display].

To not display picture call

- Press 2 ABC.

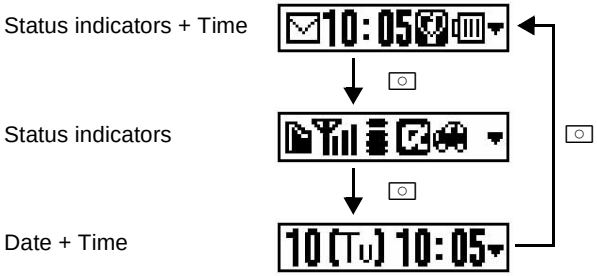
Sub Display Setting

Changing Sub Display Settings

Switching the Sub Display <Sub display>

Default setting: Status indicators + Time

Press ○ (📷) with the FOMA terminal closed to change the sub display in the following order.



- When “Status indicators” or “Date + Time” appears, “Status indicators + Time” reappears approximately ten seconds later.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Showing Name and Other Information When Called <Caller ID Display>

Default setting: ON

Show phone number and name in the sub display when a call is received.

- Name does not appear when phonebook PIM is locked.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 2 1 .

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Sub display*** → ***Callr ID display*** from Top menu.
- Caller ID display screen appears.

2 Press 1 . [ON: show]

To not show information such as name

- Press 2 .

Adjusting Sub Display Contrast <Contrast>

Default setting: Contrast 3

Select from five sub display contrast levels.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 2 2 .

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Sub display*** → ***Contrast*** from Top menu.
- Current contrast level appears.

2 Press ○ (darker) or ○ (lighter) to adjust and press ●.

- Set contrast is applied when FOMA terminal is closed.

Power Saver Mode

Saving Battery Power

Default setting: Normal mode

Adjust settings such as the screen display time and conserve battery power.

- Select from Normal mode, Power saver mode and User set mode.

Settings for items such as display time vary for each mode as shown below.

	Normal mode	Power saver mode	User set mode
Display light time	15 seconds	5 seconds	15 seconds
Screen display time	2 minutes	30 seconds	2 minutes
Screen Saver	OFF	OFF	OFF
Brightness	12	1	12

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 6 2 .

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Power saver set*** → ***Power saver mode*** from Top menu.

To set User set mode

- In stand-by, press ● 2 6 3 .
- Change User set mode settings. (☞P. 128)

To set Normal mode

- Press ● 2 6 1 in stand-by.

Setting Original Power Saver Mode

Adjust Display light time, Screen display time, Screen Saver and Brightness settings for *User set* of Power saver settings.

Setting Display and Key Lights <Display Light Time>

Default setting
See below

Set the light duration for display and key backlight for the following situations. Light dims when set time passes.

Normal	Set the length of time the display lights when handset is turned on, keys are pressed, handset is opened/closed and a call is received from 0 to 99 seconds.
Charging	Set to ***Same as normal*** or ***Always ON*** for when handset is connected to AC or DC adapter.
Video-phone	Set to ***Same as normal*** or ***Always ON*** for when video-phone is in use.
i-mode	Set to ***Same as normal*** or ***Always ON*** for when i-mode is in use.

The default setting is ***15 seconds*** for Normal, the ***Same as normal*** for charging and i-mode and ***Always ON*** for Video-phone.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 6 3 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Power saver set*** → ***User set*** → ***Display light time*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 [Normal], enter duration (two digits: 00 to 99 seconds) and press ●.

- Normal light duration is set.

To set Charging light duration

- Press 2 and either 1 [Same as normal] or 2 [Always ON].

To set Video-phone light duration

- Press 3 and either 1 [Same as normal] or 2 [Always ON].

To set i-mode light duration

- Press 4 and either 1 [Same as normal] or 2 [Always ON].

Note

- Setting also applies to sub display.
- If ***Normal mode*** or ***Power saver mode*** is set, this setting is disabled.
- Light duration (seconds) can only be set for ***Normal***.
- Increasing light duration shortens continuous stand-by duration.
- When the time set in Screen display time (☞P. 129) elapses, display turns ***OFF*** even if Display light time for charging and i-mode is set to ***Always ON***. The screensaver (☞P. 129) activates if set.
- Playback light settings apply for Flash movie and movie playback. (☞P. 348)
- When Flash movies or GIF animations are set as stand-by and Power saver mode is reactivated, the first frame appears for stand-by.
- If Playback light for Image viewer (☞P. 331), video player (☞P. 348) and Chara-den player (☞P. 360) are set to ***As light setting***, normal settings in Display light time are applied.
- Light is always lit during slideshow and Camera mode.
- Light duration is prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Light duration	Charging → Video-phone/i-mode → Normal

Setting Image Display Time <Screen Display Time>

Default setting
Display time: 2 minutes
LED display: off

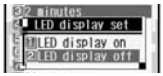
The display turns off to conserve battery power when FOMA terminal is not in use for a period of time.
Select time before activating Power saver mode at ***30 seconds***, ***1 minute***, ***2 minutes***, ***3 minutes***, ***5 minutes***, ***10 minutes***, ***15 minutes*** or ***20 minutes***.

- Set the picture light to flash yellow when the FOMA terminal is opened to indicate Power saver mode is active.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 6 3 2.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Power saver set*** → ***User set*** → ***Screen dsp time*** from Top menu.
- Screen display time screen appears.

2 Select time and press ●.



3 Press 1 [LED display on: flash picture light].

To not flash picture light

- Press 2.

Note

- If ***Normal mode*** or ***Power saver mode*** is set, this setting is disabled.
- Activating picture light when FOMA terminal is opened in Power saver mode shortens continuous stand-by duration.
- In Power saver mode, the display will turn on when any key is pressed. If a call or mail is received while screensaver is set, settings according to screensaver are followed.
- When FOMA terminal is closed, picture light will not flash even if set to ***LED display on***.
- Power saver mode is not activated during voice/video-phone calls, i-mode/mail transmission, i-motion/slideshow playback, data transmission with an external device or while camera is activated.

Setting Screensaver <Screen Saver>

Default setting
OFF

When the set time passes, the screen turns dark and only the date and time appear.

- When a call or mail is received, ***Calling*** or ***Receiving*** can be displayed even when screensaver is set.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 6 3 3.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Power saver set*** → ***User set*** → ***Screen Saver*** from Top menu.
- Screensaver setting screen appears.

2 Press 1 [ON (Normal)].

To have *Calling* or *Receiving* appear on display while screensaver is set when a call or mail is received

- Press 2 [ON (Privacy)].
- The above messages are not displayed when receiving data transmission.

To not set a screensaver

- Press 3.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Display turns off if screensaver is active for over approximately two hours, or battery level runs low. (Screensaver setting stays ON.)
  - Screensaver activates after a call or other phone operations but the display turns off after approximately two hours. When ***ON (Privacy)*** is selected and a call or mail is received, ***Missed calls*** or ***## mail message(s)*** appears. Display turns off after approximately two hours.

Adjusting Display Contrast <Brightness>

Default setting: Brightness 12

Select from 16 display brightness levels.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 6 3 4.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Power saver set*** → ***User set*** → ***Brightness*** from Top menu.
- Current brightness appears.

2 Press 0 (brighter) or 0 (darker) to adjust and press ●.

Note

- If ***Normal mode*** or ***Power saver mode*** is set, this setting is disabled.
- Increasing brightness shortens continuous stand-by duration.

Personalize

Arranging the Display

Changing the Menu Screen Background Pattern <Background>

Default setting: 背景パターン 1

Change menu background pattern (image around edge of display).

- Use JPEG/GIF images with a size of 240(W) × 320(H). Flash movies and GIF animation are not available.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 4 4.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Personalize*** → ***Background*** from Top menu.
- My picture of Data box appears.

2 Select folder, press ●, select still picture and press i [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set do not appear.
- Background pattern is set.

To check the still picture

- Select a still picture and press ● [Agree]. Press C to return to the previous screen.

Note

- If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as background and the original image is deleted, the image remains as background until changed.

Changing the Pop-up Window Color and Frame <Pop-up Window>

Default setting
ポップアップ 1

Change background color and frame of pop-up windows of sub menus, etc.

- Use My picture GIF images in Data box with a size of 201(W) × 62(H). (Flash movies, GIF animation and JPEG images are not available.)
- Images shot with the camera are not available.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 カ ABC 4 キ GHI 2 カ ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Personalize*** → ***Pop-up window*** from Top menu.
- My picture of Data box appears.

2 Select folder, press ●, select still picture and press ⓘ [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set do not appear.
- Pop-up window is set.

To check the still picture

- Select a still picture and press ● [Agree]. Press C CLR and the previous screen reappears.

Note

- If a still picture in My picture in Data box is set as pop-up window and the original image is deleted, the image remains as pop-up window until changed.

Changing the Notice Window Color and Frame <Notice Window>

Default setting
お知らせ 1

Change background color and frame of windows with confirmation/error messages.

- Use My picture GIF images in Data box with a size of 201(W) × 182(H). Flash movies, GIF animation and JPEG images are not available.
- Images shot with the camera are not available.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 カ ABC 4 キ GHI 3 タ DEF.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Personalize*** → ***Notice window*** from Top menu.
- My picture of Data box appears.

2 Select folder, press ●, select still picture and press ⓘ [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set do not appear.
- Notice window is set.
- When set as notice window, four pictures within an image appear as animation with four frames.

To check the still picture

- Select a still picture and press ● [Agree]. Press C CLR and the previous screen reappears.

Note

- If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as notice window and the original image is deleted, the image remains as notice window until changed.

Setting Background for Guidance Key <Guidance Keys>

Default setting
See below

Set a background image for each of three guidance keys. (☞P. 27)

- For the center guidance key, use GIF images with a size of 46(W) × 24(H). For the right and left guidance keys, use GIF images with a size of 66(W) × 24(H). Flash movies, GIF animation and JPEG images are not available. Downloaded images can also be used.
- Images shot with the camera are not available.

The default setting is 操作ガイド左１ for Left key, 操作ガイド中央１ for Center key and 操作ガイド右１ for Right key.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 ABC 4 GHI 8 TUV.

- Alternatively, press ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Personalize*** → ***Guidance keys*** from Top menu.
- Guidance keys setting screen appears.

2 Select guidance key and press ●.

3 Select folder, press ●, select still picture and press ⊡ [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set to guidance key do not appear.
- Guidance key background pattern is set.

To check the still picture

- Select a still picture and press ● [Agree]. Press C CLR and the previous screen reappears.

Note

- If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as a guidance key background and the original image is deleted, the image remains as a guidance key background until changed.

Changing Color of Title Line and Status Line <Title and Status Color>

Default setting
Pattern 1

Change the font color and background color in the title line and status line in menus.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 ABC 4 GHI 7 PQRS.

- Alternatively, press ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Personalize*** → ***Title&Status color*** from Top menu.
- Title/Status color screen appears.

2 Select a pattern and press ●.

- Each time pattern is selected, colors for title line and status line change.
- A pattern is set.

Changing Top Menu Design

Set icons and their order, background image and whether to show icon names in the Top menu.

Changing Top Menu Design <Preset Themes>

Default setting: Avant-garde

Change the Top menu icon positions and images to a coordinated theme.
Select ***Avant-garde*** or ***Sophistique***.

- This function changes the following settings.
  Icon, Background, Pop-up window, Notice window, Background pattern, Guidance key, Title & status color, Action focus

1 In Top menu (☞P. 31), press ●6 MNO.

- Preset themes setting screen appears.

2 Select a theme and press ●.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- ***Opening image*** appears. Opening the image may take time.

To not set

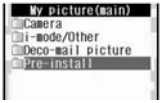
- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Setting Top Menu Icons <Icon Settings>

Change Top menu icons.

- Use JPEG/GIF images or GIF animation with a size of 76(W) × 76(H). Downloaded images can also be used.
- Set two images per icon, for selected and unselected status.
- Up to three scenes are used for GIF animations. No image can be set for selected icon.

1 In Top menu (☞P. 31), select an icon and press ●1 .@/.



2 Select folder, press ●, select still picture for unselected and press ● [OK].

- Images that cannot be set for menu icons do not appear.
- Icon settings confirmation screen appears.

To check the still picture

- Select a still picture and press ● [Agree]. Press C and the previous screen reappears.

When GIF animation is selected

- Top menu reappears.

3 Select *No* and press ●.

To set a different selected icon

- Select ***Yes*** and press ●, then set using steps 2 and 3.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- If an image from My picture of Data box is set as a menu icon, even if deleted, the image is retained until the menu icon setting is changed.

Setting Action Focus for Top Menu Icons <Action Focus>

Default setting: Wheel

Set Action focus for Top menu icons.

- When set, Action focus only applies to icons selected in Top menu.
- Action focus is applied to last image for GIF animations.

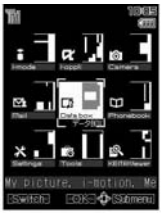
Action focus types

Starlight	Oval rotates	Target	Large square changes into small square
Mist	Light flashes	Wheel	Square rotates
Ripple	A round frame enlarges	Stardust	Light sparkles

1 In Top menu (☞P. 31), press ● 3 DEF.

- Action focus setting screen appears.

2 Select Action focus type and press ●.



To not set Action focus

- Press ⌫ CLR.

Setting Top Menu Background <Set Background>

Default setting: メニュー背景 1

Set Top menu background image.

- Use JPEG and GIF images. Flash movies and GIF animation are not available. Downloaded images can also be used.

1 In Top menu (☞P. 31), press ● 4 GHI.

- My picture in Data box appears.

2 Select folder, press ●, select still picture and press i [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set as background images do not appear.
- Background image is set.

To check the still picture

- Select a still picture and press ● [Agree]. Press ⌫ CLR and the previous screen reappears.

Note

- If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as background image and the original image is deleted, the image remains as background image until changed.

Enabling/Disabling Icon Names <Display Icon Name>

Default setting
OFF

Enable/Disable displaying titles under Top menu icons.

1 **In Top menu (☞P. 31), press ● 5 JKL.**

- Display icon name settings screen appears.

2 **Press 1 [ON: display icon name].**

To not display titles

- Press 2 ABC.

Note

- For preset icons, since the icon name is included in the image, characters appear doubled when Show icon name is set to ***ON***.

Moving Top Menu Icons <Move Icon>

Switch positions of Top menu icons.

1 **In Top menu (☞P. 31), select an icon and press ● 2 ABC.**

2 **Select destination position and press ●.**

Restoring Default for Top Menu <Reset Icon>

Reset Top menu icon settings to default values.

1 **In Top menu (☞P. 31), press ● 7 PQRS.**

- Reset confirmation screen appears.

2 **Select *Yes* and press ●.**

To not reset

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Confirming Key Operations in Stand-by Screen <Key List>

View a list of key operations in stand-by screen.

1 In Top menu (☞P. 31), press ●, select ■*Key list* and press ●.

Key	Operation	Reference
●	Menu	P. 31
●	Shortcut menu	P. 432
● 1+ seconds	Earpiece volume	P. 116
CLR 1+ seconds	Erase message	P. 67
1+ seconds	Compose message	P. 251
	Check new message	P. 233 P. 266
1+ seconds	Add to phonebook	P. 94
1+ seconds	My picture	P. 330
CLR	Start/stop i-motion stand-by Activate i-αppli stand-by	P. 122 P. 319
	Supportbook (preset)	P. 399

Called LED

Setting the Illumination Color

Setting the Called LED Color <Called LED Color>

Default setting
See below

Set the LED (main camera picture light/called LED) color for incoming voice/video-phone calls and mail. If a melody with LED actions is set as the ring tone, link the melody and LED actions (***Melody ON***).

The default setting is ***Green*** for Voice/Video-phone called LED, ***Blue*** for Receive mail LED and ***Without melody*** for called LED ON and mail/message LED.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 5 1 1.

- Alternatively, press ✕ (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Called LED*** → ***Called LED color*** → ***Phone*** from Top menu.
- Called LED color screen appears.

To set video-phone called LED color

- Press ● 2 5 1 2 in stand-by.

To set mail LED color

- Press ● 2 5 2 in stand-by.

2 Select LED color and press ●.

- For each color selected, picture light/called LED color changes.

Types of LED colors

Rainbow	White	Yellow
Mixed colors	Red	Purple
Cyclone	Green	Light blue
Random	Blue	

- ***Rainbow*** lights with a gradation of red, purple, blue, light blue, green and yellow.
- ***Mixed colors*** lights red, yellow, green, light blue, blue and purple in random order.
- ***Cyclone*** lights red, yellow, green, light blue, blue and purple in random order and gradually changes faster.
- ***Random*** lights in a gradation of different colors depending on handset number, other party's number and the date. A gradation of shades of red lights when no caller ID is given.
- Mail LED cannot be set to ***Random***.

Note

- When a call is received during data transmission, LED color is the set color for called LED.
- Called LED is prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Called LED	Phonebook called LED → Group called LED → regular called LED
Mail/Message LED	Phonebook mail LED → Group mail LED → regular mail LED

Related Operations

Set called LED with Melody <Called LED ON>

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 ABC 5 JKL 3 DEF for called LED.

- To set mail LED: Press ● 2 ABC 5 JKL 4 GHI in stand-by.

2 Press 1 あ/a.

- To set to ***Without melody***: Press 2 ABC.

Note

Melody ON

- LED does not activate for melodies without called LED settings.

Changing Font Width

Default setting
Bold

Change the font width for the main display.

- Choose from three styles.

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 3.

- Alternatively, select (Settings) → ***Display*** → ***Font style*** from Top menu.
- Select a style to see sample text.

2 Press 1 [Normal].

To change to bold

- Press 2.

To change to bolder

- Press 3.

Security Settings

■**Security Codes**
- FOMA Terminal Security Code 140
- Changing Terminal Security Code . . . . . <Change Security Code>141
- Setting PIN Code . . . . . <FOMA Card (UIM) Settings>142
- Disabling PIN Lock 144

■**Restricting Phone Operations**
- Lock Functions 146
- Preventing Use by Others . . . . . <All Lock>146
- Disabling Online Activity . . . . . <Self Mode>149
- Hiding Phonebook and Schedule Entries . . . . . <PIM Lock>150
- Prohibiting Keypad Dialing . . . . . <Keypad Dial Lock>151
- Preventing Movie Key (Side Key) Errors . . . . . <Key Guard>152

■**Restricting Mail and Calls**
- Setting Redial and Received Calls . . . . . <Show Call/Received>152
- Viewing Information Set as Secret . . . . . <Secret Mode>153
- Receiving Calls from Only Specified Phone Numbers . . . . . <Accept Calls>154
- Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers . . . . . <Reject Calls>156
- Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID . . . . . <Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure>158
- Silencing Ring Tone for Callers Not in Phonebook . . . . . <Set Mute Seconds>158
- Rejecting Callers Not in Phonebook . . . . . <Reject Unknown>159

■**Other Security Settings**
- Other Security Settings 160

FOMA Terminal Security Code

For convenient use of FOMA terminal functions, security codes are necessary. In addition to the terminal security code used for various handset operations, use security codes, such as network security code and i-mode password, when using network services. Use security codes with various functions to fully utilize the FOMA terminal.

Terminal Security Code (For Various Functions)

Terminal security code is set to ***0000*** by default but can be changed.

- FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring FOMA terminal[*1], FOMA card and identification (a driver's license, etc.) to DoCoMo retailer in the case of a forgotten security code.
  [*1] Person other than registered owner may not be able to receive security code from DoCoMo retailer.
- The following functions require terminal security code.

Items that require security codes

Set/Confirm/Disable i-mode secret code in phonebook			P. 96	Save/Reset i-mode host			P. 228 to P. 229
				Reset i-mode			P. 230
Change terminal security code			P. 141	Change certificate host			P. 240
Set PIN code			P. 142	Reset mail settings			P. 292
Change PIN code			P. 143	Copy all from FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Card			P. 372
Set All lock			P. 146				
Disable All lock			P. 147	Backup to miniSD Memory Card			P. 373
Set Remote lock all			P. 147	Access backup data on miniSD Memory Card			P. 374
Set/Disable PIM lock			P. 150	Copy all from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset			P. 377
Turn on handset while PIM is locked (temporarily disable PIM lock)			P. 151				
				Format miniSD Memory Card			P. 378
Set/Disable Keypad dial lock			P. 151	Set/Disable Data box folder security			P. 383
Set/Disable Received calls and Redial display			P. 152	Send/Receive all Ir data			P. 391
Set/Disable Mail history display			P. 153	Check settings			P. 404
Set/Disable Secret mode			P. 153	Display/Edit owner information details			P. 436
Save/Set/Disable Accept calls			P. 154 to P. 156	Create security memo			P. 443
				Reset settings			P. 448
				Delete user data			P. 448
Save/Set/Disable Reject calls			P. 156 to P. 157	Delete all secret data			P. 450
				Reset total time			P. 443
				Delete all additional service entries			P. 466
Accept/Reject User unset calls			P. 158	Clear memory terms			P. 523
Accept/Reject Unknown caller			P. 159	Software update			P. 559 to P. 564
Delete folders	Mail		P. 280	Move all folder data in Data box			P. 386
	miniSD Memory Card		P. 380				
	Data box		P. 383				
Delete all data	Phonebook	P. 109		Bookmarks	P. 217	Screen memos	P. 220
	Message R/F	P. 236		Mail	P. 281	i-αppli	P. 321
	Chara-den	P. 365		miniSD Memory Card backup data	P. 375	miniSD Memory Card	P. 380
	Data box	P. 383, P. 385		KEITAIViewer	P. 402	Shortcuts	P. 432
	ToDo lists	P. 417		Schedules	P. 430		
	Money calculator	P. 441		Text memos	P. 445		

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Network Security Code

Set at time of registration using the four-digit code for accessing network services and ドコモｅサイト (DoCoMo e-site).

- Contact number listed in “For General Inquiries” on the back of this manual to retrieve forgotten network security code. Alternatively, bring valid identification (a driver’s license, etc.) to any DoCoMo retailer. For those with ***User ID*** and ***Password***, retrieve forgotten code from ドコモｅサイト (DoCoMo e-site).
  ※ Refer to the back cover for details on ドコモｅサイト (DoCoMo e-site).

PIN Code/PIN2 Code

Set both PIN and PIN2 security codes for FOMA card. Terminal security code is set to ***0000*** by default but can be changed. PIN code is a four- to eight-digit number (code) that is entered when FOMA terminal is turned on or when FOMA card is inserted so that an unauthorized third party cannot use FOMA terminal. Enter PIN code to enable making/receiving calls and operating the handset. PIN2 code is four- to eight-digit number that is entered when performing operations such as applying for or using Client certificate, or resetting total cost.

i-mode Password

Four-digit “i-mode password” is required to save/delete sites in マイメニュー (My menu), for message services and registration/cancellation of charged i-mode services. i-mode password is set to ***0000*** by default but can be changed.
(Additionally, information providers may set their own passwords.)

- FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring identification (a driver’s license, etc.) to DoCoMo retailer in the case of a forgotten password.

Note

- To prevent tampering, change terminal security code, PIN/PIN2 code and i-mode password after registration. Keep a separate memo and note password and codes.
- Avoid using the last four digits of your phone number or other easily deciphered numbers.

Change Security Code

Changing Terminal Security Code

Default setting
0000

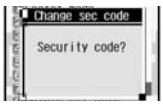
Change the terminal security code (four to eight digits).

- Terminal security code should differ from network security code and i-mode password.

1 In stand-by, press ● 6MNO 7PQRS.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Security*** → ***Change sec code*** from Top menu.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears.

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.



- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

3 Enter new terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

Continued on next page ▶▶

4 Enter new terminal security code (four to eight digits) again and press ●.

- Terminal security code is changed.

FOMA Card (UIM) Settings

Setting PIN Code

Default setting
PIN code: 0000
PIN2 code: 0000

Change the PIN and PIN2 codes on FOMA card.

- PIN codes are four to eight digit codes that prevent unauthorized use of the FOMA card.
- PIN2 code is a four to eight digit code used for authentication when connecting to sites, Internet and online services. Enter when performing Client certificate operations (issuance of Client certificate when using FirstPass) or accessing FirstPass compatible sites (☞P. 237).
- Use previously set PIN and PIN2 codes when inserting an old FOMA card into a new FOMA terminal. PIN and PIN2 codes are ***0000*** if unchanged.
- PIN and PIN2 codes are saved to the FOMA card.

Setting Handset to Require PIN Code Entry when Power is Turned On <PIN Code Input Set>

Default setting
OFF

Enter PIN code when turning on the FOMA terminal to prevent unauthorized use.

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 MNO 2 ABC, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

UIM settings screen

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Security*** → ***UIM settings*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

2 Press 1 [PIN code input set].

- PIN code entry screen appears.

3 Press 1 [ON: set].

- ***Rest 3 times*** appears. Enter PIN code up to three times.

To disable

- Press 2 ABC.

4 Enter PIN code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Entered PIN code is masked with asterisks.
- When activated, PIN code set is set to ***ON*** and the PIN code entry screen of step 2 appears.

Note

- In PIN code entry screen, PIN code is locked if incorrectly entered three times. Disable PIN lock. Enter new PIN code while unlocked. (☞P. 144)

Entering PIN code when power is turned on

Set PIN code input set to ***ON*** and PIN code entry screen appears when the power is turned on.

- Enter PIN code to operate FOMA terminal. Prevents unauthorized use of the handset.

1 Press [PWR HLD] (Power) for 2+ seconds to turn on handset.

- ***Rest 3 times*** appears.

2 Enter PIN code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Enter PIN code up to three times.
- Entered PIN code is masked with asterisks.
- Enter correct PIN code to proceed to stand-by.

Note

- In PIN code entry screen, PIN code is locked if incorrectly entered three times. Disable PIN lock. Enter new PIN code while unlocked. (☞P. 144)

Changing PIN/PIN2 Codes <Change PIN Code/Change PIN2 Code>

Default setting
PIN code: 0000
PIN2 code: 0000

Change PIN/PIN2 codes.

1 In stand-by, press ● [6 MNO] [2 ABC], enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- FOMA card (UIM) settings screen appears.
- When PIN code input setting is set to ***OFF***, the PIN code cannot be changed.

2 Press [2 ABC] [Change PIN code].

- ***Rest 3 times*** appears. Enter PIN/PIN2 code up to three times.

To change PIN2 code

- Press [3 def].

3 Enter PIN/PIN2 code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Entered PIN/PIN2 codes are masked with asterisks.

4 Enter new PIN/PIN2 code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Entered PIN/PIN2 codes are masked with asterisks.

5 Enter the new PIN/PIN2 code (four to eight digits) again and press ●.

- ***Changed*** appears.

Note

- In PIN code/PIN2 code entry screen, PIN/PIN2 codes are locked if incorrectly entered three times. Disable PIN lock (☞P. 144). New PIN/PIN2 codes must be entered while unlocked.

Disabling PIN Lock

In the entry screen the PIN/PIN2 codes are locked if incorrectly entered three times. In such cases, the PIN lock must be disabled, and a new PIN/PIN2 code must be set.

- Check the FOMA service registration agreement (customer copy) for information on PUK (PIN lock disable code).

Screens locked with PIN/PIN2

- ***Rest 10 times*** appears.
- Enter PUK up to ten times.

Disabling PIN Lock

1 In the PUK screen with PIN lock set, enter PUK (eight digits) and press ●.

- Entered PUK is masked with asterisks.

2 Enter new PIN code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Entered PIN code is masked with asterisks.

3 Enter new PIN code (four to eight digits) again and press ●.

- ***Changed*** appears.

Note

- Use the same steps to disable PIN2 code lock.
- If three consecutive PIN2 code entry errors are made and the FOMA terminal is locked, the handset continues to receive a signal and can make/receive calls and send/receive mail. However, if three consecutive PIN code entry errors are made, the FOMA terminal is locked and does not receive a signal.

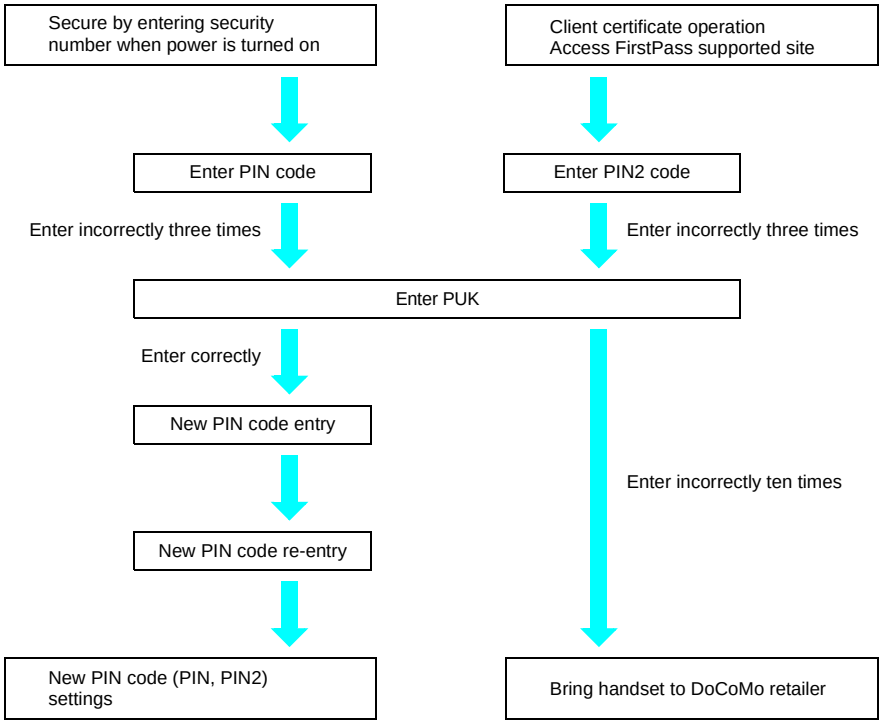
PIN code, PIN2 code and PUK

Default FOMA card PIN and PIN2 codes are ***0000***, but both can be changed. Use previously set PIN and PIN2 codes when inserting an old FOMA card into a new FOMA terminal. PIN/PIN2 codes are automatically locked if incorrectly entered three times. Note new numbers when changing.

- PUK is an eight digit number to disable a PIN/PIN2 code lock. Enter the PUK to unlock.
- If PUK is entered incorrectly ten times, FOMA card is completely locked. Note PUK.

※ Keep FOMA service registration agreement (customer copy) in a safe place.

※ FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring FOMA terminal, FOMA card and identification (a driver's license, etc.) to DoCoMo retailer in the case of forgotten PUK or completely locked FOMA card.



Lock Functions

Restrict access to phonebook retrieval, save, delete, and call by dial key functions.

- Terminal security code is necessary for setting/disabling a lock.
- Set the following items.

Lock function	Operation/Restrictions	Reference
All lock	Prevents the FOMA terminal from being used without permission for all operations other than ON/OFF.	P. 146
Remote lock all	Remotely set All lock.	P. 147
Self mode*	Voice calls, video-phone calls, i-mode mail, SMS, Message R/F and i-mode functions are not available. Message explaining the handset is turned off or in a place with no signal is played to callers.	P. 149
PIM lock	Display, edit and operation for phonebook, memo, schedule, ToDo list, mail, i-mode, i-αppli, Record messages (voice/video-phone calls), voice memos, multimedia, and money calculator are not available so that private information access is prevented. Set each item individually. Locking multimedia will also lock camera functions.	P. 150
Keypad dial lock	Dialing and phonebook editing are not available. Use phonebook or call history to call.	P. 151
Key guard*	Lock movie key (side key) and prevent errors.	P. 152

* Terminal security code is not required for Self mode and Key guard.

All Lock

Preventing Use by Others

Default setting
Disable

Prevent all operations other than ON/OFF.

- Set All lock remotely from payphones and other phones. (Remote lock all: ☞P. 147)
- Terminal security code is required to disable All lock.

Setting All Lock

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 MNO 6 MNO, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

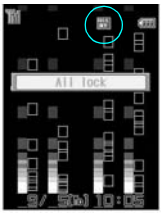
Lock settings screen

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Security*** → ***Lock settings*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

2 Press 1 あ/＆ [All lock].

- Confirmation screen for All lock appears.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.



● All lock is set. ***All lock*** appears in the stand-by display (appears).

To not set

● Select ***No*** and press ●.

Disabling All Lock

1 During All lock, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) in stand-by and press ●.

● Numbers are masked with asterisks.

● ***All lock*** and disappear and All lock is disabled.

Note

● During All lock, 待受画面1 appears regardless of Stand-by display settings.

● When a call is received when All lock is enabled, the other party only hears the busy signal. When All lock is disabled ***Missed calls*** appears.

● During All lock, voice/video-phone calls are not available. Only emergency numbers such as 110, 119 and 118 may be called. To make a call, enter phone number and press .

● During All lock, alarms do not sound. Notices also do not appear.

● i-mode mail/SMS and Message R/F are received but do not appear. Once All lock is disabled, i-mode mail/SMS and Message R/F icons appear.

● Turning power off does not disable All lock.

● Failure to disable five times in a row will turn the FOMA terminal off. Turn the handset on again and enter terminal security code (four to eight digits).

Setting All Lock Remotely <Remote Lock All>

Default setting
See below

Set All lock by calling FOMA terminal from payphones or other phones a set number of times within a set period (such as three times in five minutes) and recording missed calls.

● Remote lock all activates only when all three of the following set criteria are met.

The default setting is ***OFF*** (disabled) for Remote lock all, ***5 times*** for Number of calls and ***3 minutes*** for Monitoring.

Item	Registration/Setting
License number	Save up to three phone numbers to use to perform settings. Payphone is also available.
Number of received calls	Number of calls required in the set time (three to ten times).
Monitoring	Amount of time (one to ten minutes) to count the number of times called from License number.

● All lock cannot be disabled remotely. Refer to “Disabling All Lock” to disable.

Setting Remote lock all

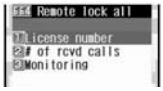
1 In stand-by, press ● 6 MNO 6 MNO, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Lock settings screen appears.

2 Press 4 GHI [Remote lock all].

- Remote lock all setting screen appears.

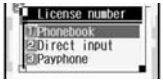
3 Press 1 [ON].



To disable

- Press 2 ABC.
- If the FOMA terminal is called, guidance is not played.

4 Press 1 [License number], select slot and press ●.



- To save a new number, select **----------**.
- Save up to three.

To delete License number

- Select number, press ● 2 ABC, select ***Yes*** and press ●. Proceed to step 6.

To change License number

- Select number and press ● 1 .@.

5 Select input method, press ● and enter phone number.

To select from phonebook

- Press 1 .@., select name and press ●. (☞P. 104)

To input directly

- Press 2 ABC, input phone number and press ●.

To allow access from payphones

- Press 3 DEF.

6 Press CLR.

- Remote lock all setting screen reappears.

7 Press 2 ABC [# of rcvd calls], select number of calls and press ●.

- The number of calls is set.
- Remote lock all setting screen reappears.

8 Press 3 DEF [Monitoring], select time and press ●.

- Time is set.
- Remote lock all setting screen reappears.

9 Press i [Complete].

- Remote lock all is set.

Operating Remote lock all

Set Remote lock all from other phones while setting.

- Operate from phone number set as License number. Set Notify caller ID ***ON*** when setting.
- If multiple calls are received from numbers saved as license numbers, only the call received first is counted toward Number of received calls.
- Set from payphones if allowed.
- Same operations are available when All lock is already set.

1 Call FOMA terminal from payphones and other phones set as Remote lock all License number.

2 Disconnect after a few rings.

- Call is recorded in Received calls.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 for set number of times in set time.

When All lock is set

- Beeping tone indicating All lock sounds on phone. (Charges are incurred by caller.)

Note

- Numbers saved for Reject calls, Accept calls, Reject unknown are available for License number.
- Operations are available while in Drive mode. Disconnect after Drive mode message starts. However, when the set number of calls being counted is reached and All lock is set, a beeping tone is played instead of Drive mode guidance indicating All lock.
- Calls from License number are not counted in the following circumstances.
  - Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to ***Activate*** and ring duration is set to ***0 seconds***
  - Call Waiting Service is enabled and a call is received using the service
  - Two or more License numbers are registered and a call is received from a different License number while setting
- Number of calls is reset in the following circumstances.
  - Power is turned off
  - A call from a License number that is being counted is answered.
  - Call is automatically answered with Record message or earphone/microphone
- Edit/Delete are not available for phonebook set with License number.

Self Mode

Disabling Online Activity

Default setting: OFF

Disable all functions that require transmissions such as voice/video-phone calls, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F and i-mode.

- Message stating handset is turned off or in a place with no signal is played to calls received while in Self mode. DoCoMo Voice Mail Service (☞P. 452) and Call Forwarding Service (☞P. 456) are available.
- Self mode is retained after restarting.
- 110, 119 and 118 can be dialed while in Self mode. Call to emergency numbers disable Self mode.
- Ir exchange and Ir remote control operations are not available.

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL 8 TUV.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Self mode*** from Top menu.
- Self mode screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press 1 [ON: set].

To disable

- Press 2.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Self appears at the top of the display.

Note

- Self mode is not available when in i-mode stand-by (flashes).

While in Self mode

- View i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F sent and received before setting Self-mode, create or edit and save messages. Sending is not available.
- Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center and SMS are held at SMS center.

PIM Lock

Hiding Phonebook and Schedule Entries

Default setting
OFF

Restrict access to mail and phonebook to prevent access personal information or unauthorized editing.

- Items to lock
  Phonebook, memo, schedule, ToDo list, mail, i-mode, i-αppli, Record message (voice/video-phone calls), Voice memo, Multimedia, Money calculator
- Lock each item separately.
- Locking multimedia will also lock camera functions.

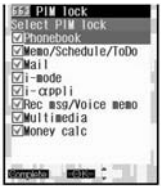
1 In stand-by, press ● 6 6, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Security*** → ***Lock settings*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Lock settings screen appears.

2 Press 3 [PIM lock].

- PIM lock confirmation screen appears.

3 Press 1 [ON: set].



To disable

- Press 2.

4 Select item to lock or disable, press ● and i [Complete].

- ☑ appears for locked and ☐ appears for disabled items.
- Press ● to switch.
- PIM is locked and PIN appears in stand-by.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Note

- PIM is an abbreviation for Personal Information Manager.
- PIM lock is retained when restarted.
- Locked items cannot be received by Ir exchange while PIM is locked.
- Phonebook PIM lock is not available when Reject unknown is set.
- Redials, Received calls and Sent/Received messages are deleted when phonebook PIM is locked. Redials and Received calls are available after setting. Names and images do not appear if saved in the phonebook.
- Following functions are disabled when phonebook PIM is locked.
  - ■ 2-touch dialing
  - ■ Select ring tone, mail ring tone, called LED, mail/message LED
  - ■ Entering i-mode mail and SMS receiver from phonebook
  - ■ Settings other than ***OFF*** in Accept calls and Reject calls
  - ■ Alarm, schedule, and ToDo list contact settings using phonebook
  - ■ Displaying schedule by contact
  - ■ Reject Unknown
- Sent/Received mail addresses are deleted when mail PIM is locked. Sent/Received mail address history are retained after PIM lock is disabled.
- Schedule or ToDo alarm does not sound while schedule PIM is locked (normal alarms sound).
- While mail PIM is locked, i-mode mail/SMS and Message R/F are received automatically but do not appear. When PIM lock is disabled, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F icons appear.
- When sending a substitute image or Chara-den during a video-phone call, the set image is sent even when multimedia PIM is locked.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears when function under PIM lock is attempted. Enter correct terminal security code to temporarily disable PIM lock. Function is locked when operations are finished. PIM data on the miniSD Memory Card can be accessed with ***View miniSD data*** for each function (phonebook, Memo/Schedule/ToDo, mail).
- If multimedia PIM is locked, the phonebook ring tone and mail ring tone are bypassed and user-selected ring tone sounds. Also, the image set for picture call does not appear. Attached images 10,001 bytes or more do not appear in mail.

Keypad Dial Lock

Prohibiting Keypad Dialing

Default setting
OFF

Prevent calling from functions other than phonebook (excluding miniSD Memory Card phonebook) and redial.

- Error tones (beeps) sound, ***Keypad dial lock*** appears and stand-by reappears when dial keys are pressed. When Keypad sound is set to ***Silent***, error tone does not sound.
- 110, 119, and 118 can be called with Keypad dial lock set.
- When Keypad dial lock is set, Redial, Received calls and Received/Sent mail history are cleared. Redial for further calls made are saved and can be used to make calls.

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 MNO 6 MNO, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Lock settings screen appears.

2 Press 2 ABC [Keypad dial lock].

- Keypad dial lock setting screen appears.

3 Press 1 [ON: set].

To disable

- Press 2 ABC.
- Keypad dial lock is set and DISP appears in stand-by.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- The following functions are also disabled when Keypad dial lock is set.
  - ■ Sending SMS or i-mode mail through direct address input (address input from the phonebook is possible)
  - ■ Saving/Editing/Deleting phonebook entries
  - ■ Calling from alarms
  - ■ Receiving phonebook data by Ir exchange
  - ■ International prefix (IDD prefix setting)
  - ■ Transferring (Copying) phonebook data between FOMA terminal and FOMA card
  - ■ Phone To (AV Phone To)
  - ■ Mail To
  - ■ Calls from Bar code reader and Character reader
  - ■ Transferring phonebook data between FOMA terminal and miniSD
- DoCoMo network service Redial is not available while keypad dial lock is set.
- Keypad dial lock is retained when restarted.

Key Guard

Preventing Movie Key (Side Key) Errors

Lock movie key (side key) when the FOMA terminal is closed and prevent errors.

1 In stand-by, press ● for 1+ seconds.

- Key guard is set (🔒 appears).

To disable

- Press ● again for 1+ seconds.

Show Call/Received

Setting Redial and Received Calls

Default setting: ON (display)

Set to not display Received calls and redials.

Example: When setting for *Show received calls*

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 MNO 4 GHI, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Security*** → ***Show call/received*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Show called/received screen appears.

2 Press 1 あ [Show rcvd calls].

- Show received setting screen appears.

To set Redial display

- Press 2 か.

3 Press 2 カ ABC [OFF: not display].

- Received calls are not displayed.

To display

- Press 1 あ.

Note

- Show called/received history settings are retained after restarting.
- Record message (☞P. 71) is not played if Received calls display is set to ***OFF***.
- Received calls and Redials are recorded when Show called/received is set to ***OFF***. When set to ***ON***, histories recorded while setting was ***OFF*** can be viewed.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Setting Mail History Display <Show Sent/Received>

Default setting
ON (display)

Set Sent and Received messages (☞P. 282) to not appear.

Example: When setting for *Show sent messages*

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 5, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Security*** → ***Show sent/rcvd*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Show sent/received screen appears.

2 Press 1 [Show sent messages].

- Show sent messages setting screen appears.

To set show received messages

- Press 2.

3 Press 2 [OFF: not display].

- Sent/Received messages history is not displayed.

To display

- Press 1.

Note

- Sent mail history and Received mail history are recorded even if Show sent/received is set to ***OFF***. When set to ***ON***, histories recorded while setting was ***OFF*** can be viewed.
- Show sent/received settings are retained when restarted.

Secret Mode

Viewing Information Set as Secret

Default setting
OFF (disabled)

Normal and Secret phonebook, schedule and ToDo list are shown in Secret mode.

- Only normal data is shown when Secret mode is disabled.
- Set to automatically disable Secret mode when Power saver mode activates in stand-by and display turns off, screensaver activates or FOMA terminal is closed when in stand-by.
- Secret mode is disabled when the power is turned off.
- Refer to P. 110 for phonebook, P. 425 for schedule and P. 415 for ToDo list.

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 1, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Security*** → ***Secret mode*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Secret mode setting screen appears.

2 Press 1 [ON: set].

- Auto disable setting screen appears.

To disable

- Press 2.

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Press 2 [Auto disable] and ●.

- Secret mode is activated (🔑 appears).

To not automatically disable

- Press 1.

Accept Calls

Receiving Calls from Only Specified Phone Numbers

Only accept calls from specified callers. All other numbers (including those without caller ID) are not connected.
To set Accept calls, save numbers from the phonebook in a list and set those numbers later to be accepted.

- Even if the caller is on the Accept calls list, if caller ID is not sent the call does not connect. It is recommended to set Caller ID Request Service so guidance requesting caller ID is played.
- Phone numbers set for Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone, Reject unsupported ID cannot be set for Accept calls.
- Callers not on the Accept calls list hear a busy signal. ***Missed calls*** appears and the caller's name or phone number are recorded in received history.
- While phonebook PIM is locked, Accept calls is disabled and all calls are connected.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.
- FOMA card phonebook numbers are not available. Only numbers in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook are available.
- Remote lock all is also available for phone numbers not included in Accept calls setting. Beeps sound after the set number of calls is reached and Remote lock all is set. (Charges are incurred by caller.)

Saving Phone Numbers to Accept

Save up to 20 phone numbers.

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 3, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

Accept/Reject calls setting screen

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Security*** → ***Accept/Reject*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

2 Press 1 [Accept calls].

- Accept calls screen appears.

When *Disable reject calls* (phonebook) appears

- Phone number is set to be rejected. Disable and try again. (☞P. 157)

When *Disable reject calls* (specified numbers) appears

- Phone number is set to Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone or Reject unsupported ID. Disable and try again.

3 Press 3 [Save list].

- If another person is registered, name appears.

When *PIM is locked* appears

- Phonebook PIM is locked. Disable and try again. (☞P. 150)

4 Select list number and press ●.

5 Select name and press ●.

Saved list

- Phone number and name in phonebook is saved. (☞P. 104)
- Repeat steps 4 and 5 to save other phone numbers.

To use Accept calls

- After this, set Accept calls.

Note

- If entry saved in Accept calls is edited/deleted in phonebook, list contents are edited/deleted. If Accept calls is activated, entries cannot be edited/deleted (except for delete All in group/Delete all).
- Refer to P. 460 for details on Caller ID Request Service.

Related Operations

Register from phonebook <Accept calls>

1 **In stand-by, press ▶ name ▶ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ list number ▶ ●.**

Delete phone number in list <Delete>

1 **In saved list, select name ▶ ● ▶ ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.**

- If all phone numbers saved in list are deleted after Accept calls is set, the setting is disabled.

Change phone number in list <Change>

1 **In saved list, select name ▶ ● ▶ ▶ phone number ▶ ●.**

Accepting Calls from Specified Numbers

Default setting: OFF

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 3, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen appears.

2 Press 1 [Accept calls].

- Accept calls screen appears.

When *Disable reject calls* (phonebook) appears

- Phone number is set to be rejected. Disable and try again. (☞P. 157)

When *Disable reject calls* (specified numbers) appears

- Phone number is set to Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone or Reject unsupported ID. Disable and try again.

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Press 1 [ON: set].

- If phone number is not saved in the list, the Save list screen appears. When Save list is finished, Accept calls is set.

To disable

- Press 2.

When *PIM is locked* appears

- Phonebook PIM is locked. Disable and try again. (☞P. 150)

Reject Calls

Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers

Reject voice/video-phone calls from specified callers. All other numbers (including those without caller ID) are connected.

To set Reject calls, save numbers from the phonebook in a list and set those numbers later to be rejected.

- Even if Reject calls is set, if the other party does not send caller ID, the call is connected. It is recommended to set Reject by reason of non-disclosure, or Caller ID Request Service so guidance requesting caller ID is played.
- When Accept calls is set for a phone number, Reject calls cannot be set.
- Rejected callers hear a busy signal. ***Missed calls*** appears and the caller's name or phone number is recorded in Received calls.
- While phonebook PIM is locked, Reject calls is disabled and all calls are connected.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.
- FOMA card phonebook numbers are not available. Only numbers in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook can be set.
- Remote lock all is also available for phone numbers saved in Reject calls. Beeps sound after the set number of calls is reached and Remote lock all is set. (Charges are incurred by caller.)

Saving Phone Numbers to Reject

Save up to 20 phone numbers.

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 3, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen appears.

2 Press 2 [Reject calls].

- Reject calls screen appears.

When *Disable accept calls* appears

- Phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again. (☞P. 155)

3 Press 3 [Save list].

- If another person is registered, name appears.

When *PIM is locked* appears

- Phonebook PIM is locked. Disable and try again. (☞P. 150)

4 Select list number and press ●.

5 Select name and press ●.

Saved list

- Phone number and name in phonebook are saved. (☞P. 104)
- Repeat steps 4 and 5 to save other phone numbers.

To use Reject calls

- After this, set Reject calls.

Note

- When editing/deleting an entry in the Reject calls list, the saved contents are also edited/deleted. However, if the number is set for Reject calls, entry cannot be edited/deleted (except for delete All in group/Delete all).
- Refer to P. 460 for details on Caller ID Request Service.
- Refer to P. 158 for details on Reject by reason of non-disclosure.

Related Operations

Register from phonebook <Reject Calls>

1 In stand-by, press ▼ ▶ name ▶ ▣ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ list number ▶ ●.

Delete phone number in list <Delete>

1 In saved list, select name ▶ ● ▶ 2 ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.

- If all phone numbers saved in list are deleted after Reject calls is set, the setting is disabled.

Change phone number in list <Change>

1 In saved list, select name ▶ ● ▶ 1 ▶ phone number ▶ ●.

Rejecting Calls from Specified Numbers

Default setting: OFF

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 3, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen appears.

2 Press 2 [Reject calls].

- Reject calls screen appears.

When *Disable accept calls* appears

- Phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again. (☞P. 155)

3 Press 1 [ON: set].

- If phone number is not saved in the list, the Save list screen appears. When Save list is finished, Reject calls is set.

To disable

- Press 2.

When *PIM is locked* appears

- Phonebook PIM is locked. Disable and try again. (☞P. 150)

Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure

Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

Default setting
Accept all

When caller ID is not sent, the reason of non-disclosure appears. Set handset to reject calls depending on reason.

- When call is received from caller who is set to be rejected due to a non-disclosure reason, the call is not connected. Calls of other non-disclosure reasons will connect. Rejected callers hear a busy signal. ***Missed calls*** appears and the reason of non-disclosure is recorded in Received calls.
- It is recommended to set Caller ID Request Service so guidance requesting caller ID is played.
- When Accept calls is set for a phone number, Reject by reason of non-disclosure cannot be set.
- SMS and i-mode mail is received normally.

Reason

User unset	When the caller wishes to withhold caller ID.
Payphone	When the call is received from a payphone.
Not support	When the caller cannot send caller ID, such as when the call is received from overseas or ordinary (landline) telephones via various transfer services. However, caller ID may still appear depending on the company.

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 MNO 3 DEF, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen appears.

2 Select 4 *Reject user unset*, 5 *Reject payphone* or 6 *Reject not support* and press ●.

When *Disable accept calls* appears

- Phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again. (☞P. 155)

3 Press 2 ABC [Reject].

To accept

- Press 1 .@.

Note

- Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized when set with Drive mode.

Set Mute Seconds

Silencing Ring Tone for Callers Not in Phonebook

Default setting
00 seconds
(Ring tone sounds immediately)

Set ring tone to delay sounding for set number of seconds when the caller is not registered in the phonebook (including those without caller ID).

- This is one way to avoid nuisance calls.
- When setting mute seconds, set to record calls disconnected during mute seconds duration in Received calls.

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 あ 7 PQRS.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Set mute seconds*** from Top menu.

2 Enter mute seconds (two digits: 00 to 99 seconds) and press ●.

- Enter ***00*** to end.

3 Press 1 あ [ON: show in Received calls].

To not make call appear

- Press 2 か.
- In Received calls, press ● # ☆ to show all calls. Press ● # ☆ again to return to the previous view.

Note

- Set mute seconds shorter than ring duration for Record message or Voice Mail Service to prioritize set mute seconds.
- Set mute seconds activates for calls from callers in phonebook when phonebook PIM is locked.
- Reject unknown cannot be set simultaneously with Set mute seconds.
- Drive mode is prioritized when set with Set mute seconds.
- When Set mute seconds and Manner mode are both on and the set time passes, operation is in accordance with Manner mode settings.

Reject Unknown

Rejecting Callers Not in Phonebook

Default setting
Accept

Set handset to reject calls from callers not in the phonebook.

- Caller hears a busy signal. ***Missed calls*** appears and the call is saved in the Received calls.
- Caller ID Request Service and Reject by reason of non-disclosure can be set to request other party's phone number.
- SMS and i-mode mail is received regardless of this function.

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 MNO 3 DEF, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen appears.

2 Press 3 DEF [Reject unknown].

- Reject unknown screen appears.

When *Disable accept calls* appears

- Phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again. (☞P. 155)

When *PIM is locked* appears

- Phonebook PIM is locked. Disable and try again. (☞P. 150)

When *Disable Set mute seconds* appears

- Mute seconds is set. Set to ***0 seconds*** and try again. (☞P. 158)

3 Press 2 か [Reject].

To accept

- Press 1 あ.

Note

- Reject unknown is prioritized when set with Drive mode.

Other Security Settings

Use the following settings to secure your FOMA terminal.

Intent	Function/Service name	Reference
Select mail to receive.	Receive option	“FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”
Change mail address.	Change mail address	
Reject mail from specified domains.	Reject/Receive mail from selected domains	
Reject mail from specified addresses.	Reject/Receive selected mail	
Reject all unsolicited mail.	Reject 未承諾広告※ (unsolicited ad) mail	
Reject mail from i-mode terminals that send more than 200 i-mode mail per day.	Reject mass i-mode mail senders	
Receive/Reject i-mode mail.	Receive/Reject only i-mode mail	
Reject mail from PCs.		
Temporarily disable mail function.	Suspend mail functions	
Reject all short messages, or short messages from senders with no caller ID.	Reject SMS/Confirm rejection settings	
Use i-mode to save/check safety information during disasters.	Disaster Message Board Service	
Save specific phone numbers to reject.	Nuisance Call Barring Service (DoCoMo network service)	P. 459
Check to see if software update for FOMA terminal is necessary. Download and update if necessary.	Software update	P. 559
Scan for problems that may arise when importing data and programs from external devices to the FOMA terminal.	Scanning function	P. 564
Use Client certificate to connect to SSL-enabled sites. （Only for FirstPass sites.）	FirstPass (DoCoMo electronic authentication service)	P. 237

Camera

- Before Using the Camera 162
- Shooting Still Pictures . . . . . <Shoot Still Picture>170
- Shooting Movies . . . . . <Shoot Movie>174
- Changing Settings for Shooting 175
- Changing Camera Settings 184
- Sending Still Pictures or Movies After Shooting . . . . . <Send Message>189
- Using Bar Code Reader . . . . . <Bar Code Reader>190
- Reading Text . . . . . <Character Reader (OCR)>193

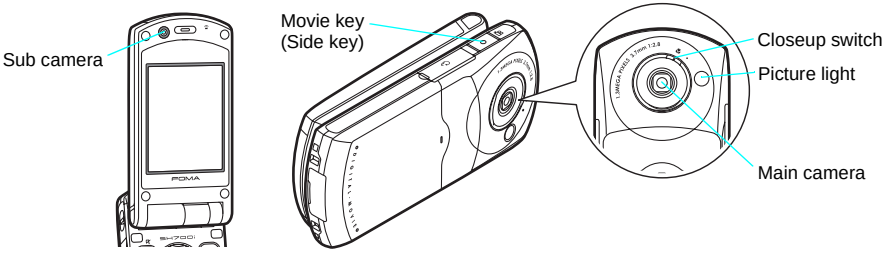
Before Using the Camera

Camera Operations

The FOMA terminal has two cameras, a main camera (external) and a sub camera (built-in). Use these cameras to shoot still pictures and movies. Use the main camera to shoot pictures of people and the landscape, and use the sub camera to shoot pictures of yourself. When making a video-phone call, use the sub camera to send images of yourself to the other party, and switch to the main camera to send images of people and the landscape.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the cameras may differ from the actual color and brightness.



Shoot still pictures and movies

Shoot up to 960×1,280 pixel still pictures, and up to 320×240 pixel movies. When shooting a movie, select ***Image + voice***, ***Image only*** or ***Voice only***. Shoot pictures of text and convert to data (OCR), and read bar codes (JAN code/QR code).

Use images shot with the cameras for various applications

Send images shot with the cameras by i-mode mail, save them to the phonebook or use one for the FOMA terminal stand-by display. Send movies by i-motion mail.

Use handy camera functions to get the best shot

Use the picture light when shooting images indoors or in a dimly lit environment. Adjust brightness or shoot using Shoot by scene, Effect shot or Auto timer.

Set the image quality and size, add frames and shoot continuous images

Set the quality and size of the image according to intended use. Add frames to images. Use Continuous mode to capture the best shot. Use Bracket continuous mode to shoot nine images with different brightness and picture light color settings. Or, use Overlap continuous mode that combines five consecutively captured still pictures into a single image.

Relax when shooting

The camera is angled approximately ten degrees. Therefore, keep the FOMA terminal straight when shooting the subject.

Easily shoot movies

Shoot, stop and save movies with the movie key (side key).

Continually edit images while comparing images before and after editing

Change the color tone or touch, and add frames to shot images. Also combine two shot still pictures and create a panorama image.

- When taking shots of people, use Face effects to modify the face and use Facial treatment to add makeup.
- Change the data size of an image to send by i-mode mail.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Clean the lens before shooting images

- Fingerprints or oil on the lens may cause images to blur and rays of light may appear in images when shot near a strong light source. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth before shooting images.

Do not shoot images while the handset is charging

- Images may appear dark and distorted when shot with insufficient battery power.

Do not apply force to the lens

- Do not apply force to the lens when closing the FOMA terminal as this may damage the lens.

The main camera uses a CCD camera and the sub camera uses a CMOS camera

- Although the cameras are made with high-precision technology, constantly bright or dark pixels or lines may be visible. Further, white lines and other noise may appear in images especially when shooting images in dimly lit surroundings.
- The quality of images may deteriorate when shot or saved after the FOMA terminal has been left in a warm location for a long time.
- If the cameras are exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, the internal color filter may discolor, creating a discoloration of shot images.
- Images shot of the sun, a light or other strong light source will appear dark and distorted.
- Direct images shot of the sun may damage the performance of the CCD (image sensor).

Select the image quality according to the application

- To give priority to the image quality when shooting an image, select ***SUPER FINE***. The data size will be larger, but the image quality will be better.
  At these image size settings, fewer images can be saved, more time is required to send these images by i-mode mail and the images may be reduced when sent. Select the image quality according to the application. (☞P. 179)

Set Closeup mode when shooting close subjects

- Slide Closeup switch to to shoot clear images at close range. Recommended mode for shooting close subjects (approximately 10 cm). (☞P. 175)

Important notes for shooting images

- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the cameras may differ from the actual color and brightness.
- Images shot of the sun, a light or other strong light source will appear dark and distorted.
- Make sure that your fingers, hair and handset strap do not obscure the camera lens when shooting images.
- Because battery power is depleted more quickly when shooting images, it is recommended to press PWR to end Camera mode after shooting images.
- If a voice/video-phone call is received or the alarm sounds when viewing the still picture preview screen or movie recording screen, the camera function is canceled and the voice/video-phone call or alarm screen appears. After that screen ends, the camera screen reappears and the previous still picture or movie data can be saved.
- The Auto timer is canceled if a voice/video-phone call is received or the alarm sounds when the Auto timer is enabled.
- Camera shutter sound volume cannot be changed. The shutter sound is also audible during Manner mode and Drive mode and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.
- Picture light can be activated to flash while shooting images.
- Moving the FOMA terminal while shooting images may cause images to become blurred. Shoot images while holding the handset as still as possible or use the Auto timer.
- Because a larger image size requires more data, movement in the image on the FOMA terminal display may appear slow.
- Indoor fluorescent lighting may create flickering or streaky shading on the screen. This flickering or shading may be reduced by changing the lighting conditions or brightness or adjusting the camera brightness.
- After switching from the main camera to the sub camera, it may take time for the brightness and tone to correctly appear.

Copyrights and rights of portrait

- Images and audio recorded with the FOMA terminal are for personal use and may not be used without the consent of the rightful person in accordance with copyright laws. Please note that the use of the likeness or name of other individuals without their consent, defacement or a similar act may infringe on an individual's rights of portrait. Please be aware of copyrights and rights of portrait when making public images and audio recorded with the handset on the Internet or similar media.
  The recording of images or audio may be restricted at concerts, performances and exhibits even when recorded for personal use.
- Do not use this handset to send copyrighted images for uses other than those permitted under copyright laws.

Please respect the privacy of others when using a camera-enabled mobile phone to shoot and send images.

Note

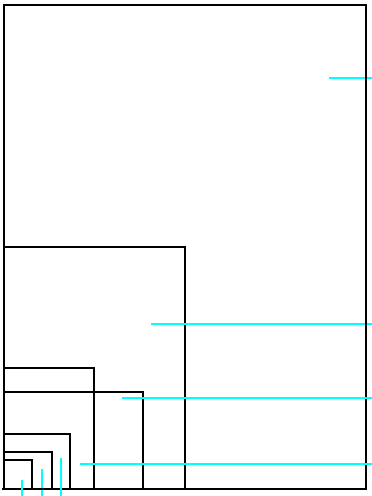
- The FOMA terminal may become warm after continuous use of the camera. This is not a malfunction.
- If the battery level is low, images on the screen may appear dark and distorted.
- If the ambient temperature becomes high when using the main camera, ***Camera function is not available now*** appears and the camera turns off.

Image Size

Still picture mode

The following are the image sizes of still pictures that can be shot (saved) with the FOMA terminal.

※ Name of image size: pixel width ○○ × pixel height ○○



Max (SXGA): 960×1,280
This is the maximum image size that can be shot with the FOMA terminal.
Suitable for viewing on a PC or printing.

VGA: 480×640
Suitable for viewing on a PC.

CIF: 352×288
Suitable for viewing on a PC.

Stand-by: 240×320
This is the size of the display on the FOMA terminal. This size is useful for shooting a still picture and setting it as the stand-by display. Suitable size for sending to i-mode terminal.

QCIF: 176×144
This is the size of the video-phone main display.
This size is useful for shooting a still picture to use as a substitute image.

sQCIF: 128×96

Icon: 76×76
This is the size of the icons on the FOMA terminal.
This size is useful for shooting a still picture and setting it as a menu icon.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Approximate Number of Recordable Images

Still picture mode

- This lists the approximate number of images with the same image size and quality that can be saved in the FOMA terminal. The number of images are fewer when other images, i-αppli software, or other types of files are saved to the FOMA terminal handset. Further, the number of still pictures that can be shot may be fewer depending on the shooting conditions and the subject.
  The following are the approximate number of images that can be recorded to the FOMA terminal handset according to the image quality. Refer to P. 567 for the approximate number of images that can be saved to a 16 MB/32 MB miniSD Memory Card according to the image quality.

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
Icon: 76×76	—	295 shots	—
sQCIF: 128×96	360 shots	250 shots	180 shots
QCIF: 176×144	335 shots	180 shots	115 shots
Stand-by: 240×320	225 shots	130 shots	40 shots
CIF: 352×288	180 shots	100 shots	40 shots
VGA: 480×640	100 shots	60 shots	40 shots
Max: 960×1,280	25 shots	12 shots	8 shots

Note

- Refer to P. 178 for the method of setting the image size of still pictures.
- Refer to P. 339 for how to change the image size of shot still pictures.
- The default setting is ***Stand-by: 240×320***.
- Use a miniSD Memory Card (☞P. 369) to transfer and save still pictures from the FOMA terminal handset to a PC.

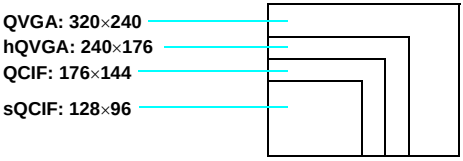
Still picture file names

- The file names of saved still pictures are labeled automatically according to the date and time the still pictures were saved.
  Example: January 21, 2005 at 1:05:07 PM → ***050121_130507***.
- Still pictures that were continuously shot are labeled in series (***01***, ***02***, etc.) at the end of the file name. Up to 14 single-byte characters are shown in the display screen title when saved in Data box (series label may not appear). Select ***Properties*** to check the file name.(☞P. 386)
- Refer to P. 385 for how to edit the title name of a still picture.

Movie mode

The following are the image sizes of movies that can be shot (saved) with the FOMA terminal.

※ Name of image size: pixel width ○○ × pixel height ○○



- Recorded movies are saved in the i-motion folder of Data box or the miniSD Memory Card.
- When saving movies to the FOMA terminal handset, file size must be set to ***For mail (short)*** or ***For mail (long)***.
- The following are the approximate recording lengths of movies when set ***For mail (short)*** and ***For mail (long)***. The recordable movie length and number of recordable movies is less when other images, i-αppli software, or other types of files are saved to the FOMA terminal handset. Further, the recordable movie length may be fewer depending on the shooting conditions and the subject.
  The following are the approximate movie lengths that can be recorded to the FOMA terminal according to the image quality. Refer to P. 567 for the approximate number of images that can be saved to a 16 MB/32 MB miniSD Memory Card according to the image quality.

		ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128×96	For mail (short)	90 seconds	61 seconds	30 seconds	—
	For mail (long)	152 seconds	103 seconds	51 seconds	—
QCIF: 176×144	For mail (short)	77 seconds	45 seconds	16 seconds	11 seconds
	For mail (long)	131 seconds	77 seconds	28 seconds	19 seconds

Continued on next page ▶▶

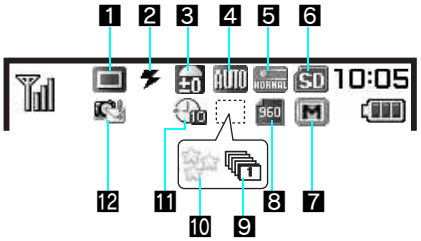
Note

- Refer to P. 178 for the method of setting the image size of movies.
- Use a miniSD Memory Card (☞P. 369) to transfer and save movies from the FOMA terminal to a PC.
- It is only possible to save movies of hQVGA or QVGA size to the miniSD Memory Card.

Shooting Screen Layout

The following indicators appear on the display in Camera mode.

Still picture mode



1 Mode indicator (☞P. 176)

Indicates the Camera mode.
: Still picture mode

2 Picture light indicator (☞P. 177)

Indicates the picture light setting.
: Picture light ***ON***
: Picture light ***AUTO***
: Picture light ***Closeup***

3 Image brightness indicator (☞P. 176)

Indicates the image brightness.
Dark←Normal→Bright

4 Shoot by scene indicator (☞P. 182)

Indicates the Shoot by scene setting.
: Auto
: Sports
: Night scene
: Character

5 Image quality indicator (☞P. 179)

Indicates the image quality setting.
(red): ECONOMY
(red): NORMAL
(red): SUPER FINE

6 miniSD Memory Card indicator

Indicates when a miniSD Memory Card is inserted.
(gray): Save to handset
(pink): Save to miniSD Memory Card

7 Memory warning indicator

Appears when there is no available space. These are approximate figures. It is possible to save data even when the indicator appears.
(yellow): Appears when available space becomes less than 800 KB.
(red): Appears when available space becomes less than 100 KB.

8 Image size indicator (☞P. 178)

Indicates the image size setting.
: Icon: 76×76
: sQCIF: 128×96
: QCIF: 176×144
: Stand-by: 240×320
: CIF: 352×288
: VGA: 480×640
: Max: 960×1,280

9 Continuous mode indicator (☞P. 171)

Indicates the Continuous mode setting.
: Auto, Manual (for 25 pictures)
: Auto, Manual (for 9 pictures)
: Bracket (9 pictures)
: Auto Overlap, Manual Overlap (5 pictures)
-: Shared Multishot (1 to 25 pictures)

10 Effect indicator (☞P. 182)

: Black & white
: Sepia
: Sparkling
: Colored pencil
: Faded edges
: Ripple
: Kaleidoscope (L)
: Kaleidoscope (S)
: Fish-eye

11 Auto timer indicator (☞P. 180)

Indicates the Auto timer setting.
: 2 seconds
: 10 seconds
: 5 seconds

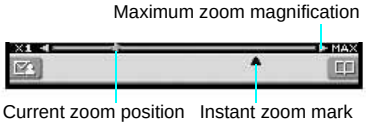
12 Incoming message indicator

Indicates incoming mail during shooting.
: Appears when i-mode mail is received during shooting.
: Appears when SMS is received during shooting.
(green): Appears when i-mode mail is received at center during shooting while Receive option setting is set to ***ON***.

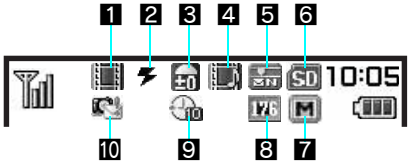
 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Using zoom

In Camera mode, press ⓪ to show the screen to the right and enable zooming. (☞P. 176)



Movie mode



1 Mode indicator (☞P. 176)

Indicates the Camera mode.
: Movie mode

2 Picture light indicator (☞P. 177)

Indicates the picture light setting.
: Picture light ***ON***

3 Image brightness indicator (☞P. 176)

Indicates the image brightness.
Dark←Normal→Bright

4 Switch image/voice indicator (☞P. 181)

Indicates the Movie mode setting.
: Image only : Voice only
: Image + voice

5 Image quality/file size limit indicator (☞P. 179)

Indicates the image quality setting.
(yellow): ECONOMY ***For mail (short)***
(yellow): NORMAL ***For mail (short)***
(yellow): FINE ***For mail (short)***
(yellow): SUPER FINE ***For mail (short)***
(green): ECONOMY ***For mail (long)***
(green): NORMAL ***For mail (long)***
(green): FINE ***For mail (long)***
(green): SUPER FINE ***For mail (long)***
(red): ECONOMY ***Unrestricted***
(red): NORMAL ***Unrestricted***
(red): FINE ***Unrestricted***
(red): SUPER FINE ***Unrestricted***

6 miniSD Memory Card indicator

Indicates when a miniSD Memory Card is inserted.
(gray): Save to handset.
(pink): Save to miniSD Memory Card.

7 Memory warning indicator

Appears when there is no available space. These are approximations. It is possible to save data even when the indicator appears.
(yellow): Appears when available space becomes less than 800 KB.
(red): Appears when available space becomes less than 100 KB.

8 Image size indicator (☞P. 178)

Indicates the image size.
: sQCIF: 128×96
: QCIF: 176×144
: hQVGA: 240×176
: QVGA: 320×240

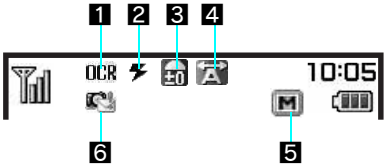
9 Auto timer indicator (☞P. 180)

Indicates the Auto timer setting.
: 2 seconds : 10 seconds
: 5 seconds

10 Incoming message indicator

Indicates incoming mail during shooting.
: Appears when i-mode mail is received during shooting.
: Appears when SMS is received during shooting.
(green): Appears when i-mode mail is received at center during shooting while Receive option setting is set to ***ON***.

Character reader mode



1 Mode indicator (☞P. 176)

Indicates the Camera mode.

OCR: Indicates the Character reader mode.

2 Picture light indicator (☞P. 177)

Indicates the picture light setting.

: Picture light ***ON***

3 Image brightness indicator (☞P. 176)

Indicates the image brightness.

Dark←Normal→Bright

4 Inverse mode indicators (☞P. 193)

Indicates the Inverse mode setting.

auto: Appears when set to ***Automatic***.

A: Appears when set to ***Normal***.

A: Appears when set to ***Reverse text***.

5 Memory warning indicator

Reading is still possible with Character reader mode and Bar code reader even when this warning appears.

M M: This is a warning for low memory.

6 Incoming message indicator

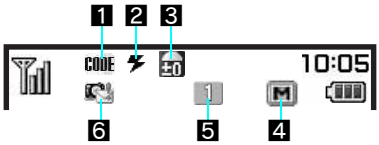
Indicates incoming mail during shooting.

: Appears when i-mode mail is received during shooting.

SMS: Appears when SMS is received during shooting.

(green): Appears when i-mode mail is received at center during shooting while Receive option setting is set to ***ON***.

Bar code reader



1 Mode indicator (☞P. 176)

Indicates the Camera mode.

CODE: Appears when using Bar code reader.

2 Picture light indicator (☞P. 177)

Indicates the picture light setting.

: Picture light ***ON***

3 Image brightness indicator (☞P. 176)

Indicates the image brightness.

Dark←Normal→Bright

4 Memory warning indicator

Reading is still possible with Character reader mode and Bar code reader even when this warning appears.

M M: This is a warning for low memory.

5 QR code link number indicator (☞P. 191)

1 to 16: Indicates the number of linked split data being read.

6 Incoming message indicator

Indicates incoming mail during shooting.

: Appears when i-mode mail is received during shooting.

SMS: Appears when SMS is received during shooting.

(green): Appears when i-mode mail is received at center during shooting while Receive option setting is set to ***ON***.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Checking Key Operation <Key List>

The shooting of still pictures/movies and the reading with Character reader and Bar code reader are performed in Camera mode.
Frequently used operations are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

Key	Still picture mode	Movie mode	Character reader mode	Bar code reader mode
0	Zoom in	Zoom in	—	—
0	Zoom out	Zoom out	—	—
	Instant zoom in	Instant zoom in	—	—
	Instant zoom out	Instant zoom out	—	—
0	Brightness ▲	Brightness ▲	Brightness ▲	Brightness ▲
0	Brightness ▼	Brightness ▼	Brightness ▼	Brightness ▼
	Main/sub camera	Main/sub camera	—	—
view	Switch full-screen	—	—	—
○	Shoot movie	Record	—	—
1	Switch 📷 mode	Switch 📷 mode	Switch 📷 mode	Switch 📷 mode
2	Data box	Data box	Select subject	Saved data
3	Auto timer	Auto timer	Inverse mode	—
4	Select size	Select size	—	—
5	Image quality	Image quality	—	—
6	Shot mode	File size limit	—	—
7	Original mode	Switch img/voice	—	—
8	Camera settings	Recorder	—	—
9	Switch main⇔SD	Switch main⇔SD	—	—

1 While camera is active, press 📷, select ■*Key list* and press ●.

For still picture mode

Related Operations

Change key list allocation <Custom>

1 In the still picture shooting screen or movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ ■*Key list* ▶ ●.
2 Select key to allocate ▶ i [Custom] ▶ function to assign ▶ i [Save] or ●.

Reset key list allocation <Reset>

1 In the still picture shooting screen or movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ ■*Key list* ▶ ● ▶ 📷 [Reset] ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.

Note

- The operations and key list settings are described in this manual with the default settings.

Shooting Still Pictures

Open the FOMA terminal and shoot still pictures.

- The shot still pictures are saved to My picture of Data box or the miniSD Memory Card.

1 In stand-by, press ●.

Still picture shooting screen

- Alternatively, select 📷 (Camera) → ***Shoot still pic*** from Top menu.
- Picture light flashes once.
- The camera activates and the still picture shooting screen appears. The image from the camera appears on the display.
- Use the zoom or move to the menu. (☞P. 176)

2 Press ●.

- The camera shutter sounds and a still picture appears on the preview screen.
- The camera shutter sound is also audible during Manner mode.
- It is possible to change the type of shutter sound. (☞P. 185)
- On the preview screen, press ● [Mail] to send the shot still picture by i-mode mail (☞P. 189).

When Auto save mode (☞P. 188) is set to *ON*

- Shot still pictures are saved automatically to ***Camera*** folder in My picture of Data box, a folder specified with Save to (☞P. 187) or the miniSD Memory Card. (Preview of saved still picture does not appear.)

3 Press ● [Save].

- Shot still pictures are saved automatically to ***Camera*** folder in My picture of Data box, or a folder specified with Save to (☞P. 187) or the miniSD Memory Card. (Some still pictures may take time to save.)
- Press PWR to end Camera mode.

When there is no available space or when the maximum number of save items (☞P. 165) is exceeded

- If there is no available space on the FOMA terminal handset, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (☞P. 384)
- If there is no available space on the miniSD Memory Card, the FOMA terminal handset automatically becomes the save destination even when the miniSD Memory Card is set as the save destination.

To delete the shot still picture and shoot again

- Press CLR.

To edit and use a shot still picture before saving

- Press 📷.
- It is possible to use a shot still picture in Edit image, Facial treatment, Set screen or switch to full-screen. Refer to P. 336 to P. 346 for details on Edit image, P. 345 for details on Facial treatment, P. 335 for details on Set screen and P. 185 for switching to full-screen.

To save a still picture as shown on the display (when shooting with the sub camera)

- Still pictures appear on the display inverted (reversed left-right orientation). Press ● [Save] to save as a normal image (correct left-right orientation). Select ***Normal image*** or ***Save inverted*** before saving the still picture.
- Press 📷 5 to save the inverted image. It is not possible to save inverted images when shooting still pictures with a frame (☞P. 181).
- Press 📷 2 to display the normal image and press ● to save.

When a save destination is specified

- Still pictures are saved to the specified folder. (☞P. 187)

To save still pictures to the miniSD Memory Card

- Change the save destination before shooting. (☞P. 186)

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Shooting a still picture of yourself

1 In stand-by, press ◉ and #.

- The sub camera is activated.

2 Press ●.

Still pictures appear on the display as if looking in a mirror (***Reverse on***). Press ● [Save] to save as a normal image. Press ◉ before saving to show normal image.

When Auto save mode (☞P. 188) is set to *ON*

- Shot still picture is automatically saved. (Preview screen does not appear.)
- Refer to "Shooting Still Pictures" on P. 170 for information on shooting operations and Auto save.

3 Press ● [Save].

- Refer to step 3 of “Shooting Still Pictures” on P. 170 for information on saving.

Note

Receiving a voice/video-phone call while saving a still picture

- Receive display appears and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the image confirmation screen appears. Select ***Yes*** and the preview screen reappears. Select ***No*** to delete the still picture and stand-by reappears.

Auto end

- If no operations are made within approximately two minutes in Camera mode, the camera automatically turns off and stand-by reappears. If a still picture is not saved, the save confirmation screen appears.

Continuous Shooting <Continuous Mode>

Shoot multiple still pictures continuously. There are five types of continuous mode available.

Auto, Manual

In Auto continuous mode, automatically shoot still pictures at approximately 0.1 second intervals. In Manual continuous mode, shoot multiple still pictures by pressing the shutter button.

- The maximum number of still pictures that can be shot depends on the size.

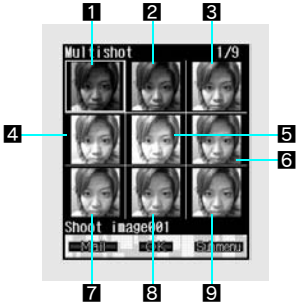
	Icon: 76×76	sQCIF: 128×96	QCIF: 176×144	Stand-by: 240×320
Max. number of multiple shots	25 shots	25 shots	25 shots	9 shots

- Auto continuous mode and Manual continuous mode are not available when the image size is set to ***CIF: 352×288***, ***VGA: 480×640*** or ***Max: 960×1,280***.

Bracket

In Bracket continuous mode, continuously shoot nine still pictures with different brightness and picture light color settings.

- Bracket continuous mode is not available when the image size is set to ***Icon:76×76***, ***CIF: 352×288***, ***VGA: 480×640*** or ***Max: 960×1,280***.
- Bracket continuous mode is not available when using the sub camera.

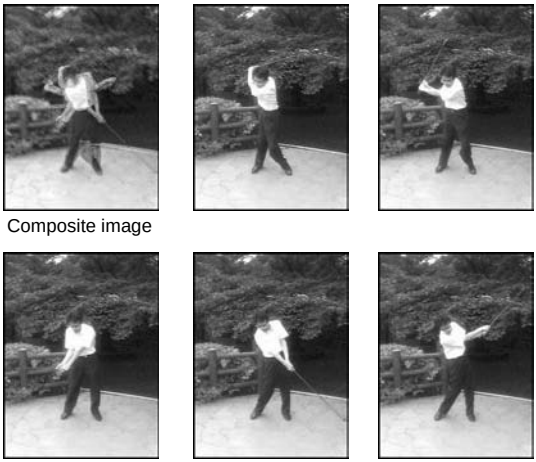


1 Image brightness: ***–2***
2 Image brightness: ***–1***
3 Image brightness: ***±0***
4 Image brightness: ***+1***
5 Image brightness: ***+2***
6 Picture light color: ***White***
7 Picture light color: ***Yellow***
8 Picture light color: ***Red***
9 Picture light color: ***Purple***

Auto overlap, Manual overlap

- In Auto overlap continuous mode, shoot five still pictures at approximately 0.1 second intervals. A sixth image is automatically created by overlapping the five still pictures. In Manual overlap continuous mode, shoot five still pictures with shutter operations. A sixth image is automatically created by overlapping the five still pictures.
- Moving the camera while shooting still pictures in Overlap continuous mode creates an uneven, overlapped image. Hold the FOMA terminal steady with both hands when shooting the still pictures.
- Overlap continuous mode is not available when the image size is set to ***Icon:76×76***, ***CIF: 352×288***, ***VGA: 480×640*** or ***Max: 960×1,280***.
- Overlap continuous mode is not available when using the sub camera.
- After Overlap shooting is complete, the composite of the five images is the first image and the original images are the second to sixth images.

Shot image list


Composite image

Continuous shooting

Depending on the image size, ***Continuous mode*** may not be available (appears in gray) or number of shots in Continuous mode may be reduced.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press [📷] [6 MNO] [1 あ/@].

2 Select Continuous mode and press ●.

To cancel Continuous mode

- Press [6 MNO].

3 Press ●.

- The first still picture is shot and the next still pictures are shot automatically.
- When still picture shooting is complete, the shot image list appears.

To cancel still picture shooting during Continuous mode

- Press ● [Cancel]. The still pictures shot to that point appear. Press ● 1 [Save all] or ● 3 [Save one] to save all or just one image. (Images shot before canceling Auto overlap continuous mode or Manual overlap continuous mode cannot be saved. Returns to status prior to shooting.)

To re-shoot in Continuous mode

- Slowly open or close the FOMA terminal to return to status prior to shooting. Press CLR in Manual continuous mode or Manual overlap continuous mode to cancel the last still picture shot.

When manual shooting is selected

- Press ● up to the maximum number of continuous shots.

4 Press ● 1 [Save all].

When Auto save mode (P. 188) is set to *ON*

- The shot still pictures are saved together automatically.

To save one shot still picture

- Select a still picture and press ● 3.
- To save additional still pictures, select still picture, press ● and press ● [Save].
- After saving or deleting a still picture shot in Continuous mode, the still picture shooting screen reappears.

To link still pictures shot in Continuous mode and save as one image

- Press ● 5.
- Linked still pictures cannot be saved individually.

To delete all shot still pictures

- Press ● 2.

To delete selected still picture from list

- Select a still picture and press ● 4.

To change the Continuous mode

- Perform steps 1 and 2.

Note

- Changing the image size or effect while in Continuous mode cancels Continuous mode.
- Ending Camera mode even when Save camera settings is ***ON*** cancels Continuous mode.

Notes about Continuous mode

- If the battery level is low, images on the screen may appear dark and distorted.
- In automatic Continuous mode, 0 cannot be used to operate the zoom and ● cannot be used to adjust the brightness.
- In Overlap continuous mode, the zoom cannot be used even with Manual overlap.
- If an incoming call is received or the alarm activates during Continuous mode, the still pictures being shot are protected and Continuous mode is canceled. Still pictures shot in Overlap continuous mode are not protected.
- When the battery level is low, the picture light may not illuminate brightly.
- Save linked can only save at ***QCIF: 176×144*** size. After saving still pictures with Save linked, the still picture shooting screen reappears and individual still pictures cannot be saved. If an incoming call is received or the alarm activates while saving still pictures with Save linked, the saved still pictures may not be protected.
- Opening or closing the FOMA terminal during Continuous mode or Auto timer countdown will cause shooting to stop.

Shooting Movies

Open the FOMA terminal and shoot (record) movies.

- Recorded movies are saved in the i-motion folder of Data box or the miniSD Memory Card.
- When saving movies to the FOMA terminal handset, File size limit must be set to ***For mail (short)*** or ***For mail (long)***.
- Make sure battery level is at a sufficient level to shoot movies.
- ***QCIF: 176×144*** and ***sQCIF: 128×96*** movies (Mobile MP4) shot with the FOMA terminal can be sent as mail. Record after setting the file size to ***For mail (short)*** or ***For mail (long)***. (☞P. 165, P. 179)
- To use shot movies for Chaku-motion (☞P. 200), record them on the handset.

1 In stand-by, press ○ (🎬).

Movie shooting screen

- Movie mode starts.
- The following operations also start movie mode.
  - Select 📷 (Camera) → ***Shoot movie*** from Top menu.
  - Press ○ (🎬) from Top menu.
  - Select ***Camera functions*** → ***Shoot movie*** from Zoom menu.
  - Press 📷 in stand-by and press 📷 1 2.

2 Press ○ (🎬) or ●.

- Shooting starts after movie record start sound.
- The movie record start sound is also audible during Manner mode.
- The picture light automatically turns on when shooting starts. The picture light automatically turns off when shooting finishes. (Light does not turn off while shooting.)

To switch between main camera and sub camera

- Press #.

3 To stop shooting, press ○ (🎬) or ●.

- Shooting stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads ***00:00:00*** (movie file size reaches limit or miniSD Memory Card has no available space).
- When recording time is short, recording may not stop. Wait and press ○ (🎬) or ●.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

4 Press ○ (📹) or 1 [Save].

- Shot movies are saved to ***Camera*** folder in i-motion of Data box.
- Press ☎ to end Camera mode.

To play shot movies

- Press 2.

To delete shot movies

- Press 3, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

To send i-motion mail

- Press ⓘ [Mail]. Compose message screen appears.
- Movies/i-motion with unsupported file size cannot be sent. (☞P. 179)

When a save destination is specified

- Movies are saved to the specified folder. (☞P. 187)

To save movies to the miniSD Memory Card

- Change the save destination before saving. (☞P. 186)
- When the save destination is the miniSD Memory Card and there is no available space, ***Recording failed*** appears, Camera mode ends and stand-by reappears. The next time Movie mode is activated, save destination is set to FOMA terminal handset.

To save the FOMA terminal handset when the memory is full

- Delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (☞P. 384)

Note

- Recording time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may automatically stop before indicator reads 00:00:00.
- When FOMA terminal is closed during recording, shooting automatically ends and the save confirmation screen appears. If shooting time is less than one second, shooting ends and the FOMA returns to status from before shooting.
- Make sure not to press keys while shooting a movie as keypad sounds may be recorded.

When voice/video-phone call is received while shooting or save confirmation screen is shown

- Receive display appears and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the save confirmation screen appears. Select ***Save*** to save the movie and movie shooting screen reappears. Select ***Cancel*** to delete the movie and movie shooting screen reappears.
- Set Self mode so incoming calls do not interrupt shooting movies.

Auto end

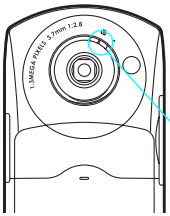
- If no operations are made within approximately two minutes in the movie shooting screen, the camera automatically turns off and stand-by reappears.

Changing Settings for Shooting

Switching to Closeup Mode

Use Closeup mode when shooting close subjects (approximately 10 to 20 cm), or when using Character reader mode (☞P. 193) or Bar code reader (☞P. 190).

1 Slide the Closeup switch to 🌷.



Closeup switch

To use picture light when shooting still pictures

- Press ⓘ [Light] to turn on picture light.

To shoot normally

- Return Closeup switch to original position.

Changing Cameras <Switch Mode>

Switch among Still picture, Movie, Character reader, and Bar code reader modes.

- If battery level is or less when switching to Movie mode, or warning alarm sounds when battery runs out and Camera mode is activated after charging is started, ***Low battery level*** appears and Camera mode does not activate.

Example: When switching to Still picture mode

1 In shooting screen, press .

- Press .
- Still picture mode is set.

To switch to Movie mode

- Press .
- Alternatively, press ( ) in the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170).

To switch to Character reader mode

- Press .

To switch to Bar code reader

- Press .

Adjusting Brightness <Adjust Brightness>

Select from five brightness levels.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170) or movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press (brighter) or (darker) to adjust.

- Also, adjust brightness levels for Bar code reader (☞P. 190) and Character reader (☞P. 193).
- Verify with icon on the display. (☞P. 166)
- After ending Camera mode, setting returns to (Default).
- Use the same method to adjust the sub camera.

Using Digital Zoom <Zoom In and Out>

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press or .

- The Zoom bar appears.
- The Zoom bar already appears when in the movie shooting screen (☞P. 174).
- Press to zoom in (subject becomes larger). Press to zoom out (subject becomes smaller). Press continuously to gradually zoom in and to gradually zoom out.
- Press to go to instant zoom mark position. Press or for double magnification (only available for Still picture mode). This will cause the image quality to deteriorate. Press for original size.
- Area affected by zoom depends on the image size.

To shoot with the main camera

Camera mode	Image size	Zoom step (maximum magnification)
Still pictures	Icon: 76×76	27 steps (approx. 25×)
	sQCIF: 128×96	22 steps (approx. 15×)
	QCIF: 176×144	19 steps (approx. 11×)
	Stand-by: 240×320	16 steps (approx. 8.1×)
	CIF: 352×288	12 steps (approx. 5.5×)
	VGA: 480×640	9 steps (approx. 4.0×)
	Max: 960×1,280	- (actual size)
Movies	sQCIF: 128×96	14 steps (approx. 3.7×)
	QCIF: 176×144	11 steps (approx. 2.7×)
	hQVGA: 240×176	8 steps (approx. 2.0×)
	QVGA: 320×240	5 steps (approx. 1.5×)

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

To shoot with the sub camera

Camera mode	Image size	Zoom step (maximum magnification)
Still pictures	Icon: 76×76	2 steps (approx. 2×)
	sQCIF: 128×96	
	QCIF: 176×144	
Movies	sQCIF: 128×96	
	QCIF: 176×144	

- Zoom is not available for ***Stand-by: 240×320*** and ***CIF: 352×288*** sizes.
- Image size returns to normal when camera is switched between main and sub camera or when Camera mode ends.

Note

Notes about shooting

- Do not shoot movies while recharging the handset. (☞P. 163)
- Do not use with picture light near the eyes.
- Make sure camera does not shake. Image is more prone to shaking when image size is large or image quality is high. Moving the FOMA terminal while shooting images may cause images to become blurred. Shoot images while holding the handset as still as possible or use the Auto timer (☞P. 180).
- Adjust brightness based on light conditions. (☞P. 176)
  Use the picture light as a supplementary light source in dark places. (☞P. 183)

Before shooting

- If a memory warning appears, delete images in Data box or i-αppli. Retry after creating more available space.
  M: Icon appears when available space becomes less than 800 KB.
  M: Icon appears when available space becomes less than 100 KB.
  When the miniSD Memory Card runs out of available space, ***miniSD is full. Unable to save anymore*** (Still picture mode) or ***miniSD memory is full*** (Movie mode) appears. Delete images in My picture or i-motion on the miniSD and shoot again after creating available space.

Using Picture Light <Picture Light>

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170) or movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press ● [Light].

- Also, use the picture light for Bar code reader (☞P. 190) and Character reader (☞P. 193).
- Press ● [Light] to switch the icon to ϟ (ON) → ϟ AUTO (AUTO) (only Still picture mode) → ϟ (Closeup) (only Still picture mode) → ***OFF***.
- When shooting in Closeup mode (Closeup switch is in the ❀ position), switch the picture light to ϟ (Closeup). Picture light changes for shooting close subjects and emits less light.
- Set to ***AUTO*** to automatically adjust the picture light brightness to the surroundings.
- Use ***AUTO*** and ***Closeup*** only in Still picture mode.
- Set picture light colors. (☞P. 183)
- If Save camera settings is set to ***OFF*** (☞P. 188), picture light color returns to ***White*** after Camera mode ends.
- Picture light is active when camera activates or when opening the preview screen.
- When performing close-up shots under fluorescent light of materials that are mostly white, the color or shadow of the FOMA terminal may also appear in the picture, depending on whether the picture light is ***ON*** or ***OFF***. This is not a malfunction.

Switching Between Main Camera and Sub Camera <Main/sub Camera>

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170) or movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press ● 5 WXYZ.

- When switching from main camera to sub camera, the shooting size is ***QCIF: 176×144***.
- When screen size is ***QVGA: 320×240***, switching from main camera to sub camera using ● 5 WXYZ is not available. Press # ▽▽ to switch.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- When Voice recorder (☞P. 393) is activated or if Switch image/voice is set to ***Voice only*** switching from main camera to sub camera is not available.

Main Camera

- This is useful for shooting pictures of people, animals and landscapes. Also use for Character reader (OCR) or for Bar code reader. Images appear on the display as normal (correct left-right orientation). (Image is shot as it appears.)

Sub camera

- Use sub camera to shoot picture of yourself. Images appear reversed on the display (reversed left-right orientation). (Image is shot as if reflected in a mirror.)

Setting Image Size <Select Size>

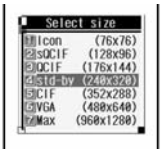
Default setting
See below

Set still picture and movie image size.

- Refer to P. 164 for details on each size.

The default setting is ***Stand-by: 240×320*** for Still picture and ***QCIF: 176×144*** for Movie.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170) or movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press ●4GHI.



Still picture shooting screen

2 Select size and press ●.

- Icon that indicates size appears. (☞P. 166 and P. 167)

Note

- Frames, effects and Continuous mode are set to ***OFF*** when images are resized.
- If Save camera settings (☞P. 188) is set to ***OFF***, still picture size returns to ***Stand-by: 240×320*** after shooting still pictures and movie size returns to ***QCIF: 176×144*** after shooting movies. If Save camera settings is ***ON***, the above settings are saved.
- If movies are shot at ***hQVGA: 240×176*** or ***QVGA: 320×240***, save destination must be miniSD Memory Card. (☞P. 186)
- When sending images by i-mode mail, transmission charge depends on image size and quality.
- Image size cannot be selected when turning on with Voice recorder (☞P. 393) or if Switch image/voice (☞P. 181) is set to ***Voice only***.
- For the sub camera, image size cannot be set to ***VGA: 480×640***, ***Max: 960×1,280*** or ***QVGA: 320×240*** (when shooting movies).

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

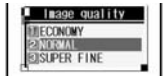
Setting Image Quality <Image Quality>

Default setting
Still picture: NORMAL
Movie: NORMAL

Set still picture and movie image quality.
Set still pictures to ***ECONOMY***, ***NORMAL*** or ***SUPER FINE***. Set movies to ***ECONOMY***, ***NORMAL***, ***FINE*** or ***SUPER FINE***.
Image quality increases from ***ECONOMY*** → ***NORMAL*** → ***FINE***, and so on. As quality increases, the number of still pictures and amount of recordable time decreases.

- Refer to P. 165 for details on the number of images which can be shot and the recording length.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170) or movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press ● 5 JKL.



Still picture shooting screen

2 Select image quality and press ●.

- Icon that indicates image quality appears. (☞P. 166 and P. 167)

Note

- To give priority to the image quality when shooting an image, select ***FINE*** or ***SUPER FINE***.
- Shrink images to ***Stand-by: 240×320*** size to send with i-mode mail. Also compress still pictures with file sizes of over 500 KB.
- Image quality cannot be selected when turning on with Voice recorder (☞P. 393) or if Switch image/voice (☞P. 181) is set to ***Voice only***.

Setting File Size Limit <File Size Limit>

Default setting
For mail (short)

Set File size limit before shooting movies.

- For sending by i-motion mail, select ***For mail (short)*** or ***For mail (long)***. Record based on allowable size of mail attachment.
- If image size is ***QCIF: 176×144*** or ***sQCIF: 128×96***, set size to ***For mail (short)*** or ***For mail (long)***.
- If save destination is set to FOMA terminal handset, ***Unrestricted*** cannot be selected. Set save destination to miniSD Memory Card in advance. (☞P. 186)

1 In the movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press ● 6 MNO.

2 Select file size and press ●.

Note

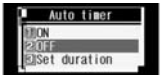
- If the image size is ***hQVGA: 240×176*** or ***QVGA: 320×240***, File size limit cannot be set to ***For mail (short)*** or ***For mail (long)***. Save destination must be set to miniSD Memory Card. (☞P. 186)
- When File size limit is ***Unrestricted***, maximum recording time is approximately one hour (excluding when Switch image/voice is set to ***Voice only***).

Shooting Images with Auto Timer <Auto Timer>

Default setting
OFF
Time: 10 seconds

Shoot images with the Auto timer. Use Auto timer to shoot pictures which include yourself. While Auto timer is set, press ● to activate Auto timer. When Auto timer is activated, Auto timer tone sounds and picture light flashes. Images are shot approximately two seconds, five seconds and ten seconds after Auto timer tone starts.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170) or movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press 📷 3 DEF.



2 Press 1 [ON: set].

- 2, 5 or 10 appears on the display.

To disable Auto timer

- Press 2 ABC.

To change duration

- Press 3 DEF and press 1 [2 seconds], 2 ABC [5 seconds] or 3 DEF [10 seconds].

3 Press ●.

- Timer sound is audible and Auto timer activates. (2, 5 or 10 and picture light flash.)

When shooting a movie

- Press ○ (📹) or ●.

To cancel shooting

- Press C CLR. Auto timer stays set.

4 After approximately two, five or ten seconds, the shutter sound is audible and images are shot automatically.

- In Still picture mode, Auto timer is not deactivated after shooting. To deactivate, press 2 ABC in step 2.

Note

- Auto timer deactivates when Camera mode ends. Even if Save camera setting is set to ***ON***, Auto timer deactivates when Camera mode ends.
- If Save camera settings (☞P. 188) is set to ***OFF***, Auto timer setting returns to ten seconds when Camera is ended. Settings are retained when Save camera settings is set to ***ON***.

Notes about Auto timer

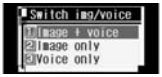
- While Auto timer is set, press ● to shoot image immediately. Movies can be shot even if ○ (📹) is pressed.
- If a call is received or alarm activates, press 📞 PWR to stop shooting.
- When Auto timer is active in Still picture mode, 🔍 and 0 cannot be used to zoom or adjust brightness.
- Auto timer, when activated, is interrupted if FOMA terminal is opened and closed. However, settings are retained.

Setting Image and Voice Shooting <Switch Image/Voice>

Default setting
Image + voice

When shooting a movie, select ***Image + voice***, ***Image only*** or ***Voice only***.

1 In the movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press ◉ 7PQRS.



2 Press 1.

- ***Image+voice*** is set.

To set *Image only*

- Press 2ABC.

To set *Voice only*

- Press 3DEF.

Note

- After shooting, setting returns to ***Image + voice***.

Shooting Still Pictures with a Frame <Shoot with Frame>

Set and shoot still pictures with frames.

- Frames are also available in Continuous mode. (Each still picture has a frame.)
- When shooting images with a frame, available image sizes are ***sQCIF: 128×96***, ***QCIF: 176×144***, ***Stand-by: 240×320***, ***CIF: 352×288*** and ***VGA: 480×640***.
- If the image size differs from the frame size, the frame is rotated to the left 90 °.
- Use frames downloaded from sites and Internet web pages to shoot with frames.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press ◉ 6MNO 4GHI.

2 Press 1 [Preset frame].

- Frame list appears.

To use downloaded frames

- Press 2ABC.

To remove a frame

- Press 3DEF.

To check a frame

- Select a frame and press ●. Press CLR to return.

To check in full-screen

- Select a frame and press View. Press CLR to return.

3 Select frame and press i [OK].

- Combined image with frame and subject appear on the screen.

4 Press ●.

- Still picture is shot with selected frame.

Note

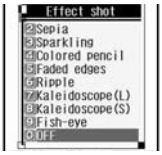
- Changing the image size (☞P. 178) or switching to the sub camera (☞P. 177) cancels Shoot with frame.

Adding Various Effects <Effect Shot>

Set effects for still pictures to touch up the color tone.

- Effects can be set for ***sQCIF: 128×96***, ***QCIF: 176×144***, ***Stand-by: 240×320*** and ***CIF: 352×288*** sizes.
- Effect shot is not available when using the sub camera.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press 📷 6 2.



Effects

Black & white	Image contrast is expressed in monotone
Sepia	Image contrast is expressed in sepia color
Sparkling	Bright areas light up in a cross-shaped pattern
Colored pencil	A colored line is drawn
Faded edges	Image edges have a soft, blurred effect
Ripple	Ripples are added to image
Kaleidoscope (L)	Image has a kaleidoscope effect with a large pattern
Kaleidoscope (S)	Image has a kaleidoscope effect with a small pattern
Fish-eye	Image is expressed as seen through a fish-eye lens

2 Select an effect and press ●.

- Selected effect appears on display.

To remove effects

- Press C.

3 Press ●.

- Still picture with selected effect is shot.

Note

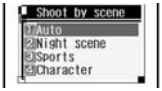
- Changing the image size (☞P. 178) or switching to Continuous mode (☞P. 172) cancels effect.

Shooting Environment/Subject-specific Images <Shoot by Scene>

Set camera to shoot with natural colors and focus based on surroundings and subject.

- Shoot by scene is not available when using the sub camera.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press 📷 6 3.



Auto	Ideal for normal shooting.
Night scene	Ideal setting for shooting images at night or in dimly lit surroundings.
Sports	Ideal setting for shooting moving subjects, such as in outdoor sports.
Character	Ideal setting for shooting subjects with contrast differences (e.g. black and white).

2 Select scene and press ●.

- Icon that indicates scene appears. (☞P. 166)

Note

- After ending Camera mode, setting returns to ***Auto***.
- When shooting at night or in dimly lit surroundings, make sure camera does not shake.

Setting Backlight Illumination Time <Set ON Time>

Default setting
As light setting

Set time backlight illuminates when shooting movies.

1 In the movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press 8 5.

- Set ON time screen appears.

2 Press 2 [Always ON].

- Backlight is constantly lit. (Backlight lit duration is same as Display light time for all screens other than viewfinder.)

When same as light setting

- Press 1.
- Backlight illuminates based on Display light time. (☞P. 128)

Setting Picture Light Colors <Picture Light Color>

Default setting
White

Set picture light for when shooting still pictures or movies.

- Refer to P. 177 for details on turning on picture light.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170) or movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press 8 4.

2 Select picture light color and press ●.

- Picture light turns on with selected color.

Note

- Picture light setting cannot be set when Voice recorder (☞P. 393) is activated, when Switch image/voice is set to ***Voice only*** or when shooting with the sub camera.
- In Still picture mode, if Save camera settings (☞P. 188) is set to ***OFF***, picture light color returns to ***White*** after Still picture mode ends. If Save camera settings is set to ***ON***, the above settings are saved.
- In Movie mode, if Retain settings (☞P. 189) is set to ***OFF***, picture light color returns to ***White*** after Movie mode ends. If Retain settings is set to ***ON***, the above settings are saved.
- Picture light is a supplementary light source for surroundings with low light. The amount of light is less than that of an ordinary camera flash.
- Picture light tints may differ. This is not a malfunction. Use as a supplementary light source.

Minimizing Audio Noise <Noise Reduction>

Default setting
ON

Set Noise reduction to minimize audio noise when shooting movies.

1 In the movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press 8 1.

- Noise reduction setting screen appears.

2 Press 1 [ON: set].

- Noise reduction is set.

To not set Noise reduction

- Press 2.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Noise reduction is not available if Switch image/voice (☞P. 181) is set to ***Image only***.
- Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on surrounding noise and tone of the voice.

Changing Camera Settings

Shooting Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Release Settings>

Default setting: OFF

If Release settings is set to ***ON***, use switch on flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (☞P. 445) to activate shutter operations. Press switch for 1+ seconds to enable this function.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press [8 TUV] [5 JKL].

2 Press [1] [ON: Release settings].

To disable setting

- Press [2 ABC].

Note

- Shooting may not be possible depending on the timing of pressing switch.
- After shooting, press switch again for 1+ seconds to save.

Setting Viewfinder for Shooting <Screen Size>

Default setting: Zoom

Enlarge viewfinder when shooting at ***Icon: 76×76*** or ***sQCIF: 128×96***.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press [8 TUV] [6 MNO].

2 Press [1] [Zoom].

To view at actual size

- Press [2 ABC].

Changing Camera Shutter Sound <Shutter Sound>

Default setting
標準音

Select from five preset shutter sounds.

1 In stand-by, press ● 1 2 4 3.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Sound*** → ***Select sound*** → ***Setting sounds*** → ***Shutter sound*** from Top menu.

2 Select shutter sound and press ●.

To confirm the shutter sound

- Select shutter sound and press ⓘ [Play]. Press ⓘ [Stop] to stop playback.

When Manner mode is set

- After the confirmation screen appears, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- Camera shutter sound volume cannot be changed. (Shutter sound activates even in Manner mode.)

Showing Images in Full-screen <Full-screen>

All icons can be deleted to view the still picture at full screen in Camera mode.
Display ***Stand-by: 240×320***, ***VGA: 480×640*** and ***Max: 960×1,280*** sized images in full screen.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press 📷, select ***Full-screen*** and press ●.

- In the still picture shooting screen or preview screen, press view to also switch to Full-screen.
- Repeat operation to deactivate Full-screen.

Note

- Full-screen deactivates when Camera mode ends.

Saving to miniSD Memory Card <Switch Main⇔SD>

Default setting
FOMA terminal handset

Save shot still pictures and movies to miniSD Memory Card.
miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

- Before operations, insert the miniSD Memory Card into the card slot on the FOMA terminal. (☞P. 370)

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170) or movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press [camera] [#].

- If [#] ***Switch main*** ⇔ ***SD*** appears in gray, miniSD Memory Card is not inserted.
- Save destination is changed and still picture shooting screen reappears.
  miniSD Memory Card icon color can be changed depending on settings.
  - [SD] (gray).....Save destination is FOMA terminal handset
  - [SD] (pink) .....Save destination is miniSD Memory Card
- Length of movies which can be saved depends on size of miniSD Memory Card. Maximum length is approximately one hour for movies with video.

To save to FOMA terminal handset

- When save destination is miniSD Memory Card, perform step 1.
- When saving movies to the FOMA terminal handset, File size limit is either ***For mail (short)*** or ***For mail (long)***.

Note

- Even if save destination is set to the miniSD Memory Card and Save camera settings is set to ***ON***, images are saved to FOMA terminal handset if miniSD is not inserted.
- If Save camera settings (☞P. 188) is set to ***OFF***, save destination returns to FOMA terminal handset after Camera mode ends. If Save camera settings is set to ***ON***, the above settings are saved.
- In Still picture mode, even when save destination is set to the miniSD Memory Card if there is no available space, images are saved to FOMA terminal handset.
- Refer to P. 376 for details on checking still pictures saved on miniSD Memory Card.
- When the save destination folder exceeds 400 still pictures, the still picture is saved in a new folder that is automatically created.
- When save destination is the miniSD Memory Card, shot images are saved in ***Camera folder xxx*** (xxx is the largest number when multiple folders exist).
- When saving to miniSD Memory Card, images are saved in DCF1.0 (Exif Ver.2.2, JPEG) format.
- DCF (Design rule for Camera File system) is a standard created mainly by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for images from digital cameras and other devices to be shared with related devices. DCF standard may not be compatible with all devices.
- Exif is a file format established by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for adding supplementary information to the still picture.

Specifying Destination Folder <Save To>

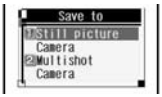
Default setting
See below

Specify folder when saving still pictures and movies to FOMA terminal handset.

- Create folder before specifying. (☞P. 383)

The default setting is ***Data box - My picture - Camera*** for still pictures and Multishot and ***Data box - i-motion - Camera*** for movies.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170) or movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press ● 8 TUV 2 ABC.



When Save to is selected on the still picture shooting screen

- When shooting movies, proceed to step 3.

2 Press 1 [Still picture].

- My picture of Data box appears.

To change Multishot save destination

- After pressing 2 ABC, press 1 [Existing folder] or 2 ABC [Auto folder].
- If ***Existing folder*** is selected, select folder to save to and press ●.
- If ***Auto folder*** is selected, a new folder for saved images is created every time Multishot is used. When 20 folders already exist, images are saved to ***Camera*** folder.

3 Select folder and press ●.

To change movie save destination

- Select folder and press ●.

Note

- If Save camera settings (☞P. 188) is set to ***OFF***, save destination returns to ***Camera*** folder after Camera mode ends. If Save camera settings is set to ***ON***, the above settings are saved.
- Folders cannot be specified when saving shot images to miniSD Memory Cards.

Saving Original Mode <Original Mode>

Save up to two types of settings when shooting still pictures. Switch to preferred settings when loading Original mode.

- Set the following items in Original mode.
  Image size, Image quality, Continuous mode, Effect shot, Shoot by scene, Release settings ***ON/OFF***, Auto timer duration, Picture light ***ON/Auto Closeup/OFF***, picture light color, save destination (including saving to FOMA terminal handset), and Full-screen display

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press ● 7 PQRS after each setting.

- The original mode screen appears.

2 Press 3 DEF [Save to setting 1].

To save to setting 2

- Press 4 GHI.

To load a setting

- Press 1 [Load setting 1] or 2 ABC [Load setting 2].

To check saved settings

- Press 5 JKL.
- Setting 1 contents appear.
- To switch to setting 2, press ⓘ [Switch].

Continued on next page ▶▶

● Default settings are as follows.

	Setting 1	Setting 2
Select size	Max: 960×1,280	Stand-by: 240×320
Image quality	SUPER FINE	NORMAL
Picture light	OFF	OFF
Picture light color	White	White
Save destination	miniSD Memory Card	Handset ● Still pictures: ***Camera*** folder ● Multishot: ***Camera*** folder
Release settings	OFF	OFF
Full-screen	ON	OFF

Note

● If Save camera settings is set to ***ON***, current settings are used next time Camera mode is activated. Use Original mode to use specific settings.

Setting Auto Save Mode <Auto Save Mode>

Default setting: OFF

Set to save shot still picture automatically.

● Shot still pictures are automatically saved on the miniSD Memory Card or in the folder set in Save to (☞P. 187).

● Change the save destination before shooting to save to miniSD Memory Cards. (☞P. 186)

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press [8 TUV] [1].

● Auto save mode setting screen appears.

2 Press [1] [ON: auto save].

To not Auto save

● Press [2 ABC].

Note

● If Save camera settings is set to ***OFF***, Auto save mode returns to ***OFF*** after Camera mode ends. If Save camera settings is set to ***ON***, the above settings are saved.

● If Auto save mode is set to ***ON***, Preview screen after shooting does not appear. Additionally, editing and other functions are not available before saving.

Keeping Settings when Shooting Still Pictures <Save Camera Set>

Default setting: ON

Set Save camera settings to ***ON*** to retain various settings after Camera mode ends and use those same settings later.

● The following items are retained.
Image size, Image quality, Auto timer duration, picture light color, Switch main⇔SD, Auto save mode, specifying save destination on FOMA terminal handset, Release settings, Display size.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press [8 TUV] [3 DEF].

● Save camera settings screen appears.

2 Press [1] [ON: save settings].

To reset to default values

● Press [2 ABC].

Note

● Use Original mode (☞P. 187) to use both settings.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Keeping Settings when Shooting Movies <Retain Settings>

Default setting: ON

Set Retain settings to ***ON*** to retain various settings after Camera mode ends and use those same settings later.

- The following items are retained.
  Image size, image quality, File size limit, Set ON time, Noise reduction, Switch main⇔SD, Auto timer duration, specifying save destination on FOMA terminal handset and picture light.

1 In the movie shooting screen (☞P. 174), press [8 TUV] [3 DEF].

- Retain settings screen appears.

2 Press [1] [ON: save settings].

To reset to default values

- Press [2 ABC].

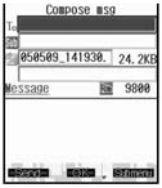
Send Message

Sending Still Pictures or Movies After Shooting

After shooting still picture or movie, send images as i-mode mail attachments from Preview screen.

- Movies are sent as i-motion mail.
- Movies over 500 KB cannot be sent.
- When save destination is a miniSD Memory Card, shot images are saved to the ***My picture*** folder of Data box (for still pictures) or the ***i-motion*** folder of Data box (for movies). After images are saved, the compose message screen appears.
- When save destination is set to a miniSD Memory Card and memory space is low on the FOMA, a confirmation message to overwrite miniSD data may appear. Delete data before saving.

1 In the still picture preview screen (☞step 2 on P. 170) or movie preview screen (☞step 3 on P. 174), press [i] [Mail].



For still pictures

When size is larger than *Stand-by: 240×320*

- ***Reduce to standby (240×320)?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ●. Still picture is reduced to ***Stand-by: 240×320*** with aspect ratio preserved and attached to mail. Select ***No*** and press ●. Still picture is adjusted to 500 KB or less (image size does not change) and attached to mail.
- ***Stand-by: 240×320*** is the suitable size to send to i-mode terminals.

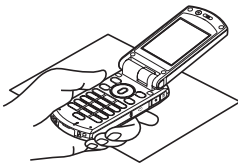
2 Create and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 5 on P. 251 for details.

Using Bar Code Reader

Use camera to scan bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, register bookmark, add to phonebook, display text and i-αppli To. Copy and paste text, play and save melodies and view and save images.

- Scan results cannot be saved on miniSD Memory Cards.
- Camera cannot scan bar codes/two-dimensional codes other than JAN codes and QR codes.
- Scan split QR codes.



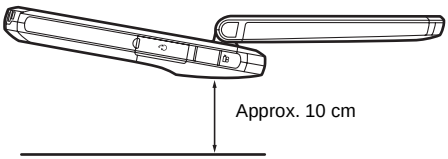
Using Text from Bar Codes (JAN/QR Codes)

Use scanned text from bar codes (JAN/QR code) for functions such as connecting to i-mode, composing i-mode mail, making voice/video-phone calls and running i-αppli.

- When using Bar code reader, slide the Closeup switch to and scan the bar code. (☞P. 175) Focal distance is approximately 10 cm.
- When viewing sites, use Bar code reader to enter JAN/QR code information into text boxes. (☞P. 209)
- Some bar codes cannot be scanned due to type or size.
- Bar codes may not be scanned due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or QR code version.

1 Press ● 8TUV ✱ in stand-by, or 📷 1 4GHI in the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170).

- Alternatively, select (Tools) or 📷 (Camera) → ***Bar code reader*** from Top menu.
- Bar code reader mode starts.
- Maintain a focal distance of approximately 10 cm between FOMA terminal and bar code (JAN/QR code). Keep aligned and do not move handset or code while scanning.



2 Display bar code (JAN/QR code) to be read in the center of the screen.

- FOMA terminal automatically distinguishes between JAN code and QR code.
- If image is dark, press [Light] to turn on picture light.
- Glossy paper may be difficult to scan. Adjust angle so light does not reflect directly into camera.

To view saved data

- Press 📷 2ABC.
- If there is no saved data, ***There is no saved data*** appears.

3 Press ●.

- Bar code reader starts scanning code (JAN/QR code). When scanning is complete, a tone is heard and scan results appear.
- If one minute passes after scanning starts and nothing is scanned, a series of beeps are audible, ***Could not scan*** appears and the screen of step 2 reappears. (When Keypad sound is set to ***Silent***, error tone does not sound.)

To stop scanning

- Press [Break] or CLR.
- Scanning is interrupted and the screen of step 2 reappears.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

4 Select scanned text and press ●.

- Scanned characters and numbers are selectable if shown in blue.
- Based on the type of scanned text, confirmation screens for i-mode connection (for URLs), compose message (for mail addresses) or outgoing call (for phone numbers) appears.
- Applicable screens appear for scanned data. Add to phonebook screen for phonebook data, compose message screen for mail data, register bookmark screen for bookmark data, and run i-αppli screen for i-αppli data.
- If scanned characters and numbers are not blue, display does not change even if ● is pressed.

To copy all scanned text

- Press ▼ [Copy all].
- When scanned text is 2,000 bytes or more, Copy all is not available.

To copy a part of scanned text

- Press [カメラ][3 #ポケット] in screen after scanning. Press ● at the beginning and end of text string to copy.

To save scanned text

- In the screen after scanning text, press [カメラ][4 メール], select save destination and press ●.
- Save up to five entries.

Note

- In the i-mode menu (☞P. 204), press [カメラ] to start Bar code reader.
- While viewing a site (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204), press [カメラ][カメラ] to start Bar code reader. Connect to scanned URL without disconnecting. In this case, only URL scan recognition result can be used.
- Saving phonebook entries is not available when phonebook PIM is locked. Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) to unlock temporarily and save scanned text to phonebook. PIM lock is enabled again after saving.
- During Manner mode, scan complete tone and error tone do not sound.

JAN code

- JAN code is a type of bar code using vertical bars of varying width to express numbers.
- The code on the right is read as ***4942857116755***.

QR code

- QR code is a type of two-dimensional code expressing data vertically and horizontally. Data includes alphanumeric characters and character strings (kanji, kana, pictographs).
- The code on the right is read as ***FOMA SH700i***.

Split data

- QR code may be split into a multiple set of codes (maximum 16) which can be compiled into one set of data. If split data is scanned, the screen on the right appears after step 3. The parentheses ( ) show remaining codes/total codes. Select ***Yes*** to proceed to the next QR code scanning screen. When the next QR code appears in the center of the screen, scanning starts automatically. Repeat step. When all split data is scanned, scan results appear.

Scanning and Playing Images or Melodies from QR Codes

1 Scan QR code (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 190).

- In scan results screen, ***Image*** appears (in blue) when scanned data is an image and ***Melody*** appears (in blue) when scanned data is a melody.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press 1 [Display].

- Image appears.
- Some file formats cannot be viewed.

To play melody

- Press 1 [Play]. For melodies which have music position information set, press 1 [Play portion] or 2 [Play all]. To stop playback, press ● or CLR.
- Some file formats cannot be played.

To save melody or image

- Press 2.
- Melodies are saved in ***Melody*** folder of Data box.
- Images are saved to ***i-mode/Other*** folder in My picture of Data box.

To not save melody or image

- Press 3.

Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks

- Add scanned mail addresses and phone numbers to phonebook.
- URLs can also be saved as bookmarks.
- Up to five memos of scanned text (60 KB or less) can be saved.

1 In scan results screen after scanning bar code (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 190) and press 📷 1.

- Save screen appears.

To save bookmarks (URL only)

- Press 📷 2.
- Bookmark saving screen appears. (☞P. 215)
- Select ***Yes*** and press ●.

2 Press 1 [Save new to main].

- Save confirmation screen appears.

To save new entry to FOMA card phonebook

- Press 2.

To add/overwrite to phonebook

- Press 3.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Add to FOMA terminal handset phonebook as a new entry.
- The save new entry screen for phonebook appears. Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas.
- Perform Add to phonebook operation. (☞P. 94 and P. 95)
- Phone numbers set as video-phone numbers in advance are saved as video-phone numbers.

To add to phonebook entry (pressing 3 in step 2)

- The phonebook search screen appears.
- Select phonebook entry to add mail address, URL, phone number and press ● to edit. (☞P. 108) Overwrite and save a scanned URL as a memo item (☞P. 93).

Using saved data

- Press 📷 2 in the scanning screen (☞step 2 on P. 190), select data and press ●.
- Proceed to steps 1 and 2 above.

Note

- Saved data cannot be saved again.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Reading Text

Shoot printed data such as URLs, mail addresses and phone numbers and convert into text usable by FOMA terminal.
Use read text to connect to sites or web pages, or send i-mode mail. Use read text to also make voice/video-phone calls or search for words in a dictionary. Can also be saved in Phonebook entries and bookmarks.

- Text which can be read is shown below. Such as URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers, English words, etc. are automatically distinguished based on the text. Double-byte text such as kanji and hiragana cannot be read.

URL	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols (. - _ : / ~)
Mail address	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols (. @ - _ :)
Phone numbers	Single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols (- + P # ＊)
English word	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols (- / ? ! @ + ＊ ' ( ) , . &)

- Scan results cannot be saved on miniSD Memory Cards.
- Text may not be read correctly due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or text size.

Using Read Text

Data type (URL, mail address, phone number, English words) is automatically distinguished. Use functions such as reading text, connecting to i-mode, composing i-mode mail, making voice/video-phone calls, searching in dictionaries using KEITAIViewer, adding to phonebook, etc.

- When scanning text, move the Closeup switch to and scan the text. (☞P. 175)

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 9 WXYZ. Or, in still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170), press ● 1 3 DEF.

- Alternatively, select (Camera) → ***Character reader*** from Top menu.
- Character reader mode starts.

2 Display text to be read in the center of the screen.

- If screen is dark, press [Light] to turn on picture light.
- Glossy paper may be difficult to read. Adjust angle so light does not reflect directly into camera.
- Adjust image so that it appears in the center of the frame 〔 〕. Text near the sides of the frame may be difficult to scan.
- For optimal scan, point the camera straight while maintaining a focal distance of approximately 10 cm. Keep both the text and FOMA terminal level without moving them. Viewed text may become small and hard to read. Adjust distance so the bar on the bottom of the screen turns a deep blue.
- Scan up to approximately 60 characters at one time.

To select data type for reading

- Press ● 2 ABC, select a data type and press ●.
- The default setting is ***Auto***.

To read inversed text

- Press ● 3 DEF, select an Inverse mode type and press ●.
- The default setting is ***Automatic***. When text is difficult to read, set to ***Normal*** or ***Reverse text***.

To check Key list

- Press ●, select ■***Key list*** and press ●. Refer to P. 169 for details.

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Press ●.

- Text shot as a still picture and text appears on the display.

For multiple lines of text

- Press ○ to specify the line to read. (Text is read one line at a time.)

4 Press ● [Read].

- Character reading starts.
- When reading is complete, candidates screen appears with read text.

To edit read text results

- Letter by letter correction candidates appear on the bottom of the screen. Select text to edit with ○ and select candidate with ○. When there are no correction candidates, enter text using dial keys.
- Press CLR to erase letters one at a time.

To erase text on screen and read text again

- Press ○ [Retry], select ***Yes*** and press ●.

5 Press ●.

- Read character results appear.

To erase text on screen and read text again

- Press ○ [Retry], select ***Yes*** and press ●.

To read more text

- Press ○ 1.
- The character reader screen appears.
- Connect to previously read data to make complete text. Use for text split into multiple lines such as long URLs or mail addresses. Read up to 256 characters.

To add text

- Press ○ 2.
- The character reader screen appears.
- Read text in up to three sessions and link read text into one group. Perform functions such as reading items for phonebook entries and adding read data to phonebook. Read up to 508 characters total in the three sessions.

To edit read text

- Press ○ 5.

To copy all read text

- Press ○ 7.
- Paste in other images.

To erase read text

- Press ○ 8.

To change data type for read text

- Press ○ to change data type when read text is URL, mail address or English word.

6 Press ●, select *Yes* and press ●.

- Based on the type of scanned data, confirmation screens for i-mode connection (for URL), compose message (for mail address), outgoing call (for phone number) and search in dictionary (for English words) appear.

Note

- Saving phonebook entries is not available when phonebook PIM is locked. Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) to unlock temporarily and save phone number, URL, mail address or English text to phonebook. PIM lock is enabled again after saving.
- When read data is Phone number, parentheses ( ) become a hyphen (-). Hyphen is erased when adding to phonebook or making a call.
- When read data is URL, ***http://*** is added in read results if it is missing.

Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks

Based on the type of data, read data is added as phonebook entry items, saved as bookmarks, etc.

- Scanned data is added to various phonebook items by data type.

Data type	Phonebook entry item
URL	Memo
Mail address	Mail address
Phone number	Phone number
English word	Surname, reading

1 In the screen after reading text (☞steps 1 to 5 on P. 193), press ●3 DEF.

- Saving screen appears.

To save a bookmark

- Press ● 4 CHG.

To copy all

- Press ● 7 PQRS.

To delete

- Press ● 8 TUV.

2 Press 1 あ/A/亜 [Save new to main].

- Save confirmation screen appears.

To save new entry to FOMA card phonebook

- Press 2 ABC.

To add/overwrite to phonebook

- Press 3 DEF.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Add to FOMA terminal handset phonebook as a new entry.
- The save new entry screen for phonebook appears. Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas.
- Perform Add to phonebook operation. (☞P. 94 and P. 95)

To add to phonebook entry (pressing 3 DEF in step 2)

- The phonebook search screen appears.
- Select phonebook entry to add mail address, phone number or memo and press ● to perform edit operations. (☞P. 108)
  Overwrite and save a scanned URL as a memo item (☞P. 93).

To save as a bookmark (pressing 4 CHG in step 1)

- Bookmark saving screen appears. (☞P. 215)
- Select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Searching for Read Text in Dictionary

Search for scanned text in the dictionary.

- Insert miniSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary before performing a search.

1 In the screen after reading text (☞steps 1 to 5 on P. 193), press [5 JKL].

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- The e-book screen appears. Refer to P. 401 for details on search methods for dictionary.
- After searching, press [TV/RADIO] or press [CLR] twice to return to the screen after reading text.

To not search

- Select ***No*** and press ● or [CLR].

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

i-mode

- What is i-mode? . . . . . <i-mode>198

■Viewing Sites

- Viewing Sites . . . . . <View Sites>204
- Site Layout and Operation 208
- Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu) . . . . . <マイメニュー (My Menu)>212
- Changing the i-mode Password . . . . . <Change the i-mode Password>213
- Viewing Web Pages . . . . . <Internet Access>213
- Saving Sites and Web Pages as Bookmarks . . . . . <Bookmark>215
- Saving Site Contents . . . . . <Screen Memo>218

■Downloading Data from Sites

- Saving Data Files from Sites . . . . . <Save Image>221
- Saving i-melody from Sites. . . . . <i-melody>222
- Saving Download Dictionaries from Sites . . . . . <Save Download Dictionary>223
- Saving Chara-den from Sites . . . . . <Chara-den Download>224

■Useful i-mode Functions

- Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To . . . . . <Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To>224

■Setting i-mode

- Setting i-mode 227

■Using the Message Service

- Message R/F . . . . . <Message R/F>231
- Receiving Message R/F . . . . . <Receive Message R/F>231
- Checking for New Message R/F. . . . . <Check New Message>233
- Viewing Messages R/F in Message Box . . . . . <View Message R/F>234

■Certificates

- Using Certificates 237

※ Screenshots are images and may differ from actual screens.

What is i-mode?

i-mode is an online service that connects i-mode compatible FOMA terminals (i-mode terminals) to sites (programs) and the Internet and enables i-mode mail exchange.

Site (program) access

Select メニューリスト (Menu List) from iMenu to use online services, such as weather reports and news, from IPs (Information Providers). Additionally, download and enjoy games and stand-by images.

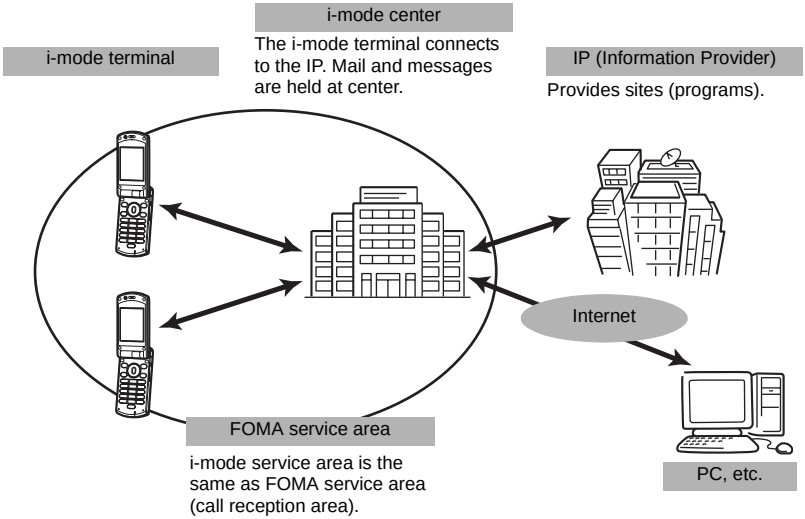
Internet access

Enter an Internet web page address (URL) to view various i-mode compatible web pages.

i-mode mail

Exchange e-mail of up to 5,000 double-byte characters with i-mode users and other users with Internet mail addreses. Additionally, send and receive Deco-mail, still pictures and movies to make exchanging mail more enjoyable.

About the Service



i-mode is a paid service that requires registration. For inquiries about registration, refer to the back cover of this manual.

Note

- All FOMA services are available from date of subscription.
- When changing from mova service (i-mode) to FOMA service, most registered sites on マイメニュー (My menu) transfer. Some sites may not transfer. In such cases, re-register those sites. Refer to お知らせ＆ヘルプ (News & Help) in iMenu for more details.
- Users are charged based on the amount of information (packets) sent and received. This manual does not contain information related to charges. Refer to “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” for details on i-mode charges.
- Refer to the latest “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” for details on changes to i-mode service contents.

Site (Program) Access

Using simple key operations, access various online services provided by IPs.
Online services include bank transfers/balance inquiries, ticket reservations, news, search in dictionaries and downloading ring tones.

Viewing sites

iMenu appears after connecting to i-mode center. Access services such as sites (programs) and 週刊ｉガイド (Weekly i Guide).
Viewing sites ☞P. 204

1 マイメニュー (My Menu)	Register frequently used sites for easy access (☞P. 212). Charged sites, such as those from iMenu, are registered automatically. Register up to 45 sites.
2 週刊ｉガイド (Weekly i Guide)	Access information on new and recommended sites. Updated daily Monday through Friday.
3 メニューリスト (Menu List)	Access sites by genre/location. Select site to access.
4 とくするメニュー (Tokusuru Menu)	Access information on exciting campaigns, presents and coupons. Updated weekly. (Provider: D2 Communications)
5 ｉエリア (i area)	Access information such as weather, maps and town information about specific areas.
6 かんたん検索 (Easy search)	Easily search for sites performing keyword searches in categories such as “Games” and “Stand-by display”.
6 ｉアプリサーチ (i-αppli Search)	Search for i-αppli by category, such as those with no information charge and games.
6 便利サイトサーチ (Useful Site Search)	Search for i-αppli by category, such as those with no information charge and games.
7 マイボックス (My Box)	Members service to register stores and sites for easy access.
8 オプション設定 (Options)	Access to adjust i-mode settings, change i-mode password, etc.
9 お知らせ＆ヘルプ (News & Help)	Contains i-mode related information and functions such as DoCoMo news, subscribing to i-mode use and rules.
▢ 料金＆お申込 (Charges & Registration)	Check charges, make payments, change payment plans or register for various services.
English	Switch to English for iMenu.

※Screenshots are images. Actual screen may differ depending on settings.

Note

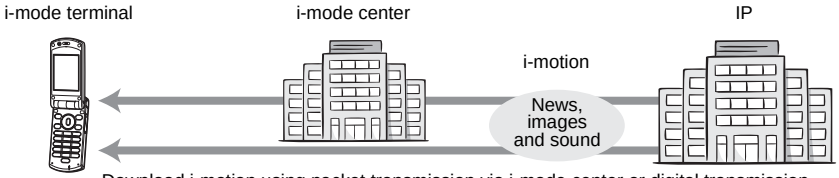
- Some sites (i-mode paid sites) require an information fee to access.
- Some services provided by IPs require a separate subscription to access.
- When the i-mode icon flashes, packet charges are not incurred except when connecting to i-mode center.
- Some iMenu items differ when Dual Network Service is available.

Other features

i-motion

Download images and sound from i-mode sites to play on the handset or use as stand-by. (☞P. 326)

- To download i-motion ☞P. 327
- To play i-motion ☞P. 327
- To play i-motion automatically ☞P. 328



Download i-motion using packet transmission via i-mode center or digital transmission.

Chaku-motion

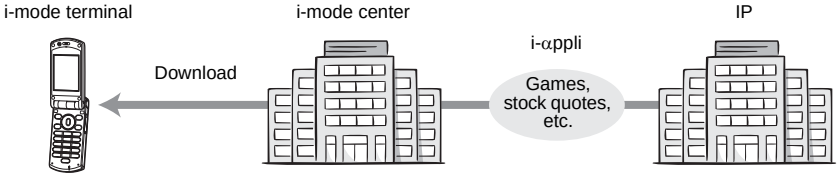
Download i-motion from i-mode sites to use as ring tone or receive display. Use not only melodies but also songs as the ring tone.
(Some unsupported i-motion cannot be set as Chaku-motion.)

- To set Chaku-motion ☞P. 96, P. 112

i-αppli

Download i-αppli software from sites for more convenient use of your i-mode terminal. Download various games to your i-mode terminal. Also, download market information i-αppli and periodically receive automatic updates of the stock market. With mapping i-αppli, only necessary data is downloaded, enabling smoother scrolling.

- To download i-αppli ☞P. 310
- To activate i-αppli ☞P. 311
- To activate i-αppli automatically ☞P. 316



i-αppli stand-by

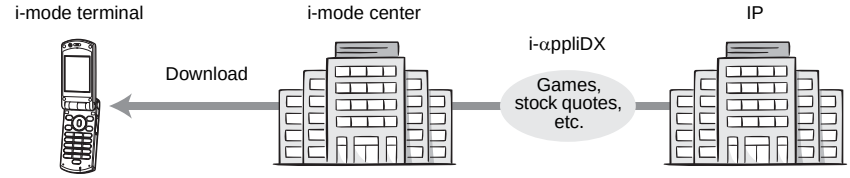
Set i-αppli as stand-by and receive mail, make calls, etc. Make the stand-by even more convenient by setting i-αppli to view news or weather, have animated characters appear when alarm sounds or mail arrives, etc.

- To set i-αppli stand-by ☞P. 319

i-αppliDX

Link i-αppliDX with various information on the i-mode terminal (mail, call/received history, phonebook data, etc.) and have animated characters compose messages and inform who incoming callers are. Also use to receive real time information such as stock quotes and game progress.

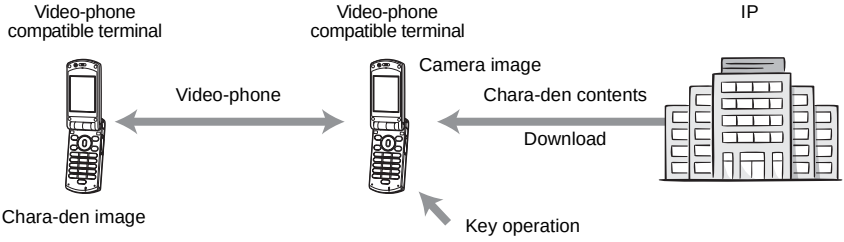
● What is i-αppliDX? ☞P. 308



Chara-den

Use Chara-den during a video-phone call to send an animated character's image to the other party. The character moves its mouth to the conversation and performs actions when keys are pressed. After downloading a character, set a still picture/movie of it in stand-by or send it as a mail attachment. (Images/movies with restrictions for mail attachment and output to non-FOMA devices are not sent.)

● To download Chara-den ☞P. 224
● To set Chara-den ☞P. 360
● To shoot a picture/movie of Chara-den ☞P. 362
● To verify Chara-den ☞P. 364
● To use Chara-den ☞P. 361



Infrared exchange (Ir exchange)

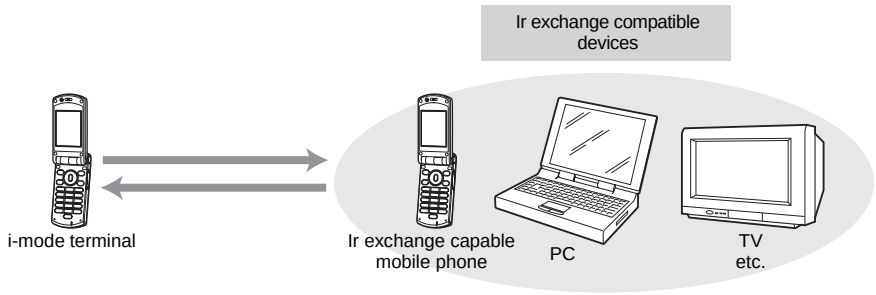
Send data such as phonebook entries, mail and bookmarks to other mobile phones or PCs with Ir exchange capability*.

Use with i-αppli to link handset with other Ir exchange compatible devices and expand functionality.

The handset can be used as a TV remote control or membership card.

* Some data may not be transferred with Ir exchange.

● To set to Ir exchange mode ☞P. 389



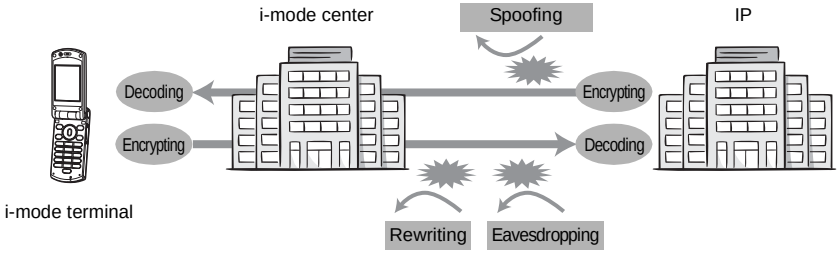
Continued on next page ▶▶

SSL session

SSL uses authentication/encryption technology to protect privacy by sending data securely. Use SSL-encrypted pages to send personal data, such as credit card numbers and postal addresses, more securely so data cannot be eavesdropped or spoofed.

SSL sessions use two methods. One method is to use CA certificate in the terminal to view an SSL-enabled site (SSL page) without requiring additional key operation. The second method is to download Client certification from the FirstPass center to view an SSL-enabled site (SSL page). Certification used depends on the site. (☞P. 237)

- To use CA certificate in the i-mode terminal ☞P. 237
- To use FirstPass Client certification ☞P. 237



※ Spoofing: When a person sets up a fake website to illegally obtain customer information.

FOMA card restriction

Insert a FOMA card which contains customer information (phone numbers, some phonebook entries, etc.) into the i-mode terminal and restrict access to downloaded melody/still picture/movie files. Files cannot be played/viewed when a different FOMA card is inserted or handset is turned on with no card inserted.

■ Files which can be restricted

- Still pictures
- i-αppli
- Chara-den
- Files attached to Message R/F
- Images inserted into Deco-mail text
- Image shot with video-phone
- Melodies
- Movies
- Images in screen memos (including Flash)
- Files attached to i-mode mail

※ Still pictures/movies shot with the camera or files saved from external memory cannot be restricted.

※ If file is set as ring tone, stand-by, etc., this function resets settings.

i-melody

Download current and favorite songs to use as ring tone. (☞P. 222)

i-animation

Download animation from sites and view as stand-by display or receive display. (☞P. 122, P. 124, P. 125)

Flash™

Flash technology combines pictures and sound into animation. Use Flash to create animated or expressive sites. Additionally, download Flash movies to i-mode terminal and set as stand-by display. (☞P. 122)

Information on the i-mode terminal can be viewed for some Flash movies.

The following are available. (☞P. 229)

- Battery level
- Signal level
- Time information
- Ring tone volume setting
- Bilingual setting
- Model information

Message Service

Message Service is a service to automatically receive information (messages). Message Service uses Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

Message R (Message Request)	Message automatically received when registered to a site that provides Message Service.
Message F (Message Free)	Message is received with no packet charge.

- To receive Message Service ☞P. 231
- Default setting for Message F (Free) is 受信する (Receive) for users that register for i-mode together with FOMA purchase after October 1, 2004. To reject Message F, set to 受信しない (Not receive) after purchase.
  ※ All other users must change Receive option setting to receive Message F. The default setting is 受信しない (Not receive).
  Refer to “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” for details.
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.
- Number and duration of messages held at i-mode center is shown below. When maximum number or duration of messages is exceeded, messages are deleted starting with the oldest.

	Maximum Number of Mail	Maximum Duration
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

- Check new messages to retrieve Message R/F held at i-mode center. (☞P. 233)

News delivery service (Tokudane News Bin)

News delivery service is a service to automatically receive information such as news and weather on an i-mode terminal using Message R (Request).

News delivery service is a paid service that requires registration. After registering, the site is automatically added to マイメニュー (My menu) and can be accessed to view the same information.

- Message R screen layout ☞P. 234

i-mode password

i-mode password is required when subscribing to paid sites, registering/deleting sites in マイメニュー (My Menu), adjusting i-mode mail settings, etc. The default setting is ***0000***. It is recommended to change the password. (☞P. 213)

Keep i-mode password private.

Internet Access

Enter Internet web page addresses (URLs) to view i-mode compatible web pages.

● To view ☞P. 213

Note

- Some non-i-mode compatible web pages may not appear correctly.
  i-mode compatible web pages are web pages created with i-mode compatible tags. For details ☞P. 213
- Web page may appear differently on a PC.
- Internet web pages are not available if URL exceeds 512 characters.

Using i-mode

- Sites (programs) and Internet web pages are generally protected by copyright law. Using downloaded text, images or other data from sites (programs) and web pages for non-personal use without the author's permission such as changing, selling or redistributing data is prohibited.
- Registered and saved contents (mail, messages, screen memos, i-αppli, i-motion) in the i-mode terminal may be lost if the battery pack is removed for longer than one month. Because content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the i-mode terminal, it is recommended that important data also be saved elsewhere. DoCoMo shall not be liable in the event that registered or saved contents are lost.
- If the i-mode terminal is repaired, information downloaded using i-mode, i-αppli, or i-motion cannot be transferred (excluding some cases) to a new phone due to copyright law. Additionally, some models may not allow data such as downloaded images/movies/melodies, files sent/received by mail (images/movies/melodies), screen memos or Message R/F to be viewed/played if a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card.
- If files with access restrictions due to a FOMA card are set in stand-by or as the ring tone, etc. and a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card, settings are reset to default.

View Sites

Viewing Sites

Use the various services provided by IPs (Information Providers).
Use the FOMA terminal for functions such as ticket reservations or bank balance inquiries.
(Available services vary depending on site. Separate subscription may be required.)

1 In stand-by, press i.

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) from Top menu.
- i-mode menu appears.

Icons used during i-mode

- : i-mode is in standby. (flashes)
- : i-mode transmitting. (flashes)
- SSL: This mark appears for SSL pages.
- : While loading images, Image display is set to OFF.
- : This icon appears if an error occurs while loading an image or the image format is unsupported.
- ☒: The image cannot be loaded because the URL is not correct.
- : Downloading i-αppli.

2 Press 1 [iMenu].

- iMenu appears.

To disconnect

- Press [Cancel] while connecting (flashes).

3 Select item and press ●.

- Repeat this operation to view site.

To scroll up/down

- Press ▲▼.
- Press 8 to scroll down one screen at a time. Press 2 to scroll up one screen at a time.
- Press # for 1+ seconds to scroll down automatically. Press * for 1+ seconds to scroll up automatically. Press #, *, or a dial key to stop Auto scroll.

4 To end, press PWR, select *Yes* and press ●.

- Handset disconnects and stand-by reappears.

Note

- Set handset to not load images when browsing sites. (☞P. 230)
- Some sites may appear different from actual site, depending on the site. If characters do not appear properly, change character code. (☞P. 214)
- Some downloaded images may exceed the number of colors the FOMA terminal can show on the display.
- Press [Cancel] while showing a site. i-mode end confirmation screen appears. Select ***Yes*** to go to i-mode menu.
- When Accept/Reject calls, Reject by reason of non-disclosure, or Reject unknown are set, ring tone does not sound for callers without permission even during i-mode or i-mode stand-by. The caller's number is saved in Received calls as well as the name saved in phonebook. The caller hears a busy signal.

Related Operations

Change Character code <Character code>

1 While browsing, press ● ▶ ■*Character code* ▶ ●.

View a site's server certificate <View certificate>

1 While browsing, press ● #.

Repeat Flash movies or GIF animation playback <Retry>

1 While browsing, press ● ▶ ■*Retry* ▶ ●.

■ Sending terminal ID and UIM ID

When browsing, some sites or Internet web pages may ask for terminal ID. When ***Your terminal ID and UIM ID is requested. Send?*** appears, select ***Yes*** and press ● to send terminal ID. To not send, select ***No*** and press ●. To not send and return to the previous screen, press CLR or select ***Back*** and press ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- A notification confirmation screen always appears before sending terminal ID and UIM ID. Terminal ID and UIM ID are not sent automatically.
- Terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.
- The Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.

Viewing images

View images on sites/web pages, image mail, and Message R/F.

- The FOMA terminal is compatible with images in GIF/JPEG format and Flash movies. (Some JPEG images may not appear.)
- 🔎 appears while receiving an image and the image is shown when receiving is complete.
- Set image display (☞P. 230) to show or not show images. If set to ***OFF***, 🔎 appears in the place of images.

Note

- Downloaded Flash movies may playback differently from when on a site or web page.
- When browsing, view GIF and JPEG format images and Flash movies. i-mode mail with URL for GIF and JPEG format images or Flash movies do not appear as image mail. Click URL and use Web To function (☞P. 227) to view the image or Flash movie.
- When no image is received, 🖼 appears. Reload to try to receive image again.
- When images are received that are not GIF/JPEG format or Flash movies, 🖼 appears in place of the image.

Viewing SSL Pages

View SSL sites or web pages that start with ***https://*** (SSL page). The screen on the left appears when trying to view an SSL page.
Press ● to not connect.

Use one of the certificates below to view SSL pages. (☞P. 237)

■ CA certificate ■ DoCoMo CA certificate ■ Client certificate

- When viewing an SSL page, SSL appears.

A message appears when moving from an SSL page to a normal page prompting to end the SSL connection.

Note

- If ***This certificate has expired. Do you connect?***, ***This site is not certified. Do you connect?*** or ***Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?*** appears, the web page certificate has expired or uses a different certificate from the FOMA terminal's certificate.
  When those messages appear, the page is not secure to send credit card numbers, postal addresses or other personal information.
  To continue viewing the page, select ***Yes***. To not view the page, select ***No***.

Connecting to the Last Viewed Page <Last URL>

When i-mode is disconnected, the last viewed page is recorded as Last URL. Use Last URL to quickly connect to the last viewed page.

- Web pages with URLs that exceed 512 single-byte characters cannot be displayed and cannot be recorded as Last URL. Additionally, some pages, such as completed melody download screens, may not be recorded as well.

1 In stand-by, press i 6MNO.

- Alternatively, select ⋮ (i-mode) → ***Last URL*** from Top menu.
- The last viewed URL appears.

When Last URL is not stored

- ***No last URL*** appears.

2 Press ● [Connect].

- The last viewed page appears.

Related Operations

Delete Last URL <Delete>

1 In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page <Last URL>", press 📷 1 ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.

Save Last URL as a bookmark <Register bookmarks>

1 In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page <Last URL>", press 📷 2ABC 1.

Copy Last URL <Copy>

1 In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page <Last URL>", press 📷 3DEF.

Note

Saving as a bookmark

- Refer to steps 1 and 2 on P. 215 and P. 216 for saving bookmarks.

Copying

- Up to 512 single-byte characters can be copied. (Web pages with URLs that exceed 512 single-byte characters do not appear.)

Setting Playback Volume for Melody <Sound FX Setting>

Set playback volume for melodies from sites, Internet web pages and screen memos.

1 In stand-by, press i 9WXYZ 3DEF 6MNO.

- Alternatively, select ⋮ (i-mode) → ***i-mode setting*** → ***Internet*** → ***Sound fx setting*** from Top menu.

2 Press ⓪ (louder) or ⓠ (softer) to adjust volume and press ●.

Site Layout and Operation

When browsing, use links to view other screens from the current screen and reload data. Perform operations such as verifying URLs or registering phone numbers.

Viewing Flash Movies <View Flash Movies>

View Flash movies using the FOMA terminal. Flash technology combines pictures and sound into animation. Sites that use Flash movies are more expressive.
Save in My picture of Data box and use in stand-by. (☞P. 122, P. 335)

1 View site, web page or saved screen memo with a Flash movie. (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213, or steps 1 and 2 on P. 219)

- Flash movie plays automatically.

When a link is set in a Flash movie

- Links may be set in Flash movies.
  Press ⓘ, ⓙ, ●, [K/L] to [S/W], [X/Z] or [T/Y] to select the link.
- Operate the page even if ↕ does not appear.

To set Flash movie sound effects

- When viewing Flash movie, press [Cam], select ■***Sound fx setting***, press ● and press ⓘ (louder) or ⓙ (softer) to adjust volume (☞P. 227).

To play Flash movies again

- When viewing Flash movie, press [Cam], select ■***Retry*** and press ●.

Note

- Terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.
- The Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP with this operation.
- When Set image display is set to ***OFF***, Flash movies cannot be viewed.
- Vibrator will not operate with Flash movie sound effects even if Vibration mode is set.
- Flash movies pause if no operations are performed for 30+ seconds. Press ● to resume. (Other keys also resume playback.)
- Playback is not available for melodies from Flash movies set as stand-by or incoming/outgoing call screen.
- Depending on the Flash movie, even when saved as a Screen memo, the Flash movie may playback differently from when on a site.
- If a Flash movie has an error during playback, it cannot be saved.
- Some Flash movies may cause the handset to vibrate during playback. Even if the vibrator is set to ***OFF***, handset will vibrate.
- Some Flash movies use saved data. To use saved data, set ***Use*** in Saved Data setting. The default setting is ***Use***. (☞P. 229)
- The following saved data is used.
  ■ Battery level ■ Signal level ■ Time information ■ Ring tone volume setting
  ■ Bilingual setting ■ Model information
- Some Flash movies may not play properly when viewed.
- Refer to steps 1 to 4 on P. 221 for details on saving Flash movies.

Selecting Links and Items

When browsing, use links to view other screens from the current screen. Links usually appear blue. A selected link is highlighted.

- Some links may be images. When selected, the image is outlined.

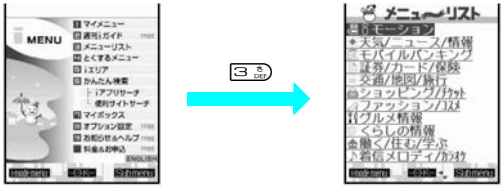
Selecting a link and moving to a new screen

Highlight bar moves　　Linked page

- Press ⓠ to highlight the next link and ⓪ to highlight the previous link.

Moving to a new screen by using dial keys

In front of links, 1, 2, 3, etc. appear. Select a link by pressing the corresponding dial key (1 to 9, *, #).



Linked page

※ Some sites and web pages may not be viewed.

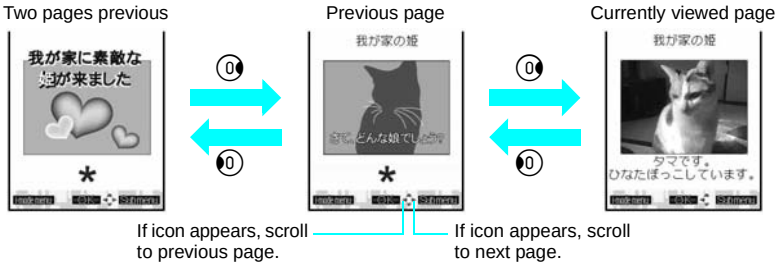
Entering text and selecting items in sites/web pages

Use the following method to select items and enter text.

Name	Item	Function
Radio button	○ : Unselected ◉ : Selected	Used to select items. Select only one entry.
Check box	☐ : Unselected ☒ : Selected	Used to select items. Select one entry or multiple entries.
Pull-down menu	東　京 足立区 北　区	Used to select items. Select pull-down menu to see a list of possible choices.
Text box	ID パスワード	Enter text. In text input screen, select ***Bar code reader*** from sub menu and enter text information into text box using JAN/QR codes. (Melodies and images are not available and are saved as text. Characters that cannot be displayed in the text box do not appear.)

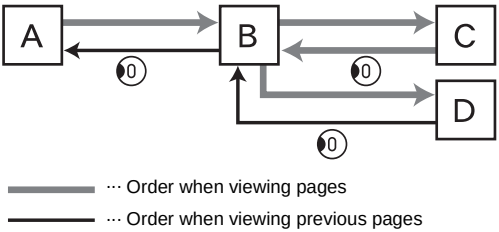
Previous/Next Page (Cache, History)

The FOMA terminal stores up to ten viewed sites or Internet web pages. This memory is called the “cache”. Press 0 to scroll between previous and next pages.



- Press 0 for the previous page and 0 for the next page.
- Previously entered characters and settings are not restored for pages saved in the cache.
- Up to ten pages are stored in history. When a new page is viewed, the oldest page in history is deleted.
- When pressing 0 to scroll through pages, if the page is no longer in the cache, the cache size is surpassed or the page is set (created) to always upload up-to-date information, the handset reloads the page from the site.
- When switching to a screen saved in the cache, it may take time to view the page.
- The history and cache are reset when i-mode ends.
- Press 0 repeatedly to scroll through previous pages. When using 0 to scroll through previous pages (***C*** to ***B***) and another page (***D***) is viewed, pressing 0 twice will not return to ***C***. Page will scroll from ***B*** → ***A***.

(When scrolling ***A*** → ***B*** → ***C*** → ***B*** → ***D***)



Reloading Information <Reload>

Reload information from a site or web page when information was not received properly (when appears).

- Perform this operation after information has finished loading.

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), press 1.

- Reloading starts.

To stop reloading

- While connecting (flashes), press [Cancel].

Note

- Some site and web page information cannot be downloaded properly even after reloading.
- Screen memos (☞P. 218) cannot be reloaded.
- Use bookmarks (☞P. 215) to access sites and Internet web pages easily.

Viewing the URL <URL>

Verify the URL of the current site or web page.

A URL is an address written in formats like ***http://www.xxx.△△.jp***.
Up to 512 single-byte characters (including ***http://***) can appear in the display.

- URLs cannot be edited.

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), press ● 5WXYZ.

- Site or web page URL appears.
- Use ◎ to scroll when the URL does not fit on one screen.

To view URL of screen memos (☞P. 218)

- Press ● 4GHI in the screen memo list.

To view URL of bookmarks (☞P. 215)

- Press ● 3DEF in the bookmark list.

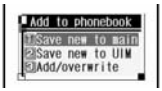
To copy URLs

- Press ● [Copy].

Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>

Add highlighted phone numbers and mail address from sites and web pages.

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), select phone number or address and press ● 8TUV.



2 Press 1 [Save new to main].

- Add to FOMA terminal handset phonebook as a new entry.
- The save new entry screen for phonebook appears. The selected phone number or mail address is entered.

To save as a new entry to the FOMA card phonebook

- Press 2ABC.

To add/overwrite phonebook

- Press 3DEF.

3 Enter the other items in the phonebook entry. (☞P. 94)

Note

- Add highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses from a screen memo. (☞P. 219)
- Some highlighted phone numbers and mail address cannot be added.

Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

Register frequently visited sites from iMenu and Menu list to マイメニュー (My Menu) for convenient access.

- Register up to 45 sites. Some sites cannot be registered.
- Web pages cannot be registered. Use bookmarks for easy access. (☞P. 215)

Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

1 View site (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204), select マイメニュー (My menu) registration menu (example: 1マイメニュー登録 (My Menu Registration)) and press ●.

2 Select ｉモードパスワード入力 (Input password) field, press ●, enter i-mode password (four digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

3 Select 決定 (OK) and press ●.

- マイメニュー (My menu) registration is finished.

Note

- Page set-up may differ depending on the site.
- Upon subscribing to a paid site, the site is automatically registered to マイメニュー (My menu).
- For details, refer to “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.

Viewing Sites in マイメニュー (My Menu)

1 In stand-by, press i 1 and press 1 in iMenu.

- List of sites in マイメニュー (My menu) appears.

2 Select site and press ●.

- The site appears.

Note

- For Dual Network Service (☞P. 461), マイメニュー (My menu) that was registered on a mova terminal may not be available on a FOMA terminal, and マイメニュー (My menu) that was registered on a FOMA terminal may not be available on a mova terminal.

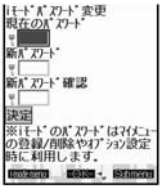
Changing the i-mode Password

Default setting
0000

i-mode password (four digits) is required for マイメニュー (My Menu) registration/deletion, Message R/F, i-mode paid site subscription/cancellation and mail settings.

- i-mode password can be changed after subscribing to i-mode. Keep i-mode password private.
- In the case of a forgotten password, take identification (a driver's license, etc.) to any DoCoMo retailer. Password is reset to ***0000***.

1 In stand-by, press i 1 and press 8 2 in iMenu.



2 Select 現在のパスワード (Current password), press ●, enter i-mode password (four digits) and press ●.

- The screen to input the current password appears.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

3 Select 新パスワード (New password), press ●, enter new i-mode password (four digits) and press ●.

- The screen to input the new password appears.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

4 Select 新パスワード確認 (Confirm new password), press ●, re-enter new i-mode password (four digits) and press ●.

- The screen to confirm the new password appears.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

5 Select 決定 (OK) and press ●.

- i-mode password is changed.

Viewing Web Pages

Enter web page address (URL: addresses that start with *http://*, etc.) to connect.

- Web pages that are not i-mode compatible or have excess data may not appear properly.

1 In stand-by, press i 8.

- Alternatively, select ｉ (i-mode) → ***Go to location*** from Top menu.
- The URL entry screen appears. (***http://*** is already entered.)
- If a URL has been entered previously, that URL appears.

To activate Bar code reader

- In stand-by, press i ●. (☞P. 190)

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Enter URL and press ●.

- Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including ***http://***).
- Web page appears.
- Steps when viewing are the same as for sites.

When the URL is incorrect

- Press CLR to erase the character the cursor is on or the last character.
- Press CLR for 1+ seconds when the cursor is on the first character or after the last character to erase all the characters.

To disconnect

- Press i [Cancel] while connecting (flashes).

To end connection

- Press PWR, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- Press CLR without entering characters to return to i-mode menu.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum size for a page, ***Size of this page is not supported***. appears, data transmission stops and only received data appears.

Connecting to another site when viewing sites or web pages

- Press ○ ✉. Subsequent steps are the same as step 2.

Viewing Web Pages with Correct Characters <Character Code>

If the characters on an web page do not appear properly, convert to proper characters and view again.

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), press ○, select ■*Character code* and press ●.

- View web pages with correct characters.
- If characters do not appear properly, repeat step.

Note

- Changing character code when properly shown may render site unreadable.
- Some pages may not appear properly after changing character code.
- After character code changes four times, web page returns to original code.
- Code returns to original code after reloading page or scrolling to next/previous page.

Viewing Pages with URL History <URL History>

The FOMA terminal records up to ten web pages accessed from ***Go to location*** of i-mode menu.
Use the history to reconnect to those web pages.

1 In stand-by, press i 7PQRS.

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***URL history*** from Top menu.
- The URL history list appears.

2 Select URL and press ●.

- After the connection screen, the web page appears.

Note

- When ten pages are exceeded, the oldest page in history is deleted.

Connecting to another site when viewing sites or web pages

- Press ● 5 to view the URL history list. Subsequent steps are the same as step 2.

Related Operations

Delete URL history <Delete one>

1 **In URL history in step 1 of "Viewing Pages with URL History <URL History>" (☞P. 214), press ● 2.**

2 **Select *Yes* ▶ ●.**

- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Show all URLs in URL history <URL>

1 **In URL history in step 1 of "Viewing Pages with URL History <URL History>" (☞P. 214), press ● 3.**

- To copy URL: Press ●.

Bookmark

Saving Sites and Web Pages as Bookmarks

Save frequently visited sites and web pages as bookmarks for convenient access.

- Add folders and sort bookmarks into types and manage them. (☞P. 217)
- Sites or web pages with images or melodies may not appear correctly when accessed from a bookmark.

Saving Bookmarks

Save up to 100 bookmarks in total.

- Each bookmarked URL can have up to 256 characters. URLs which exceed 256 characters cannot be saved.

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), press ● 2.

- Save up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters from the title or beginning of the URL. If the title exceeds 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters, the extra characters are deleted. If there is no title, the first 24 characters from the URL are used.
- Bookmark saving screen appears.

When 100 bookmarks are already saved

- ***Bookmark data is full. Overwrite bookmark?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ●. Select folder, press ●, select unnecessary bookmark and press ●. (☞P. 217)

When the same URL is already saved

- ***The same URL is saved. Overwrite?*** appears.
  Select ***Yes*** to show the bookmark saving screen.
  Select ***No*** and the site or web page reappears.

When the URL is too long

- ***URL is too long to register*** appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press 1 [OK].

- Bookmark is saved in the ***Bookmark*** folder.

To change the title and save

- Press 2, edit title and press ●.
- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

Note

- In sites or web pages, when a selection is made in a radio button, check box, pull-down menu or text entered in text boxes, even if a bookmark is saved the selected or entered contents are not saved.
- Some bookmarks may not be saved depending on the site or web page.

miniSD Memory Card

- Copy bookmarks saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 372) or view bookmarks saved on miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 376).
- Copy bookmarks saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (☞P. 377).

Ir exchange

- Send (☞P. 390) and receive bookmarks registered in FOMA terminal handsets using Ir exchange. (☞P. 390)

Note information saved in bookmarks separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 369) or Data Link Software (☞P. 549).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Viewing Sites and Web Pages from Bookmarks

1 In stand-by, press i 3.

Bookmark folder list

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***Bookmark*** from Top menu.
- Bookmark folder list appears.

To use bookmarks in miniSD Memory Cards

- In the bookmark folder list, press ● #.
- To use FOMA terminal handset bookmarks again, press C twice.

To view all saved bookmarks

- In the Bookmark folder list, press ● 4.

To use bookmarks when viewing a site or web page

- Press ● 3.

2 Select folder, press ●, select bookmark and press ●.

- The page appears.

To disconnect

- Press i [Cancel] while connecting (flashes).

To verify/copy URLs

- In the bookmark list, select bookmark and press ● 3 to verify the URL. Press ● 4 to copy the URL.

Note

- Bookmarks are listed in the order of use.
- Paste the copied URL into text areas like mail or text memo. Refer to P. 520 for details on pasting.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Managing Bookmarks

Manage bookmarks in up to ten folders (including ***Bookmark*** folder).
Edit folder names or delete folders. (The preset ***Bookmark*** folder cannot be edited or deleted.)

- Create/Delete folders and edit folder names in the bookmark folder list.
- Use one of the following to delete bookmarks.

Delete one	Delete entries individually.
All in folder	Delete all entries in a folder.
Delete selected	Delete multiple selected entries collectively
Delete all	Delete all bookmarks.
Delete folder	Delete entries by folder.

Related Operations

Create folders <New folder>

1 **In bookmark folder list (P. 216), press ● 1.**
2 **Enter folder name ▶ ●.**
- To delete ***New folder*** : Press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Edit folder names <Edit folder name>

1 **In bookmark folder list (P. 216), select folder ▶ ● 2.**
2 **Enter folder name ▶ ●.**
- To erase current folder name: Press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Move bookmark to a new folder <Move>

1 **In bookmark folder list (P. 216), select folder ▶ ● ▶ bookmark ▶ ● 5.**
2 **Press 1.**
- To move all bookmarks in the folder: Press 2.
- To move multiple bookmarks: Press 3 ▶ bookmark ● (repeat) ▶ i [Complete].

3 **Select folder ▶ ●.**

Change bookmark titles <Edit title>

1 **In bookmark folder list (P. 216), select folder ▶ ● ▶ bookmark ▶ ● 1.**
2 **Enter title ▶ ●.**
- To erase current title: Press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Delete bookmarks <Delete>

1 **In bookmark folder list (P. 216), select folder ▶ ● ▶ bookmark ▶ ● 2.**
2 **Press 1.**
- To delete all bookmarks in the folder: Press 2 ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
- To delete multiple bookmarks: Press 3 ▶ bookmark ● (repeat) ▶ i [Complete].

3 **Select *Yes* ▶ ●.**
- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Delete folders <Del all folders>

- ***Bookmark*** folder cannot be deleted.

1 **In bookmark folder list (P. 216), select folder ▶ ● 3.**
2 **Press 2 ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.**
- To delete all bookmarks in a folder: Press 1 ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.

3 **Select *Yes* ▶ ●.**
- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Note

Folder names

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- ***Bookmark*** folder cannot be changed.

Changing bookmark titles

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

Deleting entries by folder

- When selecting ***Delete all*** in the bookmark folder list, all bookmarks are deleted but the folder remains.

Screen Memo

Saving Site Contents

Use screen memo to save screens from sites and web pages.

- Save screen memo images in My picture of Data box and set in stand-by. (☞P. 221)
- Save up to 400 screen memos. Amount varies depending on size of the data. When screen memo data is large, fewer can be saved.
- Protect up to half of the total data (200 entries maximum). Protected screen memos cannot be overwritten.

Saving Screen Memos

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), press ● 4 GHI.

- View up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters from the title or beginning of the URL.
- Add screen memo screen appears.

When screen memo memory is full

- ***No more space. Overwrite?*** appears.

  Select ***Yes*** and select a screen memo to overwrite. Proceed to save confirmation screen. If the screen memo is larger than the available memory, ***Space is not enough. Continue to overwrite?*** appears.
  Select ***Yes*** and select a screen memo to overwrite.
  Select ***No*** and the site or web page reappears.

2 Press 1 [OK].

- The site or web page reappears.

To change the title and save

- Press 2 ABC, edit title and press ●.
- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

Note

- When Set image display is set to ***OFF***, images are not saved in screen memos.
- In sites or Internet web pages, when a selection is made in a radio button, check box, pull-down menu or text entered in text boxes, even if a screen memo is saved the selected or entered contents are not saved.
- Depending on the size, some saved pictures may not fully appear when set in stand-by.

Viewing Screen Memos

1 In stand-by, press i 5 JKL.

Screen memo list

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***Screen memo*** from Top menu.
- Screen memo list appears.

(screen memo)	Standard screen memo.
(screen memo)	Protected screen memo.
(screen memo)	FOMA card restriction (☞P. 37) is set.

2 Select screen memo and press ●.

- Selected screen memo appears.

To scroll up/down

- Press 0.
- Press ▼ to scroll down one screen at a time. Press ▲ to scroll up one screen at a time.
- Press # for 1+ seconds to scroll down automatically. Press * for 1+ seconds to scroll up automatically. Press #, *, or a dial key to stop Auto scroll.

To view other screen memos

- Press 0 to view the previous/next screen memo.

Note

- Screen memo data is from when data was saved. Screen memo may differ from the original site or web page data.

Related Operations

Check screen memo URLs <URL>

1 In step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press ○ 9 WXYZ.

- From the screen memo list: Select screen memo ▶ ○ 4 GHI.
- To copy URLs: When viewing the URL, press ○.

Check screen memo details <File property>

1 In step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press ○ 4 GHI.

- From the screen memo list: Select screen memo ▶ ○ 5 JKL.

Save screen memo still pictures in My picture of Data box

1 In step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press ○ 5 JKL.

Create i-mode mail with screen memo URL <Compose message>

1 In step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press ○ 6 MNO.

Create i-mode mail with still picture from screen memo <New mail w/image>

1 In step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press ○ 7 PQRS ● 1 or ○ 7 PQRS ● 2 ABC.

Add phone numbers and mail addresses from screen memo to Phonebook <Add to phonebook>

1 In step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press ○ 8 TUV.

Adjust Flash movie sound effect volume in screen memo <Sound fx setting>

1 In step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press ○ * ▶ 0 (louder) or 0 (softer) ▶ ●.

Replay Flash movies in screen memo <Retry>

1 In step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press ○ ▶ ■*Retry* ▶ ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Note

Saving still pictures

- Refer to P. 221 for details.

Image mail composition

- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output to non-FOMA devices are not sent.
- Refer to P. 251.

Adding to the phonebook

- Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 211 for details.

Managing Screen Memos

Protect, delete and edit titles of screen memos. Viewing screen memo details and sort screen memo order.

Deleting screen memos

Use the following operations.

Delete one	Delete entries individually.
Delete all	Delete all entries.
Delete selected	Delete multiple selected entries collectively.

Sorting screen memos

The sort order is as follows.

Date (new → old)	Files are sorted by the latest save date first.
By title	Entries are sorted by title in the following order: Single-byte (symbols → numbers → alphabet upper case → alphabet lower case → katakana) → double-byte (symbols → numbers → alphabet upper case → alphabet lower case → hiragana → katakana → symbols/special characters → kanji → pictographs). ※ Characters are sorted according to their character code.
By size	Entries are sorted by the largest files first.
Protected first	Protected (by date) → normal (by date) (Entries are sorted by ***Date (new → old)***.)

- Entries are not automatically sorted after titles are edited. Sort again.

Related Operations

Change screen memo titles <Edit title>

1 In screen memo list (☞P. 219), select screen memo ▶ 📷 2 ▶ enter title ▶ ●.

- From the screen memo screen: Press 📷 2.
- To erase current title: Press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Protect screen memos <Protect set>

1 In screen memo list (☞P. 219), select screen memo ▶ 📷 3.

- From the screen memo screen: Press 📷 3.

2 Press 1.

- To disable: Press 2.

Delete screen memos <Delete>

1 In screen memo list (☞P. 219), select screen memo ▶ 📷 1.

- From the screen memo screen: Press 📷 1.

2 Press 1.

- To delete all screen memos: Press 2 ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
- To delete multiple screen memos: Press 3 ▶ screen memo ● (repeat) ▶ i [Complete].

3 Select *Yes* ▶ ●.

- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Related Operations

View screen memo details <File property>

1 In screen memo list (☞P. 219), select screen memo ▶ 📷 5 JKL.

- To end viewing: Press ●.

Sort screen memos <Sort>

1 In screen memo list (☞P. 219), press 📷 6 MNO ▶ sort method ▶ ●.

Note

Screen memo titles

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

Protecting screen memos

- 🔒 appears for protected screen memos.

Deleting screen memos

- Use ***Delete all*** to delete unprotected entries.

Sorting screen memos

- The default setting is Date (new → old).
- Sort order is set until changed.

Save Image

Saving Data Files from Sites

Save images, Flash movies, frames and stamps from sites, web pages and Message R/F. Set saved pictures in stand-by and other functions (☞P. 122). Alternatively, download Deco-mail templates for when composing messages.

- Save the image in a new folder or in the ***i-mode/Other*** or ***Deco-mail picture*** folder in My picture of Data box. Deco-mail templates are saved in the ***Deco-mail picture*** folder. (☞P. 170, P. 258)
- Save up to 700 images on FOMA terminal handset. Save amount depends on available memory.
- Available file formats and sizes include GIF images (100 KB), JPEG images (100 KB) and SWF (Flash) (100 KB).

Example: When saving from sites and Internet web pages

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), press 📷 5 JKL.

2 Select image, press ●, select folder and press ●.

- The screen on the left appears after ***Saving*** and ***Saved to xxx*** appear.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not set

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

4 Select screen to set and press ●.

- Available screens depend on the file format. Not available screens appear in gray.
- ***Set to stand-by screen?*** appears when setting the image as the stand-by display. Select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- Downloaded Flash movies may playback differently from when on a site or web page.
- When saving images from sites, web pages, Message R/F or i-mode mail, check for a memory icon. If a memory icon appears, saved images may be overwritten.
  It is recommended to delete unnecessary images in Data box so that the memory icon disappears. (Screen memo can be saved.)

M	Icon appears when available memory becomes less than 800 KB.
M	Icon appears when available memory becomes less than 100 KB.

Related Operations

Download Deco-mail templates and compose Deco-mail

1 When browsing, select Deco-mail template ▶ ●.

2 Press 3 DEF ▶ compose message.

- To preview: Press 1.
- To save: Press 2 ABC.
- To not save: Press 4.

Note

- Templates are saved in the ***Deco-mail picture*** folder.
- If templates are not saved, Compose message cannot be selected.
- Template downloads are not available if memory space is not available.

i-melody

Saving i-melody from Sites

Download and save iMelodies from sites and Internet web pages. Save up to 200 i-melody. (Capacity varies depending on size of melody.)
Set the saved melody as the ring tone or attach to i-mode mail.

- Available file formats and sizes include SMF (100 KB) and MFi (100 KB).

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), select melody and press ●.

- When download is complete, ***Completed*** appears.
- Animation may not be viewed during download.
- The save confirmation screen appears.

To stop downloading

- During download, press [Cancel] or CLR.

2 Press 2 [Save].

- For melodies which do not have music position information set, save is complete.
- The screen to save the melody appears.

To play downloaded melodies

- Press 1. For melodies which have music position information set, press 1 [Play all] or 2 [Play portion]. To stop playback, press ● or CLR.
- Melody is played at the same volume as phone ring tone (☞P. 115). When phone ring tone is set to ***Silent*** or ***Step***, melody is played at ***Volume 1***.
- A confirmation screen appears when Manner mode is set. Select ***Yes*** and press ●.

To not save

- Press 3.

3 Press 1 [Play all].

- The entire melody is played when set as the ring tone.

To play a portion

- Press 2. A preset portion is played.

When 200 melody files are already saved

- Select melody to overwrite, press ●, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

Forward and store iMelodies on a PC using a miniSD Memory Card (☞P. 369).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. (Melodies with restrictions for mail attachment and output to non-FOMA devices are not sent.)

Save Download Dictionary

Saving Download Dictionaries from Sites

Download dictionaries from sites or web pages to register in the FOMA terminal.

- Save up to five Download dictionary files. (Up to two may be used.)
- Download dictionaries from the ***SH-MODE*** iMenu site.

iMenu → 3メニューリスト (Menu list) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → 3***SH-MODE***

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), select Download dictionary and press ●.

- When download is complete, ***Completed*** appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press 2 ABC, select slot and press ●.

To check Download dictionary

- Press 1 あ/A.

To not save

- Press 3 さ/DEF.

When existing slot is selected

- A confirmation screen to overwrite slot appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ●.

When two dictionaries are already in use

- The confirmation screen on the left does not appear. Clear dictionary currently in use and try again. Refer to steps 1 and 2 of “Setting/Clearing a Dictionary” on P. 523.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not use Download dictionary immediately

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Chara-den Download

Saving Chara-den from Sites

Download and save Chara-den from sites or Internet web pages.

- The maximum size of Chara-den is 100 KB.
- Save up to 50 Chara-den files. (Save amount depends on available memory.)
- Files are saved in the ***Chara-den*** folder of Data box.
- Default Chara-den can be downloaded from the ***SH-MODE*** site in iMenu.
  iMenu → 3メニューリスト (Menu list) → ▮ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → 3***SH-MODE***

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), select Chara-den and press ●.

- When download is complete, ***Completed*** appears.
- Chara-den save confirmation screen appears.

2 Press 2 ABC [Save].

To check the data

- Press 1 あ/A.
- Chara-den player appears.

To not save

- Press 3 さ/DEF.

Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

Use highlighted data (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, etc.) from sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail and conveniently make a voice/video-phone call, send mail, or access a web page.

- Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To may not be used with decorated mail.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)

Make voice/video-phone calls to phone numbers in sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail.

- Not usable with some sites and web pages.
- Phone To (AV Phone To) is not available when Keypad dial lock is set.

1 Select phone number from site, web page, Message R/F or mail and press ●.

- Dial confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- The phone number appears on the screen.
- Other party's name also appears for numbers in phonebook.

To not make a call

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

3 Press ☎ or ● [Phone].

- Call is placed to phone number displayed.

To make video-phone call

- Press ⓘ [V-phone].

Note

- Some sites and web pages show ***text linked to the phone number*** in place of a phone number.
- Add phone numbers in sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail to phonebook. (☞P. 211)
- When a number string fulfilling the following conditions appears in a mail message, the string is recognized as a phone number.
  - 10 to 26 digit numbers that start with ***0*** or **+** (single-byte)
  - 5 to 26 digit numbers that start with and include asterisks or #
  - 3 to 26 digit numbers that start with ***tel:***
  - 3 to 26 digit numbers that start with ***tel-av:*** (video-phone)

  ※ Even if the above numbers contain a hyphen (-) or parenthesis, string is recognized as a phone number. (Strings are not recognized as phone numbers if these symbols repeat continuously.)

Using Mail To

Send mail to mail addresses in sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail.

- Not usable with some sites and web pages.
- Mail To may not be available if two or more mail addresses appear together.
- Up to 50 character mail addresses are valid. Addresses that are 51 characters or more are not recognized as mail addresses and are not highlighted.

1 Select mail address from site, web page, Message R/F or mail and press ●.

- Compose message screen appears. The selected mail address is entered.
- Subject and message may be entered if mail address is from a site or web page.

2 Create and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 4 and 5 on P. 252 for details.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Some sites and web pages show ***text linked to the mail address*** in place of a mail address.
- Add mail addresses in sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail to phonebook. (☞P. 211)

Creating Image Mail

Create mail with URLs of images in sites and web pages.

- Additionally, create i-mode mail with image attachments.

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), press [📷] [7 PQRS].

2 Select image and press ●.

- For multiple images, select image and press ●.

3 Press [1 あ/@] to create and send i-mode mail.

To create i-mode mail with image attachments

- Press [2 a/ABC].
- Refer to steps 2 to 5 on P. 251 for details.

Note

- Send GIF or JPEG images. Flash movies cannot be sent.
- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output to non-FOMA devices are not sent.

Using i-αppli To

Start i-αppli from URLs in sites, web pages, mail or screen memos.

- Start i-αppli when i-αppli To settings are set to ***YES***.
- i-αppli does not start with URLs which exceed 512 characters.

1 When viewing site, web page, mail or screen memo, select i-αppli address (URL) and press ●.

- Start i-αppli confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- i-αppli starts.

To not start i-αppli

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Using Web To

View web pages from URLs in Message R/F or mail.

- Save still picture when still picture URL is in mail message.
- Download i-motion when URL is included in mail message.
- Not usable with some sites and web pages.
- Web pages with URLs which exceed 512 characters cannot be viewed.

1 Select URL from Message R/F or i-mode mail and press ●.

- Connection confirmation screen appears.

2 Press [Yes].

- Connection begins.
- The specified web page appears.
- Subsequent steps are the same as for i-mode Internet access. (☞P. 204)

To not access

- Press [No].

Note

- Some sites and web pages show the web page name in place of a URL.
- Web To function is not available from i-motion stand-by (☞P. 122).

Related Operations

Save a still picture from URL in mail message <Save image>

1 Select URL ▶ ● ▶ [Yes] ▶ 5

Note

- The still picture is saved in the ***i-mode/Other*** or ***Deco-mail picture*** folder in My picture of Data box.

Setting i-mode

Set various functions relating to i-mode access.

Adjusting Flash Movie Sound Effects Volume <Sound Fx Setting>

Default setting: Volume 3

Adjust volume of Flash movie sound effects.

1 When browsing (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), press , select ■*Sound fx setting* and press ●.

- Sound fx setting screen appears.

2 Press (louder) or (softer) to adjust volume and press ●.

To silence sound effects

- Select ***Silent*** and press ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Sound effects are not active in Manner mode.
- Some Flash movies do not have sound effects.

Setting Connection Timeout <Connection Timeout>

Default setting
60 seconds

When sites or web pages are congested, set the duration for the terminal to automatically stop attempting to send/receive data. Select among ***60 seconds***, ***90 seconds*** and ***Unlimited***.

1 In stand-by, press i 9wxyz 1 1.

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***i-mode setting*** → ***Shared*** → ***Connection timeout*** from Top menu.
- Set connection timeout screen appears.

2 Select connection timeout and press ●.

When set to *Unlimited*

- Disconnection time with i-mode center is not set. (Disconnection may occur due to signal status.)

Note

- When connection times out, ***Time out*** appears and the previous screen reappears.

Changing Hosts from i-mode (ISP Connection Transmission) <i-mode Host Selection>

※ Settings do not need to be changed to use i-mode.

ISP connection transmission

When changing FOMA terminal host, connect to various providers (ISP). Registration for Packet Transmission Service is required when using ISP connection transmission. Packet transmission charges apply for ISP connection transmission.

※ Registration is not required for i-mode subscribers.

- Pake-Houdai does not apply for packet transmissions incurred for hosts other than DoCoMo.

Provider agreements

- Registration to another provider is required for ISP connection transmission. Contact providers for details regarding service contents (site/Internet access, mail, etc.).
- Some services may require a separate fee.
- Phone number and location information may be sent to the provider depending on the site.
- Save up to ten hosts in the terminal (not including i-mode).
- i-mode is not available when using other hosts.

Saving hosts

Save up to ten hosts (not including i-mode).

1 In stand-by, press i 9wxyz 1 2abc.

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode)→ ***i-mode setting*** → ***Shared*** → ***Host selection*** from Top menu.
- Host selection screen appears.

2 **Enter host number, press 2 ABC, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.**

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

3 **Enter host name and press ●.**

- ***Host*** ○ appears when saving a new host. (The host number entered in step 2 appears for the ○.)
- Press C CLR for 1+ seconds to erase host name.
- Enter up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters.

4 **Enter host and press ●.**

- Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

5 **Enter host address and press ●.**

- Enter up to 30 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Changing hosts

Save hosts in advance in order to access.

1 **In stand-by, press i 9 WXYZ 1 .,@ 2 ABC.**

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***i-mode setting*** → ***Shared*** → ***Host selection*** from Top menu.
- Host selection screen appears.

2 **Enter host number and press 1 .,@ [Set].**

Note

- Settings do not need to be changed to use i-mode.
- ***i-mode (UIM)***, which appears on host selection screen, is one of the following (depends on area in which i-mode is registered).
  - DoCoMo Hokkaido, DoCoMo Tohoku, DoCoMo, DoCoMo Tokai, DoCoMo Hokuriku, DoCoMo Kansai, DoCoMo Chugoku, DoCoMo Shikoku, DoCoMo Kyushu
- Default connection information cannot be changed.

Related Operations

Reset saved contents <Reset>

1 In the screen in step 1 of "Saving hosts", select host number ▶ ● ▶ 3 DEF ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.

Note

- When hosts are reset, host is set to ***i-mode (UIM)***.

Setting Data Use During Flash Playback <Saved Data>

Default setting: Use

1 **In stand-by, press i 9 WXYZ 3 DEF 5 JKL.**

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***i-mode setting*** → ***Internet*** → ***Saved data*** from Top menu.
- Saved data setting screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press 1.

To not use

- Press 2.

Not Viewing Images <Set Image Display>

Default setting: ON (Display)

Set handset to not show still pictures from screen memo or images from sites, web pages or Message R/F.

1 In stand-by, press i 9 3 1.

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***i-mode setting*** → ***Internet*** → ***Set image display*** from Top menu.
- Set image display screen appears.

2 Press 2 [OFF: not display].

To display

- Press 1.

Note

- When set to ***OFF***, 🔍 appears in the place of still pictures.
  Still picture is not saved even when registered in the screen memo. (☞P. 218)
- When set to ***OFF***, Flash movies are not shown.
- When set to ***OFF***, images in i-mode mail and Message R/F are shown.

Resetting i-mode Settings <Reset i-mode>

Reset i-mode settings to default values.
Default values are listed below.

Setting			Default value
Shared	Connection timeout		60 seconds
	Host selection		i-mode (UIM)
Internet	Set image display		ON
	Certificates		Valid: Root certificates 1 and 2 and all CA certificates
	i-motion auto replay		Yes
	Secure setting	Docomo CA Host	DoCoMo
	Saved data		Use
	Sound fx setting		Volume 3

1 In stand-by, press i 9 4, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***i-mode setting*** → ***Reset i-mode*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Reset i-mode confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Settings are reset.

To not reset

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Message R/F

Subscribe to sites which provide Message Service to automatically receive information (messages). Message Service uses Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

Message R (Message Request)	Service to automatically receive message from a site which provides Message Service.
Message F (Message Free)	Message is received with no packet charge.

- Refer to "Receive Message R/F" for details on receiving Message R/F.
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.

Setting Message F (Message Free)

After selecting ***iMenu*** → 8オプション設定 (Options) → 3メッセージF設定 (Message F) → 受信する (Receive), enter i-mode password (four digits) and press 決定 (OK).

Note

- Number and duration of Messages R/F held at i-mode center are shown below. When maximum number or duration of messages is exceeded, messages are deleted starting with the oldest.

Type	Maximum number	Maximum duration
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

- Check new message (☞P. 233) to retrieve Message R/F held at i-mode center.

Receiving Message R/F

Message R/F is automatically received from the i-mode center when the FOMA terminal is in the service area.

- Save up to 20 to 50 messages each. (Capacity varies depending on size of message.)
  Message R/F is held at i-mode center when one of the following occurs.
  - ■Handset is turned off ■While in Self mode ■Outside the service area ■Using video-phone
  - ■Ir exchange ■Receive option setting is set to ***ON***
  - ■When there is no available space due to protected or unread Message R/F

Note

Meaning of Icons

Icon	Meaning
R/F	Unread Message R/F. Refer to P. 234 for details on checking Message R/F.
R/F	FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full. View unread messages (☞P. 234), disable Message R/F protection (☞P. 236) or delete unnecessary Message R/F (☞P. 236).
R/F	Message R/F is held at center. Perform Check new message (☞P. 233) to receive Message R/F.
R/F	Center is full. Perform Check new message (☞P. 233).

RRRR: Request, FFFF: Free

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected Message R/F is overwritten. Protect Message R/F to prevent overwriting. (☞P. 236)
- R/F or R/F does not always appear when mail is held at the i-mode center.
- Message R/F at i-mode center may be overwritten when R/F appears.
- Message ring tone does not sound while call is in progress, running i-αppli or playing i-motion/melodies.

Opening New Message R/F

When Message R/F is received, the newest one appears.

Messages do not appear when Auto message display is set to ***No auto display***.

- Set types of messages or priority of received messages for Auto message display.

1 Message R/F is automatically received.

- R flashes when receiving Message R and F flashes when receiving Message F.
- After reception, receive results appear and message ring tone sounds (R/F appears).

To check Message R/F contents immediately

- In receive results screen, select ***Message R*** or ***Message F***, press ●, select Message R/F to check and press ●.

To stop ring tone

- Press CLR or PWR. Ring tone stops and receive results screen disappears. Press other keys to keep screen but stop ring tone.

2 Message R/F appears for approximately 15 seconds and screen returns to stand-by (when set to automatically display).

To view Message R/F longer

- Press ○ while viewing to scroll.

Note

Receiving when not in stand-by

- R/F appears. Received screen does not appear.

Automatically Viewing Message R/F <Auto Message Display>

Default setting: Msg R preferred

Set priority and message types. Following settings are available.

Message R preferred	When unread Message R and Message F are received simultaneously, Message R appears.
Message F preferred	When unread Message R and Message F are received simultaneously, Message F appears.
Message R only	Only unread Message R appears.
Message F only	Only unread Message F appears.
No auto display	No messages appear automatically.

1 In stand-by, press 2 わを 7 PQRS.

- Alternatively, select (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Auto msg display*** from Top menu.
- Auto message display screen appears.

2 Select method and press ●.

Note

- When Auto display is set, new messages appear for 15 seconds in the following situation.
  - ■ Returning to stand-by from receive results screen
- Message does not automatically appear in the following situation.
  - ■ All locked.
  - ■ Mail PIM is locked.

Check New Message

Checking for New Message R/F

Received Message R/F are held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off (☞P. 263).

Check i-mode center for Message R/F and receive held messages.

- Set types for check new message (i-mode mail, Message R/F). (☞P. 288)
- When Receive option setting is set to ***ON***, i-mode mail and Message R/F are received.
- All types are enabled as default setting.
- Refer to P. 302 for details on checking for SMS.

1 In stand-by, press i 4 GHI or ✉ 7 PQRS.

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) or ✉ (Mail) → ***Check new message*** from Top menu.
- Also check by pressing ✉ twice.
- New messages are checked for.
- Set Check new message (☞P. 288) and select ***i-mode mail*** → ***Message R*** → ***Message F*** to check. (Icons (✉, R, F) appear for each type checked.)

To abort receiving

- Press ● while receiving.
- Aborted Message R/F is held at i-mode center (R/F appears).
- Message R/F is received depending on timing.

2 Message R/F ring tone sounds when new messages are received.

- Check finishes.
- ***0*** appears when no Message R/F are held at center.
- When i-mode mail and Message R/F are received simultaneously, ring tone set for the last mail or Message R/F received sounds.

To stop ring tone while playing

- Press C CLR.
- Other keys also stop ring tone. (☞ P. 265)

3 In the receive results screen, select *Message R* or *Message F* and press ●.

- Message R or Message F list appears.

When not viewing immediately

- i-mode menu reappears if no operations are performed in the receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds.
- Message R/F does not automatically appear when checking new messages.

4 Select Message R/F to view and press ●.

- Refer to P. 234 for details on viewing Message R/F.

Viewing Messages R/F in Message Box

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ 2 ABC 1 あ.

- Alternatively, select ⓘ(i-mode) → ***Message*** → ***Message R*** from Top menu.
- Message R list appears.

To view Message F

- Press ⓘ 2 ABC 2 ABC.

2 Select Message R/F and press ●.

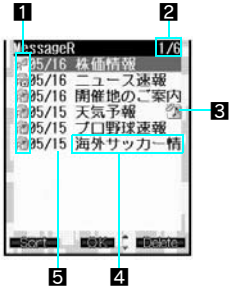
- Message viewing screen appears.

Note

- Reload messages with images which do not load properly. (☞P. 210)
- Set handset to not reload images. (☞P. 230)

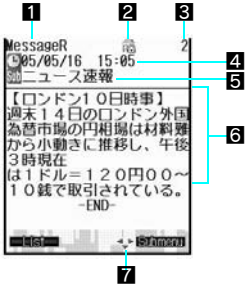
Message List/Viewing Screen Layout

Message list layout



1 Unread/Protected icon
R/P: Unread Message R/F
R/P: Protected Message R/F
R/P: Unprotected Message R/F
2 Message R/F number/total
3 Melody/Image
When melody/image is attached to message, or appears.
4 Subject
Message R/F subject appears.
5 Received date and time
Time for current day and date for other days.

Message viewing screen layout



1 Message type
2 Protected icon
Appears when protected.
(appears for Message F.)
3 Message number
4 Received date and time
5 Subject
6 Message
- END - appears at the end of message.
7 Screen operation

●	Scrolls down.
●	Scrolls up.
⊞	Scrolls down one frame.
⊞	Scrolls up one frame.
⊞*	Press for 1+ seconds to scroll down automatically.
⊞*	Press for 1+ seconds to scroll up automatically.
●	Shows next message.
●	Shows previous message.

* To stop Auto scroll, press ⊞, ⊞ or a dial key.

- and melody title appear below message.
- Melody plays if Melody Auto replay is set to ***ON***.
- Image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message.

Reloading Message R/F Image

Reconnect to i-mode center and reload Message R/F image when not received properly (when appears).

1 In Message list (☞P. 234), select Message R/F, and press ● and 1.

- Reloading starts.

To stop reloading

- Press [Cancel] while connecting (flashes).

Note

- Some images cannot be downloaded properly even after reloading.

Checking/Saving Attachments <Check File>

Check or save images and melodies attached to Message R/F.
Images are saved to ***i-mode/Other*** in My picture and melodies are saved to ***Melody*** in Melody of Data box.

1 In Message list (☞P. 234), select Message R/F, and press ● and 3.

- Attachments list appears.

2 Select a file and press ● [Agree].

- Attachment plays or is shown.

To save attachment

- Press [Save], select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Checking/Saving Inserted Images <Check Message Image>

View or save GIF and JPEG images inserted in Message R/F message.

- Image is saved to the ***i-mode/Other*** folder in My picture of Data box.

1 In Message list (☞P. 234), select Message R/F, and press ● and 4.

- Message image list appears.

2 Select image and press ● [Agree].

- Image appears.

To save image

- Press [Save], select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- For attached images, check and save with Check file.

Managing Message R/F

Protect, sort and delete Message R/F to prevent overwriting.

Protecting messages

Message R/F can be protected, or protection can be canceled. Protected files cannot be overwritten.

- When there is no available memory, same types of messages are deleted starting with the oldest.
- Protect up to 25 of each type of message. (The number of protected messages depends on size.)

Sorting messages

The order that files are listed can be changed as follows.

Date (new → old)	Files are sorted by the latest received date first.
Date (old → new)	Files are sorted by the latest received date last.
By subject	Entries are sorted by title in the following order: Single-byte (symbols → numbers → alphabet upper case → alphabet lower case → katakana) → double-byte (symbols → numbers → alphabet upper case → alphabet lower case → hiragana → katakana → kanji → pictographs). (Entries are sorted by character code.)
Unread/Protected/Read	Unread Message R/F → protected Message R/F → read Message R/F. (Entries are sorted by ***Date (new → old)***.)

- The default setting is ***Date (new → old)***.
- When screen other than Message list is viewed, display method returns to the default setting, ***(Date (new → old)***. When Message list is viewed after pressing CLR from message viewing screen, listed order remains unchanged.

Deleting messages

Use the following to delete messages.

Delete one	Delete entries individually.
Delete all	Delete all unprotected read messages.
Delete selected	Delete multiple selected messages collectively.

Related Operations

Protect Message R/F <Protect set>

1. **In Message list (☞P. 234), select Message R/F ▶ ● ▶ ● 2ABC.**
2. **Press 1.**
   - To disable: Press 2ABC.

Delete Message R/F <Delete>

1. **In Message list (☞P. 234), select Message R/F ▶ ● [Delete].**
2. **Press 1.**
   - To delete from message viewing screen: Press ● 3DEF.
   - To delete all Message R/F: Press 2ABC ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
   - To delete multiple Message R/F: Press 3DEF ▶ Message R/F ● (repeat) ▶ i [Complete].
3. **Select *Yes* ▶ ●.**
   - To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Sort Message R/F <Sort>

1. **In Message list (☞P. 234), select i [Sort] ▶ sort method ▶ ●.**

Using Certificates

Enabling/Disabling CA Certificates <CA Certificate>

Default setting
Enable all

The following certificates are required to view SSL pages.

- CA (Certification Authority) certificate .... Certificate issued by a certification company that is registered in the FOMA terminal by default.
- DoCoMo CA certificate.... Certificate registered in FOMA card (green) required to connect to FirstPass center or FirstPass compatible sites.
- Client certificate... Certificate downloaded from FirstPass center via menu (☞P. 238). Registered in FOMA card (green).

Detailed information of each certificate can be viewed. Disable CA certificate which develop security problems.

- SSL pages using that disabled CA certificate cannot be viewed.

1 In stand-by, press i 9wxyz 3def 2abc.

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***i-mode setting*** → ***Internet*** → ***Certificates*** from Top menu.
- Certificate list appears.

2 Select certificate and press ● [Able/Disable].

- ☑ appears for enabled certificates. ☐ appears for disabled ones.
- Enabled/disabled switch.

To view certificate contents

- Select a certificate and press (●) [Show].

Setting FirstPass <Certificate Operation>

Client certificates are required to access FirstPass compatible sites and web pages. Certification is proof of FOMA contract. Request and download from FirstPass center. Register Client certificates in FOMA card (green) to access certificate compatible sites and web pages.

- FOMA card (blue) is not available.
- Not available with FOMA Card Data Plan. (Available with ISP connection regardless of payment plan.)
- Set date and time to access FirstPass center. (☞P. 46)
- Some screens and operations for FirstPass center may change.
- When accessing FirstPass center, sending/receiving mail and Message R/F are unavailable.

Note

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Certificates are exchanged between sites and FOMA terminal. Certificates are then validated for client authentication.
- After reading and agreeing with "FirstPass ご利用規則" (Japanese only), request Client certificate to be issued.
- PIN2 code is required to use Client certificate. (☞P. 142)
  After entering PIN2 code, all actions are considered to be performed by user. Keep FOMA card and PIN2 code private from others.
- If FOMA card is lost or stolen, contact DoCoMo retailer to cancel Client certificate.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for sites or information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. All problems must be resolved between user and site.
- Neither DoCoMo nor certification company guarantee security when using FirstPass or SSL. Use at own discretion.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Pake-Houdai does not apply for packet transmission charges incurred from applying for or downloading the FirstPass Client certificate.
- Packet transmission charges incurred from accessing a FirstPass compatible site with i-mode are included with Pake-Houdai.

Client authentication

- Server and client authentication allow for safer data transfer. Certificates are exchanged between sites and FOMA terminal. Certificates are then authenticated. Client authentication allows for safer data transmission.
- Client authentication for Client certificates are not available for FOMA card (blue).

Accessing sites with certification

Access FirstPass compatible sites and web pages using Client certificate.

1 Access site or web page and view SSL-enabled site. (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213)

- Sites and web pages requiring Client certificate be sent show a confirmation screen.

To view server certificate while viewing site

- Press ● (ﾒﾆｭｰ).

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- PIN2 code entry screen appears.

3 Enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- When authentication succeeds, SSL-enabled site or web page appears.
- Refer to P. 142 for details on PIN2 code.

Note

- When access to FirstPass compatible sites and web pages is attempted without Client certificate, ***You have no certificate. Do you connect?*** appears. Select ***No*** to end SSL transmission. Attempt again after downloading certificate from FirstPass center.
- When Client certificate expires, ***Your certificate has expired. Do you connect?*** appears. Select ***No*** to return to the original screen. Attempt again after renewing certificate from FirstPass center.

Accessing FirstPass center

Perform Client certificate operations from FirstPass center.
Some screens and operations for FirstPass center may change.

1 In stand-by, press i 9wxyz 3def 4ghi 1.@.

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***i-mode setting*** → ***Internet*** → ***Secure setting*** → ***Cert Operation*** from Top menu.
- FirstPass center web page appears.

2 Select 次へ (Next) and press ●.

- FirstPass center main menu appears.

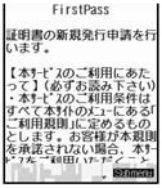
Note

- Read ご利用規則 (Usage Rules) in screen of step 2 carefully before using FirstPass.
- The following functions are not available when accessing FirstPass center.
  - ■ Video-phone (voice call is available)
  - ■ Check new message (Check new SMS)
  - ■ Downloading i-motion
  - ■ Sending/Receiving i-mode mail (SMS can be received)
  - ■ Receiving Message R/F
  - ■ Web To

■ Applying for Client certificate

Apply for Client certificates before downloading.

1 Access FirstPass center (☞steps 1 and 2 of "■ Accessing FirstPass center" on P. 238), select 証明書発行 (Issue certificate) and press ●.



- New certificate screen appears.

To renew certificate

- Renewal screen appears.

2 Select 実行 (Execute) and press ●.

3 Enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Refer to P. 142 for details on PIN2 code.
- 証明書の発行申請が完了しました。一度終了し、ダウンロード操作を行ってください。(Request for certificate finished. Restart and download.) appears.
- To end, press ☎, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- Apply for Client certificate when renewing or attempting to get new certificate. Certificate cannot be downloaded without application.

■ Download Client certificate

Download Client certificate after application. Certificate is stored in FOMA card and allows handset to view SSL-enabled pages.

1 Access FirstPass center (☞steps 1 and 2 of "■ Accessing FirstPass center" on P. 238), select ダウンロード (Download) and press ●.

2 Select 実行 (Execute) and press ●.

- Completed download screen appears.
- To end, press ☎, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

■ Canceling Client certificates

Invalidate downloaded Client certificates.

1 Access FirstPass center (☞steps 1 and 2 of "■ Accessing FirstPass center" on P. 238), select その他 (Other), press ● and press ● [証明書失効] (Invalidate certificate).

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

3 Enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Refer to P. 142 for details on PIN2 code.

4 Select 実行 (Execute) and press ●.

- The guidance appears.

5 Select 次へ (Next) and press ●.

- Cancel confirmation screen appears.

6 Select 実行 (Execute) and press ●.

- 証明書の失効申請が完了しました。(Certificate invalidation complete.) appears.
- To end, press ☎, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- Certificate application, download and cancellation cannot be performed together. After each operation, disconnect from FirstPass center.
- FirstPass compatible sites cannot be viewed after cancellation.
- To reactivate a Client certificate, apply and download again.
- Refer to P. 237 for details on viewing Client certificates.

Changing Certificate Issuer

Default setting: DoCoMo

Set host when downloading Client certificate.

※ Setting does not normally need to be changed.

1 In stand-by, press ● 9 3 4 2.

- Alternatively, select ● (i-mode) → ***i-mode setting*** → ***Internet*** → ***Secure setting*** → ***Docomo CA Host*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 [Edit].

- Terminal security code entry screen appears.

To reset

- Press 2.

3 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Host entry screen appears.

4 Enter host information and press ●.

- Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

5 Enter host address and press ●.

- Enter up to 100 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Note

- When the currently set host is reset, ✗✗✗✗✗✗✗✗✗✗ appears.

▶MEMO◀

Mail

- The FOMA Terminal Mail Function 244
- i-mode Mail. . . . . <i-mode Mail>245
- Displaying Mail Menu . . . . . <Mail Menu>250

■Creating i-mode Mail

- Creating and Sending i-mode Mail. . . . . <Create/Send i-mode Mail>251
- Creating and Sending Deco-mail . . . . . <Deco-mail>254
- Using and Sending a Template 258
- Attaching a File. . . . . <Attachments>259
- Saving and Sending i-mode Mail Later . . . . . <Save i-mode Mail>262

■Receiving and Using i-mode Mail

- Receiving i-mode Mail . . . . . <Auto Receive>263
- Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail . . . . . <Receive Option>265
- Checking for i-mode Mail . . . . . <Check New Message>266
- Replying i-mode Mail . . . . . <Reply i-mode Mail>267
- Forwarding to Another Address . . . . . <Forward i-mode Mail>269
- Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook 269
- Opening Image Mail Images . . . . . <Receive Image Mail>271
- Saving i-motion from Mail. . . . . <Receive i-motion Mail>271
- Checking/Saving/Deleting Attached File . . . . . <Check File>272
- Checking and Saving Deco-mail Images . . . . . <Check Message Image>272
- Saving Deco-mail as Templates. . . . . <Save Template>273

■Using the Mailbox

- Displaying Messages in Outbox and Inbox . . . . . <Outbox/Inbox>273

■Mail History

- Using Mail History . . . . . <Received/Sent Messages>282

■Mail Settings

- Setting FOMA Terminal Mail Functions . . . . . <Mail Setting>285

■Using Chat Mail

- Creating and Sending Chat Mail . . . . . <Compose and Send Chat Mail>293

■Using SMS

- Creating and Sending SMS . . . . . <Create/Send SMS>299
- Receiving SMS. . . . . <Receive SMS>301
- Setting SMS . . . . . <SMS Settings>303
- Saving SMS to FOMA Card 304
- Deleting SMS . . . . . <Delete SMS>306

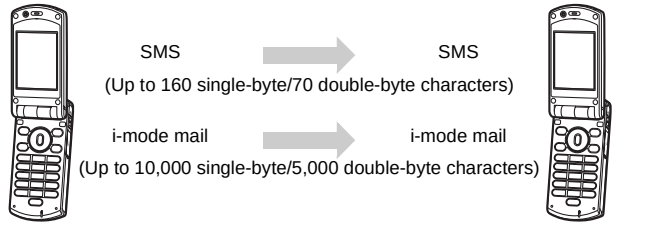
The FOMA Terminal Mail Function

- The FOMA terminal can send and receive i-mode and SMS (Short Message Service). i-mode mail is a registered service.
  Refer to P. 251 and P. 263 for details on sending/receiving i-mode mail.
- SMS messaging (text message) is available between FOMA terminals without i-mode registration. Refer to P. 299 and P. 301 for details on sending/receiving SMS.

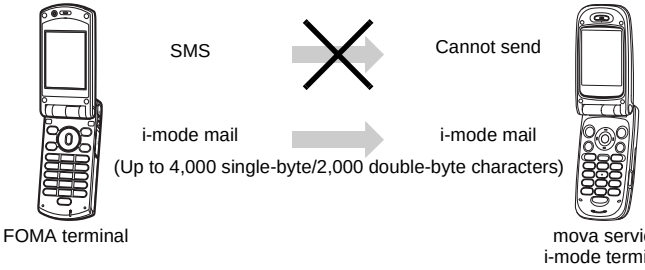
Sending/Receiving Mail

The following are the three possible mail transfer combinations.

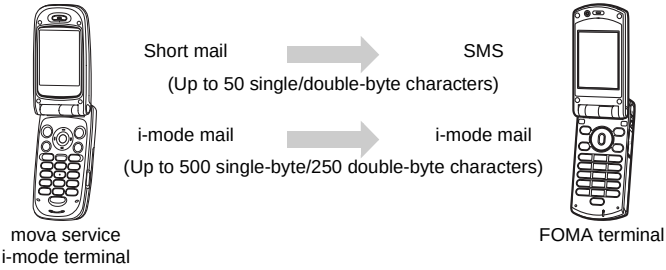
- FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal
  SMS can only be exchanged with FOMA terminals.



- FOMA terminal → i-mode terminal with mova service
  i-mode mail is used when a message is sent from FOMA terminal to i-mode terminal with mova service.
  SMS cannot be sent from a FOMA terminal to a mova terminal.



- i-mode terminal with mova service → FOMA terminal
  Short mail* sent by an i-mode terminal with mova service is received as SMS by a FOMA terminal.



* Short mail is a message transfer service for DoCoMo mobile phones. Short mail cannot be sent from the FOMA terminal.

Note

- Note information in i-mode mail and SMS separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 369) or Data Link Software (☞P. 549).

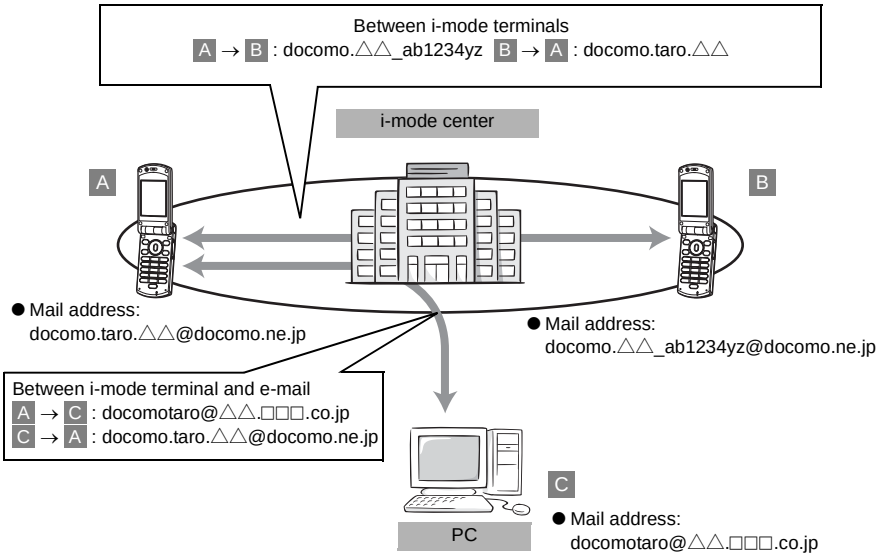
※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

i-mode Mail

Register for i-mode service to exchange e-mails with other i-mode terminals (including mova) via the Internet.
The mail address upon registration is as follows.

New i-mode registration
The portion before @ is a random combination of numbers and alphabet. Customize after subscribing to i-mode.
Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp
<Checking Mail Address> (☞P. 435)
iMenu ➡ 8オプション設定 (Options) ➡ 1メール設定 (Mail Setting) ➡ アドレス確認 (Confirm Address)

- Only the portion before @ is necessary to exchange mail between i-mode terminals (including mova).
- Include ***@docomo.ne.jp*** for e-mail from PCs and other devices.



- Sending mail ☞P. 251
- Receiving mail ☞P. 263

Receive option

When mail is held at i-mode center, view subject and choose to receive mail or delete mail before receiving. (☞P. 265)

Mail settings

Perform the following to set.

<Setting details>
iMenu ➡ 8オプション設定 (Options) ➡ 1メール設定 (Mail Setting) ➡ Various settings

- Refer to “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” for details.

Changing the mail address (アドレス変更)

Customize mail address by changing the portion preceding @, such as ***docomo.taro_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp***.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Registering a secret code (メールアドレス設定 <その他設定> ➡ シークレットコード登録)

Add a four-digit Secret code when using phone number as address. Avoid unwanted mail by rejecting those without Secret codes.

Resetting mail address (メールアドレス設定 <その他設定> ➡ アドレスリセット)

Mail address can be reset to ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp***.

Confirm mail address (アドレス確認)

Confirm the current mail address used.

Receive/Reject mail

Restrict incoming mail by using one of the following Receive/Reject mail settings.

① Set Receive Mail from Selected Domains (メール受信設定 <受信／拒否設定> ➡ ドメイン指定受信)

- Receive mail from au, Vodafone, TU-KA, and WILLCOM.
- Also receive mail from other selected domains.

※ Mail from NTT DoCoMo i-mode, i-shot, Call Charge Notice Service, eBilling and M-stage Visual net.

② Receive/Reject Selected Mail
(メール受信設定 <受信／拒否設定> ➡ アドレス指定受信、アドレス指定拒否)

- Receive/Reject mail from specified mail addresses.

③ Receive/Reject only i-mode mail
(メール受信設定 <受信／拒否設定> ➡ ｉモードメールのみ受信、ｉモードメールのみ拒否)

- Receive (reject mail via Internet) /Reject all i-mode mail.

④ Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders
(メール受信設定 <その他設定> ➡ ｉモードメール大量送信者からのメール受信制限)

- Reject mail from i-mode terminals (including mova) that send more than 200 i-mode mail per day. The default setting is ***Reject***.

⑤ Reject 未承諾広告※ (Unsolicited Ad) Mail (メール受信設定 <その他設定> ➡ 未承諾広告※メール拒否)

- Reject mail sent for advertisement purposes with 未承諾広告※ (unsolicited ad) in the subject, and without the consent of the receiving party. The default setting is ***Reject***. (Sender is required by law to add 未承諾広告※ (six double-byte characters) at beginning of subject.)

※ ***Receive Mail from Selected Domains***, ***Receive Selected Mail***, ***Reject Selected Mail, Receive only i-mode mail*** and ***Reject only i-mode mail*** cannot be set simultaneously.

⑥ Reject SMS (メール受信設定＜その他設定＞ ➡ SMS拒否設定／確認)

- Set to reject all SMS or only user unset SMS, and check setting status.

Check mail settings (設定状況確認)

Confirm current mail rejection settings.

Limit mail size (メールサイズ制限)

Limit i-mode mail by the number of characters set in advance.

Suspend mail functions (メール機能停止)

Suspend mail functions at the i-mode center if not in use.

Number of transferable characters

Character limits for i-mode mail are as follows.

Item	Double-byte (kanji, hiragana, pictographs)	Single-byte (alphabet, numbers, katakana)
Subject	15 characters	30 characters
Mail address	—	50 characters
Message	5,000 characters	10,000 characters

Note

- Message text is limited to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters but may be less depending on size of attachments.
- When limit is exceeded, **/** or **//** is entered and exceeding portions are automatically deleted.
- Character limit when sending to mova service is 2,000 double-byte characters. Attachments other than i-shot images are deleted.
- Exceeding characters in subject are automatically deleted.
- Avoid single-byte katakana and pictographs when sending to mobile phones not supporting i-mode (including mova). Such characters may not appear properly.

When mail cannot be received

Mail received at i-mode center is sent to i-mode terminal immediately. However, if a video-phone call is in progress, or the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, turned off, or the Receive option setting is set to ***ON***, mail is held at the i-mode center.

Mail held at the i-mode center is resent up to three times. Use その他設定 (Other settings) to select i-mode mail at i-mode center and receive.

Note

- Number and duration of time mail is held at i-mode center are as follows.

	Maximum number	Maximum duration
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000 (approximately 2 MB)	720 hours

- Mail is automatically deleted after the saving period expires.
- Maximum number of mail differs according to data size. If i-mode center is full, message is rejected and error message is sent to sender. ✉ appears on i-mode terminal. (☞P. 263)
  When Receive option setting is set to ***ON***, ✉ does not appear even if i-mode center is full.
- Retrieve mail held at i-mode center with Check new message (☞P. 266) and Receive option (☞P. 265). Retrieve new mail along with stored mail and messages.
- Mail is deleted from i-mode center when retrieved on i-mode terminal. Retrieved mail is saved on i-mode terminal. (☞P. 263)
- Extremely large mail is rejected by i-mode center.

Other features

File attachments

Melody

Send and receive melody files downloaded from sites or Internet web pages. Melodies with restrictions for mail attachment and output to non-FOMA devices are not sent.

● To send ☞P. 259 ● To receive ☞P. 271

Image

Send and receive still pictures retrieved from sites, Internet web pages and external memory devices. (Still pictures with restrictions for mail attachment and output to non-FOMA devices are not sent.)

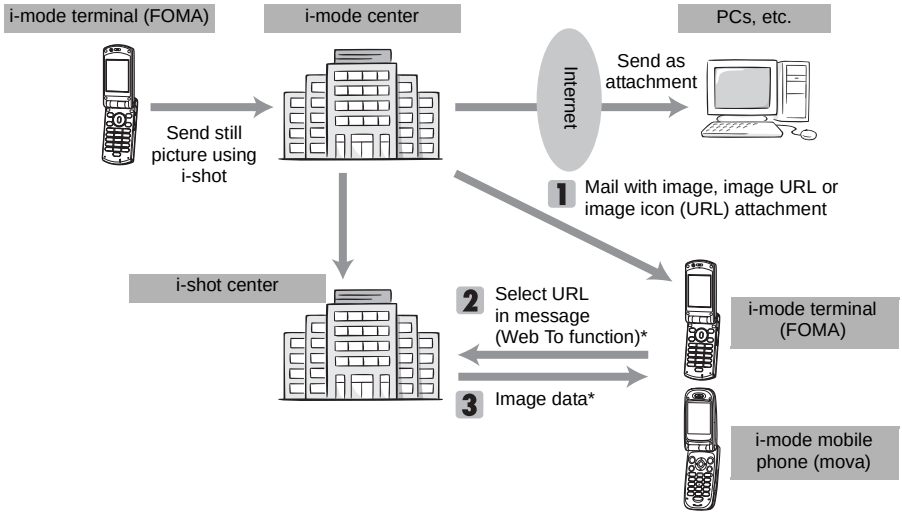
● To send ☞P. 259 ● To receive ☞P. 272

Sending and receiving i-shot

Send still pictures taken with terminal to i-mode terminals (including mova), PCs and other manufacturer's mobile phones. Recipient receives file as an attachment, or as a URL (or icons) with an expiration date which can be clicked to download image.

Send up to 184 double-byte characters (369 bytes) to mova terminals. Only mail is sent when multiple files are attached.

● To send ☞P. 259 ● To receive ☞P. 272



* When a mail with an image URL is received

● Images are saved for up to ten days at i-shot center and are deleted automatically after saving period expires.

i-motion mail

Send and receive movies shot on i-motion compatible terminals and movies downloaded from sites as i-motion mail. Movies with restrictions for mail attachment and output to non-FOMA devices are not sent.

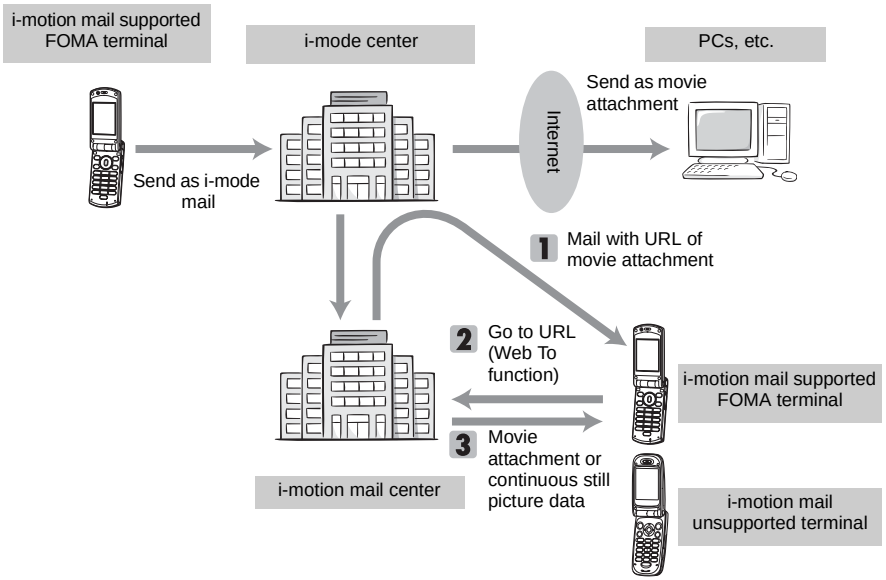
● To send ☞P. 259 ● To receive ☞P. 272

■ About the service

Movies attached to i-motion mail are sent to i-motion mail center and saved. Movies are sent as attachments when sent to PCs.

When received with an i-motion compatible terminal, click the URL in the mail message to retrieve movie.

When sent to unsupported terminals, i-motion is converted to continuous still picture and URL is sent. Select the URL to retrieve continuous still pictures.



● Data at i-motion mail center is saved for up to ten days, and is automatically deleted after saving period expires.

Deco-mail

Create original i-mode mail by changing character size and background color or paste images in message. Send and receive fun, decorated mail. (Some decorations added using PCs are not supported on i-mode terminals and may not appear correctly.)

When Deco-mail is sent to unsupported terminals, mail with a URL is received. The recipient must click the URL to view Deco-mail.

● To create ☞P. 254 ● To send ☞P. 254

● Supported models··· 900i series, 901i series, 700i series and 880iES (receiving Deco-mail only).

Broadcast mail

Send i-mode mail to up to five addresses at once. (☞P. 253)

● Charges are the same as when sending one mail. However, network charges stemming from adding users are incurred.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Cc and Bcc

Set i-mode mail address to ***To***, ***Cc*** or ***Bcc***. Mail is not sent if ***To*** is empty. (☞P. 251)

Chat mail

Have a conversation by exchanging mail with multiple members.

- Charges for sending to multiple recipients are the same as when sending Broadcast mail.

SMS (Short Message)

SMS messaging (text messages) is available between FOMA terminals without i-mode registration.

- SMS is held for up to 72 hours at SMS center.
- SMS is deleted when saving period expires.
- Retrieve SMS held at SMS center with Check new SMS (☞P. 302).
- SMS is deleted from SMS center when retrieved by FOMA terminal. Retrieved SMS is saved on FOMA terminal. (☞P. 301) Copy retrieved SMS to FOMA card. (☞P. 304)
- Set to reject all SMS or reject user unset SMS. (☞P. 246)

SMS address

SMS address is your registered phone number.

Mail Menu

Displaying Mail Menu

Create, receive, send, and view i-mode mail from Mail menu.

1 In stand-by, press ✉.

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) from Top menu.
- Mail menu appears.

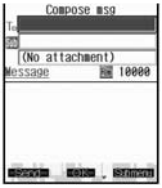
Menu	Function	Reference
1 Inbox	Open, reply to, and forward received mail.	P. 263, P. 273
2 Outbox	Open and resend sent mail.	P. 262, P. 273
3 Unsent messages	Edit or send unsent messages.	P. 263, P. 273
4 Compose message	Create and send or save mail.	P. 251
5 Compose SMS	Create and send or save SMS.	P. 299, P. 300
6 Chat mail	Set and send Chat mail.	P. 293
7 Check new message	Check the i-mode center for new mail and Message R/F.	P. 266
8 Check new SMS	Check SMS center for stored SMS.	P. 302
9 Receive option	Select mail to receive from i-mode center.	P. 265
0 Mail setting	Perform various i-mode mail and SMS related settings.	P. 245, P. 285

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail

Create and send i-mode mail.

- Avoid pictographs and single-byte katakana for subject and message when sending to mobile phones not supporting i-mode. Such characters may not appear properly.
- Send up to 4,000 single-byte (2,000 double-byte) characters to mova service i-mode terminals.
- Use ***To***, ***Cc***, and ***Bcc*** to address mail. The ***To*** field must be filled in.

1 In stand-by, press ○ 4 GHI.



Compose message screen

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Compose message*** from Top menu.
- Alternatively, press ○ for 1+ seconds in stand-by to open compose message screen.

When *Too many unsent/protected mail* appears

- Unsent and protected sent mail exceeds 101 or memory to save sent mail is full. i-mode mail cannot be composed.
- Save up to 101 unsent and sent mail.
- Make sent mail unprotected or delete unsent mail. (☞P. 281)

2 Select To (Address input field) and press ●.

- The input method selection screen appears.

3 Press 2 ABC [Direct input], enter address and press ●.

- Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers and certain symbols.
- Abbreviate ***@docomo.ne.jp*** when sending to i-mode terminals.
- Symbols (☞P. 518) and Internet phrases (☞P. 517) are available.

To select from phonebook

- Press 1 ☆, select recipient and press ●. (Select recipient, press ○ [Confirm], select mail address and press ● to select a different address.)
- Mail address is not saved if ✉, ✉, ✉ or ✉ does not appear.

To select from Sent/Received messages history

- Press 3 DEF [Sent messages] or 4 GHI [Rcvd messages], select a recipient and press ●. Press ● after confirming.

To select from mail member

- Press 5 JKL, select mail member recipient and press ●.
- Save mail member in advance. (☞P. 289)

To send to multiple addresses (☞P. 253)

- Broadcast field is also added when an address is entered in ***To***.
  1. Select broadcast input field and press ●.
  2. Select address type (To/Cc/Bcc) and press ●.
  3. Enter address.
- All mail members are always set to ***To***.
- Add up to four addresses.

To change address

- Select address, press ● and select input method.

To delete address

- Select address, press ○ 5 JKL, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

4 Select Sbj (Subject input field) or *Message*, press ●, enter text and press ●.

- In mail message entry screen, confirm a character in character entry area in middle of display and press ● and move to location to insert. (This is not inline insertion.)
- Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters for Subject and 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters for message. Send up to 4,000 single-byte (2,000 double-byte) characters to mova service i-mode terminals.
- Size becomes 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters and remaining bytes becomes negative under the conditions below. Edit to fit within 10,000 bytes (remaining bytes becomes 0 and larger).
  - When specified font size in character entry line and mail content total size is 10,000 bytes and larger
  - When pasted characters and mail contents total size is 10,000 bytes and larger
  - When i-mode mail is decorated after entering text
- Line breaks (↵) are counted as double-byte characters and spaces (blanks) are counted as single-byte characters. Line breaks (↵) are not available for Subject.
- Press ○ at end of message entry screen to enter line break (↵). Press CLR to delete (↵).
- In message entry screen, press ●● to create Deco-mail. (☞P. 254)
- Press CLR without entering message and the compose message screen reappears.

To use phrases

- Press ● 5 JKL, select type of phrase and select phrase.
- Refer to P. 540 for details on phrases.

To add signature

- Save signature in advance. (☞P. 288)
- While entering message, press ●, select ■***Add signature*** and press ●.
- Signature is automatically added when Auto signature is set to ***ON***.
  Signature is also added automatically when replying. Auto signature is not available when replying with quote or forwarding.
- Signature is included in character count. If character limit is exceeded, ***Signature space is not available*** appears and signature is not added.

5 Press i [Send].

- When sending is complete, ***Transmission completed*** appears. Press ● and the Mail menu reappears.

To cancel

- While sending, press ● [Cancel].
  Alternatively, press TV/DEF or CLR to stop.
  i-mode mail is sent depending on timing. Canceled i-mode mail is saved as unsent mail.

Note

- Number of characters that can be entered decreases when image or melody is attached.
- Add address from mail member (☞P. 289) while ***To*** or Broadcast field is already entered. Select ***Yes*** to overwrite. Select ***No*** to not overwrite.
- Addresses set for mail members are entered for ***To***. (Can be changed to ***Cc*** or ***Bcc***.)
- Sending may not be available due to signal status. i-mode mail failed to be sent are saved as unsent mail.
- Message is sent but ***Transmission failed*** appears depending on signal status.
- Text for recipient may not appear correctly depending on signal status.

Note

- Save up to 101 unsent mail and sent mail. Oldest unprotected sent mail is automatically overwritten when i-mode mail is sent while 100 sent mail or 101 or more sent and unsent mail are saved. (Confirmation does not appear.) Protect important i-mode mail.
- ***Sent messages*** and ***Received messages*** are not available when entering address if Show sent/received is set to ***OFF*** (☞P. 153).
- i-mode mail cannot be sent to addresses not in phonebook while Keypad dial lock (☞P. 151) is set.
- i-mode mail is not available while All locked or Self mode is set.
- When mail PIM is locked, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) to send mail.
- Mail addresses entered in ***To*** and ***Cc*** appear on the recipient's screen. However, some terminals, devices, or mail software may not show mail addresses.

When called during editing

- After call is disconnected, screen before call appears.

When other party has set Secret code

- Enter other party's Secret code (four digits) before @. This is unnecessary if Secret code is entered in phonebook entry. (☞P. 96)
- If address is ***phone number*** or ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp***, phonebook is automatically checked for Secret code. If saved, Secret code is added. (☞P. 96)
- i-mode mail may not be sent or replied to if mail address is saved as ***phone number+Secret code@docomo.ne.jp*** in phonebook. Change entry to ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp*** before saving Secret code.
- Error messages such as delivery reports are sometimes not received when sent to a non-DoCoMo mail address.

Broadcast

Send same i-mode mail to multiple addresses simultaneously from FOMA terminal. Send to up to five people at once.

- Select send type in ***Broadcast*** input field.
  - ■ Cc: Used to send carbon copy to a third party.
  - ■ Bcc: Used to send carbon copy to a third party. Unlike ***Cc***, addresses are invisible to other recipients.
- Save up to five people in mail members to easily select multiple addresses. (☞P. 289)
- Non-Bcc addresses are shown to other recipients. Other addresses may not appear on some models.
- Sent mail is saved as one mail. All successful recipients are shown in sent messages screen.
- If any address is unsuccessful, one copy is saved as sent mail and unsent mail. Unsuccessful recipients are shown in unsent mail.
- ***Same address set*** appears and cannot be sent when same address is set more than once. Delete repeating addresses and send.

Changing send type

Change send type for address and Broadcast.

1 When composing i-mode mail (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 251), select address input field other than the first entry and press ●.

2 Select send type and press ●.

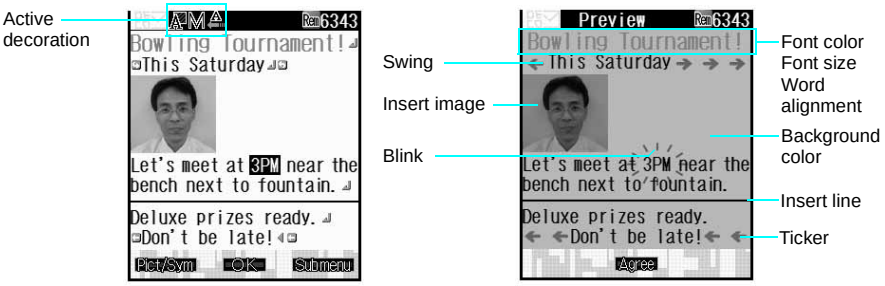
- Send type is changed.

Creating and Sending Deco-mail

Change color or size of message text, insert image or change background color when creating i-mode mail.

Decorations and effects

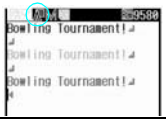
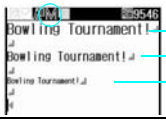
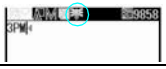
- Create Deco-mail of up to 10,000 bytes including attachments. When the remaining bytes becomes negative, decorations do not appear in message.
- Decorated mail sent from PCs may not appear properly.

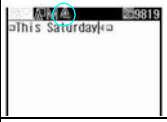
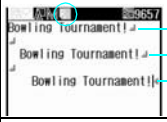
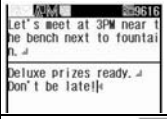
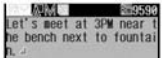


Message entry screen　　Preview screen

Palette numbers and decorations

- The following may be used for palette number: 1 to 9, 0, * and #.

Palette number	Decorations	Description	Post-insertion adjustments
1	**Font color** 	Color fonts. Font colors set for pictographs are reflected. To return to default color, select ***Default***.	Select color ▶ ●.
2	**Font size**  Large / Standard / Small	Change font size to ***Large***, ***Standard*** or ***Small***.	Select font size ▶ ●.
3	**Blink** 	Set text to flash. Flashing automatically stops after a while.	To set: Select ***Select*** ▶ ●. To reset: Select ***Reset*** ▶ ●.
4	**Ticker**	Stream text (Show ticker). Text stops flowing after a while.	To set: Select ***Select*** ▶ ●. To reset: Select ***Reset*** ▶ ●.

Palette number	Decorations	Description	Post-insertion adjustments
5	**Swing** 	Wobble (swing) text sideways. Text stops moving after a while.	To set: Select ***Select*** ▶ ●. To reset: Select ***Reset*** ▶ ●.
6	**Word alignment**  Left Center Right	Change placement of characters.	Select word alignment ▶ ●.
7	**Insert line** 	Add line (horizontal rule) to text. (One-line worth is inserted. Font color is reflected for inserted line. Change line color (font color).) Line insertion is not available during decoration edit.	At the location to insert, press ● [Insert].
8	**Insert image** Camera image GIF image	Insert image in message. Animated images such as GIF animations stop after a while. Character location is reflected on image. Change location of image (word alignment). Image insertion is not available while changing decoration.	At the insertion location, press ● [Insert] ▶ Image ▶ ●.
9	**Background color** 	Change mail background color. Background color cannot be changed if decoration is changed.	Select background color ▶ press ●.
0	**Edit decoration**	Specify range and decorate or change decorations.	At start point, press ● ▶ at end point, press ● ▶ set decoration palette number ● 7 [Insert line], 8 [Insert image] and 9 [Background color] are not available.
*	**Undo**	Undo the last operation.	
#	**Cancel deco.**	Enter undecorated characters. Inserted images and lines are not canceled.	

Key operation	Decorations	Description
● ▶ CLR **Reset settings**	**Reset settings**	Cancel all decorations. Inserted images are deleted and mail returns to text mail.
i	**Text**	Press to enter characters.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

Insert image

- Insert up to 10,000 bytes of images in message entry screen. For different images, insert up to ten images. If the same image is inserted, insert ten or more. Images are only deemed the same when copied and pasted if returned to compose message screen and character entry screen is re-entered.
- The URL may not be visible due to image or i-motion URL characters having the same color as the background color of Deco-mail.
- Background color cannot be selected after other decorations are selected. Select background color first.
- If Deco-mail is sent from a Deco-mail supported terminal to an unsupported terminal (mova or FOMA models prior to 900i series), a URL is sent in the message text. The recipient must click the URL to view Deco-mail on the Internet.

  ※ Supported models: 900i series, 901i series, 880iES (only supports receiving Deco-mail) and 700i series

Inserting text while decorating

Enter text with decorations after specifying decoration method. Or, decorate already entered characters with specified decoration method.

1 Create i-mode mail and enter address and subject. (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 251)

2 Select *Message* and press ●.

- Message entry screen appears.

3 Press ◎◎ [Decorate mail], enter palette number and specify decoration.

Palette screen

- Select palette with ●.
- Cursor does not move while palette is open. After selecting an item and decorating, press i [Decoration] to move the cursor and select a location to enter characters.
- Refer to “Palette numbers and decorations” table on P. 254 and P. 255 for details on using each decoration.
- Specify different decorations in succession. Pressing ◎◎ is unnecessary if palette is open.
- To view preview screen, press ◎, select 🔍***Preview*** and press ●. Press ● [Agree] and the previous screen reappears.

When Palette settings is set to *OFF*

- Press ◎◎, select decoration type from sub menu, press ● and specify decoration.

When blink, ticker, and swing are specified

- Select ***Select***, press ● and perform steps 4 and 5. Perform step 3 again, select ***Reset*** and press ●.

When Word alignment is specified

- Select Word alignment type, press ● and perform steps 4 and 5.
- When alignment is specified for words that have already been entered, after performing step 4, select a starting point with ● and press ● [Origin]. Select an ending point with ● and press ● [Last].

4 After specifying, press i [Decoration].

- Message entry screen appears.

5 Enter text.

- Alternatively, press [Text] and enter text.
- Decorations are reflected when text is entered.
- If mail size exceeds 10,000 bytes, bytes appear as negative.
- Use to scroll.

To decorate already entered characters

- Select a start point with and press [Origin], select a finish point with and press [Last].
- Press [All] to select all.

To delete text with decorations

- Even after deleting text with decorations, decoration data may remain causing available character number to decrease. Delete decorations before deleting text. Press CLR for 1+ seconds to delete text and decoration data together.

6 Press , select ■*Preview* and press .

- Use to scroll.
- View mail that appears to other party in Preview screen.
- Repeat steps 3 to 5 to continue decorating.

When message alone exceeds 10,000 bytes

- ***Message exceeds size limit. Unable to display whole message*** appears, excess data is temporarily deleted and preview appears (depending on mail content (characters, images, etc.) excess data may not be deleted). Press [Agree] and return to message entry screen. Message entry screen returns to size from before preview. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less.

To undo one operation

- Press .
- Decorations cannot be undone if decoration area is specified after multiple decorations are specified in continuation.

To disable all decorations

- Press , select ***Reset settings*** and press .
- Inserted image is deleted.

To show details for inserted image

- Move the cursor in front of image, press , select ■***File property*** and press .

7 Press [Agree].

- Message entry screen reappears.

8 Press and [Send].

- i-mode mail is sent.

When message alone exceeds 10,000 bytes

- ***Capacity exceeded. Some data may be lost. End editing?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press to open compose message screen. Excess data is deleted and appears. Depending on mail content (characters, images, etc.) excess data may not be deleted.
- To re-edit, select ***No***, press and the message entry screen reappears. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less.

Note

- Decorations and inserted images are quoted when replying with quote or forwarding Deco-mail.
- Decorated mail sent from Deco-mail non-compliant FOMA terminals may not appear correctly.
- Text is not decorated if decorated text is copied in editing screen and pasted after re-entering editing screen.
- When decorated text is inserted, status icon changes to .

Related Operations

Hide palette <Palette>

1. **After performing step 2 on P. 256, press ▶ ■*Palette* ▶ .**
2. **Select *OFF* ▶ .**
   - To show palette: Select ***ON*** ▶ .

Setting range and decorating

Specify portion of message and decorate or change specified decoration.

1 Press [むき/ん] in palette screen (☞P. 256).

- Alternatively, press [●], select ***Edit decoration*** and press [●].
- Message entry screen appears.

2 Move cursor to location to start decorating and press [●] [Start].

- To select all text, press [●] [All].
- To cancel selection, press [i] [Cancel].

3 Move cursor to location to end decorating and press [●] [End].

4 Press palette number ([1 あ/ぁ/0] to [6 は/MNO] and [*]) and specify decoration.

- Specified range is decorated.
- To undo one step, press [*].
- Only decorations [1 あ/ぁ/0] to [6 は/MNO] and [*] are available.

To continue decorating same range

- Repeat step 4.

5 After specifying, press [i] [Text].

- Refer to steps 6 to 8 on P. 257 for subsequent steps.

Note

- [*] [Undo] is not available if area is specified after decorations are added in continuation.

Using and Sending a Template

Use a template to create a Deco-mail. Templates are Deco-mail models with set layout and decorations. Use templates to quickly create and send Deco-mail.
Also, save Deco-mail as a template and download templates from sites.

- The template is saved in ***Deco-mail picture*** folder in My picture of Data box.
- Refer to P. 221 for details on downloading templates.

Using a Template to Create a Deco-mail <Open Template>

1 In compose message screen (☞P. 251), select *Message*, press [●] and [●] [i].

- List of templates in the ***Deco-mail picture*** folder in My picture appears.
- Template is opened even if [●] [2 abc] is pressed.

When message contains text

- Message that contents will be lost appears. Select ***Yes*** and press [●] to delete contents.

2 Select template and press ⓘ [OK].

©BVIG

- Template is reflected on message entry screen.
- Editing is the same as for normal Deco-mail. Refer to P. 254 for details.

To check template

- Select template and press ● [Agree].

Note

- If a non-transferable image is inserted, message appears and image is deleted.
- Oversized templates are not opened.

Saving Mail as Template <Save Template>

1 Press 📷 4 GHI in compose message screen after finishing Deco-mail (☞steps 1 to 5 on P. 256).

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Saves as a template.

Note

- Attachments are not saved with Deco-mail.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (☞P. 384)

Attachments

Attaching a File

Attach and send still pictures and movies shot with FOMA terminal, images downloaded from sites and Internet web pages, i-motion and melodies.

- Attach standard attachment and oversized attachments to same mail.

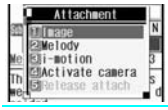
Number and size of attachments per mail

Type		Standard attachment		Oversized attachment	
Data type		Melody	Still picture	Still picture	Movie/i-motion
File format		SMF	GIF image, JPEG image	JPEG image*1	Mobile MP4
File size		1 to 10,000 bytes*2		10,001 to 500 K (512,000) bytes*3	1 to 500 K (512,000) bytes*3
Maximum		Up to ten files *4		One still picture or movie/i-motion	
Setting by destination	FOMA terminal	○	○	○*5	○*6
	mova service i-mode terminal	×	○*7, 8	○*5, 8	○*6
	e-mail	○	○	○	○

Continued on next page ▶▶

*1 GIF images over 10,000 bytes cannot be attached to mail.
*2 Total of attachment and message. Large files reduce number of characters for message text. When oversized files are attached, total for attachment and message is up to 9,800 bytes for standard mail (up to 9,600 for Deco-mail).
*3 This is the size when only a large attachment is attached.
*4 Number decreases with oversized attachments.
*5 When sending to i-mode terminal, the size is changed to a suitable size at the i-shot center.
*6 Sent as i-motion mail (URL and save period automatically added) when movie/i-motion is sent to i-mode terminal. Depending on the other party's i-mode terminal, image quality may deteriorate or images may be changed to continuous still pictures.
*7 GIF images cannot be attached.
*8 Automatically sent as i-shot (image URL and save period automatically added) to mova service i-mode terminals. One attachment of up to 184 double-byte characters is allowed. Attachments are deleted and only message is sent if other files or multiple files are attached.

1 Create i-mode mail (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 251), select the attachment input field with ● and press ●.



2 Press 1 [Image].

- List of folders in My picture of Data box appears.

To attach the melody

- Press 2.

To attach i-motion

- Press 3.

To attach shot pictures

- Press 4.
- Shot still pictures are compressed and saved in the ***Camera*** folder.
- File name and size appear in the attachment field. Proceed to step 4.

3 Select folder, press ●, select file and press ▬ [OK].

- Compose message screen returns. File name and size appear in the attachment field.
- Remaining bytes shown above message input field has attachment size subtracted.

To check image

- Select image and press ● [Agree].

To check melody/i-motion

- Select melody/i-motion and press ● [Agree].
- Press ▬ [Cancel] to stop playback.

When a JPEG larger than *Stand-by (240×320)* is selected

- ***Reduce to Standby?*** appears.
- Select ***Yes*** and press ● to reduce and attach.
- Select ***No*** and press ● to attach file (under 500 KB). Files larger than 500 KB are automatically compressed to 500 KB or less.
- ***Stand-by: 240×320*** is the suitable size to send to i-mode terminals.

4 Press ▬ [Send].

- i-mode mail is sent.

Note

- Still pictures smaller than ***Stand-by: 240x320*** but larger than 10,000 bytes are automatically compressed before being attached. Compressed files are saved to the ***i-mode/Other*** folder in My picture of Data box with ***_M*** added to the original file name.
- When the compressed image saved in My picture of Data box or the ***i-mode/Other*** folder of i-motion is deleted, Images attached to mail saved in Unsent messages may also be deleted.
- Images and melodies that cannot be attached appear in gray.
- Flash movies, frames and stamps cannot be attached.
- Melody may not play properly if other party is not using a FOMA SH900i, SH901iC or FOMA SH700i handset.
- When sender uses mova service i-mode mobile phone, message text is limited to 2,000 double-byte characters but may be less depending on size of attachments. (☞P. 247)
- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output to non-FOMA terminals are not sent.
- Images shot with FOMA terminal that have file restrictions are sent but cannot be forward by other party.
- Some i-motion are not available. Image quality may deteriorate or continuous still pictures may appear for recipient depending on handset model.
- Preset melodies cannot be attached.
- Melodies that would cause total data amount to exceed limit when added to message text are also included in the list of melodies attachable to mail.

Melodies and still pictures are not attached in the following

- Message data exceeds 10,000 bytes when melody or still picture is attached.
- Ten melodies or still pictures are already attached.

Still pictures and i-motion that exceeds 10,000 bytes are not attached in the following

- i-motion data exceeds 500 KB (512,000 bytes).
- Remaining message data (including melody and images) is less than 200 bytes and less than 400 bytes for Deco-mail.
- Still picture or i-motion exceeding 10,000 bytes is already attached.

To check attachments

- In compose message screen, select attachment field with a file attached and press ● [Check file].

Pasted data

- Pasted melody (MFi) is not quoted when replying or forwarding. Forwarding with Ir exchange is also not available.

Related Operations

Disable attachments <Release attach>

1 In the compose message screen of step 3, select file in attachment field ▶ ● ▶ 5 JKL.

Attach an image shot while composing message <Activate camera>

1 In the compose message screen of step 3, select attachment field ▶ ● ▶ 4 GHI ▶ ● ▶ ●.

- To erase shot still picture and redo: Press CLR.

Note

Attaching shot images

- If Auto save mode (☞P. 188) is ***ON***, Preview screen after shooting does not appear.
- Camera does not activate if maximum amount of files are already attached.

Saving and Sending i-mode Mail

Save i-mode mail being created to FOMA terminal when interrupted. Edit saved i-mode mail and send.

- Refer to P. 251 and P. 252 for details on creating i-mode mail.

Saving i-mode Mail

1 Press [i-mode] [3 DEF] while creating i-mode mail (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 251).

- i-mode mail being created is saved as unsent mail.
- Save up to 10,000 bytes with attachment for standard i-mode mail.
- Saved up to 521,800 bytes of oversized attachments (still pictures and i-motion) and mail message. Save up to 521,600 bytes for oversized Deco-mail.

Note

- Press [Clear] with address, subject or message entered. End confirmation screen appears. Select ***Yes*** to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.

Editing/Sending Sent/Saved i-mode Mail

Editing/Resending sent i-mode mail

1 In stand-by, press [Mail] [2 ABC].

- Alternatively, select (Mail) → ***Outbox*** from Top menu.
- Outbox list appears.

2 Select folder, press ●, select i-mode mail and press ●.

- Message details screen appears.
- Press [Prev] to show previous or next mail.
- Press [i] [List] and the sent messages list reappears.

When melody is attached

- Melody is played. Melody is not played if Melody Auto replay (☞P. 290) is set to ***Auto replay off***.
- To stop, press ●. Melody also stops when another screen is opened.

When image is attached

- Image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message. (☞P. 276)

3 Press [i-mode] [2 ABC] [Edit].

- Compose message screen appears.
- Edit using same steps as when creating new mail. Refer to steps 2 to 5 on P. 251 for details.
- When finished editing, press [i] [Send].

To resend

- Press [i-mode] [1].

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Editing/Sending saved i-mode mail

1 In stand-by, press [3 Def], select i-mode mail and press ●.

- Compose message screen appears.

2 Select item, press ● and edit.

- Edit using same steps as when creating new mail. Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 251 for details.

3 Press [i] [Send].

- i-mode mail is sent.
- Sent mail is saved in ***Outbox***. If Sort rules (☞P. 286) are set, mail is sorted to various folders.

Auto Receive

Receiving i-mode Mail

Set Receive option setting (☞P. 265) *OFF* to receive i-mode mail automatically.

- Save up to 100 to 1,000 received mail. Capacity varies depending on size of received mail.
- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected mail is overwritten. Protect important i-mode mail. (Confirmation message does not appear.)
- i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center in the following circumstances.
  - Handset is turned off
  - While in Self mode
  - Outside the service area
  - Using video-phone
  - During Ir exchange
  - Receive option setting is set to ***ON***
  - Inbox full with protected or unread i-mode mail

Note

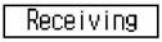
- "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of messages exceeding 10,000 single-byte characters (5,000 double-byte characters) and exceeding portions are deleted.

Meaning of Icons

Icon	Status
	Unread mail. (☞P. 264)
	FOMA terminal received mail is full. View unread messages (☞P. 264), disable i-mode mail protection (☞P. 281) or delete unnecessary mail (☞P. 279).
(blue)	Mail is held at center (when Receive option setting is set to ***OFF***). Perform Check new message (☞P. 266) to receive i-mode mail.
(green)	Mail is held in the i-mode center (when Receive option setting is set to ***ON***). To receive i-mode mail, perform Receive option (☞P. 265).
	Center is full. Perform Check new message (☞P. 266).
	PIM is locked. When mail PIM is locked, terminal security code is required to check i-mode mail. (☞P. 150)

- (blue) does not always appear when mail is held at the i-mode center.
- (blue) and do not appear when Receive option setting is set to ***ON***. (☞P. 265)
- Ring tone does not sound if mail is received during a call, while running i-αppli or while playing i-motion/melody.
- Copy mail from FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards or copy mail from miniSD to FOMA terminal handset.
- Number of characters shown on screen differ depending on font size setting.

1 i-mode mail is automatically received (✉ flashes).



- Mail is not automatically received if Receive option setting is set to ***ON***.

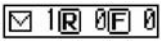
When the FOMA terminal is closed

- ***Receiving*** appears in the sub display.

To abort receiving

- Press ● while receiving.
- Aborted mail is held at i-mode center (✉ (blue) appears).
- Mail is received depending on timing.

2 After reception, receive results appear and mail ring tone sounds (✉ appears).



- Received mail is saved in ***Inbox***. If Sort rules (☞P. 286) are set, mail is sorted to various folders.
- When i-mode mail and Message R/F are received simultaneously, ring tone set for the last message/mail received sounds.

3 Select *Mail* in receive results screen and press ●.

- Inbox list appears.
- Folders holding unread mail are pink.
- SMS are also saved in Inbox.

When not viewing right away

- If no operations are performed in receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen from before reception automatically reappears.
- Received Message R/F are automatically shown according to Auto message display (☞P. 232) setting.

4 Select folder, press ●, select mail and press ●.

- Refer to P. 278 for details on viewing received mail.

Note

- Send melodies, movies and still pictures as i-mode mail attachments. Unsupported files are deleted at the i-mode center. ***Attachment deleted*** is added to message in such cases.
- Melody plays if Melody Auto replay is set to ***ON***. Press ● or move to another screen to stop.
- Image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message.
- 画像あり (image) appears in message text when JPEG images over 10,000 bytes are attached to i-mode mail.
- Select 画像あり to download image and automatically save to ***i-mode/Other*** folder in My picture of Data box. Delete unnecessary files one by one and increase memory space to save.
- Melody and i-αppli are invalidated if both are attached.
- For Deco-mail (☞P. 254) with image pasted, 🖼 (image retrieval failed) appears if Receive attached file (☞P. 291) is off.
- Check if i-mode mail received from FOMA terminal and PCs were received as To, Cc or Bcc. (☞P. 278)

Note

- While mail PIM is locked, mail receive results and Message R/F automatic display are not available even if i-mode mail or Message R/F is received. Mail ring tone does not sound.

Stopping ring tone

- Press the following.

●..... Ring tone stops and Inbox list appears.
CLR, PWR ..... Ring tone stops and stand-by or screen from before reception reappears.
Other keys..... To keep receive results screen and stop ring tone.

Receiving when not in stand-by

- ✉ appears. Received screen does not appear.

Receive Option

Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail

Select and receive i-mode mail held at the i-mode center.

- Set Receive option setting to ***ON*** in advance.
- When Receive option setting is ***ON***, i-mode mail is not automatically received.

When an i-mode Mail is Received

When Receive option setting is ***ON*** and a mail is received, the screen on the right appears (when in stand-by).
Press a key and the previous screen reappears.

- When the screen on the right appears and a call is received, after the call, the screen reappears even if CLR and PWR are pressed.
- When the screen on the right appears, the ring tone and vibrator do not activate.

To receive mail, display stand-by.

Selectively Receiving i-mode Mail <Receive Option>

1 In stand-by, press 📧 6wxyz.

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Receive option*** from Top menu.
- Connects to i-mode center and held mail appears.

When Receive option setting is set to *OFF*

- ***Please make sure "receive option" in "mail setting" is turned ON*** appears. Press ● and Receive option setting screen appears. Press 1 to turn setting ***ON*** and then press 6wxyz to receive.

2 Select 受信 (Receive), 削除 (Delete), or 保留 (Hold) for all i-mode mail and press ●.

- Press ⊙ to check sections not shown.
- The following marks appear to the right of attached file size.
  - 📷: Image attached.
  - ♪: Melody attached.
  - 🎬: i-motion attached. (Does not appear when pasted.)

To delete all mail held at i-mode center

- At the bottom of receive option screen, select 削除 (Delete) and press ●. Select 決定 (OK) and press ● to delete all.

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Select 受信／削除 (Receive/Delete), press ●, select 決定 (OK) and press ●.

To re-select mail to receive/delete

- Select キャンセル (cancel) and press ●.

4 Received i-mode mail appears. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 264)

Related Operations

Set Receive option from i-mode menu list <Receive option>

1 In stand-by, press i ▶ *iMenu* ▶ 3メニューリスト (Menu List) ▶ ♦メール選択受信(Receive option) ▶ ●.

Check New Message

Checking for i-mode Mail

Received i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off. (☞P. 263) Retrieve mail from i-mode center.

- Set types for Check new message (i-mode mail, Message R/F). (☞P. 288)
- All i-mode mail is retrieved when checking new message even if Receive option setting is set to ***ON***.
- After checking new messages, if checked again while ✉ is flashing, messages are not checked. ***0*** appears for all types of mail.
- All types are enabled as default setting. (☞P. 288)
- Refer to P. 302 for checking for SMS.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 7PQRS or i 4GHI.

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) or i (i-mode) → ***Check new message*** from Top menu.
- Check new message is performed even if ✉ is pressed twice in stand-by.
- New messages are checked.
- Check new message (☞P. 288) is performed in accordance with settings from ***i-mode mail*** → ***Message R*** → ***Message F***.
  (Icons (✉, R, F) appear for each type checked.)

To abort receiving

- Press ● while receiving.
- Aborted mail is held at i-mode center (✉ (blue) appears).
- Mail is received depending on timing.

2 Results appear, and the mail ring tone sounds for handsets with i-mode mail.

- Check finishes.
- ***0*** appears when no i-mode mail are held at center.
- When multiple i-mode mail and Message R/F are received simultaneously, ring tone set for the last message/mail received sounds.

To stop ring tone while playing

- Press C CLR.
- Other keys also stop ring tone. (☞P. 265)

3 In the receive results screen, select *Mail* and press ●.

- Inbox list appears.
- Folders holding unread mail are pink.

When not viewing right away

- Perform no operations in receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds. Screen from before reception reappears.
- Stays in i-mode stand-by (flashes).
- i-mode mail received after checking for new messages does not automatically appear.

4 Select folder, press ●, select i-mode mail and press ●.

- Refer to P. 278 for details on viewing received mail.

Note

- Refer to P. 263 for mail check result icon meanings.
- Depending on signal strength, error message may appear and connection may be interrupted.

Reply i-mode Mail

Replying i-mode Mail

Reply to i-mode mail by quoting message or not quoting message.

- Does not reply when sent mail memory is full.
- Refer to P. 303 for details on replying SMS.

1 Open i-mode mail (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 264) and press ○ 2 ABC.

- ***Re:*** is entered at the start of received mail Subject.

To quote from message and reply

- Press ○ 3 DEF.
- ">" is inserted in message and received mail content is quoted.
- For Deco-mail, decorations and inserted images are quoted.

When selected i-mode mail cannot be replied to

- ***Wrong reply dest*** appears.

When i-mode mail with Broadcast is selected

- Reply destination screen appears.
- Press 1 [Reply to sender] or 2 ABC [Reply to all].

2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Edit subject and message.
- Refer to steps 2 to 5 on P. 251 for details.

To save an i-mode mail while composing

- Press ○ 3 DEF in compose message screen to save as unsent mail.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

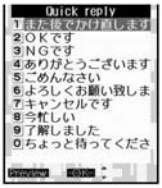
- Press PWR while composing i-mode mail and end confirmation screen appears. Select ***Yes*** to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- If PWR is pressed in unedited reply screen, end confirmation screen does not appear.
- Subject for reply mail is the received mail Subject with ***Re:*** entered at the beginning. If subject exceeds 30 single-byte characters (15 double-byte), exceeding portion is deleted.
- Including ">", if message exceeds 10,000 single-byte characters (5,000 double-byte), exceeding portion is deleted.
- Cannot reply to sender with mail address over 50 characters, or if sender uses フレンドメール12 (Friend mail 12) of iモードメールPlus (i-mode mail Plus). When mail cannot be replied to, ✕ appears in receiving message screen.
- Images are not attached when using Reply with quote to reply to i-mode mail with images.
- For i-mode mail using reply with quote, signature is not added even when auto signature is set.
- Adding Secret code to mail is necessary for recipients with Secret code registered. (☞P. 253)
- When i-αppli To is in a message, it is not included when replying with a quote. i-αppli To is also not included when using Data Link Software or Ir exchange.
- When Keypad dial lock (☞P. 151) is set, replies cannot be sent to addresses not in phonebook.

Replying Quickly <Quick Reply>

Send reply quickly from received messages screen.

- Register Message as Quick Reply Mail (☞P. 291) in advance. Save up to ten messages.

1 Open i-mode mail (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 264) and press ● 1.



2 Select message and press ●.

- Compose message screen appears.
- Check address, subject and message.

To check message

- Select ***Message*** and press ● [OK].

3 Press i [Send].

- Mail is sent.

Forwarding to Another Address

Forward received i-mode mail to other parties.

- Does not forward when sent mail memory is full.
- SMS cannot be forwarded.

1 Open i-mode mail (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 264) and press ●4.

- Compose message screen appears.
- ***Fw:*** is entered at the start of received mail subject.
- The received message is entered as is.

For Deco-mail

- Forward decorated images.

2 Create and send mail.

- Edit subject and message.
- Refer to steps 2 to 5 on P. 251 for details.

Saving an i-mode mail while creating

- Press ● 3 in compose message screen to save as unsent mail.

Note

- Press PWR while composing i-mode mail and end confirmation screen appears. Select ***Yes*** to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- If PWR is pressed in unedited forward screen, end confirmation screen does not appear.
- Subject for forwarded mail is the received mail Subject with ***Fw:*** entered at the beginning. If 30 single-byte characters (15 double-byte) are exceeded, exceeding portion is deleted.
- If message exceeds 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters after editing, exceeding portion is deleted.
- For i-mode mail to be forwarded, signature is not added even when Auto signature is set.
- If i-mode mail is received while viewing phonebook, close phonebook before forwarding mail.

When melody or image is attached

- Forward melodies and images. However, if sending to handset other than FOMA SH900i, FOMA SH901iC or FOMA SH700i, melody may not play correctly.
- i-αppli To, i-mode mail attachment and files with restrictions for output to non-FOMA terminals are deleted.
- Up to ten melodies can be attached depending on file size.

Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook

Save sender, mail address or phone number in the phonebook. Also save mail addresses contained in messages.

- Save as ***New*** or ***Add/overwrite***.
- For received SMS, the sender's phone number is saved in the phone number field.
- Mail address that exceeds 50 single-byte characters cannot be saved.
- Cannot save while Keypad dial lock is set.
- New phonebook entries cannot be saved if there are 500 entries in FOMA terminal handset phonebook or 50 entries in FOMA card phonebook already saved.
- フレンドメール12 (Friend mail 12) of iモードメールPlus (i-mode mail Plus) addresses are not saved.

Save Sender/Mail Address to Phonebook <Register Address>

1 In received messages screen, press ●(Camera) [Menu].

For sent message

- In sent message screen, press ●(Camera) 8(TUV).

2 Press 1(.@/) [Save new to main].

- Add to FOMA terminal handset phonebook as a new entry.
- The save new entry screen for phonebook appears. Sender or mail address is entered.
- Refer to P. 92 to P. 95 for subsequent steps.
- If phonebook PIM is locked, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) to save to phonebook.

To save new to FOMA card phonebook

- Press 2(ABC).
- Refer to P. 99 for subsequent steps.

To add/overwrite to FOMA terminal handset or FOMA card phonebook

- Press 3(DEF).
- The search phonebook screen appears.

Note

- Multiple address entry is available. After performing step 1, select address screen appears. Select an address and press ●.
- When a mail or SMS is received while in phonebook, saving mail address and phone number to phonebook is not available.

Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses from Message to Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>

1 In received messages screen, select phone number or mail address and press ●(Camera) #(マナー).

- The add to phonebook screen appears.

2 Press 1(.@/) [Save new to main].

- Add to FOMA terminal handset phonebook as a new entry.
- The phonebook new entry screen appears. The selected phone number or mail address is entered.
- Refer to P. 92 to P. 95 for subsequent steps.

To save new to FOMA card phonebook

- Press 2(ABC).
- Refer to P. 99 for subsequent steps.

To add/overwrite to FOMA terminal handset or FOMA card phonebook

- Press 3(DEF).
- The search phonebook screen appears.

Opening Image Mail Images

Open an image from large attachment files (sill pictures) or mail with image URLs.

Example: When opening large attachment files (still pictures)

1 Open mail with oversized attachment (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 264), select 画像あり in the message and press ●.

- Images are downloaded and saved in the ***i-mode/Other*** folder in My picture of Data box.
- When there is no available space in memory, delete unnecessary files one by one and increase space to save.
- Still picture appears.
- An oversized image file (still picture) is not attached if unable to be retrieved.

When image URL is pasted in the message

- Select image URL and press ●.
- i-mode connect screen appears.
- Press [Yes] to connect to i-mode and image appears.
- Procedure for saving image is the same as saving from a site. Refer to P. 221 for details.

Saving i-motion from Mail

A URL to view i-motion is included in received i-motion mail. あり appears. Select the URL to retrieve i-motion files from the i-motion mail center and play back.

1 Open i-motion attached mail (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 264), select *URL* in message and press ●.

- Download and play. Some i-motion files automatically play during download, and data acquisition screen appears after playback.
- Remaining number of play times appears for i-motion with play number limit. To play, select ***Yes*** and press ●.
- Expiration date appears for some i-motion.
- Replay period appears for some i-motion.

To save i-motion

- Press [Save] while downloaded i-motion is paused or stopped.

When i-motion auto replay (☞P. 328) is set to *No*

- After i-motion download is complete, a screen appears to select whether to play or save.

Note

- If an incoming voice call occurs when downloading i-motion, downloading stops.
- i-motion mail sent to an i-mode terminal that is saved at the i-motion mail center can be retrieved 50 times for each URL. After the 50th time, i-motion retrieval is no longer possible.
- Compliant software is necessary for i-motion playback on PC or other device. (☞"About Movie Player Software" on P. 548) Refer to DoCoMo web page for details.
- Some i-motion files may not play correctly.
- For i-motion that plays during download, when unable to play due to weak signal, play after downloading is completed.

Checking/Saving/Deleting Attached File

Check, save and delete attached image, movie and melody.

- Files are saved in ***i-mode/Other*** in My picture of Data box, ***i-mode/Other*** in i-motion, or ***Melody*** folder in Melody.

1 Open received mail (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 264) and press ● 8TUV.

- Attached file list appears.

For sent messages

- Press ● 6MNO.

To check attachment URL

- Press ● 5WXY.

2 Select file with ● and press ● [Agree].

- Attachment plays or is shown.

To save attachment

- Press i [Save], select ***Yes*** and press ●.

To delete attachment

- Press ● [Delete], press 1 [Delete one] or 2ABC [Delete all], select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- Some images may not appear correctly. Image size limit is 2,048(W) × 2,048(H). If size exceeds limit, image is received but not shown.

Checking and Saving Deco-mail Images

Check and save images in Deco-mail.

- Image is saved to the ***i-mode/Other*** folder in My picture of Data box.

1 Open received mail with image inserted (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 264) and press ● わを.

For sent mail

- Press ● 7PQRS.

2 Select image with ● and press ● [Agree].

- Image appears.

To save image

- Press i [Save], select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- For attached images, check and save with Check message image.
- Movies and JPEG images 10,001 bytes or more cannot be saved from Check file.

Save Template

Saving Deco-mail as Templates

Save a Deco-mail as a template.

- The template is saved in ***Deco-mail picture*** folder in My picture of Data box.

1 Open Deco-mail (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 264), press ●, select ■*Save template* and press ●.

- Template save confirmation screen appears.

For sent mail

- Press ● 2.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Saves as a template.

Note

- Attachments are not saved for received Deco-mail.
- When image has file restrictions, it is deleted and saved.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (☞P. 384)

Outbox/Inbox

Displaying Messages in Outbox and Inbox

Check sent/received/unsent i-mode mail and SMS.

- Both i-mode mail and SMS are saved in Inbox/Outbox.
- i-mode mail can be sent and received up to 5,000 double-byte characters.
- "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of i-mode mail exceeding 10,000 single-byte characters (5,000 double-byte characters) and exceeding portions are deleted. The deleted portion cannot be read.
- For sent messages and unsent messages combined, save up to 50 to 101 i-mode mail and 20 SMS. Note that 100 messages is the maximum to save as sent messages or as unsent messages. Capacity varies depending on size of received messages.
- For received messages, save 100 to 1,000 i-mode mail and up to 20 SMS. Capacity varies depending on size of received mail.
- Manage sent and received i-mode mail and SMS in folders. The FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card each have ***Inbox*** and ***Outbox*** folders. Create folders on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Sent mail in ***Outbox*** of FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card are shown in the ***Outbox*** folder of the Outbox list. This also applies for the ***Inbox*** folder in the Inbox list.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 1 [Inbox].

- Inbox list appears. Folder is pink when there are unread i-mode mail and SMS.

To view sent messages

- In stand-by, press ✉ 2.

To view unsent messages

- In stand-by, press ✉ 3.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select folder, press ●, select i-mode mail or SMS and press ●.

Message screen

- Message content appears.
- For unread mail, selecting a folder in step 2 is unnecessary.

To view mail in mail-type i-αppli folder

- Select folder, press [Camera], select ***View i-mode mail***, press ●, select mail and press ●.

To end viewing

- Press [PWR].

To view other messages

- Press [i] [List] or [CLR] to return to list and re-select message.

To copy address, subject or text of message being viewed.

- Press [Camera] [R] for received messages (press [Camera] [S] for sent messages), select item to copy and press ●.

Related Operations

Message screen operations

Operation	Key
Scroll down	0
Scroll up	0
Scroll down one frame	[3]
Scroll up one frame	[9]
Scroll down automatically*	[#] for 1+ seconds
Scroll up automatically*	[*] for 1+ seconds
Show next mail	0
Show previous mail	0

* To stop Auto scroll, press [#], [*] or a dial key.

Use Assistant View

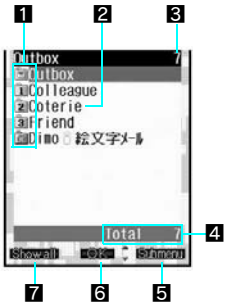
1 While composing message, press [View].

Make calls from message screen <Call from entry>

1 In message screen, press [Camera] ▶ ■*Call from entry* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ▶ ● [Phone] or [i] [V-phone].

Message Box List Layout

Outbox list



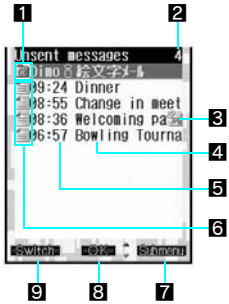
1 Folder icons
  [1]: Created folder
  For folders [0] to [9], press [1] to [9] to open corresponding sent mail list.
  [a]: Mail-type i-αppli folder
2 Folder name
  Shows up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
3 Total i-mode mail and SMS sent
4 Number of i-mode mail and SMS in selected folder
5 Press [Camera] to create or delete folders.
6 Press ● to list sent i-mode mail and sent SMS saved in the selected folder.
7 Press [i] to list all sent i-mode mail and sent SMS saved.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Inbox list

1 Folder icons
: Created folder
For folders 0 to 9, press 1 to 9 to open corresponding received mail list.
: Mail-type i-αppli folder
Appears in pink when an unread message is saved.
2 Folder name
Shows up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
3 Total i-mode mail and SMS received
4 Number of unread i-mode mail and unread SMS in selected folder/total in folder
5 Press ● to create or delete folders.
6 Press ○ to list received i-mode mail and received SMS saved in the selected folder.
7 Press ▷ to list all received i-mode mail and received SMS saved.

Unsent messages list



1 Folder icons
: Mail-type i-αppli folder
2 Total i-mode mail and SMS not sent
3 Attached data
: Melody attached.
(blue): GIF image attached.
(blue): JPEG image 10,000 bytes or less attached.
(pink): JPEG image 10,001 bytes or more attached.
: Movie or i-motion attached.
4 Subject (Messages with no subject appear as ***Untitled***.)
Message subject appears. Shows up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.
5 Date/time saved
Time for current day and date for other days.
6 Mail type
: Unsent i-mode mail
: Unsent SMS
7 Press ● to delete mail, etc.
8 Press ○ in i-mode mail or SMS to show the editing screen for the selected unsent i-mode mail or unsent SMS.
9 Press ▷ to switch the display in the following order: Subject → Name (mail address when not in phonebook) → Mail address (phone number for SMS).

Note

- When deleting a mail-type i-αppli, select whether to simultaneously delete the automatically created mail folder. If the mail folder contains a protected message, the software and folder cannot be deleted.

miniSD Memory Card

- Copy i-mode mail and SMS data saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 372) or view i-mode mail or SMS saved on miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 376).
- Copy i-mode mail and SMS data saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (☞P. 377).

Ir exchange

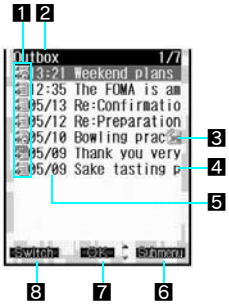
- Send (☞P. 390) and receive (☞P. 390) i-mode mail and SMS data saved on FOMA terminal handsets using Ir exchange.

FOMA card

- Copy SMS data saved on the FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card (☞P. 304) or view SMS saved on FOMA card (☞P. 302).
- Copy SMS data saved on FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset.

Message List/View Layout for Sent and Received Mail

Sent messages list layout



1 Mail type (protection)
: Sent i-mode mail : Sent i-mode mail (protected)
: Sent SMS : Sent SMS (protected)
: FOMA card sent SMS
: Mail-type i-αppli sent i-mode mail
: Mail-type i-αppli sent i-mode mail (protected)
In the ***Outbox*** folder, i-mode mail and SMS in ***Outbox*** on the FOMA terminal handset and on FOMA card are shown mixed together.

2 Folder name
Shows up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.

3 Attached data
: Melody attached.
(blue): GIF image attached.
(blue): JPEG image 10,000 bytes or less attached.
(pink): JPEG image 10,001 bytes or more attached.
: Movie or i-motion attached.

4 Subject (Messages with no subject appear as ***Untitled***.)
Message subject appears. Shows up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

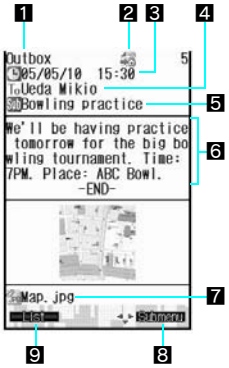
5 Sent date and time
Time for current day and date for other days.

6 Press ⓒ to move or delete i-mode mail.

7 Press ● to show selected i-mode mail or SMS.

8 Press ⓘ to switch the display in the following order: Subject → Name (mail address when not in phonebook) → Mail address (phone number for SMS).

Sent messages view layout



1 Folder name
Appears depending on the character size setting.
Large font: 11 single-byte (5 double-byte) characters
Normal: 15 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters
Small font: 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters

2 Protected icon
Appears when protected.

3 Sent date and time

4 Address (recipient)
Sending type (To/Cc/Bcc)

5 Subject

6 Message
- END - appears at the end of the message.

7 Attachment type and file name
Appears when attached file is present.
: Melody attached.
(blue): GIF image attached.
(blue): JPEG image 10,000 bytes or less attached.
(pink): JPEG image 10,001 bytes or more attached.
: Movie or i-motion attached.
: Attached melody cannot be played (corrupted).
: Attached GIF image cannot be displayed (corrupted).
(blue): Attached JPEG image cannot be displayed (corrupted).
(pink): Attached large JPEG image cannot be displayed (corrupted).
: Attached melody cannot be played (corrupted).
: Invalid data pasted.

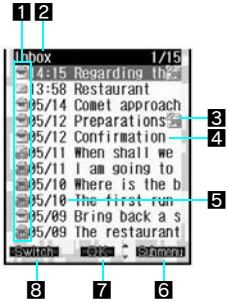
8 Press ⓒ to edit or delete.

9 Press ⓘ and the sent messages list reappears.

Refer to “Related Operations” on P. 274 for details on screen operations.

- If the recipient address is saved in Phonebook, their name appears in the recipient area. If it is not saved, their phone number or address appears. However, the name does not appear when phonebook PIM is locked or phonebook is set to Secret (☞P. 110). To show names of secret phonebook entries, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON***.

Received messages list layout



1 Mail type (protection)

: Unread i-mode mail	: Unread i-mode mail (protected)
: Read i-mode mail	: Read i-mode mail (protected)
: Unread SMS	: Unread SMS (protected)
: Read SMS	: Read SMS (protected)

: Unread SMS on FOMA card
: Read SMS on FOMA card
: Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail
: Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail (protected)
: Mail-type i-αppli read i-mode mail
: Mail-type i-αppli read i-mode mail (protected)
: Reply complete
: Forward complete

In the ***Inbox*** folder, i-mode mail and SMS on the FOMA terminal handset and on FOMA card are shown mixed together.

2 Folder name
Shows up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.

3 Attached data
: Melody attached or pasted.
(blue): GIF image attached.
(blue): JPEG image 10,000 bytes or less attached.
(pink): JPEG image 10,001 bytes or more attached.
: Oversized image is saved on the server.
: i-αppli To information attached.

4 Subject (Messages with no subject appear as ***Untitled***.)
Message subject appears. Shows up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

5 Received date and time
Time for current day and date for other days.

6 Press ● to move or delete i-mode mail.

7 Press ● to show the selected i-mode mail screen or SMS screen.

8 Press ● to switch the display in the following order: Subject → Name (mail address when not in phonebook) → Mail address (phone number for SMS).

- The default setting lists messages in the order received at i-mode center, starting with the newest. (The display method can be changed. ☞P. 280)
- SMS are displayed as follows, depending on the other party.
  - When the other party sends caller ID and is saved in phonebook..... Name saved in phonebook
  - When the other party sends caller ID and is not saved in phonebook..... ***090*** (or ***080***, etc.) ***XXXXXXXX***
  - When the other party sends no caller ID ..... ***User unset***
  - When the other party calls from a payphone ..... ***Payphone***

Received messages view layout

1 Folder name
Displayed according to font size settings.
Large font: 11 single-byte (5 double-byte) characters
Normal: 15 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters
Small font: 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters

2 Protected icon
Appears when protected.

3 Shows receiving type (To/Cc/Bcc)

4 Received date (Shows date and time received at i-mode center or SMS center.)

5 Sender
Receiving type (To/Cc: displayed when Broadcast is set.)

6 Subject

7 Message
- END - appears at the end of the message. When receiving limit is exceeded, "/" or "//" appears and exceeding portions are automatically deleted.

8 Attachment type/file name
Appears when attached file is present.
: Melody attached or pasted.
(blue): GIF image attached.
(blue): JPEG image 10,000 bytes or less attached.
(pink): JPEG image 10,001 bytes or more attached.
: i-motion URL included.
: Attached melody cannot be played (corrupted).
: Attached GIF image cannot be displayed (corrupted).
: Attached JPEG image cannot be displayed (corrupted).
: Invalid data pasted.

9 Press ● to reply or delete.

10 Press ● and the received messages list reappears.

Refer to "Related Operations" on P. 274 for details on screen operations.

- If the recipient address is saved in phonebook, the name appears in the sender area. If it is not saved, the phone number or address appears. However, the name does not appear when phonebook PIM is locked or phonebook is set to Secret (☞P. 110). To show names of secret phonebook entries, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON***.
- When an image is attached, the image appears.

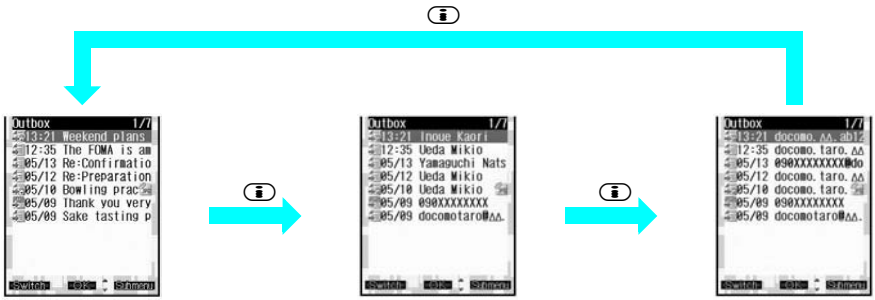
Managing Mail

Delete, sort, and separate sent/received i-mode mail and SMS into folders.

- Up to 20 folders (not including ***Inbox***, ***Outbox***, and mail-type i-αppli folder) can be created, renamed and deleted. However, ***Outbox*** and ***Inbox*** names cannot be edited or deleted.
- Delete all is not available for protected mail.

Switching message display

Press ⓘ in Mail list to switch the display in the following order.



Subject
(SMS shows first characters of message)

Name
(Mail address or phone number when not saved in phonebook)

Mail address
(Phone number for SMS)

Protecting mail

- Protect up to 500 received mail, 10 received SMS, 50 sent mail and 10 sent SMS.
  (The number of protected mail may vary depending on size.)

Deleting mail

Sent/Unsent messages

Method	Explanation	Location
Delete all	Deletes all unprotected sent mail/SMS and unsent mail/SMS at once.	Outbox list Unsent messages list
All in folder	Deletes all unprotected sent mail/SMS and unsent mail/SMS from folder.	Sent messages list i-αppli folder list in Unsent messages
Delete selected	Deletes multiple unprotected sent mail/SMS and unsent mail/SMS at once.	Sent messages list Unsent messages list
Delete one	Deletes sent mail/SMS and unsent mail/SMS.	Sent messages list Sent message screen Unsent messages list

Received messages

Method	Explanation	Location
Delete all read	Deletes read mail/SMS from all folders including ***Inbox***.	Inbox list
Delete all unread	Deletes unread mail/SMS from all folders including ***Inbox***.	
Delete all	Deletes read/unread mail/SMS from all folders including ***Inbox***.	
Read in folder	Deletes all unprotected read mail/SMS from folder.	Received messages list
Unread in folder	Deletes all unprotected unread mail/SMS from folder.	
All in folder	Deletes all unprotected mail/SMS from folder.	
Delete selected	Deletes multiple unprotected received mail/SMS at once.	
Delete one	Deletes mail/SMS individually.	Received messages list Received messages screen

Sorting messages

Displaying sent messages

Date (new → old)	Latest sent date first
Date (old → new)	Latest sent date last
By address	Depending on mail address, numbers→ alphabet upper case → alphabet lower case
By subject	Entries are sorted by title in the following order: Single-byte (symbols → numbers → alphabet upper case → alphabet lower case → katakana) → double-byte (symbols → numbers → alphabet upper case → alphabet lower case → hiragana → katakana → symbols/special characters → kanji → pictographs). Entries are sorted by character code.
Prioritize protected mail*	Protected mail → normal mail
Message with attachments *	Mail with attachments → mail without attachments

*Entries sorted with newest mail first.

Displaying received messages

Date (new → old)	Latest received date first
Date (old → new)	Latest received date last
By address	Depending on mail address, numbers → alphabet upper case → alphabet lower case
By subject	Same as ***By subject*** above
Unread/protected/read*	Unread protected → unread → read protected → read
Message with attachments*	Mail with attachments → mail without attachments

*Entries sorted with newest mail first.

Related Operations

Create folders <New folder>

1 In the Inbox list (P. 275)/Outbox list (P. 274), press ▶ enter folder name ▶ .

Edit folder names <Edit folder name>

1 In the Inbox list (P. 275)/Outbox list (P. 274), select folder ▶ .

2 Edit folder name ▶ .

- To delete folder name: Press for 1+ seconds.

Delete created folders <Delete>

1 In the Inbox list (P. 275), select folder ▶ ▶ .

- To delete folder in Outbox: In the Outbox list, select folder ▶ ▶ .

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ▶ *Yes* ▶ .

Move folder order upward <Move folder up>

1 In the Inbox list (P. 275)/Outbox list (P. 274), select folder ▶ .

Move sent/received messages to different folders <Move>

1 In the received (P. 277)/sent (P. 276) messages list, select mail ▶ .

2 Press .

- To move all files in the folder: Press .
- To select multiple mail in folder and move: Press ▶ mail (repeat) ▶ .

3 Select folder ▶ .

Move to folder from message details screen

1 In the received messages screen (P. 278), press .

- In the sent messages screen: Press .

2 Select folder ▶ .

Related Operations

Protect sent/received messages <Protect set>

1 In the received messages screen (☞P. 278), press ● ▶ ■*Protect set* ▶ ●.

- To protect a sent message: In the sent messages screen, press ● #.

2 Press 1.

- To disable: Press 2.

Delete mail individually <Delete one>

1 In the received messages screen (☞P. 278), press ● 7.

- To delete a sent message: In the sent messages screen, press ● 5.

2 Select *Yes* ▶ ●.

Delete mail individually from mail list <Delete one>

1 In the received (☞P. 277)/sent (☞P. 276) messages list or unsent messages list (☞P. 275), press ● 2 1 ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.

Delete all messages <Delete all>

1 In the Inbox list (☞P. 275)/Outbox list (☞P. 274), press ● 5.

- In received/sent messages list or unsent messages list: Press ● 2.

2 Press 3.

- To delete all read mail: Press 1.
- To delete all unread mail: Press 2.
- In the Outbox list: Press 1.

3 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.

Select mail and delete <Delete selected>

1 In the received (☞P. 277)/sent (☞P. 276) messages list or unsent messages list (☞P. 275), press ● 2.

2 Press 5.

- For sent/unsent message: Press 3.

3 Select mail ● (repeat) ▶ i [Complete] ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.

Delete mail in i-αppli folder <Delete>

1 In the Inbox list (☞P. 275)/Outbox list (☞P. 274), select i-αppli folder ▶ ● 6.

- In unsent messages list: Select i-αppli folder ▶ ● 3.

2 To delete individually, select message ▶ ● 2 1.

- To delete all messages in a folder: Press ● 2 4 ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.
- To delete read message: Press ● 2 2 ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.
- To delete unread message: Press ● 2 3 ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.
- To select mail and delete: Press ● 2 5 ▶ mail ● (repeat) ▶ i ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.

Sort sent/received messages <Sort>

1 In the received (☞P. 277)/sent (☞P. 276) messages list, press ● 3 ▶ sort method ▶ ●.

Note

Creating folders

- Folders cannot be created on FOMA card.
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a folder name.
- ***Outbox***, ***Inbox*** and mail-type i-αppli folder names cannot be changed.
- When a mail-type i-αppli is downloaded, a mail-type i-αppli folder is automatically created in Outbox, Inbox and Unsent messages.
- Mail-type i-αppli folders are named with the downloaded mail-type i-αppli name and cannot be changed.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Note (Continued)

Deleting folders

- ***Outbox*** and ***Inbox*** cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing saved messages can be deleted.
- When a folder is deleted, messages saved in the folder are also deleted. Folders containing protected mail cannot be deleted.
- When there is software compatible with a mail-type i-αppli folder, the folder cannot be deleted. Delete the software and then delete the folder. When there is no compatible software, the folder can be deleted, but deleting one mail-type i-αppli folder created in Sent message, Received message or Unsent messages list will also delete all other mail-type i-αppli folders.

Moving messages

- ***Outbox***, ***Inbox*** and mail-type i-αppli folder cannot be moved.
- SMS on FOMA card cannot be moved within card.
- Sent messages are saved in ***Outbox***. Received messages are saved in ***Inbox***. Mail is sorted to various folders in accordance with Sort rules (☞P. 286).
- Sent/Received messages can be sorted automatically. (☞P. 286)
- Already received i-αppli messages can be manually sorted into the folders automatically created when downloading a mail-type i-αppli.

Protecting mail

- SMS on FOMA card cannot be protected. Copying a protected SMS to FOMA card will cancel protection.

Deleting mail

- When deleting multiple files, protected i-mode mail, SMS and FOMA card SMS are not deleted.
- Depending on i-αppli software, i-αppli mail may be automatically deleted.

Sorting

- In ***Inbox*** and ***Outbox***, i-mode mail, FOMA terminal handset SMS and FOMA card SMS are sorted.
- The default setting is sort by ***Date*** (***new*** → ***old***).
- Sort method returns to default setting when screens other than Message list are displayed. Press CLR after checking message screen with changed display method. When Message list is viewed again, the changes remain.

Received/Sent Messages

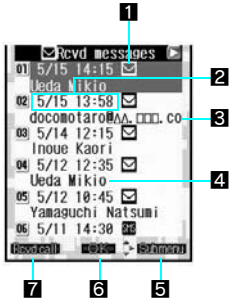
Using Mail History

The FOMA terminal stores a history of 30 sent/received mail/SMS starting with the newest. Use history to send mail, make voice/video-phone calls or save the other party's mail address or phone number to phonebook.

- When 30 entries are exceeded, entries are erased starting with the oldest.
- Parties that repeat are assigned separate entries.
- Mail addresses from Broadcast mail are not recorded. All successfully sent mail can be checked in sent messages screen. (☞P. 253)
- Up to 50 single-byte characters appear for mail addresses.

Received/Sent messages list layout

Here is an example using the received messages list screen.



1 Types of history

✉	i-mode mail
SMS	SMS
✉✕	Mail that cannot be replied to, or SMS with no caller ID (Received messages)/unsent messages (Sent messages)

2 Receive date (Received messages)/Sent date (Sent messages)
3 Other party's mail address or phone number
4 Name
(Appears when the same mail address or phone number are already saved in phonebook.)
5 Submenu
6 Received message/sent message details screen (press ● to show).
7 Received calls (Redial for Received messages)

Press 0 in mail history list to switch to Received/Sent messages.

Received/Sent message details layout

Here is an example using the received messages details screen.

1 Types of history

✉	i-mode mail
SMS	SMS
✉✕	Mail that cannot be replied to, or SMS with no caller ID (Received messages)/unsent messages (Sent messages)

2 Receive date (Received messages)/Sent date (Sent messages)
3 Name
(Appears when the same mail address or phone number are already saved in phonebook.)
4 Other party's mail address or phone number
5 Submenu
6 Compose message screen (press ● to display)

Note

- Set to not show Received/Sent messages. (☞P. 153)

Using Received messages to send a message

1 In stand-by, press 0 (✉) ●.

- Received messages list appears.
- Smaller numbers to the left of date represent newer received messages.
- ***Show rcvd msgs set to OFF*** appears when Show received messages is set to ***OFF***.
- When there is no Received message, ***No rcvd messages*** appears.

2 Select entry and press ●.

- Received message detail screen appears.

To end viewing

- Press PWR.

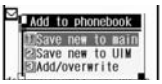
Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Press ● [Mail].

- When i-mode mail history is selected, compose message screen appears. Sender's mail address is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 4 and 5 on P. 252 for subsequent steps.
- When SMS history is selected, compose SMS screen appears. Sender's phone number is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 4 and 5 on P. 299 for subsequent steps.

Saving phone numbers and mail addresses from Received messages to phonebook

1 In stand-by, press 0 (✉) i, select entry, press ● and 📷 1.



- Alternatively, select entry and press 📷 1 in received messages list.
- Select i-mode mail entry and perform operation to save mail address.
- Select SMS entry and perform operation to save phone number.

2 Press 1 [Save new to main].

- The save new entry screen for phonebook appears. Mail address or phone number is entered.
- Refer to P. 94 and P. 95 for subsequent steps.

To save new to FOMA card phonebook

- Press 2.
- Refer to P. 99 for subsequent steps.

To add/overwrite to FOMA terminal handset or FOMA card phonebook

- Press 3.
- Select phonebook to add/overwrite mail addresses or phone numbers, press ● and edit.

Using Sent messages to send a message

1 In stand-by, press 0 (✉) i.

- Sent messages list appears.
- Smaller numbers to the left of date represent newer sent messages.
- ***Show sent msgs set to OFF*** appears when Show sent messages is set to ***OFF***.
- When there is no Sent message, ***No sent messages*** appears.

2 Select entry and press ●.

- Sent message detail screen appears.

To end viewing

- Press PWR.

3 Press ● [Mail].

- When i-mode mail history is selected, compose message screen appears. Sender's mail address is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 4 and 5 on P. 252 for subsequent steps.
- When SMS history is selected, compose SMS screen appears. Sender's phone number is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 4 and 5 on P. 299 for subsequent steps.

Note

- Save phone numbers and mail addresses from Sent messages to phonebook. Operation is the same as for Received messages.

Deleting mail history

History entries can deleted in the following ways.

Delete one	Delete entries from Received messages and Sent messages individually.
Delete all	Delete all entries from Received messages or Sent messages.

Related Operations

Open received message history from compose message screen <Received messages>

1 **In the compose message screen (☞P. 251), select To (Address entry field) ▶ ● 4 ▶ history ▶ ●.**

Open sent message history from compose message screen <Sent messages>

1 **In the compose message screen (☞P. 251), select To (Address entry field) ▶ ● 3 ▶ history ▶ ●.**

Delete mail history <Delete>

1 **In the received messages list (☞P. 283) or sent messages list (☞P. 283), press ○ 2.**

2 **Press 1.**

- To delete all history entries: Press 2.

3 **Select *Yes* ▶ ●.**

- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Make calls from mail history <Call from entry>

1 **In the received messages list (☞P. 283) or sent messages list (☞P. 283), press ○ 3 ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.**

2 **Press ● to make voice call.**

- To make video-phone call: Press ⓘ [V-phone].

Mail Setting

Setting FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

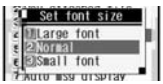
Changing Font Size <Font Size>

Default setting: Normal

Set mail/SMS font size to ***Large font***, ***Normal*** or ***Small font***.

- Font size is not changed for compose message and list screens.

1 In stand-by, press ○ ▭ 4.



- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Font size*** from Top menu.

2 Select font size and press ●.

Related Operations

Change font size in message screen <Set font size>

1 **In the message screen (☞P. 274), press ○ ▶ ■*Set font size* ▶ ● ▶ select font size ▶ ●.**

Sorting Mail Automatically <Sort Rules>

Set Sort rules for folders and sort i-mode mail and SMS automatically.

- Rules to sort mail in ***Outbox***, ***Inbox*** and Unsent messages are not available.
- SMS cannot be sorted to FOMA card.
- Sort up to 25 folders (including i-αppli) in Inbox/Outbox and set up to five rules for each folder.
- Sort normal mail to mail-type i-αppli folders.

Sort rules

The following six rules are available.

Address (From)	Sort by mail address (only received mail).
Address (From/Cc) Rcvr/broadcast	Criteria are applied from the folder shown at top to From, To and Cc for received mail and To, Cc, and Bcc for sent mail.
Group	Sort to groups set in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
Subject	Sort by text in subject.
Phonebook empty	Sort mail from senders not saved in FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Sort only sent mail containing addresses not saved in phonebook.
Sort all received (sent) mail	Sort all received (or sent) mail.

- ***Folder 1*** has top priority and a folder listed undermost has least priority if Sort rules for multiple folders concord.
- Secret phonebook entries are treated as unsaved entries. ***Sort by group*** settings are ignored but ***Phonebook empty*** is applied. To use ***Sort by group***, set Secret mode to ***ON***.
- Note that ***Sort by group*** is disabled while phonebook PIM is locked.

Setting Sort rules to folders

1 In Inbox list (☞P. 275) or Outbox list (☞P. 274), select folder and press ●.

- Set rules are prioritized from top to bottom.

2 Select slot and press ●.

- Select a used slot to edit rules.

To set to mail-type i-αppli folder

- ***Mail will be used in software. Set mail sorting?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to proceed to step 3. Subsequent steps are the same as for normal folders. Select ***No***, press ● and the screen of step 1 reappears.

3 Select *Group*, press ●, select a group and press ● [Sort by group].

- Group name appears.

To sort to sender's address

- Select ***Addres (From/Cc)*** or ***Rcvr/broadcast***, press ●, select entry method and press ●. Select (or enter) mail address and press ●.
- Up to 20 single-byte characters appear.

To sort by text in subject

- Select ***Subject***, press ●, enter character string and press ●.
- Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters. The first 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are shown.

To sort mail from parties unregistered in FOMA terminal handset phonebook

- Select ***Phonebook empty*** and press ●.

To sort all received (sent) mail

- Select ***All rcvd msgs*** or ***All sent msgs***, press ●, select ***Yes*** and press ●.
- ***All rcvd (sent) msgs*** is set to 1.
- Select ***No*** and press ● to set to specified number.

To sort received mail by sender's mail address

- Select ***Address (From)***, press ●, select (or enter) mail address and press ●.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to save other rules.

5 Press i [Complete].

Note

- Mail from senders saved in FOMA card phonebook are sorted as ***Phonebook empty***.

Deleting sort rules

Delete sort rules.

Delete one	Delete rules individually.
Delete all	Delete all rules.

1 In Inbox list (☞P. 275) or Outbox list (☞P. 274), select folder and press ○ 3 DEF.

- Sort rules setting screen appears.

2 Select a rule and press ○ 1 [Delete one].

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all rules

- Press ○ 2 ABC.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

4 Press i [Complete].

Adding Signature to i-mode Mail <Save Signature>

Default setting
ON

Add a signature and notify name, phone number and mail address.

- Set to add automatically.
- Only one signature can be saved.
- Signature is not added to SMS or chat mail.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 6わを ☆*.

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Save signature*** from Top menu.
- The signature saving screen appears.

When signature is already saved

- Saved signature appears.

2 Enter signature and press ●.

- Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters.
- Line breaks ↵ are available.
- Auto signature setting screen appears.

3 Press 1 [ON: add automatically].

- Signature is entered automatically in ***Message*** when composing a new message.

To not add automatically

- Press 2 ABC.

Related Operations

Delete signature

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 6わを ☆* ▶ CLR (for 1+ seconds) ▶ ● ▶ *OFF* ▶ ●.

Setting Check New Message Details <Check New Message>

Default setting
See below

Set message type to check (i-mode mail, Message R/F).

The default setting is ***ON*** for i-mode mail, Message R and Message F.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 6わを 9MNO.

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Check new message*** from Top menu.

2 Select type and press ●.

- The check new messages screen appears.

3 Press 1 [ON: check].

- To set other types, repeat steps 2 and 3.

To not check

- Press 2 ABC.

4 Press i [Complete].

Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail <Receive Option Setting>

Default setting
OFF

- All mail is retrieved when checking for new messages even if Receive option setting is set to ***ON***. To not retrieve all mail, separate i-mode mail from other items. (☞P. 266)

1 In stand-by, press [▲] [わを] [TUV].

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Receive opt. setting*** from Top menu.

2 Press [1] [ON: set Receive option].

To not set Receive option

- Press [ABC].

Composing from Mail Member List <Mail Member>

Depending on whether multiple address are saved to mail member, specify multiple addresses easily. Unlike Broadcast mail, multiple addresses are specified collectively.

- Save up to five mail addresses per mail member.
- Save up to ten mail members.
- Charges are the same as when sending one mail. Network charges stemming from adding users are incurred.

Saving addresses in mail member

1 In stand-by, press [▲] [わを] [わを].

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Mail member*** from Top menu.

2 Select slot for mail member, press ●, select slot to save to and press ●.

3 Select input method, press ●, select (or enter) mail address and press ●.

When existing slot is selected

- If input method other than [ABC] [Direct input] is pressed, ***Overwrite?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to select mail address. Select ***No***, press ● and the screen of step 3 reappears.
- If [ABC] [Direct input] is pressed, enter normally.
- To save mail address, select a slot, press ● and repeat step 3.

4 Press [i] [Complete].

Editing mail member names

1 In stand-by, press ▲ 6わを 6わを, select mail member and press ● 1あ.

To reset member name

- Press ● 2ABC. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to reset member names (***Member 1*** to ***Member 10***).

2 Edit member name and press ●.

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- Press C CLR for 1+ seconds to delete member name.

Deleting addresses saved for mail members

Use one of the following to delete mail addresses saved for mail members.

Delete one	Delete individually.
Delete all members	Delete specified addresses saved for mail members.

1 In stand-by, press ▲ 6わを 6わを, select mail member, press ● and select mail address.

2 Press ● 1あ. [Delete one].

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all mail addresses

- Press ● 2ABC.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

4 Press i [Complete].

Setting Whether to Automatically Replay Melody <Melody Auto Replay>

Default setting: Automatic replay

Set whether to automatically replay melodies.

Automatic replay	Plays automatically when opened.
Auto replay off	Does not play automatically when opened.

1 In stand-by, press ▲ 6わを 3さ.

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Melody Auto replay*** from Top menu.

2 Press ● 1あ. [Automatic replay].

To not automatically replay

- Press ● 2ABC.

Note

- When ***Automatic replay*** is set while in Manner mode, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not. Select ***Yes*** to play.

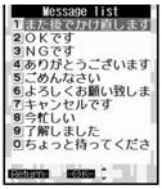
Setting Quick Reply Mail <Quick Reply Mail>

Set messages in advance for Quick reply (☞P. 268).

- Ten messages of up to 500 single-byte characters (250 double-byte) can be saved.
- The following are preset messages.

1	また後でかけ直します (Will call back later)	6	よろしくお願い致します (Your cooperation is greatly appreciated)
2	ＯＫです (OK)	7	キャンセルです (Canceled)
3	ＮＧです (No good)	8	今忙しい (Busy)
4	ありがとうございます (Thank you very much)	9	了解しました (Understood)
5	ごめんなさい (I'm sorry)	0	ちょっと待ってください (One moment please)

1 In stand-by, press ▲ わを ん 1 あ.



- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Quick reply mail*** from Top menu.

2 Select message number to save or edit and press ●.

- Input message screen appears.
- Registered messages appear.

3 Edit message and press ●.

Setting Whether to Receive Attached Files <Receive Attached File>

Default setting: Image and melody

Set whether to receive attached image and melody files.

1 In stand-by, press ▲ わを ん 2 か ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Rcv attached file*** from Top menu.
- Receive attached file setting screen appears.

2 Select file type and press ●.

To not receive attached file

- Press 4 た GHI.

Note

- When ***Not receive*** is set, attached files are deleted at the i-mode center.There will be no notice of deleted files. Also, files cannot be received again later.
- For Message R/F, all attached files are received.
- Melodies in MFi format in the message text are received regardless of settings.

Setting Received Mail Notice While Using Other Functions <In Use Mail Tone Set>

Default setting: ON

Set the method to be notified of received mail when using other functions.

● When setting i-αppli stand-by, receive display and receive results screen do not appear even when set to ***ON***.

ON	When receiving mail, received ✉, R, F or SMS icon appears, called LED lights and Mail ring tone sounds. Receive display and receive results screen appear in stand-by (excluding when i-αppli set as stand-by is active or i-motion is playing).
OFF	When receiving mail, received ✉, R, F or SMS icon appears. Mail ring tone does not sound, called LED does not light and vibrator does not activate. Also, Receive display and receive results screen do not appear.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 6わを 5な JKL.

● Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***In use mail tone set*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 [ON].

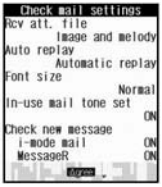
To set to OFF

● Press 2 ABC.

Checking Mail Settings Status <Check Mail Settings>

Check mail settings.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 6わを, select ■*Check mail settings* and press ●.



● Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Check mail settings*** from Top menu.

● Scroll with ● and check.

To end viewing

● Press ● [Agree].

Resetting Mail Settings <Reset Mail Settings>

Reset mail settings to default values.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 6わを, select ■*Reset mail settings* and press ●.

● Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Reset mail settings*** from Top menu.

● The reset mail settings screen appears.

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

● Numbers are masked with asterisks.

● Reset confirmation screen appears.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

Note

● Settings for Save signature, Quick reply mail, Mail member, SMS center and SMS expiry are not reset.

Creating and Sending Chat Mail

Chat by exchanging mail with multiple parties.

- Requires saving other party's mail address to Chat mail member in advance.
- Include ***@docomo.ne.jp*** when saving i-mode mail addresses for chat members.
- User's mail address shown in chat mail member setting screen is linked to Owner information. (☞P. 434)
- Register up to six members.
- If chat mail is exchanged between multiple people, charges incurred are the same as for Broadcast mail.
- If the other party's handset does not support chat mail, a mail is sent with チャットメール (Chat mail) (single-byte or double-byte) in the title.
- When using Chat mail with three or more other people, each member must register all other member's mail addresses. Exchange mail addresses with all other members prior to using Chat mail.
- Chat mail is not activated when Receive option setting is set to ***ON***. Set to ***OFF*** and try again. (☞P. 289)

Setting a Chat Member <Set Members>

- Save members in advance to use Chat mail.

1 In stand-by, press ●(Menu) 6MNO.

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Chat mail*** from Top menu.
- If a chat member is already registered, chat mail screen (☞P. 294) appears. To add, press ●(Menu) 4GHI, open the set members screen and proceed to step 2.

2 Press ●(Menu) 1 [New].

3 Press 2ABC [Direct input], enter i-mode mail address and press ●.

- Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers and some symbols.
- Symbols (☞P. 518) and Internet preset phrases (☞P. 517) are also available.
- If a mail address is saved to phonebook, the name is automatically registered.
- When using Chat mail with a party with secret code, the other party's secret code must be saved. (☞P. 96)
- Register each address once.

To select from phonebook

- Press 1, select name or mail address and press ●.
- If mail address is not saved, ✉ 📱✉ 📱✉ 📱✉ does not appear. Up to three mail address icons are shown.

To select from Sent/Received messages history

- Press 3DEF [Sent messages] or 4GHI [Received message], select a recipient and press ●. Press ● after confirming.

To select from mail member

- When 5JKL is pressed, ***Current member will be deleted. Are you sure?*** appears. Select ***Yes***, press ●, select a member and press ●. Press ● [Complete] to switch to specified mail member. (Members set)
- Save mail member in advance. (☞P. 289)

4 Select 👤, press ●, enter chat name and press ●.

- Enter up to four single-byte (two double-byte) characters.

Continued on next page ▶▶

5 Press ⓘ [Complete] twice.

Saving and disabling a chat mail member

- Select member in member setting screen and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected entries. Press ● to switch. Select all chat mail parties and press ⓘ [Complete].

Note

- Opening mail with Assistant View is not available while in Chat mail.

When Chat mail auto start is set (☞P. 298)

- When a mail titled チャットメール (Chat mail) (single-byte or double-byte) is opened, auto start confirmation screen appears.

Creating and Sending Chat Mail

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 6 MNO.

When a member is not saved

- Set members screen appears. Save a member. (☞P. 293)

To confirm a saved member

- Press ● 4 GHI [Set members]. Chat mail is available for member names marked ☑.

2 Press ●, enter message and press ●.

- Characters are highlighted.
- Enter up to 500 single-byte (250 double-byte) characters.

3 Press ⓘ [Send].

- Chat mail is available for addresses marked ☑.

When sending fails

- Error message appears. Press ● [Agree] and the screen before sending reappears.
- When resending, press ⓘ [Send] again.

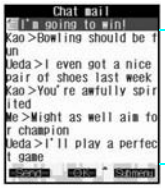
Note

- Sent chat mail is saved in Outbox. Mail in accordance with Sort rules (☞P. 286) are saved to set folder.
- Mail that could not be sent is saved in Unsent messages.
- Images and melodies cannot be attached to chat mail.

Receiving Chat Mail

When chat mail is received while Chat mail is activated

The Chat mail ring tone sounds when mail titled チャットメール (Chat mail) (single-byte or double-byte) is received. Moments after receiving chat mail, chat mail message appears at the top. (Other types of mail are not shown while in chat mail screen.)



Chat mail message (Up to 50 messages displayed starting with the newest.)
Up to 500 single-byte (250 double-byte) characters are sent.

- Scroll up or down one line with ⓘ.
- Scroll up or down one screen with ⓒ or ⓒ.

Note

- Received chat mail is saved in Inbox as read mail. Mail in accordance with Sort rules (☞P. 286) are saved to set folder.
- When receiving multiple mail, the chat mail tone rings for the last received mail.
- Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, and Web To (☞P. 224) functions are not available even if a phone number, mail address or URL is included. Close Chat mail (☞P. 296), and open again from Inbox to use Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions.
- When a chat mail with attached file is received, only the message appears in the chat mail screen.

When chat mail is received while Chat mail is not activated

- Chat mail ring tone sounds.
- If Receive option setting is set to ***ON***, Chat mail does not activate.

1 When a mail titled チャットメール (Chat mail) (single-byte or double-byte) is opened from mail list, chat mail confirmation screen appears.

- Auto start is not available when set to ***OFF***. Refer to P. 298 for details on Auto start.

When sender is a registered chat member

- ***Chat member. Start chat mail?*** appears.

When sender is an unregistered chat member or disabled (☐) registered member

- ***Register as a chat member then start chat mail?*** appears.
  (Does not register when there are already six registered members.)

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

Chat mail screen

- Selected message added as a new chat mail message and chat mail screen appears. If an already added mail is selected, a duplicate message is added as new chat mail.
- When disabled, (☐) switches to (☑) and chat mail screen appears.

To not activate Chat mail

- Select ***No*** and press ● and received messages screen appears.

Note

- When replying by i-mode mail, use i-mode mail operation. (☞P. 267)
- Chat screen names can be up to four single-byte (two double-byte) characters.
- When a name is not registered, the first four characters of the mail address appears.
- Up to 50 mail are shown, starting with the newest.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Update Chat mail <Update>

1 In the chat mail screen (P. 295), press [2 ABC].

Ending Chat Mail <End Chat Mail>

1 Press [PWR HLD] or [6 MNO] during Chat mail.

- ***Delete chat mail?*** appears.
- Unsent chat mail is deleted.

If [PWR HLD] is pressed while editing chat mail message or set members

- ***Your changes will be lost. End anyway?*** appears. Select ***Yes***, press ● and stand-by reappears. Sent/Received chat mail is saved.

2 Select *No* and press ●.

- Chat mail ends.

To delete and end Chat mail

- Select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- If chat mail is finished without deleting mail, the next time chat mail is activated the previous mail is displayed.

Starting Chat Mail from Received Mail <Start Chat Mail>

- Start Chat mail from received mail. Chat mail is not available from Deco-mail or SMS.
- If Receive option setting is set to ***ON***, Chat mail is not activated.

1 In stand-by, press [1].

- Alternatively, select (Mail) → ***Inbox*** from Top menu.
- Inbox list appears.

2 Select folder, press ●, select i-mode mail and press [5 JKL].

- Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 294 for subsequent steps.

Note

- Chat mail is not available if sender's mail address cannot be replied to.

Checking Chat Mail Address <New Mail Addresses>

Check address of newest chat mail and current chat member.
Set and disable unregistered chat member's address.

1 In stand-by, press [6 MNO] and [3 DEF].

- Address confirmation screen for the newest mail appears.
- Set and unset members are shown separately.

2 Press [i] [Set], select member and press ●.

- ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected entries. Press ● to switch.
- Select up to five members.

3 Press [i] [Complete].

- Resets members and the chat mail screen reappears.

Editing Members

Edit a chat member's name or address.

- User cannot edit own mail address.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 6 MNO and ● 4 GHI.

- Set members screen appears.

2 Select member and press ● 2 ABC.

3 Edit names and mail addresses.

- Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 293 for details.

4 Press [i] [Complete] twice.

Deleting a Member

- User cannot delete self.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 6 MNO and ● 4 GHI.

- Member setting screen appears.

2 Select a member and press ● 3 DEF.

3 Press 1 [Delete one].

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all members

- Press 2 ABC.

Continued on next page ▶▶

4 **Select *Yes* and press ●.**

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

5 **Press i [Complete].**

Note

- Even without deleting a member, setting ☑ to ☐ prohibits them from sending Chat mail.

Deleting Chat Mail <Delete Chat Mail>

Delete all chat mail from chat mail screen.

- Also delete data in sent/received folders.
- Protected messages are not deleted. However, unsent messages are deleted.

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ 6 MNO and ● 5 JKL.**

- The delete screen appears.

2 **Select *Yes* and press ●.**

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- To delete chat mail individually, use same steps as for i-mode mail. (☞P. 279)

Changing Chat Mail Font Size <Font Size>

Default setting: Standard

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ 6 MNO and ● 7 PQRS.**

Standard

Small font

Setting Chat Mail to Start Automatically <Auto Start>

Default setting: ON

Set to automatically open chat mail screen when mail titled チャットメール (Chat mail) (single-byte or double-byte) is received.

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ 6 MNO and ● 8 TUV.**

2 **Press 1 [ON: Auto start].**

To not auto start

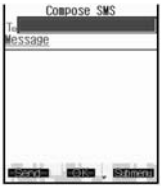
- Press 2 ABC.

Creating and Sending SMS

Create a new SMS and send it.

- Enter phone number as the address for SMS.
- SMS can be up to 160 alphanumeric characters (70 double-byte characters).
- Single-byte katakana and pictographs may not appear correctly in SMS.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ 5 JKL.



- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Compose SMS*** from Top menu.

2 Select To (Address input field) and press ●.

- The input method selection screen appears.

3 Press 2 ABC [Direct input], enter address and press ●.

- Enter phone number (up to 20 digits).
- Press 0 for 1+ seconds to enter +. Enter up to 21 digits if + is entered.

To select from phonebook

- Press 1, select recipient and press ●.
- If phone number exceeds 21 digits, exceeding portion is deleted.

To select from Sent/Received messages history

- Press 3 DEF [Sent messages] or 4 GHI [Rcvd messages], select a recipient and press ●.

4 Select *Message*, press ●, enter message and press ●.

- Enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters (70 double-byte characters).
- Line breaks ↵ and spaces (blanks) are included in character count.

5 Press i [Send].

- When complete, ***Sent*** appears.

To set delivery notice

- Press ● 3 DEF and either 1 [Request] or 2 ABC [Do not request].

To set expiration date

- Press ● 4 GHI, select expiration date and press ●.

Note

- When entering address, + can only be entered at the beginning.
- Depending on the signal status, messages may not be sent. SMS that is not sent is saved as unsent SMS.
- Text for recipient may not appear correctly depending on signal status.
- SMS can be exchanged without i-mode registration.
- The FOMA terminal receives Short mail from mova service i-mode terminals as SMS.
- Up to 20 sent and unsent SMS can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Copy sent SMS saved on handset to FOMA card. (☞P. 304)
- Up to 20 sent and received SMS can be saved on FOMA card. Unsent SMS cannot be saved to FOMA card.
- Delivery notice and expiration date set at time of sending are not reflected on Report request and SMS expiry settings.

When called during editing

- Previous screen returns after disconnecting.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

When i-mode mail or Message R/F is received during editing

- Continue editing. Received results do not appear.

When Keypad dial lock is set

- Cannot send SMS to addresses not in phonebook while Keypad dial lock is set (☞P. 151).

When address includes *184*/*186*/#31#/¥31#

- Cannot send when ***186***, ***#31#***, ***¥31#*** are added to address. Sent as a normal SMS when ***184*** is added.
- ***184*** and ***#31#*** are to not notify caller ID and ***186*** and ***¥31#*** are to notify caller ID. (☞P. 47)

Saving SMS and Sending Later <Save SMS>

Save SMS being created to FOMA terminal when interrupted. Edit saved SMS and send.

- Refer to P. 299 for details on creating SMS.
- Up to 20 sent and unsent SMS can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.

Saving unsent SMS

1 **Press ● 2 while creating SMS (☞steps 1 to 5 on P. 299).**

- SMS being created are saved as unsent SMS.

Note

- Press PWR while creating SMS and end confirmation screen appears. Select ***YES*** to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- Unsent SMS cannot be copied (saved) to FOMA card.

Editing/Sending saved SMS

1 **In stand-by, press ● 3, select SMS and press ●.**

- Compose SMS screen appears.
- Edit using same steps as when composing new SMS. Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 299 for details.

2 **Press ● [Send].**

- SMS is sent.
- Sent SMS are saved in ***Outbox***. SMS is sorted to various folders in accordance with Sort rules (☞P. 286).

Note

FOMA card

- Copy SMS from FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. (☞P. 304)
- Copy SMS data saved on FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset. (☞P. 305)

miniSD Memory Card

- Copy SMS saved on the FOMA terminal handset or FOMA card to miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 372), or view SMS saved on miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 376).
- Copy (☞P. 377) SMS saved on miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset.

Editing/Resending sent SMS

1 **In stand-by, press ● 2.**

- Outbox list appears.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

2 Select folder, press ●, select SMS and press ●.

- SMS content appears.

3 Press [Menu] [2] [Edit].

- Compose SMS screen appears.
- Edit using same steps as when composing new SMS. Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 299 for details.
- When finished editing, press [Send].

To resend

- Press [Menu] [1].

Receive SMS

Receiving SMS

SMS is automatically received.

- Up to 20 received SMS can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.

1 SMS is automatically received.

2 SMS receive results appear and SMS ring tone sounds (SMS appears).

- Received SMS are saved in ***Inbox***. Mail is sorted to various folders in accordance with Sort rules (☞P. 286).
- Folders holding unread mail are pink.

Meaning of icons

SMS (red): SMS received.
SMS (black): FOMA terminal handset SMS is full.
SMS (blue): FOMA card SMS is full.
SMS (yellow) : FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card SMS are full.

3 Select *Mail* in receive results screen and press ●.

- Inbox list appears.

When not viewing right away

- Perform no operations in receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds. Screen from before reception automatically reappears.

4 Select folder, press ●, select SMS and press ●.

- Refer to P. 302 for details on viewing received SMS.

Note

- Change SMS ring tone. (☞P. 112)
- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected SMS is overwritten. (Confirmation message does not appear.)

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- SMS on FOMA card cannot be overwritten.
- Copy SMS from FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. Delivery reports are not copied.
- When sent SMS are copied to FOMA card, the delivery reports are also copied.
- Even if the amount of saved messages in FOMA terminal handset is less than 20, new SMS cannot be received when FOMA card memory is full. When ***Memory is full. Unable to receive anymore.*** appears, delete some SMS from the FOMA card.

Receiving when not in stand-by

- SMS appears. Received screen does not appear.

Checking for SMS <Check New SMS>

Received SMS are held at the SMS center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off. Retrieve from the SMS center.

1 In stand-by, press ▲ 8 TUV.

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Check new SMS*** from Top menu.
- After the screen on the left appears, automatic retrieval starts.

Note

- SMS reception is not available if SMS (black) (FOMA terminal handset SMS full) or SMS (blue) (FOMA card SMS full) appears. Delete unnecessary SMS or disable protection. Read SMS or protection disabled SMS are overwritten in order with oldest first. (☞P. 301)
- Sometimes automatic retrieval does not start immediately after checking.

Viewing Received SMS <Display Received SMS>

Open received SMS.

- Received SMS are saved in ***Inbox***. Mail is sorted to various folders in accordance with Sort rules (☞P. 286).
- SMS copied from FOMA card are also saved in ***Inbox***.

1 In stand-by, press ▲ 1 [Inbox].

- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Inbox*** from Top menu.
- When the Inbox list contains unread i-mode mail or SMS, the folder is shown in pink.
- Folder list layout (☞P. 275)

To view sent SMS

- In stand-by, press ▲ 2 ABC.

To view unsent SMS

- In stand-by, press ▲ 3 DEF.

2 Select folder, press ●, select SMS and press ●.

SMS screen

- SMS content appears.
- Message list/view layout for sent and received mail (☞P. 276)

To check received SMS in FOMA card

- Select ***Inbox***, press ●, select SMS and press ●.
- Inbox list appears for both FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card. Distinguish by the icon.

To check sent SMS in FOMA card

- Select ***Outbox***, press ●, select SMS and press ●.

To end viewing

- Press ☎ PWR.

Note

- Up to 20 received SMS can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Received SMS can be sorted to folders automatically. (☞P. 286)
- Receive notification of missed calls with Voice mail notification (☞P. 454) when the handset is turned off or outside the service area. An SMS is received after returning to the service area or when power is turned on. Even if a call is received from a caller saved in the phonebook, only the phone number is shown in the message.

Reply to Received SMS <Reply to SMS>

Reply to SMS.

1 In the SMS screen, press [カ].

2 Enter message and press [i] [Send].

- Enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters (70 double-byte characters).
- When complete, ***Sent*** appears.

Note

- Quick reply, Reply with quote, and Forward are not available for SMS.
- Cannot reply to User unset/Payphone/Not support recipients with SMS.
- If SMS replied to from FOMA card is saved while creating, it is saved to unsent SMS on FOMA terminal handset.
- Reply is not available for Short mail sent from mova terminals.

SMS Settings

Setting SMS

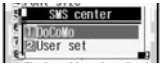
Setting SMS Center <SMS Center>

Default setting: DoCoMo (DoCoMo SMS center)

Change SMS center host.

※ Setting does not normally need to be changed.

1 In stand-by, press [メール] [わを ん] [#].



- Alternatively, select (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***SMS center*** from Top menu.

2 Press [カ] [User set].

- SMS center entry screen appears.

3 Enter SMS center address and press [●].

- Enter up to 20 digits.
- Type of number screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

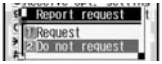
4 **Press 1 [International] or 2 [Unknown].**

Receiving Notification of SMS Retrieval <Report Request>

Default setting: Do not request

Set delivery notice for SMS.

1 **In stand-by, press ○ 6, select ■*Report request* and press ●.**



- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***Report request*** from Top menu.

2 **Press 1.**

- Report request is set.

To not receive delivery reports

- Press 2.

Note

- Report request is received as an SMS.
- Report request can be set for each individual SMS.
- Report request by itself cannot be copied to FOMA card or miniSD Memory Card or be sent by Ir data transmission.

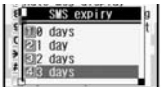
Setting SMS Expiration Date <SMS Expiry>

Default setting: 3 days

Set expiration date for SMS to be sent.

- Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

1 **In stand-by, press ○ 6, select ■*SMS expiry* and press ●.**



- Alternatively, select ✉ (Mail) → ***Mail setting*** → ***SMS expiry*** from Top menu.

2 **Select length of time and press ●.**

- SMS expiration date is set.

Note

- Setting can be applied to all SMS.

Saving SMS to FOMA Card

Copy SMS saved in FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card.
Up to 20 sent and received SMS can be saved on the FOMA card.

- Insert FOMA card in advance.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Copying SMS to FOMA Card

Copy SMS from handset to FOMA card.

1 In stand-by, press [Menu] [1], select folder and press [●].

- Received mail list appears.
- Delivery reports are not copied.

For Sent SMS

- In stand-by, press [Menu] [2], select folder and press [●].

To copy from SMS screen

- In SMS screen, press [Menu], select ■***Copy*** → ***UIM*** and press [●].

2 Select SMS from FOMA terminal handset and press [Menu] [7] [Copy → UIM].

- When an SMS is selected, ***Copy*** → ***UIM*** appears in sub menu.

For Sent SMS

- Press [Menu] [5].

Meaning of Icons

- : Unread SMS on FOMA terminal handset
- : Unread SMS (protected) on FOMA terminal handset
- : Read SMS on FOMA terminal handset
- : Read SMS (protected) on FOMA terminal handset
- : Sent SMS (protected) on FOMA terminal handset
- : Unread SMS on FOMA card
- : Read SMS on FOMA card
- : Sent SMS on FOMA card
- : Sent SMS on FOMA terminal handset

3 Press [1] [Copy one].

To select and copy SMS

- Press [2], select SMS and press [●]. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected. Press [●] to switch.
  Select all SMS to copy and press [i] [Complete].

4 Select *Yes* and press [●].

- Received SMS is copied to ***Inbox***, and sent SMS is copied to ***Outbox***.

To not copy

- Select ***No*** and press [●].

Note

- Unsent SMS cannot be copied to FOMA card.
- Overwrite copy is not available.
- Copying is canceled when the save limit for FOMA card is reached.
- When sent SMS are copied to FOMA card, the delivery reports are also copied.

Copying FOMA Card SMS to FOMA Terminal Handset

Copy SMS from FOMA card to the FOMA terminal handset.

Example: When copying received SMS

1 In stand-by, press [Menu] [1], select *Inbox* folder and press [●].

- Received mail list appears.

For Sent SMS

- In stand-by, press [Menu] [2], select ***Outbox*** folder and press [●].

To copy from SMS screen

- In SMS screen, press [Menu], select ***Copy*** → ***main*** and press [●].

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select SMS from FOMA card and press ○ 7PQRS [Copy → main].

- When an SMS in FOMA card is selected, ***Copy → main*** appears in sub menu.

Meaning of icons

: Unread SMS on FOMA card : Sent SMS on FOMA card
: Read SMS on FOMA card

3 Press 1 [Copy one].

To select and copy SMS

- Press 2ABC, select SMS on FOMA card and press ●. ☑ appears for selected SMS. SMS icon appears for unselected SMS. Press ● to switch. Select all SMS to copy and press ▬ [Complete].

4 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Received SMS is copied to ***Inbox***, and sent SMS is copied to ***Outbox***.

To not copy

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- Overwrite copy is not available.
- Copying is canceled when the save limit for FOMA terminal handset (20 entries) is reached.

Delete SMS

Deleting SMS

Delete SMS from FOMA terminal handset or FOMA card.

Example: When deleting received SMS

1 In stand-by, press ○ 1, select folder and press ●.

- Received mail list appears.
- SMS on FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card are distinguished by an icon.

To delete from SMS screen

- In the SMS screen, press ○ 7PQRS for received SMS and ○ 5JKL for sent SMS.

2 Select SMS and press ○ 2ABC.

- Delete screen appears.

3 Press 1 [Delete one].

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

4 Select *Yes* and press ●.

Note

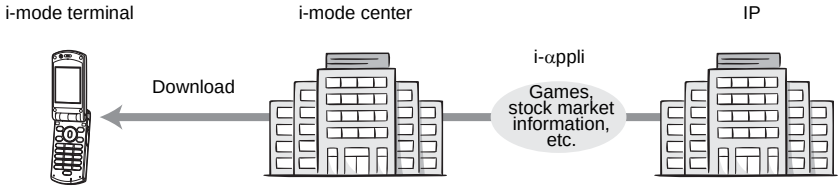
- In Received mail list and Sent mail list, delete multiple SMS collectively. (☞P. 281)

i-αppli

- i-αppli . . . . . <i-αppli>308
- i-αppliDX 308
- Downloading i-αppli . . . . . <Download>310
- Running i-αppli Software . . . . . <Running i-αppli Software>311
- Running i-αppli Automatically. . . . . <Auto Start>316
- Running i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail . . . . . <i-αppli To Function>318
- Setting i-αppli as the Stand-by Display . . . . . <i-αppli Stand-by>319
- Managing i-αppli Software 321
- Using Various i-αppli Functions 322

i-αppli

Download i-αppli software from sites for more convenient use of your i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal). Download various games to your i-mode terminal, and periodically receive automatic updates on the stock market by downloading a market information i-αppli.
With mapping i-αppli, only necessary data is downloaded, enabling smoother scrolling. Directly save information from an i-αppli to the phonebook or schedule, or use an i-αppli to link with Data box to store or retrieve images.



- Downloading i-αppli software ☞P. 310
- Running i-αppli software automatically ☞P. 316
- Running i-αppli software ☞P. 311

- Depending on the software, the terminal ID and UIM ID may be used.
- Some software may transmit data when running. It is possible to configure the software not to transmit data.

Using Saved Data

Use certain i-**α**ppli software to view, save and use data (phonebook, bookmarks, schedule, images and icon information) saved in the i-mode terminal. The software can use saved data to perform the following.

- Add to phonebook
- Save schedule
- Use icon information
- Retrieve images from Data box
- Add bookmarks
- Save images to Data box

i-αppliDX

i-αppliDX provides more enjoyable and convenient use of i-αppli software. Link an i-αppli with i-mode terminal information (mail and call history, Received calls, phonebook data, etc.) to compose mail with your favorite character screen and display character comments to see who is calling. Link an i-αppli with mail to receive real-time updates of stock market information and game progress updates. (☞P. 311)

Using Saved Data

Use certain i-αppliDX software to view, save and use saved data such as mail, redial information, Received calls and ring tones in addition to saved data (phonebook, bookmarks, schedule, images and icon information) available for use with regular i-αppli. The software can use saved data to perform the following.

- Add to phonebook
- Add bookmarks
- Use compose message screen
- View latest unread messages
- View phonebook
- Save schedule
- View latest redial numbers
- Save ring tones
- Use icon information
- Use Mail menu
- View latest received calls
- Change ring tones (call, mail, message)

- Retrieve images from Data box
- Save images to Data box
- Change set screens (stand-by, incoming/outgoing calls, sending/receiving mail, receiving Message R/F)

- To verify the validity of the software, some i-αppliDX software may transmit data regardless of the software connection setting. The number of connections and connection time differs depending on the software.
- Set the date and time before starting the i-αppliDX software.

Mail-type i-αppli

A mail-type i-αppli is an i-αppliDX that provides more enjoyable and convenient use of i-αppli software by exchanging information with i-mode mail and receiving real-time updates of stock market information and game progress updates.

- Some i-αppli mail may not be displayed properly when using mail-type i-αppli.

Other features

i-αppli stand-by

Set i-αppli as stand-by and enjoy receiving mail or making calls while running. In addition, use the stand-by conveniently by displaying up-to-date news, weather and other information or have your favorite character inform you of incoming mail and alarm times. (☞P. 319)

- Use this function with software compatible with i-αppli stand-by.

i-αppli auto start

Configure the i-αppli software to start at a certain time, date or day of the week. Some software can also start automatically at a preset interval. (☞P. 316)

Camera

Use i-αppli software to shoot still pictures with the camera on the i-mode terminal. (☞P. 323)

- Use this function with software compatible with a camera function.

Ir exchange

Use i-αppli software to connect to infrared communication (Ir exchange) devices. Link to Ir exchange devices for even greater use of the i-mode terminal. (☞P. 324)

- Use this function with software compatible with an Ir exchange function.
- Some data may not be able to be transmitted depending on the Ir exchange function of the other device.

Ir remote control

Use i-αppli software to operate various electronic devices compatible with Ir remote control. (☞P. 393 or “FOMA SH700i ｉアプリのご紹介” (FOMA SH700i i-αppli User’s Guide))

- Use this function with software compatible with an Ir remote control function. Software compatible with the electronic device is required.

Bar code reader

Use i-αppli software to read bar codes (JAN/QR codes) with the camera on i-mode terminal. (☞P. 323)

Downloading i-αppli

Download i-αppli software from sites and web pages, and run the software on the FOMA terminal display.

- Save up to 100 i-αppli software titles. (Capacity varies depending on size of software.)

1 When viewing a site or Internet web page (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204, steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), select software and press ●.

- The i-αppli download screen appears and downloading begins.

When *Run software?* appears

- Select ***Yes*** and press ● to start the software.
- Depending on the software settings, the software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading it. After ending the software, select whether to save it.

To stop downloading

- Press C CLR while ***Downloading*** appears.

When the FOMA terminal does not have enough available memory

- ***Memory is full or saved data exceeds limit. Overwrite?*** appears.

To overwrite (delete)

- Select ***Yes*** and press ●, then select software to overwrite (delete) and press ●.
- After selecting all software to overwrite (delete), press [Complete].

When software is already downloaded with a different FOMA card

- ***Already downloaded by different UIM. Overwrite?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to overwrite.

Note

- If download fails due to weak signal strength, i-αppli cannot be saved.
- If software currently saved in handset is deleted because there is not enough available memory during download and download fails due to weak signal strength, deleted software cannot be restored.
- Information may not be provided if Network set is set to ***No***.
- The following messages may appear before downloading: ***This software (i-αppliDX) will (may) use saved data and terminal and UIM ID. Download?***, ***This software (i-αppliDX may) use saved data. Download?***, or ***This software will use terminal and UIM ID. Download?*** Select ***Yes*** to begin download. Alternatively, select ***saved data*** to view a list of saved data to be used.
- If Soft description is set to ***ON***, software information appears immediately before downloading begins. Press ● to begin download.
- If Icon info is set to ***YES***, the icon descriptions for unread mail/messages, battery level, Manner mode, and inside/outside the service area are sent through the Internet to the IP (information provider) along with ***terminal ID and UIM ID*** so this information may be viewed by a third party.
- SSL appears when downloading i-αppli information or software from an SSL-enabled page.
- Once downloaded, some i-αppli software may transmit data automatically. The FOMA terminal must be set up in advance to use this service.
- The i-αppli software cannot be downloaded when the i-αppli PIM is locked.

When selected software is already saved to the FOMA terminal

- If a new version of an i-αppli software is available, a message appears asking whether to upgrade the software. Select ***Yes*** to begin download (upgrade).

Memory area

- Data box and i-αppli share memory area. Depending on the amount of data saved in Data box, i-αppli may not be saved.

Downloading mail-type i-αppli software

Make note of the following when downloading mail-type i-αppli software.

- When downloading mail-type i-αppli software, mail-type i-αppli folders are created in the Outbox, Inbox and Unsent messages. The folder name is the name of the downloaded mail-type i-αppli and cannot be changed.
- If there are already five mail-type i-αppli folders, the mail-type i-αppli is not downloaded.
- If a mail-type i-αppli with the same folder is on the software list, that software is not downloaded.
- Already received i-αppli messages can be sorted into folders automatically created when downloading a mail-type i-αppli. Also sort manually.
- If a mail-type i-αppli is downloaded and the folders for that i-αppli already exist, those folders for the i-αppli can be re-used. To use new folders, delete the existing folders and create new folders. If new folders are not created, the mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded.
- Folders containing mail-type i-αppli cannot be deleted. When none exist, folders created in Outbox list, Inbox list and Unsent messages/mail list are deleted collectively.
- When deleting mail-type i-αppli, select whether to simultaneously delete automatically created mail folders. If the folder contains protected messages, the software and folder cannot be deleted. If the folder is not deleted, to check message, line up the cursor to Inbox, Outbox, Unsent messages folder and press ●, select ***View i-mode mail*** and press ●.
- A mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded when the mail PIM is locked (☞P. 150).
- A mail-type i-αppli that changes the mail folder name cannot be downloaded or upgraded when the mail PIM is locked.
- A mail-type i-αppli that creates a new mail folder cannot be downloaded when the mail PIM is locked.

Viewing i-αppli Information During Download <Soft Description>

Select whether to view the software description when downloading begins.

1 In stand-by, press ● for 1+ seconds and press 3 DEF.

2 Press 1 [ON: view software description].

- Soft description appears when download is started.

To not view

- Press 2 ABC.

Running i-αppli Software

Run (start) an i-αppli saved in the FOMA terminal.

- Some i-αppli software may transmit data automatically when started. Use “Network Set” (☞P. 313) to disable data transmission in advance and check whether a connection is made when starting the software.
- Add the software to the Shortcut menu. (☞P. 431)

1 In stand-by, press ● for 1+ seconds.

- Alternatively, select (i-αppli) from Top menu.
- Alternatively, press ● twice to view the i-αppli screen.
- The i-αppli screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press 1 [Software list].

Software list

- The titles of the software saved in the FOMA terminal appears.
- The following icons indicate the setting of the selected software.
  - α: Software with i-αppli stand-by function
  - Auto: Software with Auto start function
  - SSL: Software downloaded with SSL session
  - iDX: i-αppliDX software
  - Mail: Mail-type i-αppli software
  - α: Software set to i-αppli stand-by
  - Auto: Software set to Auto start
  - ⇆: Software with data transmission function

3 Select software and press ●.

- The i-αppli start screen appears and the software starts.

To end software

- While software is running, press END, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- Some i-αppli software cannot run (start) on handsets without the same FOMA card used when downloading the software.
- When i-mode mail, Message R/F or SMS is received while running software, the message is received automatically. (✉/R/F/SMS appears.) To view the received mail, end the i-αppli.
- When a call is received while software is running, the software is interrupted. After the call is terminated, the software will resume.
- When a schedule or alarm time is activated, running software stops and the schedule or alarm notification screen appears. The software resumes when the schedule or alarm notification screen is closed.
- It is also possible to start a mail-type i-αppli from Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages. Select the i-αppli mail folder from each folder list.
- If a new version of the software is available, a confirmation screen for upgrading the software appears at startup.

Starting i-αppliDX software

- Some i-αppliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software connection setting. (The number of connections and connection time differs depending on the software.)
- If the date and time are not set, the validity cannot be checked and the software cannot start.
- If the software is not validated, it cannot start until the validity is checked.

Setting i-αppli volume

- Some i-αppli do not have sound.

Related Operations

Start from Shortcut menu

1 In stand-by, press 0 ▶ software.

Set volume <i-αppli volume>

1 In stand-by, press i for 1+ seconds ▶ 2 ▶ ↑ (louder) or 0 (softer) ▶ ●.

View software description <Soft description>

1 In the software list, select software ▶ C 1.

Note

Shortcut menu

- Register frequently used i-αppli in advance. (☞P. 431)

Soft description

- The information that appears in the description includes the software name, version, storage, profile version, compatible models, Auto start time interval and SSL connection.
- The software name of the i-αppli cannot be changed.

Configuring the Connection Setting <Network Set>

Default setting
Always confirm

For each i-αppli software, set whether data can be transmitted while the i-αppli is running.

- This setting is valid only for software that transmits data.
- When software is downloaded, Network set is set to ***YES***.

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ for 1+ seconds, press 1, select software and press ● 5.

2 Press 1 [YES].

To not transmit data

- Press 2.

To check upon startup of i-αppli

- Press 3.

Note

- Setting Network Set to ***NO*** may disrupt operations of the i-αppli software and information may not be provided in a timely manner. This may also prevent the software from starting.
- Because images used with the i-αppli software and entered data is sent over the Internet, some of this information may be viewed by a third party. (Images used with the i-αppli software include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli and images viewed and downloaded from Data box operated with i-αppli.)

Configuring the Icon Information Setting <Icon Information Set>

Default setting
YES

For each i-αppli software, set whether to send to the software the icons indicating unread mail and Message R/F, battery level, Manner mode setting and information about whether the handset is in or out of the service area.

- This setting is valid only for software that uses icon information.
- When software is downloaded, Icon information set is set to ***YES***.

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ for 1+ seconds, press 1, select software and press ● 7.

- Icon information settings screen appears.

2 Press 1 [YES].

To not use

- Press 2.

Note

- If the i-αppli software requires the use of icon information, setting this to ***NO*** may disrupt operations of the software.
- If Icon info is set to ***YES***, the icon descriptions for unread mail/messages, battery level, Manner mode, and inside/outside the service area are sent through the Internet to the IP (information provider) along with ***terminal ID and UIM ID*** so this information may be viewed by a third party.

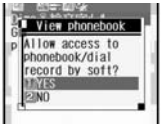
Configuring the Phonebook and History Access Setting <View Phonebook>

Default setting
YES

Configure whether to allow the i-αppli software to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls. Setting this to ***YES*** allows the i-αppli to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls automatically.

- This setting is valid only for software that accesses the phonebook and history information.
- When software is downloaded, View phonebook is set to ***YES***.

1 In stand-by, press i for 1+ seconds, press 1, select software and press ● 5WXYZ.



2 Press 1 [YES].

To set to *NO*

- Press 2ABC.

Note

- Setting this to ***YES*** allows automatic access to the phonebook, Redial and Received calls.
- Setting this to ***NO*** may prevent operation of some i-αppli software.

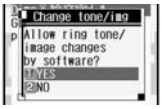
Configuring the Ring Tone and Screen Change Setting <Change Tone/Image>

Default setting
YES, NO

Configure whether to allow the i-αppli software to change the ring tone and screen, and whether to show a confirmation screen when making the changes. Setting this to ***YES*** allows the i-αppli to change the ring tone and screen automatically.

- When software is downloaded, Change tone/image is set to ***YES*** and Tone/image check setting screen is set to ***NO***.

1 In stand-by, press i for 1+ seconds, press 1, select software and press ● 8TUV.



2 Press 1 [YES].

- Tone/image check setting screen appears.

To set to *NO*

- Press 2ABC.

3 Press 1 [YES].

To not show confirmation screen

- Press 2ABC.

Note

- The i-αppli may change the ring tone and screen automatically if allowed (set to ***YES***).

Starting One Software from Another Software

Some software allows the starting of another software without having to return to the software list.

- If the software is not specified, follow the instructions on the screen to select the software.
- If the software is not saved in the FOMA terminal, download the software.

Default Software

Dimo絵文字メール (Dimo i-pictograph mail)

Characters move cheerfully in accordance with pictographs in mail to provide a fun mail experience. When the other party's phone is compatible with Dimo, characters notify incoming mail or calls and unread mail on the FOMA terminal.

- Some i-αppli mail may not appear properly when using mail-type i-αppli.

©BVIG

Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-Guide Program Schedule Remote Control)

This convenient application combines the TV program schedule with a TV remote control and does not incur a monthly usage fee.
Download EPG (Electric Program Guide) from the server and easily see what programs are being shown at a particular time from anywhere at any time. Access information such as program titles, program details, start/end time, and G-Code® for channels in your area.
Use おすすめメール (recommendation mail) function to send information about interesting programs to friends.
Also, use as a remote control for the TV (some models are not supported).

※ The screen shown is only an example. Actual screen may differ. Channels for your area will be shown.

※ Gガイド番組表示リモコン (G-Guide Program Schedule Remote Control) does not incur a monthly usage fee. Only packet transmission charges apply.

pop'n music SH

pop'n music SH is a musical simulation game that features music and cute characters. The characters change with each song.

©KONAMI
©Konami Online

Note

- Packet transmission charges apply when transmission is executed.
- The default settings of the preset i-αppli functions are as follows.
- Change settings from the sub menu of the Software list.

Setting item	Default setting		
	Dimo絵文字メール (Dimo i-pictograph mail)	Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-Guide Program Schedule Remote Control)	pop'n music SH
Stand-by display	Do not set	—	—
Network set	YES	YES	YES
i-αppli To	YES	—	—
Icon info set	YES	—	—
Change tone/image	—	—	—
View phonebook	YES	—	—

- Refer to "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details on Dimo絵文字メール (Dimo i-pictograph mail) and the Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control). Refer to "SH700i iアプリのご紹介" (SH700i i-αppli User's Guide) about internal i-αppli other than Dimo絵文字メール (Dimo i-pictograph mail).

Running i-αppli Automatically

There are three types of i-αppli Auto start.

- Set date and time in advance. (☞P. 46)

Auto start from i-αppliDX setting	Set Auto start to ***ON*** to use.
Auto start using the software function	Auto start setting pre-installed in software. Set Auto start to ***ON*** and register software to use. Save up to ten.
Auto start using the FOMA terminal setting	Set time, date and day for i-αppli saved in FOMA terminal to set Auto start. Set Auto start to ***ON*** and set schedule to use. Save up to ten.

Configuring Auto Start <Auto Start>

Default setting: OFF

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ for 1+ seconds and press 4 GHI.

Auto start screen

- Alternatively, select i-αppli → ***Auto start*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 [ON: enable Auto start].

- The i-αppli screen appears after making the setting.

To disable

- Press 2 ABC.

Setting software startup time with FOMA terminal settings

1 In auto start setting screen (☞P. 316), press 3 DEF, select a slot and press ●.

- To save a new number, select the slot with **----------**.
- Auto start software list appears.

To change Auto start schedule

- Select the number, press ● and press 1 [Update].

To delete Auto start schedule

- Select the number, press ● and press 2 [Delete].

2 Select software and press ●.

Schedule setting screen

3 Press 1 [Daily].

- Time entry screen appears.

To set day of the week

- Press 2, select day and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected days. Press ● to switch. Select all days to run and press i [Complete].

To set date

- Press 3, select date and time and press ●.

4 Enter time and press ●.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with ●.

■ Setting Auto start for supported software

1 In schedule setting screen, press 4 [Time interval].

- To disable, delete Auto start setting. (“To delete Auto start schedule” in step 1 of “■ Setting software startup time with FOMA terminal settings”)
- ***Time interval*** appears in gray for software without Auto start settings.

Note

- If Auto start cannot be started, log is stored in Auto start error history.
- Automatic startup is not available in the following situations:
  - ■ Handset is turned off
  - ■ Other functions are activated
  - ■ i-αppli is running
  - ■ During a call
  - ■ Auto start time is the same as alarm time of schedule or ToDo list
  - ■ i-αppli PIM is locked
- The functions below operate with the following priority when the same time is set.

	Priority (high → low)
Function	Auto power OFF → Auto power ON → Alarm → ToDo list → i-αppli Auto start

- Resetting the settings (☞P. 448) disables i-αppli Auto start setting.
- Transmission confirmation screen appears each time at startup for software with Auto start settings set if transmission setting is ***Always confirm***. Software starts automatically as if ***NO*** is selected in confirmation screen if no operations are performed for five seconds.
- When two Auto start times for the same software are set within ten minutes of each other, Auto start does not function. Set Auto start time to ten minutes or more. ***Run error*** appears in the Auto start error history.

Running i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail

If i-αppli To (Run i-αppli) appears on a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, i-mode mail or screen memo, i-αppli can be started. i-αppli can also be started when Run i-αppli signal is received during Ir data exchange or when Run i-αppli information is read with Bar code reader.

- Set to allow i-αppli To in i-αppli To settings.

Configuring Startup with i-αppli To <i-αppli To>

Default setting: YES

Select whether to start i-αppli with i-αppli for each software.

- When software is downloaded, i-αppli To is set to ***YES***.

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ for 1+ seconds, press 1あ, select software and press ●(カメラ) 6MNO.

- i-αppli To setting screen appears.

2 Press 1あ [YES].

To set to NO

- Press 2ABC.

Note

- The software that starts is determined by the site, Internet web page, Message R/F or i-mode mail. Download the specified software in advance.
- Run i-αppli information for up to three i-αppli can be read by Bar code reader.

Starting i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail <i-αppli To Function>

If i-αppli To (Run i-αppli) is set for a site, Internet web page, Message R/F or i-mode mail, i-αppli can be started.

- If i-αppli To is set to ***NO***, i-αppli To cannot be started.
- i-αppli To cannot be started with i-αppli stand-by.

1 Select i-αppli on a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, i-mode mail or screen memo and press ●.

- The run i-αppli screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- The software starts.

To cancel startup

- Press ☎PWR while ***Running i-αppli*** appears.

Note

- When ending an i-αppli, the original site, Internet web page, Message R/F or Receive mail details screen reappears.
- If there is no software corresponding to the Run i-αppli setting, ***No requested software*** appears.
- Some software run from browser cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Depending on the site, i-αppli software can be downloaded if it is not saved on the FOMA terminal or if a newer version of the software saved on the FOMA terminal is available.
- Depending on the software settings, the software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading it. After ending the software, select whether to save it.
- Network set (☞P. 313) may be required while running i-αppli software.
- i-αppli To from i-mode mail is a function used to deliver i-mode mail from an information service provider. This cannot be used together with another FOMA terminal.

Setting i-αppli as the Stand-by Display

Set i-αppli as the stand-by display.

- Press CLR to operate i-αppli set as stand-by display.

Setting i-αppli Stand-by <i-αppli Stand-by>

Set i-αppli as the stand-by display. In addition, set whether to transmit data.

1 In stand-by, press i for 1+ seconds, press 1, select software and press ● 4.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- The software is set as i-αppli stand-by and the software starts when the FOMA returns to stand-by.

To not set

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

When using software that transmits data

- The screen on the left appears. Press 1 to permit transmission. When 2 is pressed, transmission is not made and handset may not receive information.

Note

- Only one software at a time can be set to i-αppli stand-by.
- Some software cannot be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- When i-αppli stand-by is set, the image set in stand-by display (☞P. 122) does not appear.
- If a software that transmits data is set as i-αppli stand-by, the software may not operate properly depending on the signal strength.
- If All lock is set when in i-αppli stand-by, i-αppli screen closes and 待受画面 1 appears. In addition, if i-αppli PIM is locked when in i-αppli stand-by, image set in stand-by display appears. Disable All lock or i-αppli PIM lock and i-αppli stand-by reappears.
- If i-αppliDX is set to i-αppli stand-by, the i-αppliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software connection setting.
- When i-αppli stand-by is set and the handset is turned on, the i-αppli stand-by confirmation screen appears. Select ***Yes*** or do nothing for five seconds to start i-αppli stand-by. Select ***No*** to show normal stand-by and cancel i-αppli stand-by settings. If the handset is turned on by the Auto power ON setting, the confirmation screen does not appear and i-αppli stand-by starts when the FOMA returns to stand-by.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, i-αppli appears as stand-by. If i-αppli stand-by is disabled, the image set in stand-by display (☞P. 122) appears.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, the usable battery time decreases.
- Web To cannot be used from i-αppli stand-by.
- The following operations end stand-by i-αppli.
  The message ***Ending*** appears when ending i-αppli.
  - ■ Using the camera
  - ■ Using Image viewer
  - ■ Using Video player
  - ■ Using Ir exchange
  - ■ Downloading i-αppli software
  - ■ Viewing i-αppli screen (appears when pressing i for 1+ seconds or pressing i twice)
  - ■ Starting i-αppli
  - ■ Using video-phone
  - ■ Updating software

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

Security errors

- If i-αppli stand-by is set and incorrect i-αppli action or use of a function not permitted by the software is attempted, i-αppli stand-by is disabled.
- If an error occurs that cancels i-αppli stand-by, the error time and other information appear and are saved in the error history. No information is saved when ended properly. In stand-by, when ***Security error*** appears, press ● to display error history.

Related Operations

Set i-αppli stand-by from menu <Stand-by display>

1 In stand-by, press ● 2 1 1 3.

2 Select software ▶ ●.

- To set a different i-αppli: Press 1 ▶ software ▶ ●.
- To end set i-αppli: Press 2.
- To disable set i-αppli: Press 3.

Disabling i-αppli Stand-by

If i-αppli stand-by is disabled, previous image appears as stand-by.

- Even if i-αppli stand-by is ended, i-αppli stand-by settings are not disabled and i-αppli stand-by is restarted when returning to stand-by.

1 In stand-by press i for 1+ seconds, press 1, select software set as stand-by and press ○ 4.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- i-αppli stand-by is disabled.

To not disable

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Managing i-αppli Software

Upgrade, delete and sort i-αppli software saved in the FOMA terminal and view run error and trace information.

Upgrade

Upgrade software saved in the FOMA terminal if a new version is available on the site. Some software automatically checks for updated information and upgrades itself when running.

Sort

The order that software is listed can be changed as follows.

Download (New → Old)	Software is sorted by the latest download date first.
Download (Old → New)	Software is sorted by the oldest download date first.
By size	Software is sorted by largest program size first.

- The default setting is ***DL (New → Old)***.

Delete

Use one of the following to delete software.

Delete one	Delete software individually.
Delete all	Delete all software.
Delete selected	Delete multiple selected software all at once.

Error display and Trace info display

View run error information (***Auto start error***, ***Stand-by error*** and ***Security error***) and trace information.

- When there is no trace info, ***Trace info*** does not appear in menu.

Related Operations

Upgrade i-αppli software <Upgrade>

1 **In stand-by, press i for 1+ seconds ▶ 1 ▶ software ▶ 📷 2ABC.**
2 **Select *Yes* ▶ ●.**
- When software description appears: Press ●.
- To cancel operation: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Automatic upgrade

1 **In the *Upgrade available* confirmation screen, press ●.**
- To skip software upgrade: Press CLR.

Sort i-αppli software <Sort>

1 **In stand-by, press i for 1+ seconds ▶ 1 ▶ 📷 わ ▶ sort method ▶ ●.**

Delete i-αppli software <Delete>

1 **In stand-by, press i for 1+ seconds ▶ 1 ▶ software ▶ 📷 3DEF.**
2 **Press 1.**
- To delete all software: Press 2ABC ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
- To delete multiple software all at once: Press 3DEF ▶ software ● (repeat) ▶ i [Complete].

3 **Select *Yes* ▶ ●.**
- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

View Error display <Error display>

1 **In stand-by, press i for 1+ seconds ▶ 5 ▶ error history ▶ ●.**

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

View Trace info <Trace info>

1 In stand-by, press i for 1+ seconds ▶ 6.

Note

Upgrading i-αppli software

- i-αppli software cannot be upgraded when the FOMA terminal handset does not have enough available memory. Delete other software or data in Data box that shares memory area with i-αppli.
- If the software is not upgraded because it is already the latest version, ***Software updated*** appears.

Automatic upgrade

- A mail-type i-αppli software that changes the mail folder name cannot be upgraded when mail PIM is locked.

Deleting i-αppli software

- When deleting a mail-type i-αppli software, select whether to automatically delete the created folder at the same time. If there is protected i-mode mail in the mail folders, the software and folder cannot be deleted.
- To view i-mode mail in folders after deleting a mail-type i-αppli software but keeping the folders, press c in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages, select ***View i-mode mail*** and press ●. View the i-mode mail inside the folder without starting the mail-type i-αppli.
- The names of software downloaded with a different FOMA card appear in blue on the Delete selected list.
- To use a preset software again after deleting it, download the software from the ***SH-MODE*** iMenu site. (FOMA card restriction function applies to downloaded i-αppli software. ☞P. 37)

Deleting all software including mail-type i-αppli

- If there is protected i-mode mail in the mail folders, the software and folders cannot be deleted.

Error display

- If an error occurs that cancels i-αppli stand-by, the error time and other information appears and is saved in the error history. No information is saved during a normal end.

Trace info display (for i-αppli creators)

- If a created i-αppli does not function properly, use Trace info details as a reference.
- Trace info does not appear if there is no software set to obtain a trace.

Using Various i-αppli Functions

Viewing Sites with i-αppli

View sites and Internet web pages with the running software.

- Download software that enables viewing of sites.
- Web To cannot be used from i-αppli stand-by.
- Sites with URL exceeding 255 characters, including single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols, cannot be viewed.

1 With software running, select URL and press ●.

- The method for viewing sites and Internet web pages varies depending on the software.
- Connection confirmation screen appears.

2 Press 1 [Yes].

- The site or Internet web page appears.

To cancel operation

- Press 2.

To view URL

- Press 3.

Making Calls with i-αppli

Make phone or video-phone calls with the running software.

- Software for calling with phone or video-phone must be downloaded.
- Calls cannot be made while Keypad dial lock or Self mode is set.

1 With software running, select phone number and press ●.

- The method for making phone or video-phone calls differs depending on the software.
- Call confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Phone number for voice phone or video-phone appears.

3 Press [📞].

- Call is placed to phone number displayed.

To cancel operation

- Press [CLR].

Using the Camera with i-αppli

Operate the camera on the handset with the running software.

- When the camera is started with i-αppli, shot images can be saved and used as part of i-αppli.

1 With software running, select camera to start and press ●.

- Camera mode (still picture screen) appears. Adjust the brightness and use Auto timer and Zoom.
- Use the software to set ***Image size***, ***Continuous mode***, ***Image quality*** and ***Frame***. The items that can be set, the setting methods and the camera startup method differ depending on the software.

2 Press ● [Shoot].

- An image is shot.

To save a shot image

- Press ● [Save].

Note

- Some software may automatically send images and entered data used with i-αppli over the Internet. Images used with i-αppli include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images selected from My Pictures in Data box operated with i-αppli and images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli.

Using Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

Operate Bar code reader with the running software.

1 With software running, select Bar code reader to start and press ●.

- Camera mode (Bar code reader) is activated.
- When using Bar code reader, move the Closeup switch to and scan the bar code. (☞P. 175) The focusing range of Closeup is approximately 10 cm. (☞P. 190)
- If screen is dark, press [i] [Light] to turn on picture light.
- The methods for starting Bar code reader differ depending on the software.

2 Position camera to show bar code (JAN code/QR code) and press ● [Scan].

- An image of the bar code (JAN code/QR code) is shot.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- The scanned data may be operated with some software.

Using Ir Exchange with i-αppli

Operate Ir exchange (☞P. 388) with the running software.

- Ir exchange cannot be used while in Self mode.

1 With software running, start Ir exchange.

- The methods for starting Ir exchange differ depending on the software.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Ir exchange starts.

To cancel operation

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

To cancel Ir exchange

- Press C/CLR while ***Exchanging data*** appears.

i-motion

- i-motion. . . . . <i-motion>326
- Downloading i-motion. . . . . <Downloading i-motion>327
- Setting Whether to Automatically Replay i-motion . . . . . <i-motion Auto Replay>328

i-motion

i-motion refers to image, voice, and music data. Download i-motion to FOMA terminal from i-motion sites and Internet web pages. Play downloaded i-motion immediately, or save them to FOMA terminal. Search for i-motion sites in iMenu list.

- FOMA terminal supports Normal type i-motion (up to 500 KB).
  The two types of Normal type i-motion are as follows.
  - Those played after downloading
  - Those played while downloading

  Some i-motion cannot be saved.
- Save up to 200 i-motion. (Capacity varies depending on size of i-motion.)

Ring tone and Receive display combinations

When i-motion is set as the ring tone and receive display, the combinations and actions are as follows.

Type of ring tone	Type of receive display	Type of ring tone and receive display when received
Melody	JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion without voice, Flash movie	Ring tone : Melody Receive display: the set Receive display*1
i-motion with image and voice	JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion (voice + image), i-motion without voice, Flash movie	Ring tone : i-motion with image and voice Receive display: i-motion with image and voice
Voice only i-motion (i-motion melodies with no video)	JPEG image, GIF image	Ring tone : voice only i-motion (i-motion melodies with no video) Receive display: the set Receive display
	i-motion without voice, Flash movie	Ring tone : voice only i-motion (i-motion melodies with no video) Receive display: image set by default
No ring tone	JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion without voice, Flash movie	Ring tone : Silent Receive display: the set Receive display*1

*1 Flash movie sound effects do not sound.

Note

- This FOMA terminal does not support Streaming type i-motion.
- Voice only i-motion (i-motion melodies with no video) are not available for Receive display.
- i-motion without voice are not available for ring tone.
- If i-motion with image and voice is set as the ring tone, the i-motion is automatically set as the Receive display. If a voice only i-motion (i-motion melodies with no video) is set, the Receive display is not changed and the set image appears.
- If an i-motion that includes image and voice is set for Receive display, the i-motion is automatically set as the ring tone. If an image only i-motion is set, the ring tone sounds in the following priority.
- Priority for ring tone is specified ring tone → group ring tone → regular ring tone.
- The priority for Receive display is phonebook Picture call → group Picture call → Call displays. If none are set, the default image appears.
- Receive display returns to default setting if V-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Not support are set to ***Phone ring tone*** and melody or a voice only i-motion (i-motion melodies with no video) is set for ring tone.
- Ring tone is set to **着信音１** if V-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Not support are set to ***Phone ring tone*** and JPEG image, GIF image, GIF animation, Flash movie or an image only i-motion is set for Receive display.
- Incoming voice calls screen appears when V-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Not support are set to ***Phone ring tone***.
- Some i-motion are not available.

Downloading i-motion

Playing i-motion Downloaded from Sites

Playback i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

1 When browsing, (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 204 or steps 1 and 2 on P. 213), select i-motion and press ●.

- After i-motion download is complete, playback begins.

To cancel download

- While downloading, press CLR.

When Automatic replay is set to *No*

- The play/save selection screen appears.
- Press 1 to play, 2 to save, and 3 to show properties.
- When 4 is pressed, ***Save this i-motion?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to save. Select ***No***, press ● and the previous screen reappears.

To cancel playback

- Press ● [Stop].

To pause during playback

- Press ● [Pause].

Note

- Weak signals may stop playback or distort the image during i-motion download.
- Date and time information on FOMA terminal may be reset after the battery pack has been removed for a long time. In such cases, playback for i-motion with an expiration date or replay period is not available.
- Some i-motion may not play properly after being downloaded.
- i-motion can be set as the stand-by display (☞P. 122). (Some i-motion are not available.)
- i-motion can be set as Chaku-motion (☞P. 96). (Some i-motion are not available.)

i-motion with a replay period

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with a replay period, the screen on the left appears.

- This cannot be played before the replay period.
- When download is attempted for i-motion with an expired replay period, ***Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.*** appears.

i-motion with an expiration date

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with an expiration date, the screen on the left appears.

- When download is attempted for i-motion after its expiration date, ***Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.*** appears.

i-motion with a set number of replays

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with a specified number of replays, the screen on the left appears.

- When download is attempted for i-motion with a replay number of zero, ***The data cannot be saved. Download?*** appears. To download, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Saving i-motion

Downloaded i-motion can be saved.

- i-motion is saved to the ***i-mode/Other*** folder in Data box.

Continued on next page ▶▶

1 While downloaded i-motion is stopped or paused, press ● ●.

Note

- i-motion saved can be played using Video player (☞P. 346).
- Some downloaded i-motion cannot be saved to FOMA terminal.

When a Ticker Contains a Link

When a link is present in the ticker during i-motion playback, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To may be available. Provided phone numbers and mail addresses can be saved to Phonebook.

1 After playing a downloaded i-motion, the dial screen (for Phone To (AV Phone To)), compose message screen (for Mail To), or site access screen (for Web To) appears.

2 Select operation and press ●.

- Refer to P. 224 to P. 227 for subsequent operations.

To return to previous screen

- Press CLR.

Viewing i-motion File Properties

View file properties for i-motion.

1 While downloaded i-motion is stopped or paused, press ● 9WXYZ.

- Properties screen appears.

For i-motion allowing playback during download

- Press ● 2ABC while downloading i-motion from sites or Internet web pages (☞P. 327) or while paused.

To end viewing

- Press ● [Agree].

i-motion Auto Replay

Setting Whether to Automatically Replay i-motion

Default setting: Yes

Set whether to automatically replay i-motion when downloading.

1 In stand-by, press i 9WXYZ 3DEF 3DEF.

- Alternatively, select i (i-mode) → ***i-mode setting*** → ***Internet*** → ***i-motion auto replay*** from Top menu.
- The i-motion auto replay screen appears.

2 Press 1 [Yes].

To not automatically replay

- Press 2ABC.

Note

- Some i-motion are not automatically replayed, even when Automatic replay is set to ***Yes***.
- When Automatic replay is set to ***No***, a selection screen for playback and save operations appears.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

■**Using Still Pictures**
- Displaying Saved Images . . . . . <Image Viewer>330
- Editing Still Pictures (SPEEDYLAB) . . . . . <Edit Image>336

■**Using Movies**
- Playing Movie/i-motion . . . . . <Video Player>346
- Editing Movies (SPEEDYLAB) . . . . . <Edit Movie>353

■**Using Chara-den**
- What is Chara-den? . . . . . <Chara-den Player>359

■**Using Melodies**
- Playing Back Melodies . . . . . <Melody Player>366

■**Using miniSD Memory Cards**
- miniSD Memory Card 369
- Copying from FOMA Terminal to miniSD Memory Card . . . . . <Copy to miniSD>372
- Backing Up FOMA Terminal Handset Data . . . . . <Backup/Restore>373
- Previewing miniSD Memory Card Data . . . . . <View miniSD Data>376
- Copying from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal . . . . . <Copy → Main>377
- Managing miniSD Memory Card 377

■**Using Various Data**
- Managing Data 382

■**Using Ir Exchange**
- Ir Exchange . . . . . <Ir Exchange>388
- Sending and Receiving Data Individually 390
- Sending and Receiving All Data Items 391
- Using Ir Exchange with i-αppli Software 392
- Using the Infrared Remote Control Function . . . . . <Infrared Remote Control>393

■**Using Voice Recorder**
- Using the FOMA Terminal as a Voice Recorder . . . . . <Voice Recorder>393

■**Book Viewer**
- Displaying e-Dictionary and Book . . . . . <KEITAIViewer>396
- Using the Information in Book/Dictionary 400
- Searching Using the Camera to Read Text . . . . . <Character Reader>401
- Managing Book/Dictionary 402

Displaying Saved Images

Play back still pictures shot with FOMA terminal or downloaded from sites and web pages saved in My picture of Data box with Image viewer.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 1.

My picture folder list

- Alternatively, select (Data box)→ ***My picture*** from Top menu.
- Alternatively, press ● for 1+ seconds in stand-by.
- List of folders in My picture of Data box appears.

2 Select folder and press ●.

When ***Camera*** is selected

- Still picture list appears.
- Alternatively, press ● 2 in the still picture shooting screen (☞P. 170).

To switch image list

- Press ● 0 and 2 [16-part display], 3 [List display] or 1 [9-part display].

To show next/previous page

- Press 6 for next page and 4 for previous page.

To view miniSD Memory Card still pictures

- Press ● #.
  Press ● # to check FOMA terminal handset still pictures again.

3 Select still picture and press ●.

- Show next/previous image with 0.

To fit display size

- Press ● to switch to ***1/1***, ***Zoom↓*** or ***Zoom↑*** when smaller or larger than display size. (Actual image size is not changed.)
- Switch between ***1/1*** and ***Zoom↑*** if smaller than ***240×252***. Switch between ***1/1*** and ***Zoom↓*** if larger than ***240×252***.
- Zoom↑ and Zoom↓ are not available for GIF animation and Flash movies.

To show full screen

- Press ● or ● 2.
- Press a key other than ○ (📷) to cancel full screen display.
- Or, press ● in the image list to display full screen.

Note

- Data is not saved if memory is full. Delete unnecessary files to increase available space when saving still pictures shot with camera, edited still pictures and downloaded still pictures to the FOMA terminal handset. (☞P. 384)
  Check memory before shooting, editing or downloading still pictures. (☞P. 387)
- Opening and saving becomes slower when more images are saved.
- GIF animation may appear differently (such as frame dropping) from when on a site or Internet web page.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or miniSD Memory Card) is saved even if Image viewer is ended, and is used the next time Image viewer is started.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Note

Forward and store still pictures saved in Data box on a PC using miniSD Memory Card (☞P. 369).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Related Operations

Use Zoom <Zoom in>

1 In the screen in step 3 of "Displaying Saved Images" (☞P. 330), press ● [Zoom ↑].

- To show other areas: Press ●.
- To return to original view: Press ●.
- To shrink (zoom out) enlarged still pictures: Press ● [Zoom ↓].

Light up <Light Up>

1 In step 3 of "Displaying Saved Images" (☞P. 330), press ● ▶ ■*Light Up* ▶ ●.

- Alternatively, press ● for 1+ seconds.
- To turn off: Perform same steps.

Set Playback light <Playback light>

1 In My picture folder list (☞P. 330), press ● ●.

2 To set to Always ON: Press ●.

- To set same as light setting: Press ●.

Note

Light up

- Backlight turns off after time set for Display light time (☞P. 128) if Playback light is set to ***As light setting***.
- When Playback light is set to ***Always ON***, even after time set for Display light time (☞P. 128) passes, the backlight remains lit until image display is ended. For Light Up, the backlight turns off after set time passes.
- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of brightness settings (☞P. 130).

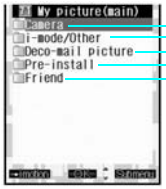
Playback light

- The default setting is ***As light setting***. (☞P. 128)
- Flash movie playback is subject to settings.

My Picture Folder List/Image List

My picture folder list layout

FOMA terminal handset



Folder for still pictures shot with FOMA terminal

Folder for still pictures downloaded from sites and Internet web pages, retrieved via Message R/F or i-mode mail, Folders for still pictures downloaded from sites and Internet web pages, retrieved via Message R/F or i-mode mail, shot with the handset and compressed when attached to mail, frames and stamps

Folder for Deco-mail image and Deco-mail templates preset in FOMA terminal and retrieved from sites and Internet web pages

Preset still picture folder

Created folder

Continued on next page ▶▶

miniSD Memory Card

Press (📷) (#) in My picture folder list to switch to miniSD Memory Card folder. (☞P. 372)

Folder for images shot with FOMA terminal, DCF compliant JPEG and GIF images excluding GIF animations. When a still picture is shot or is copied from the FOMA terminal handset, a folder named ***Camerafolder 100*** is automatically created. When the number of files reaches 400, a new folder named ***Camerafolder*** XXX (where XXX is an arbitrary number) is automatically created.

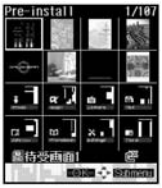
Created folder

Folder for GIF animation and non-DCF compliant JPEG copied from FOMA terminal handset

Image list layout

Show image list in ***9-part display***, ***16-part display*** or ***List display***.

9-part display



16-part display

List display

Still picture icons layout

Image type and size	JPEG Icon: 76×76	sQCIF: 128×96	QCIF 176×144	Stand-by: 240×320	CIF: 352×288	VGA: 480×640	Max: 960×1,280
Not protected	76	128	176	240	352	480	960
Protected	76	128	176	240	352	480	960

Image type and size	JPEG Others	GIF image	Flash movie
Not protected	JPG	GIF	
Protected		GIF	

- (not protected) and (protected) appear for still pictures with FOMA card restrictions applied.
- appears for still pictures set as stand-by display, Picture call, Own image and schedule.
- appears for still pictures that have mail attachment and file output restrictions.
- appears for still pictures downloaded with i-mode and appears for images retrieved from miniSD Memory Cards and Bar code reader. appears for frames and stamps regardless of source.
- appears for still pictures shot with camera.
- appears for still pictures shot with Chara-den.
- Refer to P. 165 for shot sizes and capacity.
- Change still picture protection settings. (☞P. 385)

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Change list display method <Switch view mode>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ 📷 ▶ display method ▶ ●.

Note

Changing list display method

- The default setting is ***9-part display***.
- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters for title name. Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen.

Playing Flash Movies

Flash movies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages are saved in ***i-mode/Other*** folder in My picture of Data box.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1.

- Alternatively, select 📁 (Data box) → ***My picture*** from Top menu.
- List of folders in My picture of Data box appears.

2 Select folder, press ●, select Flash movie and press ●.

- ▣ or 🔒 appears for Flash movies in Image list.
- Flash movie is played.

To play again from beginning

- During playback, press ● [Stop] and press 📷 1.

Note

- Downloaded Flash movies may playback differently from when on a site or web page.

Related Operations

Set Playback light <Playback light>

1 While playing back Flash movie, press ● [Stop] ▶ 📷 8TUV.

2 To set to Always ON, press 2ABC.

- To set same as light setting: Press 1.

Set playback volume <Change volume>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ 📷 6MNO ▶ 0 (louder) or Q (softer) ▶ ●.

Note

Playback light

- The default setting is ***As light setting***. (☞P. 128)

Changing the volume

- The default setting is ***Volume 3***.

Viewing Slideshows <Slideshow>

Show all images in a folder consecutively.

- Slideshow is not available for pre-installed folders.

1 **In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 , select folder and press 📷 5JKL.**

- ***Opening image*** appears and slideshow begins.

To stop

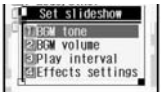
- Press CLR.

Playing BGM during slideshow

Play BGM during slideshow. Set tone and volume.

- Select BGM tone from Melody of Data box.
- The default setting is ***Silver Bow*** for tone and ***Silent*** for volume.

1 **In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 , select folder and press 📷 4GHI.**



2 **Press 1 [BGM tone], select folder and press ●.**

- Melody of Data box appears.

To change BGM volume

- Press 2ABC, adjust volume and press ●.

3 **Select tone and press ▬ [OK].**

Setting playback interval and effects

Set Slideshow in My picture playback interval (speed) and effects.

- The default setting is ***Normal*** for interval and ***OFF*** for effects.

1 **In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 , select folder and press 📷 4GHI.**

- Slideshow setting screen appears.

2 **Press 3DEF [Play interval], select interval and press ●.**

Fastest	Images are played one after another.
Fast	Next image appears after approximately three seconds.
Normal	Next image appears after approximately five seconds.
Slow	Next image appears after approximately ten seconds.

※ Play interval may vary depending on image size.

3 **Press 4GHI [Effects settings], select effect and press ●.**

Wipe ↓	Next still picture appears from top to bottom.
Wipe ↑	Next still picture appears from bottom to top.
Wipe →	Next still picture appears from left to right.
Wipe ←	Next still picture appears from right to left.
Mixed wipe	Next appears randomly vertically or horizontally.

To not set effects

- Press 1 .

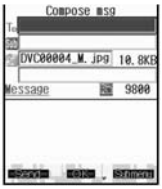
※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Attaching Still Pictures to Outgoing i-mode Mail

Select still picture from My picture of Data box and attach to i-mode mail.

- Send still pictures up to 500 KB (512,000 bytes).
- Still pictures received via i-mode mail as attachments, those shot with FOMA terminal and still pictures downloaded from sites that do not have mail attachment and output restrictions are available.
- Still pictures shot with FOMA terminal and those retrieved with miniSD Memory Cards are available even when restricted.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 1, select folder, press ●, select still picture and press ✉ [Mail].



When a JPEG image larger than the *Stand-by (240×320)* is selected

- ***Reduce to Standby?*** appears.
- Select ***Yes*** and press ● to reduce and attach.
- Select ***No*** and press ● to attach file (500 KB or less). Files larger than 500 KB are automatically compressed to 500 KB or less.
- ***Stand-by: 240×320*** is optimized for sending to i-mode terminals.

2 Create and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 5 on P. 251 for details.

Setting an Image as Stand-by Display <Set Screen>

Set still pictures saved in My picture of Data box as stand-by display, Call/Receive display, send/receive display and guidance keys.

- Frames and stamps are not available.
- Flash movies are available for stand-by and call/receive display.
- JPEG images, GIF animations and some GIF images are not available for pop-up windows, notice windows and guidance keys. Some GIF animations and some JPEG images and GIF images are not available for Background pattern.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 1, select folder, press ●, select still picture and press 📷 5.

- Alternatively, press 📷 7 in the still picture screen (☞step 3 on P. 330).
- Screen setting screen appears.

2 Select screen item and press ●.

- Select ***Yes*** and press ●.
- Select additional items depending on the screen.

Editing Still Pictures (SPEEDYLAB)

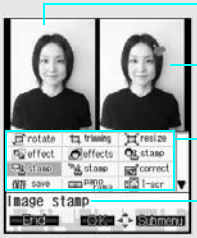
Compare before and after images while editing without interruption.

- Image quality may deteriorate with repeated editing of an image after saving, such as by adding frames and stamps.
- Data size may increase when edited.
- Attach edited image to i-mode mail and send. (☞P. 338)

Opening Image Editing Screen

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 PQRS 1 あ, select folder, press ●, select still picture and press 📷 📷.

- Image editing screen appears.
- Alternatively, press 📷 📷 [Edit image] in the still picture screen (☞step 3 on P. 330).
- Alternatively, press 📷 📷 [Edit image] in the still picture preview screen after shooting (☞step 2 on P. 170).



Editing screen

Editing type buttons

Use editing type buttons to access editing menu directly.

rotate	trimming	resize
Rotate (☞P. 337)	Trimming (☞P. 338)	Resize (☞P. 339)
effect	**effects**	**stamp**
Image effect (☞P. 340)	Face effects (☞P. 340)	Face stamp (☞P. 342)
stamp	**stamp**	**correct**
Image stamp (☞P. 343)	Character stamp (☞P. 344)	Correct image (☞P. 339)
save	**panorama**	**1-scr**
Save	Combine panorama (☞P. 344)	1-screen (☞P. 337)
cancel		
Cancel		

※ Editing type buttons differ for functions and screens.

Key operations in editing screen

Perform one of the following to select editing types.

- Press 📷 and select editing type.
- Select editing type with ●.
- Press dial key (1 to 9, * and #).
  (Editing type buttons correspond to keypad layout.)
  - ■ Select another editing type to continue editing same still picture.
  - ■ Editing type is not available if gray.

Undoing previous operation

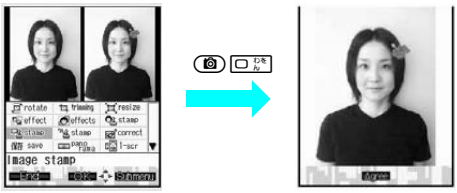
1 Press 📷 #, select *Yes* and press ●.

- Last edit is undone.
- Undo one step. Undo again to return to original still picture.

Showing in one screen

Show the edited still picture in a single screen. Before editing, the original still picture is shown in a single screen.

1 Press [camera] [わき/ん].



When in Face stamp, Image stamp, Image effects or Face effects editing screen

- Press [camera] [わき/ん] [わき/ん].

Note

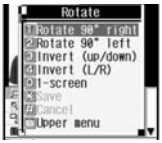
- Edited still pictures are compressed when saved and may appear different during editing.

Rotating Still Pictures <Rotate>

Rotate 90 degrees horizontally or reverse images vertically/horizontally.

- Some images downloaded from sites and Internet web pages and images imported via Data Link Software (☞P. 381) are not available.
- Still pictures larger than ***VGA: 480×640*** are not available.

1 In editing screen (☞P. 336), press [camera] [1 あ/.@].



Rotation type

Rotate 90° right	Rotate 90° left
Invert (up/down)	Invert (L/R)

2 Select rotation type and press [●].

- ***Rotating*** and rotated still picture appears.

3 Press [i] [End], select *Yes* and press [●].

To make additional editing without saving

- Press [camera] and select another edit.

To save before continuing

- Press [camera] [*+ﾓｰﾄﾞ] [1 あ/.@].

Continued on next page ▶▶

4 Press 1 [OK].

- Still picture is saved.

To change title

- Press 2, enter title and press ●.
- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters.
- Press 1 to save.

To change folder to save to

- Press 3, select folder and press ●.
- Press 1 to save.

To attach to i-mode mail and send

- Press 4, create and send i-mode mail.
- Still picture is automatically saved.
- Refer to steps 2 to 5 on P. 251 for details.

Note

- Image quality may deteriorate when trimmed or resized (☞P. 339) still pictures are rotated.
- When still pictures are rotated, aspect ratio changes for sizes other than ***Icon: 76×76***.

Changing Size of Still Pictures <Trimming>

Change size or trim still pictures to use as icons or stand-by.

Original size	Available still picture sizes
Icon: 76×76	Icon: 76×76
sQCIF: 128×96	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96
QCIF: 176×144	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144
Stand-by: 240×320 CIF: 352×288 VGA: 480×640 Max: 960×1,280	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320

※ Some still pictures from miniSD Memory Cards and Ir exchange cannot be resized depending on size of still picture.

1 In editing screen (☞P. 336), press ● 2.

- Some still pictures cannot be edited depending on original size. Still pictures appear in gray when not available.

2 Select image size and press ●.

- ***Opening image*** appears and edited still picture is displayed.
- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than size.

3 Specify portion to cut with ○ and press ●.

- Press ● to zoom in and ● to zoom out and cut with ○.

4 Save still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Resizing Still Pictures <Resize Image>

Resize images for Deco-mail or stand-by.

- Aspect ratio is maintained when still picture is resized. For images with differing aspect ratio, use Trimming (☞P. 338) to use as icon or video-phone substitute images.

Original size	Available still picture sizes
Icon: 76×76	sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320
sQCIF: 128×96	Icon: 76×76, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320, Deco-mail
QCIF: 176×144	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, Stand-by: 240×320, Deco-mail
Stand-by: 240×320	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Deco-mail
CIF: 352×288 VGA: 480×640 Max: 960×1,280	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320, Deco-mail

1 In editing screen (☞P. 336), press ◉ 3 DEF.

2 Select image size and press ●.

- ***Resizing*** appears and edited still picture is displayed.
- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than size.
- Still pictures are compressed to 9,000 bytes or less for ***Deco-mail***. Still pictures larger than ***Stand-by: 240×320*** resized to ***Stand-by: 240×320***.

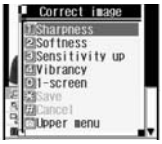
3 Save still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

Correcting Still Pictures <Correct Image>

Correct sharpness and softness of still pictures.

- Some images downloaded from sites and Internet web pages and imported via Data Link Software (☞P. 381) are not available.
- Still pictures larger than ***VGA: 480×640*** are not available.

1 In editing screen (☞P. 336), press ◉ 9 WXYZ.



Corrections

Sharpness	Emphasizes edges
Softness	Blur edges
Sensitivity up	Increase brightness and contrast
Vibrancy	Increase colorfulness

2 Select correction and press ●.

- ***Processing*** appears and corrected image appears on right.

3 Save still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Degree of corrections differ depending on original still picture.

Adding Various Effects <Image Effect>

Change hue and feel of still picture or add frames.

- Some images downloaded from sites and Internet web pages and imported via Data Link Software (☞P. 381) are not available.
- Still pictures larger than ***VGA: 480×640*** are not available.

1 In editing screen (☞P. 336), press ●4GHI.

Effects

Item (internal)	Preset frames
Item (download)	Downloaded frames
Sparkling	Bright areas light up in a cross-shaped pattern
Sepia	Image contrast is expressed in sepia color
Monotone	Image contrast is expressed in monotone
Emboss	Adds metallic silver three dimensional effects
Oil painting	Adds feel of oil painting
Shading	Blur image
Ripple	Add ripple effect
Fish-eye	Image is expressed as seen through a fish-eye lens

2 Select effect and press ●.

- ***Processing FX*** appears and edited still picture appears on the right when completed.

When *Item (internal)* or *Item (download)* is selected

- Frame selection screen appears. Select frame, press ● [Agree] and ● [OK].

3 Save still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

Note

- Effects may differ depending on the still picture.
- Image quality may deteriorate when frames are added to trimmed (☞P. 338) or resized (☞P. 339) still pictures.

Decorating Faces <Face Effects>

Add emotions to still pictures of faces.

- Respect personal image rights when adding face effects, sending edited images via i-mode mail or setting edited images to stand-by.
- Use larger portraits that face forward for face effects.
- Face effects are added after automatically extracting face contour. Effects vary depending on position and size of face in still picture. Note the following.
  Out of focus, head tilted, dark, eyes hidden by hair, mouth open, glasses, facial hair
- Still pictures larger than ***VGA: 480×640*** are not available.

1 In editing screen (☞P. 336), press 📷 5.

Effects

Slender	Plump
Big eyes	Smile
Angry	Sad
Hide wrinkles	Light skinned
Wrinkled face	Face symmetry (R)
Face symmetry (L)	Change position

2 Select an effect and press ●.

- Face contour is automatically extracted, ***Processing FX*** appears and processed still picture appears on right.

To set contour manually

- Press 1 2 [Change position]. Refer to the following "■ Setting contour manually".

When face contour is not extracted properly

- Press 📷 #, select ***Yes*** and press ● to return to original image. Press 📷 5 1 2 and set contour manually. Refer to the following "■ Setting contour manually".

3 Save still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

■ Setting contour manually

Set face contour, right eye contour, left eye contour and mouth contour and apply effects. Move + cursor with ◎ to set contour for each part.

- + moves only within image.
- Outlines for contour are red for face, blue for right eye, green for left eye and yellow for mouth.
- Also use contour data with Facial treatment (☞P. 345).

1 In editing screen (☞P. 336), press 📷 5 1 2 and specify the face contour.

Move + to top left of contour with ◎ and press ●.

Move + to bottom right of contour with ◎ and press ●.

2 Set right eye contour.

Move + to top left of contour with ◎ and press ●.

Move + to bottom right of contour with ◎ and press ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Set left eye contour.

Move + to top left of contour with ◎ and press ●.

Move + to bottom right of contour with ◎ and press ●.

4 Set mouth contour.

Move + to top left of contour with ◎ and press ●.

Move + to bottom right of contour with ◎ and press ●.

5 Press 📷 [Complete] and save still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

Note

- Hold ◎ to move + consecutively.
- Set contour information is saved when edited image is saved. Saved contour information is used the next time image is edited.

Pasting Face Stamps <Face Stamp>

Add decorations such as tears, sunglasses and swirly cheeks.

- Respect personal image rights when adding face effects, sending edited images via i-mode mail or setting edited images to stand-by.
- Use larger portraits that face forward.
- Face stamps are added after automatically extracting face contour. Effects vary depending on position and size of face in still picture. Note the following.
  Out of focus, head tilted, dark, eyes hidden by hair, mouth open, glasses, facial hair
- Still pictures larger than ***VGA: 480×640*** are not available.

1 In editing screen (☞P. 336), press 📷 6 MNO.

Face stamps

Anger	Tears
Lose color	Swirly cheeks
Puppy dog eyes	Sunglasses
Brainy glasses	Mosaic (eyes)
Mosaic (face)	

2 Select stamp and press ●.

- Face contour is automatically extracted, ***Processing FX*** appears and processed still picture appears on right.

To set contour manually

- Press 1 [Change position]. Refer to P. 341 for details.

When face contour is not extracted properly

- Press ○ #, select ***Yes*** and press ● to return to original image. Press ○ ⊟ 1 and set contour manually. Refer to P. 341 for details.

3 Save still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

Note

- Image quality may deteriorate when Face stamps are added to trimmed (☞P. 338) or resized (☞P. 339) still pictures.

Pasting Image Stamps <Image Stamp>

Paste preset and downloaded image stamps such as stars, flowers and kiss marks.

- Not available for still pictures larger than ***VGA: 480×640***.

1 In editing screen (☞P. 336), press ○ 7.

Image stamps

Small flower	Heart (small)	Footprints	Clover
Star	Kiss mark	Crystal	Note
Hibiscus	Pass	Rose	Rainbow
Balloon	Shooting star	Heart (big)	Stamp (Download)

2 Select image stamp and press ●.

- Image stamp appears.
- Press ◎ to adjust location.

When *Stamp (Download)* is selected

- Stamp selection screen appears. Select stamp, press ● [Agree] and press ●.

To re-select Image stamp

- Press C. Stamp selected before pressing C is deleted.

3 Press ● [Paste].

- Adjust location and press ● to paste same stamp.

4 Press ▭ [Complete] and save still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

Note

- Image quality may deteriorate when Image stamps are added to trimmed (☞P. 338) or resized (☞P. 339) still pictures.

Pasting Character Stamps <Character Stamp>

Paste entered characters and date/time.

- Not available for still pictures larger than ***VGA: 480×640***.

1 In editing screen (☞P. 336), press 📷 8 TUV.

Character stamps

Free word

Date

2 Press 1 [Free word], enter text and press ●.

- Enter up to 22 single-byte (11 double-byte) characters. Text that exceeds display width is cut. (Line breaks are not available.)
- Press ◎ to adjust location.
- Entered characters appear in orange.

To change font size

- Press i [Size] to change in order of 20 dots → 24 dots → 48 dots (double height size) → 12 dots → 20 dots.
- Characters move back to center when font size is changed.

To paste date

- Press 2 ABC.

3 Press ● and save still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

Note

- Image quality may deteriorate when Character stamps are added to trimmed (☞P. 338) or resized (☞P. 339) still pictures.

Combining Two Still Pictures <Combine Panorama>

Combine two still pictures and create a panoramic image.

- Combine images that are of the same tone.
- Only ***Stand-by: 240×320*** still pictures are available.

First still picture　Second still picture　Panorama image

1 Open still picture to come on left on editing screen, press ●, select ■*Combine panorama* and press ●.

2 Select combination and press ●.

Types

Standard	Standard Combine panorama. Use as default. Suited for combining scenery and long range images.
Foreground	Corrects parallax for close range images. Use for combining close range images for which Standard was not sufficient.
Document	Suited for shooting characters such as close-by signs and time tables by moving the camera sideways.

- List of folders in My picture of Data box appears.

To re-select Combination types

- Press C. The screen in step 2 reappears.

3 Select folder, press ●, select still picture to come on the right and press ● [OK].

- ***Composing image*** and combined still picture appears.
- Press ● [Flip] to flip right and left images.

4 Press ● and save still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

To re-select image

- Press C and select still picture.

Note

- Image quality may deteriorate when trimmed (☞P. 338) or resized(☞P. 339) still pictures are combined to create a panoramic image.

Making Up People's Faces <Facial Treatment>

Whiten or add natural make up to still pictures of people's faces.

- Effects are available for still pictures sized ***sQCIF: 128×96***, ***QCIF: 176×144***, ***Stand-by: 240×320***, ***CIF: 352×288*** and ***VGA: 480×640***.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 , select a folder, press ●, select a still picture and press ● ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press ⓒ, select an effect and press ●.

Types of facial treatment

Whitening	Makes the complexion whiter.
Natural	Makes the skin look natural and healthy.

- ***Processing facial treatment*** appears and edited still picture appears.

3 Press ● and save the still picture. (☞steps 3 and 4 on P. 337)

Note

- Effects may differ depending on the still picture.

Video Player

Playing Movie/i-motion

Play back movies shot with FOMA terminal and Voice recorder audio and i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages to i-motion folder in Data box with Video player.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 2ABC.

- Alternatively, select (Data box) → ***i-motion*** from Top menu.
- Alternatively, press ○ (📹) for 1+ seconds in stand-by.
- Movie/i-motion folder list appears.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

- Movie/i-motion image list appears.
- Alternatively, press ⓒ 2ABC in the movie shooting screen (☞P. 174).

To switch image list

- Press ⓒ 9WXY and 2ABC [16-part display], 3DEF [List display] or 1 [9-part display].

To show next/previous page

- Press ⊕ for next page and ⊖ for previous page.

To view movie/i-motion in miniSD Memory Cards

- Press ⓒ #. Press ⓒ # to switch back to FOMA terminal handset movie/i-motion.

To view information about ASF files

- Press i [Details].

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

3 Select movie/i-motion and press ●.

- Press ● during playback to pause.
- Fixed animation appears for voice only movies and i-motion (i-motion melodies with no video).

When Normal manner mode or Silent manner mode is set

- ***In manner mode. Play voice?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to play.
- Does not appear for movies/i-motion with image only.

Playback operations

Adjust volume	Press 0 (softer) or 0 (louder).
Fast forward	Hold 0. Plays when key is released.
Fast reverse	Hold 0. Plays when key is released.
Pause	Press ● [Pause]. Press ● [Play] again to resume playback.
Jump	Press 1 to 9. Jumps to specified location and playback resumes.
Play next movie/i-motion	Press 0.
Play previous movie/i-motion	Press 0.

- Press 0 while paused to advance by frame or 0 to reverse by frame.
- Press view while paused or stopped and playback will start after switching to full screen display. Press view while paused or stopped in full screen to automatically return to original size.
- Press 1 to 9 while paused to jump to a specified location while paused.
- When in full screen display, operations for up/down and left/right are switched. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.
- Supported movie/i-motion formats are as follows. View format for movies/i-motion in file properties (☞P. 364).

File format		Encoding
MP4 (extensions: .mp4, .3gp)	Image	MPEG-4, H.263
	Audio	AMR, AAC (8 kHz/16 kHz/32 kHz/44.1 kHz/48 kHz)
ASF (extensions: .asf)	Image	MPEG-4
	Audio	G.726 (16 to 32 kbps)

- Available movie/i-motion sizes are ***sQCIF: 128×96***, ***QCIF: 176×144***, ***QQVGA: 160×120***, ***hQVGA: 240×176*** and ***QVGA: 320×240***.

Playback icons

Track information	Image + voice + text		Buffering	
	Image + voice		Download incomplete	
	Image + text		Repeat playback	
	Voice + text		Playback light	
	Image only		Zoom playback	
	Voice only			
	Text only			

- and appear at bottom right of screen if video and audio are unsupported respectively.

Note

- Playback sometimes resumes from a spot slightly off when paused. Playback is stopped if alarm activates.
- Playback is resumed from slightly before pausing if sub menu is accessed depending on menu or data.
- Jumping to specified location by pressing 1 to 9 is not available for some data or locations. In addition, some images are not available when forwarding or rewinding frames.
- Movies saved to miniSD Memory Cards from external devices can be played back on the FOMA terminal. (☞P. 548)
- Playback continues when FOMA terminal is closed.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or miniSD Memory Card) is saved even if Video player is ended, and is used the next time Video player is started.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

Forward and store movie/i-motion saved in i-motion folder in Data box on a PC using miniSD Memory Card (☞P. 369).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

When voice/video-phone call is received during movie/i-motion playback

- The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered. Playback is canceled and the stopped movie/i-motion reappears after the call is ended. Even if resume settings are set to ***Yes*** for MP4/ASF files saved on the FOMA terminal handset, playback cannot be resumed from where it was interrupted.

Related Operations

Repeat playback <Repeat playback>

1 In step 3 of "Playing Movie/i-motion" (☞P. 347), press ● 1 ▶ ●.

- To return to normal playback: Press ● 1.
- To stop playback: Press CLR.

Change playback size <Change size>

1 In step 3 of "Playing Movie/i-motion" (☞P. 347), press ● 2.

2 To enlarge, press 2.

- For actual size: Press 1.

Light up <Light Up>

1 In step 3 of "Playing Movie/i-motion" (☞P. 347), press ● ▶ ■*Light Up* ▶ ●.

- Alternatively, press # for 1+ seconds.
- To turn off: Perform same steps.

Set forwarding frame <Frame rate>

1 In step 3 of "Playing Movie/i-motion" (☞P. 347), press ● ▶ ■*Frame rate* ▶ ●.

- To set from movie editing screen (☞P. 353): Press ● 5.

2 To make frame rate more detailed, press 2.

- To make frame rate more rough (high speed): Press 1.

Set Playback light <Playback light>

1 In step 1 of "Playing Movie/i-motion" (☞P. 346), press ● 7.

2 To set to Always ON: Press 2.

- To set same as light setting: Press 1.

Set playback volume <Playback volume>

1 In step 1 of "Playing Movie/i-motion" (☞P. 346), press ● 6.

- In the screen in step 2: Press ● 5.

2 Press ⓘ (louder) or ⓞ (softer) ▶ ●.

Set resume playback settings <Resume settings>

1 In step 2 of "Playing Movie/i-motion" (☞P. 346), press ● # ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ movie/i-motion ▶ ● ▶ ■*Resume settings* ▶ ●.

2 Press 1 to resume playback.

- To not resume: Press 2.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Note

Repeat playback

- Data with limitations on number of times to playback is not available for repeat playback.
- Press a key (excluding ○ (📷)) within three seconds of repeating to end repeat playback. (Press ✉, #, ☎, CLR, view, 🔊, ⏻, ⏻, 📷, ⏻, 0, 0 or ● for 1+ seconds to resume playback.)

Switch playback size

- Switch playback size to ***Zoom*** if image size is ***sQCIF: 128×96***, ***QCIF: 176×144*** (without telop), or ***QQVGA: 160×120***.
- Playback size is retained even if power is turned off.
- The default setting is ***Actual size***.

Light up

- Backlight turns off after time set for Display light time (☞P. 128) if Playback light (☞P. 331) is set to ***As light setting***.
- When Playback light is set to ***Always ON***, even after time set for Display light time (☞P. 128) passes, the backlight remains lit until movie/i-motion is ended. For Light Up, the backlight turns off after set time passes.
- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of brightness settings (☞P. 130).

Forwarding frame rate

- The default setting is ***Rough (hi-speed)***.
- Settings are retained even if power is turned off.
- For voice only movies, ***Fine*** is not available and forwarding frame is set to ***Rough (hi-speed)***.
- For some movies, ***Fine*** is not available and forwarding frame is set to ***Rough (hi-speed)***.
- If data size exceeds 500 KB while editing in the movie editing screen, forwarding frame is set to ***Rough (hi-speed)***.

Playback light

- The default setting is ***As light setting***. (☞P. 128)

Playback volume

- The default setting is ***Volume 5***.

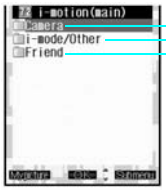
Resuming playback

- The default setting is ***Yes***.
- Set Resume setting to ***Yes*** to resume playback of movie/i-motion saved in the miniSD Memory Card that are interrupted by incoming calls.
- Movies/i-motion saved in ***Music/Voice*** folder are not available.
- Resume settings is not available if no movies or i-motion are saved on the miniSD Memory Card.

i-motion Folder List/Image List Layout

i-motion folder list layout

FOMA terminal handset



Folder for movies shot with FOMA terminal

Folder for movie/i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages, acquired via Message R/F or i-mode mail and Voice recorder audio

Created folder

Continued on next page ▶▶

miniSD Memory Card

Press (📷)(#ﾏﾅｰ) in i-motion screen to show miniSD Memory Card folders.

Folder for movies shot with FOMA terminal

Created folder

Folder for movies shot while set to voice only and to be saved on miniSD Memory Card and Voice recorder audio

- Movies saved in ***Music/Voice*** folder cannot be moved.
- ***Music/Voice*** folder name is fixed. Folder cannot be deleted.
- Movies in ***Music/Voice*** folder have no name and cannot be edited.
- Save up to 100, numbered VOICE001 to VOICE100 in ***Music/Voice*** folder. Files are in MP4 format.

Image list layout

Show image list in ***9-part display***, ***16-part display*** or ***List display***.

9-part display

16-part display

List display

- In 9-part and 16-part display, ♪ or 🖼 appears in place of image if movie/i-motion corresponds with below.
  - ■ Voice only or text only data
  - ■ Unsupported image size data
  - ■ Unsupported file format data

Movie/i-motion icons layout

	Mobile MP4		MP4		ASF
	Unlimited	Limited	Unlimited	Limited	—
Not protected					
Protected					
Shot image		—	—	—	—

- (not protected) or (protected) appears for i-motion with FOMA card restrictions applied.
- appears for movie/i-motion set as stand-by, Picture call, ring tone or Select ring tone, alarm, schedule alarm or ToDo alarm.
- appears for restricted movie/i-motion.
- appears for movie/i-motion downloaded with i-mode and appears for movies/i-motion retrieved from miniSD Memory Cards.
- appears for movies shot with camera.
- appears for movies shot with Chara-den.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Change list display method <Switch view mode>

1 In step 2 of "Playing Movie/i-motion" (☞P. 346), press ● ▶ display method ▶ ●.

Note

Display method of list screens

- The default setting is ***9-part display***.
- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters for title name. Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen.

Repeating Movies <Continuous Play>

Play all movie/i-motion in a folder in succession.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 2ABC, select folder and press ● 5JKL.

- Press ● during playback to pause.
- Press ▼ [Stop] during playback to stop. Press ● to resume stopped movie/i-motion from beginning and continuous play is resumed.
- Message appears for movies/i-motion with restrictions on replay period or expiration date.
- Full screen is not available during continuous playback.

Setting continuous play

Perform settings for movie/i-motion continuous play.

Setting	Function	Default setting
Repeat playback	Set repeat settings on or off. Settings are applied to all folders.	No
Preview	Set maximum playback time. (Transitions are not included.) Settings are applied to all folders.	No
Transitions	Set transitions between movies. Settings are applied only for movie/i-motion folders in miniSD Memory Cards. However, settings are not applied to ***Music/Voice*** folder. Set folders individually.	Random

Repeating playback

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 2ABC, select folder and press ● 4GHI 1.@.

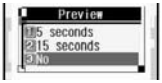
2 Press 1.@ [Yes].

To not repeat

- Press 2ABC.

Preview

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 2ABC, select folder and press ● 4GHI 2ABC.



Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press 1 [5 seconds].

To set to 15 seconds

- Press 2.

To not Preview

- Press 3.

Setting transition

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 2 📷 #, select folder and press 📷 4 3.

Transition types

Diamond shape	Next image appears from inside to outside, like a rhomboid enlarging.
Pin-wheel	Next image spins and enlarges.
Wheel	Next image spins from center and enlarges.
Dissolve	Next image fades in.
Stretch	Next image enlarges vertically from center.
Random	Next image appears using a random transition.

2 Select transition type and press ●.

To not set transition

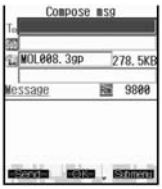
- Press 7.

Attaching and Sending Movie/i-motion <i-motion Mail>

Attach movie/i-motion to i-mode mail and send.

- Send movie/i-motion up to 500 KB (512,000 bytes).
- Send Mobile MP4 format movie/i-motion.
- Send ***QCIF: 176×144*** or ***sQCIF: 128×96*** images.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 2, select folder, press ●, select movie/i-motion and press ▤.



- Compose message screen appears. Selected movie/i-motion is attached.

When movie/i-motion exceeds 300 KB

- Select ***For mail (short)*** or ***For mail (long)***.
- Select ***For mail (short)*** and press ● to cut out the first 290 KB automatically.
- For movie/i-motion which exceed 500 KB, select ***For mail (long)*** and press ● to cut out the first 490 KB. Movie/i-motion more than 300 KB and 500 KB or less are not cut.

2 Create and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 5 on P. 251 for details.

Setting Movie/i-motion as Stand-by Display <Set to Stand-by>

Set movie/i-motion as stand-by display.

- If GIF animation, Flash movie or i-motion is set as stand-by, playback stops when switched to calendar.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 2, select folder, press ●, select movie/i-motion and press 📷 5.

- Movies/i-motion with voice only (i-motion melodies with no video) and ASF format movies/i-motion are not available.

2 Select *Yes*, press ● and 1 [Actual size].

To Zoom

- Press 2.
- Zoom is not available for image sizes other than ***sQCIF: 128×96*** or ***QCIF: 176×144***.

Note

- Refer to P. 112 and P. 113 to set movie/i-motion as Chaku-motion.
- Some i-motion are not available for stand-by display.
- Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To are not available from i-motion stand-by.
- Set movie/i-motion stand-by volume with open sound volume (☞P. 116).

Edit Movie

Editing Movies (SPEEDYLAB)

Edit shot movies.

- Only movies shot with FOMA SH700i are applicable.

Opening Movie Editing Screen

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 2, select folder, press ●, select movie and press 📷 📷.

Movie editing screen

- Movie editing screen appears. First image of file appears.
- Alternatively, press 📷 📷 [Edit movie] while playing movie (☞P. 346) to pause and open movie editing screen.
- Press ●● to forward/reverse. Sound is off.
- Press 1 to 9 to jump to specified location.

Editing type icons

	Capture still (☞P. 356)		Image cutter (☞P. 354)		Edit telop (☞P. 356)
	Edit voice (☞P. 357)		Insert effect (☞P. 358)		Resize (☞P. 358)

Key operations in movie editing screen

Perform one of the following to select editing types.

- Press 📷 and select editing type.
- Select editing type icon with ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Hide telop <Show ticker>

1 In the movie editing screen (☞P. 353), press ● ▶ ■*Show ticker*▶ ●.

2 Press 2 ABC.

- To show tickers: Press 1 *.

View detailed information <File property>

1 In the movie editing screen (☞P. 353), press ● 7 PQRS.

- To end viewing: Press ● [Agree].

Note

Telop display

- The default setting is ***ON***.

Cutting Movies <Image Cutter>

Cut out a portion and save as a new movie.

- Ticker is deleted unless entire length of telop is included in portion to cut.

Setting start and end points and cut

Set starting point and ending point and cut.

- Not available for movies less than three seconds.

1 In movie editing screen (☞P. 353), press ● 2 ABC.

2 Press 3 DEF [Cut part].

- Set starting point and ending point and cut.

To cut from starting point to end

- Press 4 GHI.

To cut from start to ending point

- Press 5 JKL.
- Press ○ to forward/reverse. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast reverse.

3 Press ⓘ [Origin] at starting point.

- Press ○ and adjust frame before pressing ⓘ [Origin]. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast reverse.

4 Press ⓘ [Last] at ending point.

- Press ○ to forward/reverse to ending point.
- Ending point must come after starting point.

5 Press ● [Agree].

- Movie editing screen reappears.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

6 Press ● 3DEF [Save].

If edited movie is *QCIF: 176×144* or *sQCIF: 128×96* and exceeds 300 KB

- Screen to select to convert for mail attachment appears.
- Select ***For mail (short)*** and press ● to cut out the first 290 KB automatically.
- Select ***For mail (long)*** and press ● to cut out the first 490 KB automatically. To save as is, select ***None*** and press ●.
- ***None*** cannot be selected when movie exceeds 500 KB.

To play edited movie

- Press i [Preview].

To not save edited movie

- Press ● 5WXY.

7 Press 1 [OK].

- Edited movie is saved as a new movie.

To change title

- Press 2ABC, enter title and press ●.
- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters.
- Press 1 to save.

To change folder to save to

- Press 3DEF, select folder and press ●.
- Press 1 to save.
- Changing folders may not be available for movies in miniSD Memory Cards.

To attach to i-mode mail and send

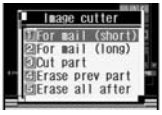
- Press 4GHI, create and send i-mode mail.
- Movie is automatically saved.
- Refer to steps 2 to 5 on P. 251 for details.

Cutting for Mail

Cut movie to attach to i-mode mail.

- 290 KB are automatically cut from starting point for ***For mail (short)***.
- 490 KB are automatically cut from starting point for ***For mail (long)***.
- Cutting is available only for ***QCIF: 176×144*** and ***sQCIF: 128×96***.

1 In movie editing screen (☞P. 353), press ● 2ABC.



2 Press 1 [For mail (short)].

To select *For mail (long)*

- Press 2ABC.
- Press 0 to forward/reverse. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast reverse.

3 Press i [Origin] at starting point.

4 Press ● [Agree] and save movie. (☞steps 6 and 7 on P. 354 of “Setting start and end points and cut”)

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Movies/i-motion on miniSD Memory Cards that exceed 800 KB after image cutting can be cut to Capture still, ***For mail (short)*** and ***For mail (long)***. ***Cut part***, ***Erase prev part*** and ***Erase all after*** are not available. Resizing is available. However, Edit telop, Edit voice and Insert effect are not available.

Saving Movie as Still Picture <Capture Still>

Save a scene from a movie as a still picture. Handle captured still picture as those shot with FOMA terminal. Attach to i-mode mail and send.

- Captured still picture is saved in ***i-mode/Other*** folder in My picture of Data box.

1 In movie editing screen (☞P. 353), press ●0 to select scene to save as still picture and press 📷 1.

2 Press 1 [OK].

- Scene is saved as a still picture.
- Refer to step 4 of “Rotating Still Pictures <Rotate>” on P. 338 for details on operations in the saving screen.

Editing Telops <Edit Telop>

Pause movie during playback to add telop. Add up to five telops per movie.
Change font color and size or add color to background.

- Telop is available only for ***QCIF: 176×144*** and ***sQCIF: 128×96***.
- Telops are not available for data less than one second, larger than 500 KB or when voice only.

1 In movie editing screen (☞P. 353), press 📷 3.

- ***Delete all telop?*** appears for movies with telops already added. To delete, select ***Yes*** and press ●. Select ***No*** and press ● to leave current telop as is, and continue editing.

2 Press ● [Play], press ● [Pause] at spot to enter telop and press i [Origin].

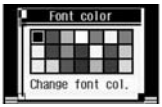
- Press ●0 and adjust frame before pressing i [Origin]. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast reverse.
- Telop input screen appears.

3 Enter characters (☞P. 510) and press ●.

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte, including pictographs and line breaks) characters.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

4 Press ◉◉, select decoration type, press ● and select decoration.



● Decoration menu screen appears.

Decoration type

Decorations	Decoration
Font color	Select font color ▶ ●
Background color	Select background color ▶ ●
Underline	Press 1 [Yes] or 2 [No] ▶ ●
Flash	Press 1 [Yes] or 2 [No] ▶ ●
Font size	Press 1 [Small] or 2 [Big] ▶ ●
Display position	Press 1 [Left]/2 [Center]/3 [Right] ▶ ●
Scroll in	Press 1 [Yes] or 2 [No] ▶ ●
Scroll out	Press 1 [Yes] or 2 [No] ▶ ●
Scroll direction	Scroll direction ▶ ●

● Entered text is decorated.

5 Press ◉1 [Edit complete].

To add more character decorations

● Press ◉2 and repeat steps 3 and 4.

To delete decorations

● Press ◉3, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

To delete telop

● Press ◉4, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

To add telop at another location

● Repeat steps 2 to 4.

6 Save movie. (☞steps 6 and 7 on P. 355)

Editing Voice <Edit Voice>

Add audio to movies. Record while playing movie. Record using the mouthpiece.

● Edit voice is available only for ***QCIF: 176×144*** and ***sQCIF: 128×96***.
● Edit voice is not available for data less than one second, larger than 500 KB or when voice only.
● Record from flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) when connected.

1 In movie editing screen (☞P. 353), press ◉4.

● Proceed to step 3 for image only movies.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

● File is paused at beginning.
● Edit voice is not available from middle of file.

3 Press ● [Rec].

● Record audio while playing movie.
● Pause, Fast forward, Fast reverse, forward and reverse are not available during recording.

4 Press ● [Complete] to end recording.

● Recording automatically ends when movie ends.

Continued on next page ▶▶

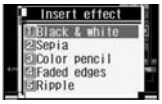
5 **Save movie. (☞steps 6 and 7 on P. 355)**

Adding Effects to Entire Movie <Insert Effect>

Change tone or touch of movies.

- Available only for ***QCIF: 176×144*** and ***sQCIF: 128×96***.
- Movie editing is not available for some data recorded on other devices.

1 **In movie editing screen (☞P. 353), press ● 5 な JKL.**



- Insert effect screen appears.

2 **Select effect and press ●.**

Effects

Black & white	Sepia
Color pencil	Faded edges
Ripple	

3 **Save movie. (☞steps 6 and 7 on P. 355)**

Changing Movie Size <Resize>

Resize movie to size attachable to mail. Movies are changed to image quality ***NORMAL*** and image size ***QCIF: 176×144***. The first 490 KB are automatically cut.

- Resizing is available for movies shot in ***QVGA: 320×240*** and ***hQVGA: 240×176*** or movies sized ***QCIF: 176×144*** in ***SUPER FINE***.

1 **In movie editing screen (☞P. 353), press ● 6 は MNO.**

2 **Select *Yes* and press ●.**

3 **Save movie. (☞steps 6 and 7 on P. 355)**

What is Chara-den?

During a video-phone call, display character instead of camera image. The character reacts to sound, raises its arms and legs, dances, and performs various actions. After downloading a character, set in still pictures/movies in stand-by or send as a mail attachment. (Images/movies with restrictions for mail attachment and output to non-FOMA devices are not sent.) Check and shoot Chara-den's movements anytime with Chara-den player.

- Chara-den are preset on the FOMA terminal, but can also be downloaded from sites and Internet web pages. (☞P. 224)
- Keypad sound is not active when operating Chara-den during video-phone call (☞P. 361), while playing Chara-den or while shooting Chara-den (☞P. 362).

Playing Chara-den <Chara-den Player>

Play Chara-den saved in Data box. Also perform actions.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 4.

©BVIG

- Alternatively, select (Data box) → ***Chara-den*** from Top menu.
- Chara-den list appears.

To switch image list

- Press 7 and 2 [16-part display] or 3 [List display]. Press 1 [9-part display] to use 9-part display.

To show next/previous page

- Press ◁ for previous page and ▷ for next page.

2 Select Chara-den and press ●.

Action mode icon

- Chara-den is played.
- Press 0 to switch action mode. Switch between modes.
- To perform actions, press ○, select action and press ● or directly enter a shown action number (1 to 5, #). Alternatively, directly enter the action number without displaying Action list.
- For preset Chara-den actions, refer to P. 82.

Action mode icon

: Full-action mode
: Part-action mode

Note

Key operations for Chara-den player

0	●	○	📷	# for 1+ seconds	1 to 5, #	C
Change action (☞P. 361)	Screen size (☞P. 360)	Action list (☞P. 361)	Sub menu	Light up (☞P. 360)	Action operation (☞P. 361)	Cancel action (☞P. 361)

Screen size

Adjust screen size.

1/1 (actual size)

Zoom↑

Related Operations

Light up <Light ↑>

1 While playing, press [1] or [#] (for 1+ seconds).

Set Playback light <Playback light>

1 While playing, press [9].

- To set from Chara-den list: In the screen of step 1, press [1].

2 To set to ON, press [2].

- To set same as light setting: Press [1].

Adjust screen size <Screen size>

1 While playing, press [1/1].

- To return to zoom size: Press [1/1] [Zoom↑].

Set Chara-den as video-phone substitute image <Substitute image>

1 While playing, press [1] [1].

- To set from Chara-den list: In the screen of step 1, select Chara-den ▶ [1] [1].

Set phonebook <Image for call>

1 While playing, press [1] [2].

- To set from Chara-den list: In the screen of step 1, select Chara-den ▶ [1] [2].

2 To save as a new phonebook entry, press [1] ▶ new entry.

- To add: Press [2] ▶ add to phonebook.

Note

Light Up

- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of brightness settings (☞P. 130).
- Backlight turns off after time set for Display light time (☞P. 128) if Playback light is set to ***As light setting***.
- Backlight stays lit until Chara-den ends when Playback light is set to ***ON***.

Playback light

- The default setting is ***As light setting***.

Changing image size

- The default setting is ***Zoom↑***.

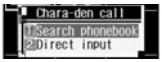
Substitute image

- appears for set Chara-den.

Calling with Chara-den as substitute image <Chara-den call>

Select a Chara-den to use as substitute image.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 4, select a Chara-den and press 📷 📞.



2 Press 2 [Direct input].

To make a call from phonebook

- Press 1, select a person to call, press ● [OK] and press i [V-phone].

3 Dial number, and press i [V-phone].

Controlling Chara-den

Making a Chara-den perform actions

Make Chara-den perform actions during video-phone calls.

- Select from a range of expressions, including happiness and anger, while in full-action mode.
- Change to Part-action mode to move body parts, jump and dance.
- Perform different actions together in Part-action mode.
- Depending on the Chara-den, sound from a microphone can be synchronized with the movement of the mouth.
- Types of actions vary for each Chara-den.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 4, select a Chara-den and press ●.

2 Press 0 or 📷 5.

To display the action list details

- Press i [Details].

3 Select an action and press ●.

- Performs the selected action.
- Alternatively, directly enter a shown action number (1 to 9, #) or directly enter the action number without displaying Action list.
- Refer to P. 82 for preset Chara-den actions.

To abort action

- Press C.

Note

- Depending on the Chara-den, some actions are performed automatically.

Related Operations

Switch between full-action and part-action <Change action>

1 In the screen in step 1 of "Controlling Chara-den", press 0 or 📷 4.

Recording Chara-den <Record Chara-den>

Shoot pictures of Chara-den.

- Shutter sound disabled while in Manner mode.

Shooting still pictures

Shoot Chara-den and save as still picture.

- Still pictures are saved to ***Camera*** folder in My picture or specified folder.
- Pictures will be ***QCIF: 176×144*** size.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 4GHI, select Chara-den and press ● 📷 📷.

2 Press 2ABC [Still picture].

To switch to Shoot movie

- Press 📷 1 1.

To change image quality

- Press 📷 2ABC, select Image quality option and press ●.

To switch Chara-den

- Press 📷 3DEF, select a Chara-den and press ▶ [OK].

To change display size

- Press 📷 4GHI, and press 1 [Actual size] or 2ABC [Zoom].

To specify save destination

- Press 📷 5JKL, select destination folder and press ●.

To switch action

- Press 0.

To perform from Action list

- Press 0, select action and press ●.

3 Press ● [📷] and ● [Save].

- Press ● immediately after performing action to shoot.
- Still picture is saved.

Shooting movies

Record Chara-den and save as movies.

- Movies are saved to ***Camera*** folder in i-motion of Data box or to a specified folder.
- Recordable movie size is ***QCIF: 176×144***.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 4GHI, select Chara-den and press ● 📷 📷.

2 Press 1 [Movie].

To switch to Still picture
- Press ● 1 2.

To change image quality
- Press ● 2, select Image quality option and press ●.

To set File size limit
- Press ● 3 and either 1 [For mail (short)] or 2 [For mail (long)].

To switch Chara-den
- Press ● 4, select a Chara-den and press i [OK].

To change display size
- Press ● 5, and press 1 [Actual size] or 2 [Zoom].

To set backlight duration
- Press ● 6 and press 1 [As light setting] or 2 [Always ON].

To specify save destination
- Press ● 7, select Specify folder and press ●.

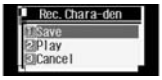
To switch image/audio
- Press ● 0 and either 1 [Image + voice] or 2 [Image only].

3 Press ● [Rec].

To switch action
- Press 0.

To perform from Action list
- Press 0, select action and press ● or directly enter a shown action number (1 to 9, #).
- Alternatively, directly enter the action number without opening the Action list.
- Recording continues while in the Action list screen. Remaining record time may not be updated.

4 Press ● [Stop].



- Stop recording.
- Recording stops automatically when remaining record time becomes 00:00:00. Recording time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may automatically stop before indicator reads 00:00:00.

5 Press 1 [Save].

- Movie is saved.

To play
- Press 2.

To not save
- Press 3.

Note

- Keypad sound is not emitted during Chara-den movie recording, but sounds from operating keys may be recorded.

Managing Chara-den

Protect, delete, and sort Chara-den.

Switching display of list screens

Set Chara-den list display method to ***9-part display***, ***16-part display*** or ***List display***.

©BVIG

9-part display

©BVIG

16-part display

©BVIG

List display

Sorting

The order that Chara-den are listed in can be changed as follows.

- The default setting is ***Date (new → old)***.

Date (new → old)	Files are sorted with latest save date first
Date (old → new)	Files are sorted with latest save date last
By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2.
By source	Pre-install → download (i-mode)
Size (big → small)	Largest files first
Size (small → big)	Smallest files first

Deleting

Use one of the following to delete Chara-den.

Delete one	Delete individually.
Delete all	Delete all Chara-den.
Delete selected	Delete multiple selected Chara-den collectively.

Viewing properties

The following information is shown.

- Date/time saved
- File restriction: ***Restricted/Not restricted***
- Video-phone: ***ON/OFF***
- Rec. File Restriction: ***Restricted/Not restricted***
- Display size
- Protect set: ***ON/OFF***
- File name
- Source
- File size
- Phonebook settings: ***ON/OFF***
- Title (Original)

Note

- Rec. File Restriction includes attaching an image or movie created with Chara-den to mail, saving to the miniSD Memory Card or editing.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Change list display method <Switch view mode>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 4GHI ▶ 📷 7PQRS ▶ display method ▶ ●.

Sort Chara-den <Sort>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 4GHI ▶ 📷 6MNO ▶ sort method ▶ ●.

Protect Chara-den <Protect set>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 4GHI ▶ Chara-den ▶ 📷 3DEF.

2 Press 1.

- To disable protection for Chara-den: Press 2ABC.

Change the title <Edit title>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 4GHI ▶ Chara-den ▶ 📷 5JKL.

2 Press 1.

- To return to original name: Press 2ABC.

3 Edit the title ▶ ●.

- To erase current name: Press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Delete Chara-den <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 4GHI ▶ Chara-den ▶ 📷 2ABC.

2 Press 1.

- To delete all Chara-den: Press 3DEF ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
- To delete multiple selected Chara-den collectively: Press 4GHI ▶ Chara-den ● (repeat) ▶ [Complete].

3 Select *Yes* ▶ ●.

- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

View Chara-den properties <File property>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 4GHI ▶ Chara-den ▶ 📷 4GHI.

- To end viewing: Press ● [Agree].

Note

Changing List Display Method

- The default setting is ***9-part display***.

Protecting Chara-den

- Chara-den set as substitute images or set to phonebook are automatically protected. (If substitute image settings are disabled, protection is not automatically disabled.)

Changing titles

- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters.
- Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are displayed on screen.

Deleting Chara-den

- Delete protected Chara-den individually.
- Delete all will erase preset Chara-den as well.
- To use again after deleting, download preset Chara-den from the iMenu site ***SH-MODE***. (☞P. 224)

Playing Back Melodies

i-melodies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages and melodies attached to Message R/F or i-mode mail are saved to Melody in Data box. They can be played with Melody player.

1 In stand-by, press ●7PQRS3DEF.

- Alternatively, select (Data box) → ***Melody*** from Top menu.
- Melody folder list appears.

Continuous play

- Press ○4GHI.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

- Melody list appears.

To view next page

- Press ▼ when the cursor is on the last melody on the list.

To view previous page

- Press ▲ when the cursor is on the first melody on the list.

To check miniSD Memory Card melodies

- Press ○#. Press ○# again to check FOMA terminal handset melodies.

3 Select melody and press ●.

- Melody is played.
- Press ● while playing to stop and the melody list reappears.

When Normal manner mode or Silent manner mode is set

- ***In manner mode. Play melody?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ●.

Note

- Some melodies may not play.

Forward and store melodies saved in Data box on a PC using miniSD Memory Card (☞P. 369).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- Set melody to ring tone. (☞P. 369)
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or miniSD Memory Card) is saved even if Melody player is ended, and is used the next time Melody player is started.

Related Operations

Adjust volume <Change volume>

1 In the screen in step 2 of "Playing Back Melodies", press ○7PQRS ▶ 0 (louder) or 0 (softer) ▶ ●.

Adjust while playing <Change volume>

1 While playing, press ○1 ▶ 0 (louder) or 0 (softer) ▶ ●.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Set Equalizer <Equalizer>

1 While playing, press ▶ equalizer type ▶ ●.

Note

Adjusting the volume

- The default setting is ***Volume 3***.

Melody Folder List Layout

FOMA terminal handset

Folder for melodies obtained from sites and Internet web pages, Message R/F or i-mode mail

Preset melody folder

Created folder

miniSD Memory Card

Press ▶ in Melody screen to view miniSD Memory Card folder.

Available melody folder

Created folder

Melody icon layout

	SMF	MFi
Not protected		
Protected		

- (not protected) and (protected) appear for melodies with FOMA card restrictions applied.
- appears for melody set as ring tone.
- appears for melodies downloaded with i-mode and appears for melodies retrieved from miniSD Memory Cards and Bar code reader.
- appears for melodies that have restrictions for mail attachment and file output to non-FOMA devices.

Playing a Series of Melodies <Continuous Play>

Play all melodies in a folder in succession.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 3DEF, select folder and press 📷 4GHI.

To skip to the next melody

- Press 0.

To return to the beginning of the current melody

- Press 0. Press 0 again at the beginning of a melody to return to previous melody.

Specifying Start Position <Start Position>

When a melody downloaded from i-mode or attached to mail is set as the ring tone, only the section that can be set as ring tone is played.

- The play section is specified and cannot be changed.
- Start position is not available for SMF melodies.
- Start position for melodies saved to miniSD Memory Card cannot be specified.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 3DEF, select folder, press ●, select melody to specify play section and press 📷 1.

- Start position selection screen appears.
- 1***Start position*** appears in gray when not available.

2 Press 1 [Play all].

To play a portion

- Press 2ABC.

Attaching Melodies to Outgoing i-mode Mail

Select melody (SMF) from Melody of Data box and attach to i-mode mail.

- Maximum size for attachment is 10,000 bytes. Files over limit are not attached.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 3DEF, select folder, press ●, select melody and press i [Mail].

- Compose message screen appears. Selected melody is attached.

2 Create and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 5 on P. 251 for details.

Note

- Melody may not be played properly if other party is not using a FOMA SH900i, FOMA SH901iC, or SH700i handset.
- Some SMF melodies acquired from i-αppli that cannot be redistributed, melodies attached to mail, melodies downloaded from i-mode, or MFi melodies may not be able to be attached to i-mode mail.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Setting a Melody as the Ring Tone <Melody Settings>

Set melodies in Melody of Data box as the ring tone.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 PQRS 3 DEF, select folder, press ●, select melody and press 📷 6 MNO.

2 Select item and press ●.

miniSD Memory Card

Use a miniSD Memory Card with the FOMA terminal. The miniSD Memory Card is a further miniaturized version of the SD Memory Card. Save data including phonebooks, mail, and bookmarks from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD Memory Card and vice versa. Also, view miniSD data from the FOMA terminal. Refer to P. 567 for an estimated number of recordable still pictures/movies and voice recording times for miniSD Memory Cards. With the miniSD Memory Card adapter, use the card with compatible PCs, printers, etc. also.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops.

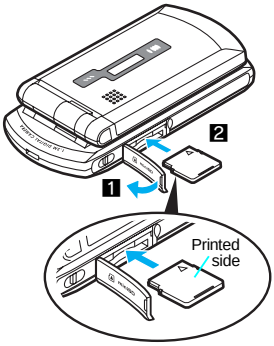
Be aware of the following when using the miniSD Memory Card.

- Do not insert or remove miniSD Memory Card while FOMA terminal is on.
- Insert the miniSD Memory Card into the slot correctly. The miniSD will not function when not inserted correctly.
- SH700i is compatible with miniSD Memory Cards up to 256 MB (as of February 2005).
  For miniSD Memory Card current compatibility,
  From FOMA terminal: ***iMenu*** → 3メニューリスト (Menu List) → 🖳ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → 3***SH-MODE***
  From PC: ***http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/products/sh700i.shtml***
- Be aware of the following for miniSD Memory Cards and miniSD Memory Cards formatted by other devices.
  - ■ Wait five seconds for writing data after inserting miniSD into FOMA terminal. During this time, do not remove the card or turn off the power. Data may be damaged and operation may not work normally.
  - ■ Not all miniSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to use miniSD Memory Cards formatted by FOMA terminal. Refer to P. 378 for details on formatting. When a card is formatted, all saved data is lost.
- Do not remove miniSD Memory Card while editing data on a miniSD. Also do not turn off the FOMA terminal or miniSD inserted device while editing data. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Data saved on miniSD Memory Cards from other devices may not be displayed or played. Some data saved on miniSD Memory Card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.

Inserting/Removing the miniSD Memory Card

Inserting miniSD Memory Card

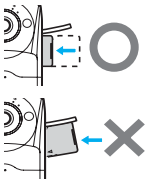
Turn off FOMA terminal when inserting miniSD Memory Card.

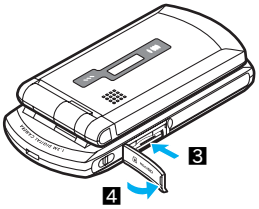


1 **Open miniSD Memory Card slot cover. (1)**

2 **Slowly insert card with printed side up. (2)**

- Do not force the card in at an angle. The miniSD Memory Card slot may be damaged.





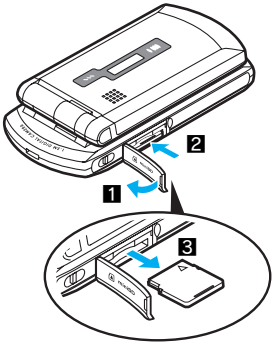
3 **Push slowly until a click is heard. (3)**

- Use finger to insert.

4 **Close miniSD Memory Card slot cover. (4)**

Removing miniSD Memory Card

Turn off FOMA terminal when removing miniSD Memory Card.



1 **Open miniSD Memory Card slot cover (1) and gently push card in. (2)**

- Push until a click is heard. miniSD Memory Card springs forward. Excessive force may damage FOMA terminal or card.

2 **Remove miniSD Memory Card. (3)**

- Remove slowly and straight. Close miniSD Memory Card slot cover after removing.

Note

- Face miniSD Memory Card slot away from face when inserting or removing card. Card may pop out.
- Always push miniSD Memory Card in until a click is heard before pulling card out. Excessive force may damage FOMA terminal or miniSD.
- Store miniSD in included case after removing.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

miniSD Memory Card Features

Copy FOMA terminal handset data to miniSD Memory Card.
Select Copy one, Copy all or Copy selected. Copy entire groups or folders for some functions.

Data available when copying from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal

Function	Total*1		Copy one/Copy selected/Copy all	Copy all in folder
	16 MB	32 MB		
Phonebook*2	maximum 65,535 (Approximately 850)	maximum 65,535 (Approximately 1,700)	○	○
Schedule*3*8			○	—
ToDo list*3			○	—
Text memo			○	—
Bookmark			○	○ (Folder information is not copied.)
i-mode mail/SMS*5*6			○	○
Still picture*4*7	900 folders/up to 400 still pictures per folder (☞P. 568)		○	○
Movie*4	4,095 folders/up to 400 movies per folder (☞P. 568)		○	○
Melody*4	999 folders/up to 400 melodies per folder		○	○

*1 Numbers above lessen depending on size of data and capacity of miniSD Memory Card. Numbers in parentheses are estimates for the different miniSD Memory Card sizes.
*2 Secret settings, group number, group name, memory number, Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED and mail/message LED and Chara-den settings are not copied. If ***Image transfer*** in phonebook is set to ***No***, Picture call setting is not copied. Save destination for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.
*3 Secret settings and alarm information (except set alarm time) are not copied. Contacts and image settings for Schedule are also not copied.
*4 Copy only files without File restrictions (output from FOMA terminal restricted).
*5 Reply to or forward mail saved in miniSD Memory Card. Mail saved in cards cannot be protected. Folder information is not copied.
*6 Oversized attachments are deleted when copying mail.
*7 Flash movies and frames are not copied.
*8 Holiday settings are not copied. Start date and time is entered for end date and time if entry with no end date and time is copied.

Note

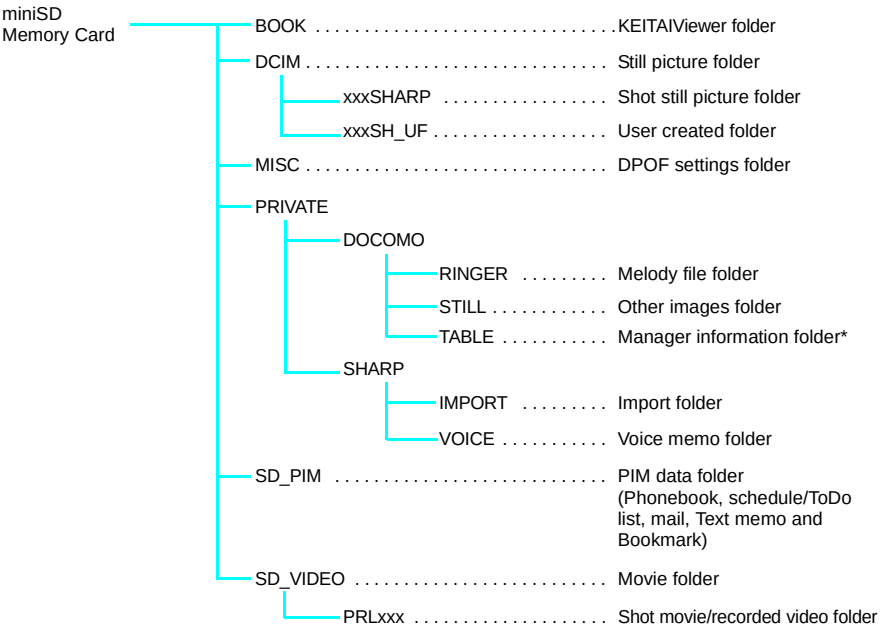
- Save still pictures and movies shot with FOMA terminal to miniSD Memory Cards or FOMA terminal handset.
- Manager info is written to miniSD Memory Card when data is copied.
- Some files directly copied from PC to miniSD Memory Cards are not available on FOMA terminal. In such cases, use Data Link Software. Refer to P. 549 for details on downloading Data Link Software.
- When PIM is locked, locked data cannot be operated. Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) to unlock temporarily and operate.

miniSD manager screen

View miniSD Memory Card data and back up or format card from miniSD manager screen.

- Press ● 8 TUV 0 +P to open miniSD manager screen.
- Folder and file names in miniSD Memory Cards are managed by manager info. Update manager info if miniSD Memory Card is used (data edited, added, deleted, etc.) with PC or other device. (☞P. 380) Editing, saving, moving, and copying of data may not be available without proper manager information.

miniSD Memory Card Folder Structure



* ***TABLE*** folder contains folders for ***DCIM***, ***RINGER***, ***STILL***, and ***SD_VIDEO*** information.

- "x" is a single-byte number.
- GIF animations are stored in ***STILL*** folder. All other GIF files are stored in ***DCIM*** folder.
- Data on miniSD Memory Cards do not appear properly on FOMA terminal if folder name is changed or deleted with PC.

Copy to miniSD

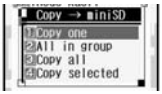
Copying from FOMA Terminal to miniSD Memory Card

Copy data from data list screen or details screen to miniSD Memory Card. miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

- Sub menu numbers vary depending on function and screen.

Example: When copying phonebook entry

1 In stand-by, press ⊡, select name and press ⊡ 9WXYZ.



To check before copying

- In the details screen, press ⊡, select ■***Copy1*** → ***miniSD*** and press ●. Proceed to step 3.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

2 Press 1 [Copy one].

- Confirmation screen appears.

To copy all in group

- Press 2, select group to copy, press ●, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To copy all

- Press 3, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To copy selected

- Press 4, select name and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and nothing appears for unselected entries. Press ● to switch. Select all entries to copy and press [Complete].
- Select up to 50 entries.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Copying begins.

To not copy

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- Group information from phonebook is not copied for Copy all.
- When copying still pictures, melodies or movies/i-motion from Data box to miniSD Memory Card, destination folder can be selected.
- Still pictures or movie/i-motion copied to or from miniSD Memory Card may deteriorate in image quality or may have different file sizes. When the destination folder exceeds 400 still pictures, a new folder is automatically created and images are saved in the new folder.
- Images in FOMA terminal shot with camera increase in size when copied to miniSD Memory Card. When available memory space in FOMA terminal is low, images on miniSD Memory Card copied from handset may not be copied back after original image is deleted.
- Not all images larger than maximum image size or file size can be copied.
- An entry copied more than once is saved as separate data.
- Some data may not be copied depending on miniSD Memory Card available space.

Backup/Restore

Backing Up FOMA Terminal Handset Data

Backup data from FOMA terminal functions (Phonebook, Mail, Schedule, ToDo list, Bookmark, Text memo) to miniSD Memory Card as one file per function. Owner information is also forwarded with phonebook Backup/restore.
miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

- Refer to P. 371 for details on data that can be backed up. Still pictures, movies/i-motion and melodies in Data box cannot be backed up.
- It is recommended to use this function when sharing information with other FOMA terminals with miniSD Memory Cards, when moving information to a new handset, etc.
- When battery level is low, data may not be backed up properly. It is recommended to back up data while recharging battery.
- Set date and time in advance. (☞P. 46)
- Data cannot be backed up while PIM is locked.
- Phonebook cannot be backed up while Keypad dial lock is set.

Backing up from FOMA terminal to miniSD Memory Card

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 0 わ 2 ABC 1 あ.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***miniSD manager*** → ***Backup/restore*** → ***Backup→miniSD*** from Top menu.
- Function name list appears.

2 Select function and press ●.

- Terminal security code entry screen appears.

When *Mail* is selected

- Preview options appear. Select mail to backup and press ●.

3 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Backup confirmation screen appears.

4 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Backup begins.
- When backup is complete, ***Backup complete*** appears.

To not backup

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- Some data may not be sent depending on miniSD Memory Card available space.
- Some backed up data may not be read by other FOMA terminals.
- Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED, mail/message LED and Chara-den settings in the phonebook cannot be backed up. Save destination for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.
- When ***Image transfer*** is set to ***Yes***, image set to Picture call is also backed up. Images that are backed up include still pictures or movies shot with FOMA terminal camera and edited images shot with FOMA terminal camera.
- Alarm information not including alarm time for Schedule and ToDo list is not backed up. Contacts and image settings in schedule are not backed up.
- When ToDo list is backed up, secret data is saved as ordinary data.
- i-αppli To and Folder information in mail are not backed up.
- Phonebook entries and SMS in FOMA card are not backed up.

Reading backup data from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal

Read backup data from miniSD Memory Card.

- When backing up data, keep or delete data in FOMA terminal.
- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 0 わ 2 ABC 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***miniSD manager*** → ***Backup/restore*** → ***Restore←miniSD*** from Top menu.
- Function name list appears.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

2 Select function and press ●.

- Backup data for selected function appears. When data cannot be found, ***No data*** appears and the screen of step 1 reappears.
- Backup date appears in data name.
  Example: January 21, 2005 8:52 AM → ***datagr050121_0852***

When *Mail* is selected

- Preview options appear. Press ● for mail backup list.

To check backup data

- After step 2, select data and press ● 2 ABC.

To check data details

- After step 2, select data and press ● 3 DEF.
- Title, file format, file name, location, file restriction and saved date appears.

3 Select backup data, press ●, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Restore confirmation screen appears.

4 Select *Add* and press ●.

- Backup data starts being read.
- When complete, ***Restore complete*** appears.

To overwrite handset data

- Select ***Overwrite***, press ●, select ***Yes*** and press ●.
- When overwriting phonebook, owner information except for own number is overwritten. Group names are also overwritten. Group settings which cannot be overwritten are reset to initial settings.

Note

- Because file information is not saved with mail and bookmarks, received mail is saved in ***Inbox***, sent mail is saved in ***Outbox*** and bookmarks are saved in ***Bookmark*** folder.
- Mail may take more time to transfer.

Deleting backup data

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 0 わ 2 ABC 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***miniSD manager*** → ***Backup/restore*** → ***Restore←miniSD*** from Top menu.
- Function name list appears.

2 Select function, press ●, select data and press ● 1 [Delete].

- Delete screen appears.

3 Press 1 [Delete one].

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all

- Press 2 ABC, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To delete selected

- Press 3 DEF, select data and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected data. Press ● to switch. Select all data to delete and press [Complete].
- Select up to 50 entries.

Continued on next page ▶▶

4 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Backup data is deleted.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

View miniSD Data

Previewing miniSD Memory Card Data

Check data copied to miniSD Memory Card from various function screens or miniSD manager screen.
miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

Checking from various function screens

Check data from the list screen.

Example: When checking phonebook

1 In stand-by, press ○ and ● #.

- Data saved on miniSD Memory Card appears. Check data like checking data on FOMA terminal handset.
- Select backup data and press ● to check backup data on miniSD Memory Card.
- When data cannot be found, ***No data*** appears and the previous screen reappears.

Checking from miniSD manager screen

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 1.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***miniSD manager*** → ***View miniSD data*** from Top menu.
- View miniSD data screen appears.

2 Select function and press ●.

- Data for selected functions appears in a list. When data cannot be found, ***No data*** appears and the previous screen reappears.

When *Mail* is selected

- Preview options appear. Select mail to preview and press ●.

To check data information <Property>

- Press ● 3.

To delete data

- Press ● 1. Select deletion method, press ● and follow instructions on screen. (Basic procedures are the same as phonebook.)

To copy to FOMA terminal handset

- Press ● 2. Select copy method, press ● and follow instructions on screen.
- Data created with ***Backup/restore*** (☞P. 373) cannot be copied.

3 Select data and press ●.

- Data appears.
- For details, refer to corresponding page for each function.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Copying from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal

Copy data saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset.
Select Copy one, Copy all or Copy selected.
Copy from data list screen.
miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

- Sub menu numbers vary depending on function and screen.

Example: When copying phonebook entry

1 In stand-by, press [i-mode] and [Menu].

- Data saved on miniSD Memory Card appears.

2 Select data and press [Menu] [Copy → main].

- Copy screen appears.

3 Press [Copy one].

- Copy confirmation screen appears.

To copy all

- Press [2 ABC], enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press [●].

To copy selected

- Press [Mail], select name and press [●]. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected data. Press [●] to switch. Select all entries to copy and press [i] [Complete].
- Select up to 50 entries.

4 Select *Yes* and press [●].

- Copying begins.

To not copy

- Select ***No*** and press [●].

Note

- Alternatively, copy data from miniSD manager screen while checking data. (☞P. 376)
- Data backed up to miniSD Memory Card cannot be copied. Read data (☞P. 374) from miniSD Memory Card.

Copying phonebook entries

- ***No name*** appears when data without name is copied.

Copying bookmarks

- In screen of step 4, ***Will overwrite the same URL. Are you sure?*** appears. To overwrite current data, select ***Yes***.

Managing miniSD Memory Card

Create/delete folders and edit folder names when managing miniSD Memory Card data for My picture, i-motion and Melody of Data box. View data details or set still pictures to print.
miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

- In miniSD Memory Card, save up to 400 files per folder. Refer to P. 371 and P. 372 for details on files and folders.

Formatting miniSD Memory Card <Format>

Format unformatted miniSD Memory Cards on the FOMA terminal before use.

- Note that all data in miniSD Memory Card is deleted after formatting.
- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Not all miniSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to use miniSD Memory Cards formatted by FOMA terminal.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 0 わ 5 JKL.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***miniSD manager*** → ***Format*** from Top menu.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears.

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Format confirmation screen appears.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Format begins.
- When format is complete, ***Formatted*** appears.

To not format

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- Do not remove miniSD Memory Card during operation.

Setting DPOF <Print Setting (DPOF)>

DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) is a format for printing still pictures shot by digital camera. Designate still pictures on miniSD Memory Card and print specified images/quantity at a digital camera print shop which supports DPOF or use a DPOF compatible printer.

- Still pictures downloaded from sites or web pages cannot be printed. JPEG images that can be copied to miniSD Memory Card can be printed.
- Refer to printing device user's guide for details on printing.
- Folder for DPOF use
  - Still picture folder/user created folder (☞P. 372)
  - DCF compliant folder created by other device (☞P. 186)
- File for DPOF use
  - Still pictures saved in above folders (DCF compliant JPEG)
- Still pictures on FOMA terminal handset cannot be designated.

1 In stand-by, press ● 7 PQRS 5 JKL.

- Alternatively, select (Data box) → ***Print setting (DPOF)*** from Top menu.
- List screen for folder with still pictures available for printing appears.

When DPOF is already set by another device

- Current DPOF must be cleared to set a new DPOF.
- Confirmation screen appears. To clear, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

2 Select a folder.

To print same quantity of all still pictures

- Press ● 1 1, enter quantity and press ●. Proceed to step 4.

To print same quantity of still pictures larger than *Over 640×480*

- Press ● 1 2 and specify the quantity to print. Proceed to step 4.

To print same quantity of still pictures larger than *Over 1024×768*

- Press ● 1 3 and specify the quantity to print. Proceed to step 4.

To attach date

- Press ● 3 1.
- Date in properties of still picture can be added.

When index print is necessary

- Index print enables thumbnail-size images to be printed along with the file name on postcard or A4 size paper.
- Press ● 4 1 after setting quantity with Specify group.

To check DPOF status

- Press ● 5.
- When using Specify group, an approximate quantity appears.

To cancel all DPOF settings

- Press ● 2, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

3 Press ●, select still picture, press ● 1 [Specify number], enter quantity (1 to 99) and press ●.

- To view the next page of the image list, press ▷. To view the previous page, press ◁.
- Select still picture and enter the quantity to print by pressing 0 to 9.
- Set to continue printing other still pictures.

4 Press i [Complete], select *Yes* and press ●.

To re-specify print

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

5 Press ● [Agree].

Note

- Still pictures saved on miniSD Memory Cards of other devices which are not DCF compliant may not be printed.

Managing Data

Deleting data

Use the following methods to delete data from the miniSD Memory Card.

Delete one	Delete data individually.
Delete all	Delete all data.
Delete selected	Delete multiple selected data collectively.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Delete miniSD Memory Card data (example: Phonebook)

1 **In stand-by, press** ▶ ▶ **.**

2 **Select data** ▶ ▶ ***Delete*.**

3 **Press** **.**

- To delete all data: Press ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ .
- To delete multiple data files: Press ▶ name (repeat) ▶ [Complete].

4 **Select *Yes*** ▶ **.**

Create folders in miniSD Memory Card (example: My picture)

1 **In stand-by, press** ▶ ▶ ▶ **.**

2 **Press** **.**

- To create ***Other still pic*** folder: Press .

3 **Enter folder name** ▶ **.**

Delete miniSD Memory Card data by folder (example: My picture)

1 **In stand-by, press** ▶ ▶ **folder** ▶ **.**

2 **Press** ▶ **enter terminal security code (four to eight digits)** ▶ **.**

- To delete all images in folder: Press ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ .
- To delete all images: Press ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ .
- To delete multiple folders: Press ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ folder ▶ (repeat) ▶ [Complete].

3 **Select *Yes*** ▶ **.**

- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ .

View miniSD Memory Card data details (example: Phonebook)

1 **Press** ▶ ▶ **data** ▶ **.**

- To end viewing: Press [Agree].

Note

Deleting

- Alternatively, delete data from miniSD manager screen while checking data. (☞P. 376)
- Select up to 50 entries.

Folder names

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

Deleting folders

- Operation stops if folder contains protected data.
- If all data in a created folder is deleted, folder is also deleted.

Viewing properties

- Sub menu numbers vary depending on function and screen.
- View properties while checking data in the miniSD manager screen. (☞P. 376)

Updating miniSD Memory Card Manager Information <New Manager Information>

When miniSD Memory Card was used on a PC or other device (editing/adding/deleting data, etc.), manager information must be updated.

- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Manager information may not be updated if there is no available space on the miniSD Memory Card.
- miniSD Memory Card may not operate properly if manager information is not updated using FOMA terminal.
- Time needed to update depends on number of files and amount of data in miniSD Memory Card.
- Updating manager information is necessary when using data saved by another device. When updating, file name extensions (.jpg) in lower case become upper case.
- Be aware that when updating, titles for non-Exif format files are deleted.
- Mail details display with Assistant View is not available while updating miniSD Memory Card manager information.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 6 わを 4 GHI.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***miniSD manager*** → ***New manager info*** from Top menu.
- When i-αppli stand-by is set (P. 319), ***Software terminate?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ● and 4 GHI to show manager information update screen.

2 Select item and press ●.

- Icon changes to ☑. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected data. Press ● to switch. Select all items to update.

When *All* is selected

- Proceed to step 4.

3 Press [i] [Complete].

- New manager info confirmation screen appears.

4 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Updating begins.
- While updating, press ● [Cancel] or CLR, select ***Background process*** and press ● to perform other operations while updating manager information. Press PWR to automatically update in the background.

To not update

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- Do not remove miniSD Memory Card while updating.
- While updating, voice/video-phone call and mail can be received. The following functions are not available: i-mode, i-αppli, Shoot still picture/movie, view mail, play image/i-motion/melody/Chara-den, viewing miniSD data from phonebook/mail/schedule/ToDo list/text memo, print setting (DPOF), checking memory on miniSD Memory Card, sending/receiving Ir data.

Checking PC and Other Device Data on FOMA Terminal <Import>

Use miniSD Memory Card to check data (phonebook, mail, schedule, ToDo list, text memo, still pictures/movies/i-motion/melodies in Data box) created on a PC or other device.

- Use Data Link Software to copy data from PC or other device to miniSD Memory Card import folder.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 6 わを 3 DEF.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***miniSD manager*** → ***Import*** from Top menu.
- Import screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select function and press ●.

- When data cannot be found, ***No data*** appears and the screen of step 1 reappears.
- Data (file name) for selected function appears.

To delete data

- Press ● 1. Subsequent steps are the same as for deleting normal data.

To save to FOMA terminal

- Press ● 2. Subsequent steps are the same as for copying normal data.
- File names with kanji or hiragana are changed when copied to FOMA terminal.

To check data information (File property)

- Press ● 3.
- Not all data created on a PC or other device has title information.

3 Select data and press ●.

- Data appears.

Note

- For melodies, copy up to 100 KB on the handset and play up to 200 KB on miniSD Memory Cards. Play back and copy up to 800 KB for still pictures and 500 KB for movies.
- When backup data is put into an import folder, only the first item is shown.
- Not all still pictures (JPEG/GIF) larger than 1,224(W) × 1,632(H) pixel can be viewed. Images from the image list may be displayed for larger images.
- Attached files may be deleted in part or in whole under the following conditions.
  - Not supported by FOMA terminal
  - Exceeds 100 KB
  - Eleven or more files of 10,000 bytes or less are attached
  - Two or more i-motion, still picture, or melody (SMF) files over 10,000 bytes are attached
  - Total size of attached files and message text exceeds 10,000 bytes (not including i-motion, still picture, melody (SMF) files over 10,000 bytes)

Managing Data

Data box consists of the following folders.

Data box	My picture	Shot still pictures and downloaded images are saved. (☞P. 331)
	i-motion	Movies shot with the FOMA terminal, audio recorded with the Voice recorder and downloaded i-motion are saved. (☞P. 346)
	Melody	Melodies are saved. (☞P. 366)
	Chara-den	Chara-den are saved. (☞P. 359)
	Print setting (DPOF).....	Information such as the number of prints for still pictures saved on the miniSD Memory Card are saved. (☞P. 378)

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Creating, Editing, and Deleting Folders

Manage data by creating up to 20 folders each for My Picture, i-motion, Melody of Data box.

- Setting a requirement to enter security code to view data saved in folders is possible.

Deleting folders

Use one of the following to delete folder.

Delete all	Delete all folders.
Delete one	Delete folders one by one.
Delete selected	Delete selected folders collectively.

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- Saved data is deleted along with folder.
- Folders containing protected data cannot be deleted. Disable protection and try again.

Operation examples below are for My picture.

Related Operations

Create folders <New folder>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ 📷 1 ▶ enter folder name ▶ ●.

Set folder security <Folder security>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ 📷 ▶ *Folder security* ▶ ●.

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ 1 .@/.

- To disable: Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ 2ABC.

Edit folder names <Edit folder name>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ 📷 2ABC ▶ edit folder name ▶ ●.

- To erase folder name: In the edit screen, press CLR for 1+ seconds.

Delete folders <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ 📷 3DEF.

2 Press 3DEF ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.

- To delete all folders: Press 2ABC ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
- To delete selected folders collectively: Press 4GHI ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ folder ▶ ● (repeat) ▶ i [Complete].

3 Select *Yes* ▶ ●.

Note

Creating folders

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

Folder security

- When Folder security is set to ***ON***, terminal security code (four to eight digits) is required to view data list.
- Folder security can be set to ***ON*** only for created folders.
- Only folders in the FOMA terminal handset are available.

Editing folder names

- Only folder names of created folders can be changed.

Protecting, Deleting, and Sorting Data

Protect, delete, and sort data.

- Refer to P. 364 for details on how to manage Chara-den.

Deleting

Use one of the following to delete data.

Delete one	Delete data individually.
All in folder	Delete all data in a folder.
Delete all	Delete all data.
Delete selected	Delete multiple selected data collectively. Select up to 50 entries.

- Only Delete one and Delete selected are available for protected data.

Sorting

Change the list order to one of the following.

Date (new → old)	Files are sorted by the latest save date first.
Date (old → new)	Files are sorted by the oldest save date first.
By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2.
By source*	Files are sorted by acquisition method in the following order: camera → download (i-mode, i-mode mail, i-αppli) → miniSD Memory Card/Ir exchange/USB → video-phone → Chara-den → e-book.
Size (big → small)	Largest files first
Size (small → big)	Smallest files first

* File acquisition source differs by data type.

- The default setting is ***Date (new → old)***.

File restrictions

Restrict still pictures and movies from mail attachment and output to non-FOMA devices.

- If a File restriction is set on data shot with the FOMA terminal, although sending the data as an attachment to i-mode mail is possible, the receiver will not be able to send restricted data to another party.
- File restrictions on data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, attached to i-mode mail, or saved from i-αppli, and picture memos shot during video-phone cannot be changed.
- Only data created through editing or shot by the FOMA SH700i can be changed.
- Even if shot with the FOMA SH700i, File restrictions cannot be changed for i-motion downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or i-motion retrieved from a URL in an i-motion mail message.

File properties

The following information is shown.

Item	My picture	i-motion	Melody	Item	My picture	i-motion	Melody
Date/time saved	○	○	○	Slideshow settings*1	—	—	○
Date/time saved (Exif) (images shot with camera only)	○	—	—	Creator	—	○	—
Date/time made	—	○	○ (MFi only)	Copyright	—	○	—
Display size (excluding Flash movies and Deco-mail templates)	○	○	—	Description	—	○	—
File size	○	○	○	File name	○	○	○
File size (video) (JPEG images only)	○	—	—	Shooting date (JPEG images only)	○	—	—

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Item	My picture	i-motion	Melody	Item	My picture	i-motion	Melody
File format (except Flash images)	○	○	○	Daily alarm*1	—	○	○
File restriction: ***Restricted/ Not restricted***	○	○	○	Title (Original)	—	○	○
Protect set: ***ON/OFF****1 (Including Deco-mail templates)	○	○	○	Replay: ***MobileMP4/MP4****2	—	○	—
Tone settings*1	—	○	○	Expiration date: ***MobileMP4/MP4****2	—	○	—
Set screen*1	○	○	—	File period: ***MobileMP4/MP4****2	—	○	—
Ph/book settings*1	○	○	○	Sound: ***AAC/AMR/G.726****3	—	○	—
Schedule/ToDo*1	○	○	○	Source	○	○	○
Video-phone*1	○	—	—	Transfer for Repair: ***Available/Unavailable*** (Excluding Deco-mail templates)	○	—	○
Record message*1	○	—	—	Ring tone: ***Available/Unavailable, MobileMP4/MP4***	—	○	—
Owner Information*1	○	—	—	Receive display: ***Available/Unavailable***	—	○	—

*1 Does not appear for file properties of My picture Deco-mail templates or miniSD Memory Card.
*2 Not displayed when there are no replay restrictions.
*3 Not displayed for movies/i-motion with no audio sound.

Operation examples below are for My picture.

Related Operations

Edit title <Edit title>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ data ▶ 📷 ▶ *Edit title* ▶ ●.

2 Edit the title ▶ ●.

- To delete title: In the edit screen, press C for 1+ seconds.

Delete data <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ data ▶ 📷 ▶ *Delete* ▶ ●.

- To delete data on miniSD Memory Card: In Folder list, press 📷 #▽ ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ data ▶ 📷 ▶ ***Delete*** ▶ ●.

2 Press 1.

- To delete all files in the folder: Press 2ABC ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
- To delete all data: Press 3DEF ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
- To delete multiple selected data collectively: Press 4GHI ▶ data ▶ ● (repeat) ▶ i [Complete].

3 Select *Yes* ▶ ●.

Protect data <Protect set>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ data ▶ 📷 ▶ *Protect set* ▶ ●.

2 Press 1.

- To disable: Press 2ABC.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Move data to a new folder <Move>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ data ▶ 📷 ▶ *Move* ▶ ●.

2 Press 1 ✱.

- To move all files in the folder: Press 2 ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
- To move multiple selected data collectively: Press 3 ▶ data ▶ ● (repeat) ▶ i [Complete].

3 Select folder ▶ ●.

Edit file names <Edit file name>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ data ▶ 📷 ▶ *Edit file name* ▶ ● ▶ edit file name ▶ ●.

- To delete file name: In the edit screen, press C for 1+ seconds.

Sort data <Sort>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ 📷 ▶ *Sort* ▶ ● ▶ sort method ▶ ●.

Restrict still picture and movies from output to non-FOMA devices <File restriction>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ data ▶ 📷 ▶ *File restriction* ▶ ●.

2 Press 2ABC.

- To disable: Press 1 ✱.

View detailed information <File property>

1 In stand-by, press ● 7PQRS 1 ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ data ▶ 📷 ▶ *File property* ▶ ●.

- To end viewing: Press ● [Agree].

Note

Changing titles

- Title names are names that appear on data lists. File names are names used for data sent as i-mode mail attachments.
- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters.
- Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are displayed on screen.
- Titles cannot be edited for data contained in the ***Music/Voice*** folder on the miniSD Memory Card.

Deleting data

- Data in ***Pre-install*** folder of My picture and ***Pre-install*** folder in Melody cannot be deleted.
- Perform Delete one when deleting protected data or data set for various functions.

Protecting data

- Data saved on a miniSD Memory Card cannot be protected.
- Data set to any of the following are automatically protected: stand-by, call/receive display, send/receive display, Picture call, background pattern, schedule, ring tone, alarm tone, and sound effect. Protection is not disabled even after data is released from screen or sound settings.
- At a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies, check whether your FOMA terminal handset data can be transferred. (DoCoMo accepts no responsibility for lost data, modified data, or data that cannot be transferred.)

Moving data to a new folder

- Select up to 50 items.
- When miniSD memory is full, data cannot be moved to another folder within the miniSD Memory Card.
- If the destination folder on miniSD Memory Card contains more than 400 still pictures, movies/i-motion and melodies, the exceeded amount cannot be moved.
- Data contained in the ***Music/Voice*** folder on the miniSD Memory Card cannot be moved.

Changing file name

- Enter up to 36 single-byte characters for the file name.
- File names for the following cannot be edited: data with file restrictions (data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, attached to i-mode mail or saved from i-αppli), picture memos shot during a video-phone call or data saved on a miniSD Memory Card.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

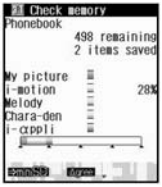
Checking Available Memory <Check Memory>

Check the following contents.

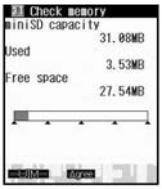
Item	Contents
Phonebook	Number of remaining entries, registered entries, and secret entries
Bookmark, Schedule/ToDo list, Text memo	Number of remaining entries, and registered entries
Received mail, Sent mail, Message R/F, Screen memo	Percentage used (%)
Sent SMS, Received SMS	Registered entries/20 entries
My picture, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den of Data box, and i-αppli	Total percentage used (%)
miniSD Memory Card	Amount, amount used, and free space
FOMA card	Number of remaining phonebook entries and registered entries, and percentage used for SMS (%)

- Secret data items can only be displayed when Secret mode is set to ***ON***. (☞P. 153)

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 8 DEF 1 あ /.@.



- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Check memory*** from Top menu.
- Current available memory status is shown.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- To show available memory status for other functions, press ▲.
- Press ● [Agree] or PWR to end checking.
- The number of phonebook entries includes secret data.



miniSD Memory Card

Checking available memory status for miniSD Memory Card or FOMA card

- Press i [⇒miniSD]. miniSD Memory Card usage status appears. Press i [UIM] again, for FOMA card usage status.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- Press ● [Agree] or PWR to end checking.

FOMA card

- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- Press ● [Agree] or PWR to end checking.

When Memory is Low or Saved Data is Full

Data and files cannot be saved when memory is low or saved data is full. Saving to miniSD Memory Cards or deleting unnecessary files is recommended.

- If saved data is full, data and file cannot be saved, even if available memory exists. Delete unnecessary data before saving.
- For images, melodies, and i-αppli software, saving can be temporarily suspended to delete unnecessary data or files.
- In stand-by, M or M appears when the FOMA terminal handset's available memory is low or memory is full.

M	Appears when available memory is less than 800 KB.
M	Appears when available memory is less than 100 KB.

Ir Exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive phonebook, schedule, mail, still picture and other data to and from other FOMA terminals which also support infrared communication. In addition, using Ir exchange from i-αppli to operate simultaneously with other devices.

- The FOMA terminal Ir exchange function conforms with IrMC1.1. However, depending on the function, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC1.1.
- During Ir exchange, the FOMA terminal status is the same as when outside the service area. Therefore, functions such as making/receiving calls, i-mode, sending/receiving i-mode mail, sending/receiving SMS, and receiving Message R/F are not available.
- Ir exchange is not available during a call.

When Lock Functions are Set

- Ir exchange is not available while All lock or Self mode is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock is set.
- Data of locked functions cannot be sent or received when PIM is locked. For example, when phonebook PIM is locked, phonebook data cannot be sent or received. However, data can be sent when PIM lock is temporarily disabled.

Using Ir Exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive the following data.

Data that can be sent from the FOMA terminal

Function	Item	All items	Remarks
Phonebook	○	○	Group information and memory numbers are not sent when sending data items individually. Secret phonebook entries cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to ***ON***. Image data, Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED, mail/message LED and Chara-den settings are not sent. Owner Information is sent when sending all phonebook data.
Schedule	○	○	Secret schedules cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to ***ON***. Alarm information other than alarm time, contacts, and image setting information cannot be sent. Data with no end date/time set will be sent with start date/time set as end date/time.
ToDo list	○	○	Secret ToDo list entries cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to ***ON***. When sending all items, data saved as secret data is also sent and saved by the receiver as normal data. For alarm information (contacts, alarm tone, alarm volume, ring duration settings), only alarm time can be sent.
Text memo	○	○	Security memos cannot be sent.
i-mode mail/SMS	○	○	Pasted data, attached files, and protected mail can be sent. Data that cannot be attached, cannot be sent.
Bookmark	○	○	Folder information cannot be sent.
Still pictures, movies, i-motion, melodies in Data box	○	×	Data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or received as i-mode mail attachments, that cannot be redistributed, cannot be sent. Data pre-registered in the FOMA terminal cannot be sent.
Owner Information	○ (not specified)		Saved as phonebook entry by receiver.

Data that can be received by the FOMA terminal

Function	Item	All items	Storage location	Storage order
Phonebook	○	○	Phonebook	When receiving a single data item, smallest available memory number after ***010*** is automatically added. When receiving all phonebook entries, all owner information except own FOMA terminal's phone number is saved in place of the existing owner information. ***No name*** appears for data without name saved.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Function	Item	All items	Storage location	Storage order
Schedule	○	○	Schedule	Saved in order of start date/time.
ToDo list	○	○	ToDo list	Saved in the order of expiration date.
Text memo	○	○	Text memo	Saved in order of last revision date/time.
i-mode mail/SMS	○	○	i-mode mail/SMS	Saved in order of date/time received, sent or saved.
Bookmark	○	○	Bookmark	Saved at the top.
Still pictures, movies, i-motion, melodies in Data box	○	×	My picture, i-motion, Melody of Data box	Each item is saved starting from the top.
Owner Information	○ (not specified)		Owner Information	Saved as phonebook entry.

Note

- Data saved on miniSD Memory Cards cannot be sent or received.
- If overwriting existing data with new data is selected when receiving all the items of a function, all existing data for that function will be deleted.
- Phonebook on the FOMA card cannot be sent or received.
- Sort settings for folders may not be reflected when bookmarks are sent or received, depending on the other party's terminal.

Sending or receiving single phonebook entries

- Received phonebook data is automatically added to the smallest available memory number after ***010***. When no memory number after ***010*** is available, data is added to an available memory number after ***000***.
- Group numbers for all entries are set to ***Not specified***.
- Secret codes are not sent.

Receiving all phonebook entries

- For Receive all, memory number, secret settings, group names and group numbers are also saved.

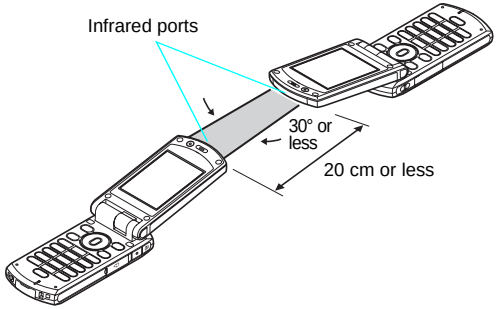
Sending or receiving single mail messages

- For i-mode mail with pasted i-αppli To, the pasted information is deleted and is not sent or received.

Sending or receiving pictographs

- For functions which pictographs can be saved, pictographs can be sent and received. However, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

Precautions for using the Ir exchange function



- Place the FOMA terminals to send and receive on a desk or other stable surface, no more than 20 cm apart. Align the FOMA terminals with their infrared ports facing each other as shown above.
- When data is received, ***Save ○○○?*** appears on the receiving FOMA terminal. Keep the terminal's infrared ports facing each other and do not move the terminals until ***Yes*** or ***No*** is selected.
- Keep the terminal's infrared ports facing each other and do not move the terminals, until all data is sent and received.
- Ir exchange may not function properly directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.
- If either of the infrared ports are dirty, Ir exchange will become difficult. Take care not to scratch the ports, and wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- When Ir exchange could not be performed properly, the following messages appear.
  Authentication failed. Retry?
  No response. Retry?
  If these messages appear, select ***Yes*** to try again.
- If Ir exchange fails, move the FOMA terminals close and try again.
- Images sent by Ir exchange may deteriorate in image quality or may have different file sizes.
- Depending on the receiving terminal, even when titles 19 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters or more are sent, only up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters can be received.

Authentication Password

Terminal security code and authentication password entry are required for sending or receiving all data items.

- For terminal security code, enter current security code (four to eight digits) set in the FOMA terminal.
- Authentication password is a password exclusively for Ir exchange. Before starting data transfer, the sender and receiver must enter the same user-specified four-digit password. This password can be changed for each Ir exchange operation.

Sending and Receiving Data Individually

Use Ir exchange to send/receive data individually on the FOMA terminal.

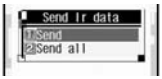
- Refer to P. 388 for details on data that can be sent and received.

Sending Single Data Item <Send Ir Data>

Send one data item, operating from the list screen or details screen of data to send.

Example: When sending phonebook entry

1 In phonebook list (☞P. 104) or details screen (☞P. 105), select data, press ●, select *Send Ir data* and press ●.



- Operation can be performed using sub menu numbers, however, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.

2 Set receiving FOMA terminal to receive single data item, press 1, select *Yes* and press ● [Send].

- Data sending begins.
- When completed, ***Exchange completed*** appears, and the previous screen reappears.

Receiving Single Data Item <Receive Ir Data>

Receive one data item, operating from the Ir data receiving screen.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 2 1, select *Yes* and press ●.

When phonebook is received

- Alternatively, select ● (Tools) → ***Receive Ir data*** → ***Receive*** from Top menu.
- The terminal waits to receive data. Data is automatically received when data is sent within 30 seconds.
- When receiving is completed, a confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

When received bookmark is identical to existing bookmark

- ***The same URL is saved. Overwrite?*** appears.
- To overwrite current data, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

To not save received data

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Sending and Receiving All Data Items

Use Ir exchange to send/receive all data items on the FOMA terminal.

- Refer to P. 388 for details on data that can be sent and received.

Sending All Data Items <Send All Ir Data>

Operate from the list screen of data to send.

Example: When sending phonebook entries

1 In phonebook list (☞P. 104), press ●, select *Send Ir data* and press ●.

- Operation can be performed using sub menu numbers, however, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.
- Send Ir data screen appears.

2 Press 2 カ ABC [Send all].

- Terminal security code entry screen appears.

3 Ready receiving FOMA terminal to receive all data items, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Authentication password entry screen appears.

4 Enter authentication password (four digits), select *Yes* and press ●.

- If entered authentication password matches authentication password entered by receiver, data sending begins.
- When completed, ***Exchange completed*** appears, and the previous screen reappears.

Note

- When all bookmarks are received, they appear on the receiver's bookmark list in the order used, starting from the oldest.
- When sending all schedules, operate from Show all schedules or Calendar display.

Receiving All Data Items <Receive All Ir Data>

Receive all data items using Ir exchange, operating from the Ir data receiving screen.

- To receive all data items, terminal security code and authentication password entry are required.
- When all data items are received, saved data will be overwritten.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 や TUV 2 カ ABC 2 カ ABC, select *Yes* and press ●.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***Receive Ir data*** → ***Receive all*** from Top menu.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears.

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Ready sender's FOMA terminal to send all data.

- Remember the authentication password entered in the sender's FOMA.
- Authentication password entry screen appears.

4 Enter the same authentication password (four digits) entered on sender's FOMA terminal.

- Data is automatically received when data is sent from the other FOMA terminal within 30 seconds.
- To cancel Receive all after entering authentication password, press ● [Cancel].

5 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not overwrite

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- When all bookmarks are received, they appear in the order used, starting from the oldest.

Using Ir Exchange with i-αppli Software

Use the Ir exchange function (☞P. 388) from running software. Activating i-αppli from Ir exchange is also possible.

- While in Self mode, Ir exchange is not available.
- While i-αppli PIM is locked, i-αppli will not activate.

Activating Ir Exchange from i-αppli

1 While running software, start Ir exchange.

- Procedures for starting Ir exchange differ, depending on the software.
- Send Ir data confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Ir exchange begins.

To cancel operation

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

To cancel Ir exchange

- While ***Exchanging data*** appears, select ***Cancel*** and press ●.

Activating i-αppli from Ir Exchange

During Ir exchange, if a signal to start i-αppli is received from devices supporting infrared communication, software can be activated.

- When i-αppli To is set to ***No***, i-αppli will not activate from Ir exchange.
- Cannot be activated as an i-αppli stand-by.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 2 ABC 1 あ.

- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Refer to step 1 of "Receiving Single Data Item <Receive Ir Data>" on P. 390 .

2 Software is activated when signal is received from the sender's FOMA terminal.

Note

- If applicable software is not installed in the i-αppli startup setting, ***No requested software*** appears.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

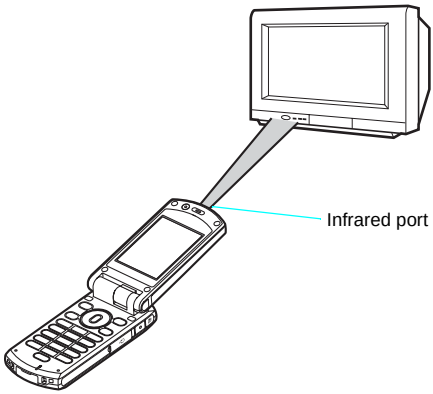
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

Use the FOMA terminal's Infrared port from i-αppli software to operate equipment supporting remote control such as TVs and VCRs.

- Requires compatible i-αppli software. (Pre-registered software such as Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control), supports the Ir remote control function.)
- While in Self mode, the Ir remote control function cannot be used.

Remote Control Operation

Start i-αppli software that supports Ir remote control functions, point the FOMA terminal's Ir port to the front of the remote control sensor on the TV, VCR or other device to operate, and perform remote control operations.



- Actual operational methods will differ with each i-αppli software application. Refer to P. 315 or the separate "FOMA SH700i ｉアプリのご紹介" (FOMA SH700i i-αppli User's Guide) for details on Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control).
- Control devices from a distance of up to approximately 4 meters. (Distance will vary depending on the device, the ambient brightness and other factors.)
- flashes when an Ir remote control signal is being sent.

Note

- Depending on the device, proper operation may not be possible.
- Proper remote control maybe not be possible directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.

Using the FOMA Terminal as a Voice Recorder

Use the FOMA terminal as a voice recorder.
Voice recorder uses the movie shooting function and saves movie data with *Voice only* (= no image).
miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

- Save up to a combined total of 200 recordings and i-motion in ***Camera*** folder in i-motion of Data box. (Actual number varies depending on recording time.)
  - ■ Save up to 100 recordings in the ***Music/Voice*** folder of miniSD Memory Card. Recordings are saved as voice only movies. (Actual number varies depending on recording time.)
- Record up to approximately five minutes per recording, when saving to FOMA terminal handset. Record up to approximately five hours when saving to 32 MB miniSD Memory Card.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- Play back recorded voice or audio with Video player (☞P. 346).
- Recorded data is saved as a redistributable file.
- Recording within a distance of 1.5 meters is recommended.
- The default setting for save destination is ***Camera*** folder in i-motion of Data box on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Set Retain settings to ***ON*** to retain set values.

Recording

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 1 .

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***Voice recorder*** from Top menu.
- Voice recorder activates.

2 Press ●.

- Recording begins.
- When recording starts, the shutter sounds and the picture light automatically flashes. The picture light automatically turns off when recording ends. (Picture light cannot be turned off during recording.)

3 To stop recording, press ●.

- The save screen appears.
- Recording stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads 00:00:00 (recording file size reaches limit or miniSD Memory Card has no available space).

4 Press 1 [Save].

- Recorded audio is saved in the ***Camera*** folder in i-motion of Data box.

To play back recorded voice

- Press 2 ABC. To pause playback, press ● [Pause]. To stop playback, press [Stop]. Press CLR and the previous screen reappears.

To create i-mode mail with recorded voice attachments

- Press [Mail]. Refer to P. 251 for details on creating i-mode mail.

To not save

- Press 3 DEF, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

When a save destination is specified

- Movies are saved to the specified folder. (☞P. 187)

When saving to the FOMA terminal handset and there is no available space

- Delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (☞P. 384)

Note

- Even if the FOMA terminal is closed during recording, recording continues and ***Recording*** appears in the sub display.
- When voice/video-phone calls are received during recording, recording automatically stops and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the save confirmation screen appears.
- Play back recorded audio with Video player. In i-motion screen, select ***Camera*** (for FOMA terminal handset) or ***Music/Voice*** (for miniSD Memory Card). (☞P. 349)
- When File size limit is set to ***Unrestricted***, file cannot be attached to i-mode mail.

Changing Settings for Voice Recorder

The following settings can be made for Voice recorder. Refer to section on shooting movies for details.

Data box		Displays file from specified save folder.
Auto timer		Set recording to start in ***2 seconds***, ***5 seconds***, or ***10 seconds*** when set to ***ON***. (☞P. 180)
File size limit		When saving to miniSD Memory Card, set to either ***For mail (short)***, ***For mail (long)***, or ***Unrestricted***. When saving to the FOMA terminal handset, set to either ***For mail (short)*** or ***For mail (long)***. (☞P. 179)
Recorder	Noise reduction	Set to reduce noise. (Default setting: ***ON***) (☞P. 183)
	Save to	When saving to FOMA terminal handset, sets save destination folder. (☞P. 187)
	Retain settings	When set to ***ON***, Voice recorder settings can be stored (Default setting: ***ON***) (☞P. 189).
	Set ON time	Set time backlight illuminates when recording. (☞P. 183)
Switch main⇔SD		Switch save to destination. (☞P. 186)

Related Operations

Open Data box <Data box>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 1 ▶ ● 2.

Set Auto timer <Auto timer>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 1 ▶ ● 3.

2 Press 1.

- To change the time for Auto timer: Press 3 ▶ time ▶ ●.
- To cancel: Press 2.

Set File size limit <File size limit>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 1 ▶ ● 6 ▶ file size ▶ ●.

Set Noise reduction <Noise reduction>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 1 ▶ ● 8 1.

2 Press 1.

- To not set: Press 2.

Set Save to <Save to>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 1 ▶ ● 8 2 ▶ folder ▶ ●.

Set Retain settings <Retain settings>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 1 ▶ ● 8 3.

2 Press 1.

- To not set: Press 2.

Set lit duration <Set ON time>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 1 ▶ ● 8 5.

2 Press 2 [Always ON].

- To use light setting: Press 1 [As light setting].

Switch save destination <Switch main⇔SD >

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 1 ▶ ● #.

Displaying e-Dictionary and Book

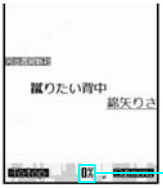
An e-dictionary/book saved on a miniSD Memory Card can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

- Books/Dictionaries (extensions) that can be displayed: XMDF format (.zbf), TEXT format (.zbk, .txt, .text)
- Place file to browse in ¥BOOK folder of the miniSD Memory Card in advance. (☞P. 372)
- Supportbook is preset on the FOMA terminal handset.
- To use e-dictionary/book, insert miniSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary/book into FOMA terminal miniSD Memory Card slot in advance. When using Supportbook (preset), miniSD Memory Card need not be inserted.
- Depending on the book/dictionary, voice or images may be included in the data. Voices cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. In some cases, images may not be viewed either.

1 In stand-by, press ●5WXYZ.

- Alternatively, select (KEITAIViewer) from Top menu.
- Alternatively, select (Tools)→ ***miniSD manager*** → ***View miniSD data*** → ***KEITAIViewer*** from Top menu.
- The e-Book list appears.
- In previous browse, if PWR/HOLD or CLR was pressed for 1+ seconds to end, the page displayed at time of termination appears.

2 Select book/dictionary and press ●.



Details screen
(Horizontal screen)

To move a line in horizontal screen
- Press 0.

To display next page in horizontal screen
- Press 1 or 0.

To display previous page in horizontal screen
- Press 3 or 0.

To jump to first page
- Press [To top] or 4GHI.

To return to e-Book list
- Press CLR or *.

Approximate position of current page, in respect to total pages, is shown (percentage).

Details screen
(Vertical screen)

To move a line in vertical screen
- Press 0.

To display next page in vertical screen
- Press 3 or 0.

To display previous page in vertical screen
- Press 1 or 0.

To jump to first page
- Press [To top] or 4GHI.

To return to e-Book list
- Press CLR or *.

Note

- “蹴りたい背中” (Keritai Senaka) by Lisa Wataya © provided by ザウルスセレクト文庫 (Zaurus Select Library)/河出書房新社 (Kawade Shobo Shinsha Publishers).
- Screens shown are samples.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Displaying history

Display previous pages in order

- When there is no history, ***Back*** and ***Next*** do not appear.

To display pages viewed, in order backwards

- Press [Back].

To display pages viewed, in order

- Press and press [Next] again.

Note

- When or is pressed for 1+ seconds to end KEITAIViewer, the next time KEITAIViewer is activated, the page displayed at time of termination automatically appears. However, page does not appear when file displayed at time of KEITAIViewer termination is not saved on re-inserted miniSD Memory Card or when activated from Character reader. Page also does not appear if Supportbook is opened from stand-by. (In such cases, the next time KEITAIViewer are activated, the page displayed at the time of termination before activating Supportbook appears. If book is not opened, e-Book list appears.)
- Depending on the book/dictionary, a password may be required. Enter password (up to 16 digits) and press .
- For certain data, information to move to other pages may be contained. Select character string or image with the information and press to move to the specified page. Press [Back] to return to previous screen.
- Up to of 400 files can be viewed in file list.
- “家庭の医学” (Katei no Igaku) © 2004 Jiji Press Publication Services, Inc.
- Screens shown are samples.

Using Assistant View

- Press while composing message to use KEITAIViewer. (☞P. 406)

Related Operations

Switch folders <Switch folder>

1 In the e-Book list (☞P. 396) in step 1 of “Displaying e-Dictionary and Book”, press ▶ folder ▶ .

Note

Switching display folders

- Display folder with book contained for XMDF format books used on mobile information devices or non-FOMA terminals.
- Depending on mobile device used, folder may not be displayed.

Operating the contents screen

Use book/dictionary contents screen in the following ways.

Insert bookmark	Marks the page being viewed. Up to two (up to ten books) marks can be set for one book/dictionary.
Move to bookmark	Displays page marked previously.
Table of contents	When table of contents is available for data, displays page from table of contents.
To top	Displays top of page.
To end	Displays end of page.
Set % move	Displays page according to percentage specified.
Copy	Copies character string from book/dictionary. Can be pasted to other screens. Up to 20 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters can be copied at once.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Display settings	Font size	Sets font size of book/dictionary to ***Large font***, ***Default*** or ***Small font***. (Default setting: ***Default***)
	Text direction	Sets the screen to display horizontally or vertically. (Default setting: ***Vertical***)
	Ruby text	Sets whether to show ruby text (reading of kanji). (Default setting: ***OFF***)
List		The e-Book list appears.

Vertical screen

Horizontal screen

Ruby text ***ON***

Related Operations

Insert Bookmark <Insert bookmark>

1 In the details screen (☞P. 396), press ● 1.

2 Press 1 [Bookmark 1].

- To set Bookmark 2: Press 2.

Move to Bookmark <Move to bookmark>

1 In the details screen (☞P. 396), press ● 2 ▶ bookmark ▶ ●.

Display from table of contents <Table of contents>

1 In the details screen (☞P. 396), press ● 3 ▶ item ▶ ●.

Jump to end page <To end>

1 In the details screen (☞P. 396), press ● 5.

Move to a page by specifying percentage <Set % move>

1 In the details screen (☞P. 396), press ● 6 ▶ enter percentage (two digits: 00 to 99 percent) ▶ ●.

Copy characters <Copy>

1 In the details screen (☞P. 396), press ● 7 ▶ first character ▶ ● [Start] ▶ last character ▶ ● [Copy].

Change Font Size <Font size>

1 In the details screen (☞P. 396), press ● 9 1 ▶ font size ▶ ●.

Switch between vertical/horizontal display <Text direction>

1 In the details screen (☞P. 396), press ● 9 2.

2 Press 1.

- To set vertical display: Press 2.

Set whether to show ruby text (reading) <Ruby text>

1 In the details screen (☞P. 396), press ● 9 3.

2 Press 1.

- To not set: Press 2.

Display e-Book list <List>

1 In the details screen (☞P. 396), press ● ✕.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Note

Bookmarks

- When a bookmark is set for the 11th book or dictionary, the oldest bookmark is automatically deleted.
- When KEITAIViewer ends, last page displayed is automatically set as ***Auto bookmark 1***. The next time the same book/dictionary is displayed and ended, the last page viewed is set as ***Auto bookmark 1*** and the previously set ***Auto bookmark 1*** is reset to ***Auto bookmark 2***. (Auto bookmarks can be set for up to a combined total of ten books and dictionaries and are automatically deleted from oldest.)
- ***Auto bookmark*** cannot be set when battery pack is removed.
- When view is pressed in stand-by to activate Supportbook (preset), the first page appears instead of ***Auto bookmark***.

Copying

- Scanned text is discarded when the power is turned off.
- Certain characters cannot be copied.
- Masked characters, ruby text, and external characters cannot be copied.

Display settings

- Depending on the data, switching display may not be possible, or the display setting for the book/dictionary may be specified.
- Supportbook (preset) cannot be switched between vertical/horizontal display.

Ruby text

- For book/dictionary with no ruby text settings, readings are not available.

Using Supportbook (Help)

1 In stand-by, press view.

- Alternatively, select (KEITAIViewer) → ***Supportbook (preset)*** from Top menu.
- Press view during a voice call or while composing message to use Supportbook (preset). (☞P. 35)

Searching in dictionary

Operations for dictionary and book are the same. Explanations below use the dictionary as an example.

- Text read with Character reader can be looked up in the dictionary as well. (☞P. 401)
- Insert miniSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary before performing a search.

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 WXYZ, select dictionary and press ●.

To read text with Character reader

- Press 📷 5 TUV. (☞P. 193)

2 Select input field, press ●, enter word and press ●.

- Enter up to 255 single-byte characters.
- The search results appear.
- When the character string is not applicable, ***Not found*** appears.

3 Select word and press ●.

- Contents appear.

Using the Information in Book/Dictionary

Functions such as moving from book/dictionary to another page, using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, executing movies, saving still pictures, masking character strings are available. (supported pages only)

- Insert miniSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary/book before performing operations.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To

Use information (such as phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs) highlighted in book/dictionary, or images embedded with Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To functions to easily make calls, send mail, or view sites and Internet web pages. (☞P. 224)

1 In stand-by, press ● 9WXYZ, select book/dictionary and press ●.

- The screen with contents appears.

2 Select phone number, mail address, or URL and press ●.

- Confirmation screen appears.

When set in images

- Select image and press ●.

When *Save to My pic* is set in image

- Press ● 1 [Move to link].

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

When Phone To (AV Phone To) function is set

- For Video-phone, check the phone number and press ⓕ [V-phone].
- For voice call, check the phone number and press ● [Phone].

When Mail To function is set

- Compose message screen with mail address already entered appears.

When Web To function is set

- Connection starts, and site or Internet web page appears.

Note

- In some cases, even if phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed, making calls, sending messages, and displaying sites may not be possible.

Jumping to the linked site

When a link for another page is set for a character string or image, that page can be displayed.

1 In details screen for step 1 of “Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To”, select text or images with links and press ●.

- The linked site appears.

Playing back movies

Movies can be played back when information to execute movie is set in the image.

1 In the details screen in step 1 of “Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To”, select image and press ●.

When playback does not start

- Press ● 1 [Run movie].

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Mask character strings and images <Mask>

1 In the details screen in step 1 of "Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To", select text/image ▶ ●.

- To display masked character string/image: Select character string/image ▶ ●.
- When ***Save to My pic*** is set in image: Select image ▶ ● 1 [Switch mask].

Saving Images in Book/Dictionary

Images can be set to the stand-by display (☞P. 170) when still pictures displayed in book/dictionary are saved in My picture. (☞P. 122)

- Some images, such as those in PNG format, cannot be saved.
- Image is saved in the ***Camera*** folder in My picture. (☞P. 170)
- Save up to 700 images. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.
- All images are saved as having copyrights. Images cannot be saved on miniSD Memory Cards, nor attached to mail.

1 In details screen for step 1 of "Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To", select still picture and press ●.

- Menu screen appears.

2 Select *Save to My pic* and press ●.

- Saved in My picture.

Character Reader

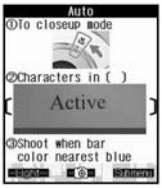
Searching Using the Camera to Read Text

Perform search by shooting English word with the FOMA terminal while e-dictionary is displayed.

- Insert miniSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary before performing a search.
- Refer to "Reading Text " on P. 193 for details.

Example: When searching in English-Japanese dictionary

1 In details screen for step 1 of "■ Searching in dictionary" on P. 399, press 📷 8TUV.



- Camera is activated, and the character reader screen appears.

2 Display text to be read in the center of the screen. (☞P. 193)

- Candidates appear.

3 Press ●.

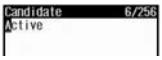
- Text is shot as a still picture and appears on the display.

For multiple lines of text

- Press ⊙ to specify the line to read. (Text is read one line at a time.)

Continued on next page ▶▶

4 Press ● [Read].



- Character reading starts.
- When reading is complete, candidates screen appears with read text.

5 Select word and press ●.

- Contents appear.

Managing Book/Dictionary

Delete book/dictionary files, rename them or view their properties.

Deleting book/dictionary

Use one of the following to delete book/dictionary.

- Preset Supportbook cannot be deleted.

Delete one	Delete files individually.
All in folder	Delete all files in a folder.
Delete selected	Delete multiple selected files collectively. Select up to 50 entries.

File properties

The following information is shown.

- In XMDF format (.zbf), for the e-Book list, title, file name, author, publisher, and file size appear. For the contents screen, series, title, subtitle, file name, author, publisher, brief, distribution date/time, file size and distribution date/time stamping information appear. (Information listed does not appear if not saved in e-Dictionary/Book.)
- In TEXT format (.zbk, .txt, .text), information other than file name and file size appear as blanks in the e-Book.

Related Operations

Delete a book/dictionary <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press ● 9wxyz ▶ book/dictionary ▶ 📷 2abc.

2 Press 1あ/@.

- To delete all books/dictionaries in a folder: Press 2abc ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
- To delete multiple book/dictionary collectively: Press 3def ▶ book/dictionary ▶ ● (repeat) ▶ i [Complete].

3 Select *Yes* ▶ ●.

- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Edit file names <Edit file name>

1 In stand-by, press ● 9wxyz ▶ book/dictionary ▶ 📷 1あ/@ ▶ enter file name ▶ ●.

View detailed information <File property>

1 In stand-by, press ● 9wxyz ▶ book/dictionary ▶ ● ▶ 📷 0わ/N.

- To view from e-Book list: Press 📷 3def.
- To end viewing: Press ● [Agree].

Note

Editing file names

- Preset Supportbook file names cannot be changed.
- Enter up to 218 single-byte (109 double-byte) characters for a file name.
- File names up to eight single-byte characters and their extensions may be changed from lower to upper case.

File properties

- File properties for preset Supportbooks are not available.
- File names appear with their extensions.

Other Useful Functions

- Checking Settings . . . . . <Check Settings>404
- Multiaccess. . . . . <Multiaccess>404
- Using Assistant View . . . . . <Assistant View>406
- Turning Power On Automatically . . . . . <Auto Power ON>407
- Turning Power Off Automatically . . . . . <Auto Power OFF>408
- Sounding Alarm after Set Time Passes . . . . . <Timer>409
- Sounding Alarm at Set Time . . . . . <Alarm>410
- Saving ToDo Lists . . . . . <ToDo List>413
- Saving Schedules. . . . . <Save Schedule>418
- Accessing Functions Quickly . . . . . <Shortcut Menu>431
- Saving Own Name and Image . . . . . <Owner Information>434
- Recording Other's Voice During Call or Own Voice in Stand-by . . . . . <Voice Memo (During Call)/Voice Memo (Stand-by)>436
- Using as Calculator . . . . . <Calculator>437
- Adding Monetary Amounts. . . . . <Money Calculator>439
- Displaying the Call Duration/Charge . . . . . <Talk Time/Charge>442
- Entering Memos . . . . . <Text Memo>443
- Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch. . . . . <Earphone/Microphone with Switch>445
- Answering Calls Automatically with Earphone . . . . . <Auto Answer Set> 447
- Resetting Settings . . . . . <Reset Settings>448
- Deleting All Saved Data . . . . . <Delete User Data>448

Checking Settings

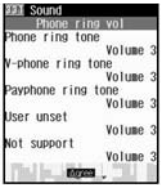
Check settings for various functions.

- Check the following functions.
  Sound, display, General settings, Phone settings, security, i-mode, mail/message, i-αppli

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF 3 DEF, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Check settings*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

2 Press 1 [Sound].



- ***Sound*** settings appear.
- Press ● [Agree] and the previous screen reappears.

To check *Display*

- Press 2 ABC.

To check *General settings*

- Press 3 DEF.

To check *Phone settings*

- Press 4 GHI.

To check *Security*

- Press 5 JKL.

To check *i-mode*

- Press 6 MNO.

To check *Mail/Message*

- Press 7 PQRS.

To check *i-αppli*

- Press 8 TUV.

Multiaccess

Use voice communications and some packet transmissions (receiving i-mode mail or data communications with a PC) simultaneously with the FOMA terminal. This is called Multiaccess.

- Receive SMS voice calls and other data exchanges.
- Other packet transmissions (i-mode and sending i-mode mail) are not available during voice calls.

Multiaccess Compatibility

Refer to “Multiaccess Combinations” on P. 546 for the main combinations of transmission functions available for simultaneous use on the FOMA terminal.

Main Features of Multiaccess

Receive i-mode mail or SMS during voice calls. Use Assistant View (☞P. 406) to view mail while in voice call.

Receiving i-mode Mail or SMS During Calls

Receive i-mode mail or SMS during voice calls, and receive SMS in the progress screen during video-phone calls. Use Assistant View to read i-mode mail or SMS during a voice call.

- i-mode mail is not received during video-phone call and is held at i-mode center.

1 Receive i-mode mail or SMS during a voice call.

- ✉ or SMS appears on the display.
- Continue the call and read i-mode mail or SMS afterwards.

2 During call, press view to read i-mode mail or SMS.

- Refer to P. 406 and P. 407 for instructions on Assistant View.

To return to the call in progress screen

- Press view.

3 Select *Mail*, press ●, select *Inbox* and press ●.

- Inbox list appears.

4 Select folder, press ●, select mail and press ●.

To return to the call in progress screen

- Press view.

Making a Call During i-mode

Phone To (AV Phone To) is available while in i-mode.

1 Select phone number from sites or Internet web pages and press ●.

2 Select *Yes*, press ● and press 📞 or ● [Phone].

- Number is dialed while connected to i-mode.
- i-mode is disconnected when dialing video-phone.

3 Press PWR after call.

- The site or Internet web page reappears.

Using Assistant View

Checking Other Data During Voice Call and Other Functions

Check or copy other data during voice call and other functions. Check schedule or phonebook during voice call or use mail address or phone number from phonebook while composing message.

- Use Assistant View to check messages, phonebook, calculator, schedule, ToDo list, text memo, Supportbook (preset), KEITAIViewer and Money calculator. (Some functions are not fully compatible.)
  Assistant View is not available when Assistant View is active.
- When another function is activated from Assistant View, Assistant View icon corresponding to the original function flashes. (☞P. 29)
- Check data or copy items (text) from active functions. Editing and deleting are not available. Sorting mail and searching phonebook are available.
- Assistant View is not available when using i-mode (flashes), recording Record message (voice calls), making video-phone calls, recording Record message (video-phone calls), playing Record message/Voice memo or during Ir exchange.
- Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To are not available when activated.

Assistant View combinations

		Mail	Phone-book	Schedule	ToDo list	Text memo	Calculator	Support-book	KEITAI Viewer	Money calculator
Original function	Voice call	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*1	○
	i-mode	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	i-mode mail/ SMS	○*2	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Phonebook	○	—	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Schedule	○	○	—	×	○	○	○	○	○
	ToDo list	○	○	×	—	○	○	○	○	○
	Text memo	○	○	○	○	—	○	○	○	○

○: Available ×: Not available —: Same function

*1 miniSD Memory Card cannot be accessed.

*2 Not available during Chat mail.

Note

- When connecting to URL read with Bar code reader or Character reader, Assistant View may not be available during i-mode. Bookmark URL and connect using bookmark. (☞P. 216)

1 Press (view) during voice call or while using other functions.

- Compatible functions appear. (Functions in gray are not available.)
- When Assistant View is not available, nothing appears when (view) is pressed.
- Cursor appears on last selected function.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

2 Select function and press ●.

- Move cursor with ◎.
- Selected function activates. Some functions are limited.
- Refer to the corresponding page for details on each function.

To copy phonebook entries

- Select data to copy from phonebook details screen and press ○ 3 DEF. Refer to P. 521 for details on pasting.

To copy text memo

- Select memo to copy and press ● twice. Refer to P. 520 for subsequent steps. Refer to P. 521 for details on pasting data.

When a voice/video-phone call or mail is received while using Assistant View from i-mode, phonebook, schedule, ToDo list or Text memo

- Assistant View ends and incoming call screen appears. After call, screen before activating Assistant View reappears.
- When i-mode mail or SMS is received, ✉ or SMS appears. Check mail with Assistant View.

3 Press view to end Assistant View.

- Previous screen reappears.
- Alternatively, press ☎ PWR.

Auto Power ON

Turning Power On Automatically

Default setting
OFF (Disabled)

Turn FOMA terminal On automatically at a specified time.

- Auto power ON settings are repeated daily until canceled.
- Set date and time in advance. (☞P. 46)
- Disable Auto power ON before turning the handset off when near high precision instruments, aboard aircraft, in hospitals or in other locations where use is prohibited.

The default setting is ***OFF*** (disabled), ***Silver Bow*** for Alarm tone and ***Volume 3*** for volume.

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF 7 PQRS 1 .@.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Auto power ON/OFF*** → ***Auto power ON*** from Top menu.
- The auto power on screen appears.

2 Press 1 .@, enter Auto power ON time (four digits) and press ●.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with ◎.
- Alarm setting screen appears.

To disable

- Press 2 ABC.

3 Press 1 .@ [ON: sound alarm].

- ***Alarm does not sound until PIN1 code is entered if Set PIN1 code is ON*** appears.

To not sound alarm at activation

- Press 2 ABC.

4 Press ●.

- Folder list for Melody of Data box appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

5 Select folder, press ●, select alarm tone and press [OK].

- Adjust alarm tone screen appears.

To preview alarm tone

- Before pressing [OK], press [Agree]. Press [Stop] to stop playback.

6 Press 0 (louder) or 9 (softer) to adjust the volume and press ●.

- Auto power ON is set.

When the set time arrives

Power automatically turns on and ***Auto power ON It's time*** appears.

- Message also appears when power is on.
- If PIN code input set (☞P. 142) is set to ***ON***, PIN code entry screen appears. After PIN code is entered, ***Auto power ON It's time*** appears.
- Alarm sounds for approximately 30 seconds if set. Press a key to stop.
- If in a call or receiving a call, alarm sounds after returning to stand-by. If phonebook or other function is in use, alarm sounds when the call is ended, phonebook is exited and the FOMA returns to stand-by.

Note

- If Auto power ON and alarm (or schedule alarm) are set for the same time, Auto power ON operates first.
- If Auto power ON and Auto power OFF are set for the same time, power turns off if FOMA terminal is on and turns on if off.
- When power is turned off at time set for alarm (or schedule alarm), the alarm will not sound.

Auto Power OFF

Turning Power Off Automatically

Default setting
OFF (Disabled)

Turn FOMA terminal Off automatically at a specified time.

- Auto power OFF settings are repeated daily until canceled.
- Set date and time in advance. (☞P. 46)

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF 7 PQRS 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Auto power ON/OFF*** → ***Auto power OFF*** from Top menu.
- The Auto power OFF screen appears.

2 Press 1, enter Auto power OFF time (four digits) and press ●.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with 10.
- The Auto power OFF is set.

To disable

- Press 2 ABC.

When the set time arrives

If other operations are performed at set time (i.e. not in stand-by: i-mode, Mail, Alarm (ringing), Calculator, Timer, Melody player, Continuous play/Slideshow/ Full-screen of Data box), the screen at right appears. Select ***Yes*** or wait for approximately one minute. Handset turns off.
Select ***No*** to continue operations.
(Stand-by reappears when in Normal menu list.)

- If in a call, the screen at right appears after ending call and returning to stand-by.
- If software is being updated (☞P. 559), the confirmation screen on the right appears after software update is completed and returning to stand-by.

- Even when FOMA terminal is closed, ***Auto power OFF*** appears in the sub display if other operations are performed at the set time. Press [○] ([🎥]) to scroll.

Note

- If Auto power OFF and alarm (or schedule alarm) are set for the same time, handset turns off and alarm does not sound. (If handset is restarted immediately or ***No*** is selected in the confirmation screen, alarm sounds after returning to stand-by.)
- Handset does not turn off at set Auto power OFF time if i-αppli is running. Confirmation screen appears after returning to stand-by. Wait for power to turn off.
- If set time arrives during Ir exchange, Auto power OFF is invalidated. (Confirmation screen (☞P. 408) appears when returned to stand-by.)
- If Auto power ON and Auto power OFF are set for the same time, power turns off if FOMA terminal is on and turns on if off.

Timer

Sounding Alarm after Set Time Passes

Sound an alarm after a set amount of time passes.

- Alarm sounds for approximately 15 seconds. Press a key to stop.
- If Vibration mode (☞P. 117) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

1 In stand-by, press ● [8 TUV] [6 MNO].

- Alternatively, select [📷] (Tools) → ***Timer*** from Top menu.
- Time entry screen appears.

2 Enter time and press ● [Start].

9 minutes
58 seconds ➡***09:58***

- The two digits on the left are minutes and the two on the right are seconds.
- Set between 1 second and 99 minutes 59 seconds.
- Timer begins.
- To stop, press ● [Stop]. Press ● to start again. Press [i] [Reset] to reset to ***3 minutes***.

To disable Timer

- Press [PWR].

Note

- Optionally change alarm tone (☞P. 114) and volume (☞P. 116).
- Timer continues when mail is received but stops when a call is received.
- Timer ends if power is turned off.

Related Operations

Use timer from stand-by

1 In stand-by, enter time (1 to 99 minutes) ▶ ● [4 GHI].

Sounding Alarm at Set Time

Sound an alarm or activate movie/i-motion at the set time/date.

- Set date and time in advance. (☞P. 46)
- Save up to ten. Alarms are repeated until disabled.
- If Vibration mode (☞P. 117) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

Setting Alarms

Default setting
See below

Basic setting methods for alarm date and day are described below.

- Also change alarm volume, tone, displayed message or phone number. (☞P. 411)

The default setting is 着信音1 for Alarm tone, ***Volume 3*** for Alarm volume, ***OFF*** for Snooze setting and ***15 seconds*** for Ring duration.

Message	Show messages when alarm operates. Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters.
Contacts	Show phone numbers when alarm operates. Make calls when alarm operates (☞P. 412).
Alarm tone	Change alarm tone. Movie/i-motion are available.
Alarm volume	Set the volume.
Snooze setting	Set the number of times to ring alarm and its interval.
Ring duration	Set the duration to sound alarm.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 5 JKL, select slot and press ●.

Alarm setting screen

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***Alarm*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 [Enter time], enter alarm time (four digits) and press ●.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with ●.

3 Press 2 and 3 [Daily].

To specify day

- Press 2 2, select day and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected dates. Press ● to switch. Select all dates to set and press [Complete].
- If a check is placed in ***Exclude holidays***, alarm does not activate on vacation days, holidays and observed holidays.

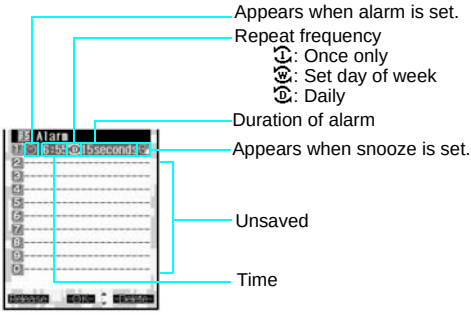
To sound alarm once

- Press 2 1. Setting is disabled after activation.

4 Press (i) [Complete].

- Alarm is set.

Setting details



- Press PWR to end setting. (appears in stand-by display)

Note

- If Alarm and schedule alarm are set for the same time, Alarm operates first.
- Same day (next day if time has passed) and one-time alarms can also be easily set (Quick alarm).
- If a GIF animation or Flash movie is set as stand-by, does not appear until animation ends.

Related Operations

Set alarm from the stand-by <Quick alarm>

1 **In stand-by ▶ enter time (ex. 2:05 PM: *1405*) ▶ ● 3 DEF.**
2 **Select *Yes* ▶ ●.**
- To not delete: Press ***No*** ▶ ●.

Open messages <Message>

1 **In the alarm setting screen (☞P. 410), press 3 DEF ▶ enter message ▶ ●.**

Display contacts <Contacts>

1 **In the alarm setting screen (☞P. 410), press 4 GHI.**
2 **Press 1 ▶ name ▶ ●.**
- To enter directly: Press 2 ABC ▶ phone number ▶ ●.

Change alarm tone <Alarm tone>

1 **In the alarm setting screen (☞P. 410), press 5 JKL.**
2 **Press 1.**
- To set movie/i-motion: Press 2 ABC.
- To not set: Press 3 DEF.

3 **Select folder ▶ alarm tone ▶ (i) [OK].**
- To check alarm tone: Select alarm tone ▶ ● [Agree] (stop with (i)).
- To check movie/i-motion: Select movie/i-motion ▶ ● [Agree] (stop with (i)).

Change alarm volume <Alarm volume>

1 **In the alarm setting screen (☞P. 410), press 6 MNO.**
2 **Press 0 (louder) or 0 (softer) ▶ ●.**
- To not sound alarm: Select ***Silent***

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Set number of times and interval of alarm <Snooze setting>

1 **In the alarm setting screen (☞P. 410), press 7 PQRS.**
2 **Press 1 .@/&.**
- To disable: Press 2 ABC.

3 **Enter interval (two digits: 02 to 15 minutes) ▶ ● ▶ enter number of repetitions (two to six) ▶ ●.**

Change ring duration <Ring duration>

1 **In the alarm setting screen (☞P. 410), press 8 TUV ▶ enter ring duration (02 to 99 seconds) ▶ ●.**

Note

Setting alarms from stand-by (Quick alarm)
- The alarm set is saved as a ***Quick alarm*** in Schedule, with ***No category***, for the Current day (the following day if set time has passed).

Contacts
- Contacts cannot be entered while Keypad dial lock (☞P. 151) is set.
- Terminal security code (four to eight digits) is required to use Phonebook when phonebook PIM is locked (☞P. 150).

Setting alarm tone
- During New manager info, melodies and movies/i-motion are not available.

Snooze interval
- If voice call is received while snoozing, alarm rings after call is disconnected regardless of the set interval. Next alarm rings in set interval from when last alarm finishes ringing.

When Set Time Arrives

1 Alarm rings (🔔 flashes).

- Alarm operates in accordance with alarm tone, volume and duration settings. (Still pictures and i-motion saved as contacts in phonebook and saved messages are also displayed.)
- Vibrator functions with alarm if set (☞P. 117).

When FOMA terminal is closed
- ***Alarm*** appears in the sub display.

2 Press a key to stop.

- Press PWR to clear message.
- Adjust the volume with 0 (louder) or 0 (softer) when volume is not set to ***Step***.

When FOMA terminal is closed
- Press ○(📷). ***Missed alarm*** appears on the sub display. Press ○(📷) for 1+ seconds and stand-by reappears.

When Snooze is set
- Alarm continues to ring in set intervals if key other than PWR is pressed to stop alarm.
- When alarm is turned off by pressing PWR, snooze settings are canceled.

When a phone number is set
- Call can be placed to shown phone number. Name appears if saved in phonebook. Press ● [Phone] to show phonebook details and make calls. (☞P. 105)

Note

- If power is not turned on at time set for alarm, the alarm will not sound.
- If Picture call is set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the image appears when alarm sounds.
- When an i-motion with image and voice is set as alarm tone, i-motion image appears regardless of picture call set for contact.
- When an i-motion with voice only (i-motion melodies with no video) is set as alarm tone, the picture call set for contact appears. When an i-motion is set for Picture call, regular alarm screen appears.
- When picture call and group picture call are set for a phonebook entry, the picture call saved in the entry has priority.
- If the time set for alarm or schedule alarm arrives during Ir exchange, data transmission or Ir remote control, alarm activates after transmissions ends and screen returns to stand-by. However, if time set arrives during software update, alarm may not activate even when updating is completed.

If alarm duration passes before step 2 is performed

- Alarm stops and a message stating alarm time has passed appears. (The set alarm time appears.)

If alarm time arrives during a call

- Activates when call is ended and stand-by reappears.

If alarm time arrives while in Manner mode

- Alarm tone does not sound.

If alarm time arrives while in Drive mode

- Alarm tone does not sound. Picture light and vibrator do not activate.

Disabling/Deleting/Changing Alarm Settings

Change/Disable/Delete alarm settings individually. Details are erased when alarm is deleted. Details are retained when disabled. To use the same details, set again.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 5 JKL and select a slot.

- Alarm list appears.
- To disable, select a slot with ⊘. To set again, select a slot without ⊘.

2 Press i [Release].

- ⊘ disappears from Alarm list.

To set again

- Press i [Set]. ⊘ appears in Alarm list.

To delete

- Press C [Delete], select ***Yes*** and press ●.
  Details are deleted and ---------- appears.
- 🔔 appears in stand-by display when re-setting.

ToDo List

Saving ToDo Lists

Save dates and details of tasks and manage schedules. Set priority and sound alarms for notification. When secret tasks are set, Secret mode (☞P. 140) must be set to *ON* to view. Protect private entries.

- Set date and time in advance. (☞P. 46)
- Save up to 100 ToDo lists.
- Schedule tasks between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Basic saving methods for tasks including date, details, and category are explained below.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8TUV 4GHI and 📷 1.

Task saving screen

- Alternatively, select 📷 (Tools) → ***ToDo list*** from Top menu.

2 Select *Date*, press ●, enter date (time) and press ●.

To set end date

- Select ***End*** and press ●. Enter end date (time) for task and press ●.

To set status and priority

- Select ***Status*** or ***!*** and press ●. Settings appear. Select item and press ●.

3 Select *Agenda*, press ●, enter agenda and press ●.

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.
- In the task list, if a brief is saved, the first 18 single-byte characters (9 double-byte characters) of the title appear. If not registered, the first 18 single-byte characters (9 double-byte characters) of the Agenda appear.

To enter brief

- Select ***Brief***, press ●, enter brief and press ●.
- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.

4 Select *Ctgry*, press ●, select category icon and press ●.

- Refer to P. 423 for categories.
- Once category is selected, previously selected category appears first.

5 Press i [Complete], select *Yes* and press ●.

- Refer to P. 415 for Alarm settings and Secret settings.
- When a task is not entered, entry is not completed even if i is pressed.

To not save

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

Ir exchange

- Send (☞P. 390) and receive ToDo lists saved on FOMA terminal handsets using Ir exchange. (☞P. 390)

miniSD Memory Card

- Copy ToDo lists saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 372) or view ToDo lists saved on miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 376).
- Copy ToDo lists saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (☞P. 377).

Note information saved in ToDo lists separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 369) or Data Link Software (☞P. 549).

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Related Operations

Sound alarm before task <Alarm settings>

1 **In the task saving screen (☞P. 414), select *Alarm* ▶ ●.**
2 **Press 1.**
- To disable: Press 2.

3 **Press 1 ▶ enter time (number of minutes before scheduled task) ▶ ●.**

Save tasks as secret <Secret>

1 **In the task saving screen (☞P. 414), select *Secret* ▶ ●.**
2 **Press 1.**
- To disable: Press 2.

Note

Alarm settings

- To save contacts for an alarm, press 5 [Contacts] in step 3 and enter contacts.
- Set contact information to show in the alarm screen, allowing for easy calling.
- Contacts cannot be set when Keypad dial lock is set.

Secret mode

- Refer to P. 153 for details on setting Secret mode.

When Alarm Time Arrives

Alarm operates in accordance with settings. Press a key to stop alarm. (☞P. 412)

- Secret tasks are notified by alarm but phone numbers, messages and images do not appear. (Appears when Secret mode is set to ***ON*** (☞P. 153).)
- If ToDo PIM is locked, alarm does not sound at set time.
- Alarm tone does not sound when in Manner mode.
- If the time set for alarm arrives while in Drive mode, alarm tone and vibrator do not activate, and picture light and called LED do not flash.
- Movie/i-motion set for alarm tone is prioritized over movie/i-motion set for phonebook entry if a phonebook entry with still picture or movie/i-motion is set (☞P. 96) for contact. To show movie/i-motion, press 5 [Contacts] and select a phonebook entry with still picture or movie/i-motion saved in step 3 of "Sound alarm before date" above.

Standard schedule

Secret data

Note

- If Picture call is set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the image appears when alarm sounds.
- When an i-motion with image and voice is set as alarm tone, i-motion image appears regardless of Picture call set for contact.
- When an i-motion with voice only (i-motion melodies with no video) is set as alarm tone, the Picture call set for contact appears. When an i-motion is set for Picture call, regular alarm screen appears.

Checking ToDo Lists

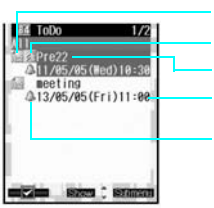
Specify status or category of ToDo lists or check completed lists.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 4 GHI, select task and press ●.

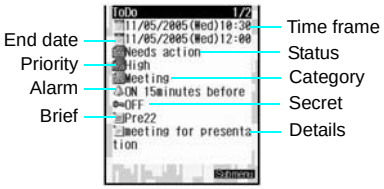
To view tasks in miniSD Memory Cards

- In the task list, press 📷 #.

Task list layout



Task details layout



* If brief is saved, the first 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters appear.
If brief is not saved, the first 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters of Agenda appear.

To copy Agenda

- In task details screen, press 📷 2 ABC.

To end viewing

- Press ☎ PWR.

Note

- Press view to view ToDo list during a voice call or while composing message. (☞P. 406)

Related Operations

Change status <Change status>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 4 GHI ▶ 📷 3 DEF ▶ item ▶ ●.

Display by Status/Category <Show by status/Show by category>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 4 GHI.
2 Press 📷 4 GHI.
- To show by category: Press 📷 5 JKL.

3 Select item ▶ ●.

Check finished ToDo list

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 4 GHI ▶ task ▶ i [☑].
- To mark as unread (☑): Select task marked ☑ and press i [☑].

Note

Checking ToDo lists

- End date is entered automatically.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Editing ToDo Lists

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 4 GHI, select task and press 📷 2 ABC.

- Task saving screen appears.

2 Edit task.

- Editing procedures are same as when saving. (☞P. 413)

To set end date

- In task saving screen, select ***End*** and press ●. Enter end date (time) and press ●.

3 When finished editing, press ▭ [Complete] and 2 ABC [Overwrite].

To save as a new entry

- Press 1 .@/.

4 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not save

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Deleting ToDo Lists

Use the following to delete tasks.

Delete one	Delete entries individually.
Delete completed	Delete all completed entries.
Delete all	Delete all entries.
Delete selected	Delete multiple selected entries collectively.

※ Delete completed and Delete all are not available when entries are listed by status or category.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 4 GHI, select a task and press 📷 6 MNO.

- Entries do not need to be selected for ***Delete completed*** and ***Delete all***.

2 Press 1 .@/.. [Delete one].

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all completed entries

- Press 2 ABC, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To delete all entries

- Press 3 DEF, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To delete multiple selected entries collectively

- Press 4 GHI, select tasks and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected dates. Press ● to switch.
  Select all entries to delete and press ▭ [Complete].
- Select up to 50 entries.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Saving Schedules

Manage schedules by saving start date and time, end date and time, details and contacts (phone number). Sound alarm before scheduled time or show a message, phone number or still picture. Additionally, search schedules by contacts, call using the shown phone number or create mail. Easily save category icons on the one month icon calendar. Add details later. (☞P. 421)

- Set date and time in advance. (☞P. 46)
- Save up to 300.
- Save schedules between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

Displaying Calendar <Calendar>

Display calendar. (☞P. 123) Check saved schedules.

- Set date and time in advance. (☞P. 46)
- Fifteen Japanese national holidays as stipulated by the National Holiday Law (as of February 2005) are set by default and appear in red.
- Add holidays and vacations and show on calendar.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 3 DEF.

Calendar

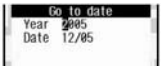
- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***Schedule*** from Top menu.
- Current month's calendar appears.
- Press PWR to close calendar.

To show previous or next month's calendar

- Press 4 (previous month) or 6 (next month).

Specifying date <Go to date>

1 In Calendar, press ●, select *Go to date* and press ●.



2 Enter date and press ●.

- Calendar for specified date appears.

Related Operations

Show calendar by entering date in stand-by screen

1 In stand-by, enter date ▶ ● 2 ABC.

Note

- Entered dates and calendar shown correlate as follows.

01 to 31	Current month (1st to 31st)
0101 to 1231	Specified date (January 1 to December 31)
20000101 to 20991231	Specified date and year (January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2099)

Changing calendar format <Switch view mode>

- Stand-by calendar does not change when calendar display is changed to 2 months or 1 month icon. (Set schedules and vacation are reflected.) Refer to P. 123 for setting stand-by calendar display.
- The default setting is ***2 months***.

1 In Calendar (☞P. 418), press ●5 JKL.

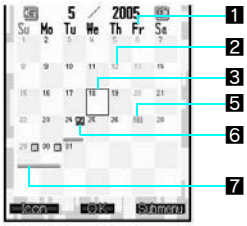
2 Select format and press ●.

- Calendar format is switched.

To show a schedule

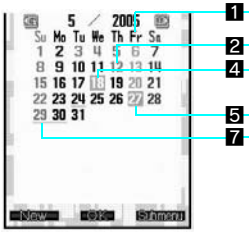
- Select a schedule and press ●. (☞P. 426)

Calendar layout



1 month icon

1. Days with color set (Shown in set color)
2. Vacation (Shown red)
3. Selected day (Shown in a black box)
4. Selected day (Shown green)
5. Today (Day color highlighted)
6. Saved schedule (Icon display by category)
7. Schedule saved (Underlined)
   - Schedule is two or more days (Underlined)



1 month

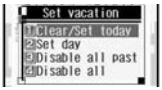
2 months

Setting Vacation <Set Vacation>

Set certain days or certain days of the week as vacations. Save up to 100. Disable all set vacations or all past vacations (excluding vacations set to specific day of week) collectively.

- Disable all resets vacations set to specific day of week to default settings (Sundays only).

1 In Calendar (☞P. 418), select day to set as vacation (or disable vacation settings) and press ●6 MNO.



- Days do not need to be selected when disabling all vacations and weekly vacations.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press 1 [Clear/Set today].

- Set vacation appears red.
- Select day in step 1 of “Setting Vacation” to disable.

To set weekly vacations

- Press 2, select day and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected dates. Press ● to switch.
  Select all dates to set and press [Complete].

Related Operations

Collectively disable set vacations <Disable all>

1. **In Calendar (☞P. 418), press ○ 6.**
2. **Press 4 ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.**
   - To disable all past vacations: Press 3 ▶ ***Yes*** ▶ ●.

Note

- Vacations set to specific day of week are reset to default settings (Sundays only).

Setting Holiday <Set Holiday>

Default setting: National holiday (15 holidays)

Set and change holidays.

- Save up to 20 holidays in addition to the preset Japanese holidays.

1 In Calendar (☞P. 418), select day to set as holiday and press ○ 7.

2 Press 1 [New].

- Holiday setting screen appears.

To disable all set holidays

- Press 2, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

3 Press 1.

- Details entry screen appears.

To set annual holiday

- Press 2.

4 Enter holiday name and press ●.

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.
- In schedule details screen (☞P. 427), press ○ 1 to change the details for the set holiday. Enter day to change, press ● and proceed to step 3.
- The FOMA terminal calculates the dates for the Vernal Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day. Actual dates may differ.
- Set holiday appears red.

Changing Day Colors <Set Day Color>

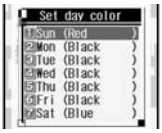
Default setting
See below

Change the color of days in the Calendar.

- When holidays and vacations are set, color of days change but dates remain red.

The default setting is ***Red*** for Sunday (Set vacation), ***Black*** for Monday to Friday, and ***Blue*** for Saturday.

1 In Calendar (☞P. 418), press ●, select ■*Set day color* and press ●.



2 Select day, press ●, select color and press ●.

- Continue setting other days.

3 Press ● [Complete].

- Day color is changed.

Note

- Color of dates in stand-by calendars change when day color is changed. When clock display is set to ***ON***, day color of the date/time shown in stand-by also changes. (☞P. 123)

Saving Schedules

Basic saving methods for schedules including time and date, details, category and contact are explained below.

- Always set start date and time and agenda.
- Sound alarm before scheduled time or save schedules as Secret. (☞P. 424, P. 425)

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 3 DEF, select day and press ● [New] or ● 1 [New].

Schedule saving screen

- When in 1 month icon, press ● 1.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select *Date* and press ●. Then, press [Switch] to select the date in Calendar.

Selected day
Select day with 0 0 0 0.

Calendar date selection screen

3 Enter start day for schedule or select from the calendar, press ●, enter time and press ●.

- Use 24-hour format.
- If end date and time are entered, select ***Once only*** in step 4.

To reset end date and time

- Press [Reset].

4 Press 2 ABC [Daily].

- Repeat setting screen appears.

To save a one-time schedule

- Press 1 and proceed to step 6.

To save a weekly schedule

- Press 3.

To save a monthly schedule

- Press 4.

To save an annual schedule

- Press 5.

5 Enter the number of times (00 to 99) to repeat and press ●.

- ***00*** represents unlimited times.

6 Select *Smry*, press ●, enter summary and press ●.

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.

7 Select *Ctgry*, press ●, select category icon and press ●.

Categories

Icon	Category	Icon	Category	Icon	Category	Icon	Category
	No category		Meeting		Birthday		Shopping
	Personal		Meals		Hobby		School
	Holiday		Drive		Date		Business trip
	Travel		Exercise		Karaoke		Appreciation
	Business		Anniversary		Party		Hospital

- Selected category appears.
- Once category is selected, previously selected category appears first.

8 Select *Image* and press ●.

- Image setting screen appears.

9 Press 1 [My picture].

- List of folders in My picture of Data box appears.

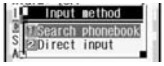
To not set a still picture

- Press 2.

10 Select folder, press ●, select still picture and press i [OK].

- Movies/i-motion cannot be selected.
- Title of selected still picture appears.
- Set image appears in Task list and schedule details screen.

11 Select *Cntcts* and press ●.



- Set contact information to show the contact in the schedule details or alarm screen, allowing for easy calling.
- Contacts are not available while Keypad dial lock is set.

12 Press 2, enter phone number and press ●.

To select from phonebook

- Press 1, select phone number and press ●.
- Entries without phone numbers are not available.

13 Select *Agenda*, press ●, enter agenda and press ●.

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.

14 Press i [Complete], select *Yes* and press ●.

To not save

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

Ir exchange

- Send (☞P. 390) and receive schedules saved on FOMA terminal handsets using Ir exchange. (☞P. 390)

Setting image

- While updating manager information, My picture is not available.

miniSD Memory Card

- Copy schedules saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 372) or view schedules saved on miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 376).
- Copy schedules saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (☞P. 377).

Note information saved in Schedule separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 369) or Data Link Software (☞P. 549).

Related Operations

Save only category icon from 1 month icon calendar

1 In Calendar (☞P. 418), press ● 5 1 ▶ day ▶ ● [Icon] ▶ category icon ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.

- To not delete: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Note

Contents of schedule

Date	Selected + set time
Summary	—
Category	Category of selected icon
Alarm	OFF
Image	—
Contacts	—
Secret	OFF
Agenda	***No content*** appears.

Setting Alarms

Default setting
See below

Sound an alarm before the scheduled time. Also set alarm actions.

- Saved contact information appears.
- If Vibration mode (☞P. 117) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.
- If multiple schedule alarms are set for the same time, the set alarm sounds for the set number of times.

The default setting is ***00 minutes*** for Alarm time, ***15 seconds*** for Ring duration, 着信音1 for Alarm tone and ***Volume 3*** for Alarm volume.

Alarm time	Set to sound an alarm before the scheduled time.
Ring duration	Change the duration the alarm sounds.
Alarm tone	Change alarm tone.
Alarm volume	Change alarm volume.

- Set the above in schedule saving screen (☞steps 1 and 2 of “Saving Schedules” on P. 421).

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Setting alarms

1 **In the schedule saving screen (☞P. 421), select *Alarm* and press ●.**

2 **Press 1 [ON: set].**

Alarm setting screen

To disable

- Press 2.

3 **Press 1, enter time to sound alarm (minutes before alarm time) and press ●.**

- Press i [Complete] and schedule saving screen reappears.

Related Operations

Change alarm duration <Ring duration>

1 **In the alarm setting screen, press 2 ▶ ring duration (two digits: 02 to 99 seconds) ▶ ●.**

Change alarm tone <Alarm tone>

1 **In the alarm setting screen, press 3.**

2 **Press 1.**

- To set movie/i-motion: Press 2.
- To not set alarm tone: Press 3.

3 **Select folder ▶ alarm tone ▶ i [OK].**

Change alarm volume <Alarm volume>

1 **In the alarm setting screen, press 4 ▶ 0 (louder) or 0 (softer) ▶ ●.**

Note

- If a GIF animation or Flash movie is set as stand-by, 🔔 does not appear until animation ends.

Setting alarm tone

- While updating manager info, melodies and movies/i-motion are not available.

Setting as Secret

When secret schedules are set, Secret mode (☞P. 140) must be set to ***ON*** to view. Protect private entries.

- Refer to P. 153 for instructions on setting Secret mode.
- Set Secret mode to ***ON*** (☞P. 153) in advance to disable secret setting.

1 **In schedule saving screen (☞P. 421), select *Secret* and press ●.**

- Secret screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press 1 [ON: set].

To disable

- Press 2.

When Set Time Arrives

Alarm operates in accordance with settings. Press a key to stop alarm.

- Adjust the volume with ↑ (louder) or ↓ (softer) when volume is not set to ***Step***.
- If image is set for schedule, i-motion with image is set for alarm tone or contact set has Picture call set, image appears in the following priority.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	i-motion set as alarm tone → schedule image → picture call → group picture call → alarm image

- Secret schedules are notified by alarm but phone numbers, messages and images do not appear. (Appears when Secret mode (☞P. 153) is set to ***ON***.)
- If Schedule PIM is locked, alarm does not sound at the set time.
- Alarm tone does not sound when in Manner mode.
- If the time set for alarm arrives while in Drive mode, alarm tone and vibrator do not activate, and picture light and called LED do not flash.

Normal schedule

Secret data

Checking Schedules

Check contents of saved schedules. Sort them by categories or contacts. Place calls or send i-mode mail if phone number or mail address is saved. Copy schedules or view still pictures and Money calculator saved on specified date.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 3 DEF, select day and press ●.

- Schedules for selected day are listed (schedule list).
- Press ← to show previous day's schedule list.
- Press → to show next day's schedule list.
- To check secret schedules, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ON.

To view tasks in miniSD Memory Cards

- In Calendar, press 📷 #.

Schedule list layout

Date
Time bar (Schedule start time to end time is indicated in 30 minute intervals.)
Alarm
Start date and time
Summary or Agenda*
Category
Image (image saved in My picture or phonebook)

* If summary is saved, the first 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters appear.
If summary is not saved, the first 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of Agenda appear.

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

2 Select schedule and press ●.

Schedule details

- If an image is saved, press [i] [Viewpicture] to preview.
- If contact is saved, phone number appears and call can be made. Name appears if saved in phonebook. Press ● [Phone] to show phonebook details. Make calls or send mail. (☞P. 105)

To end viewing

- Press [PWR].

Note

- Press [view] during a voice call or while composing message to view Schedule. (☞P. 406)

Related Operations

Display by category <Show by category>

1 In stand-by, press ● [8 TUV] [3 DEF] ▶ [📷] [3 DEF] ▶ category ▶ ●.

Display by contacts <Show by contact>

1 In stand-by, press ● [8 TUV] [3 DEF] ▶ [📷] [4 GHI] ▶ contact ▶ ●.

Check all schedules <Show all schedules>

1 In stand-by, press ● [8 TUV] [3 DEF] ▶ [📷] [2 ABC].

- To check the schedule: Select schedule ▶ ●.
- To view tasks in miniSD Memory Cards: In Calendar, press [📷] [#].

Make calls from schedule

1 In the schedule details screen, press ●●.

- To make video-phone call: Press ●[i].

Create i-mode mail from schedule

1 In the schedule details screen, press ● [Phone] ▶ select address ▶ ● [Mail] ▶ compose message.

Search still pictures saved on specific date <Search My picture>

1 In stand-by, press ● [8 TUV] [3 DEF] ▶ date ▶ [📷] [✕] ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ still picture ▶ ●.

View money calculator for a certain day <View money calculator>

1 In stand-by, press ● [8 TUV] [3 DEF] ▶ date ▶ [📷] ▶ ■*View money calc* ▶ ●.

- To copy: Press [i] [Copy].

Copy schedules <Copy>

1 In the schedule details screen, press [📷] [2 ABC].

Note

Composing i-mode mail

- Compose i-mode mail from schedule if mail address is saved in phonebook.

Searching My picture

- If no still pictures are saved on that day, ***No image from specified date*** appears.

Editing Schedules <Edit>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 3 DEF, select day, press ●, select schedule and press 📷 2 カ ABC.

- To select secret schedules, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON***.

2 Edit schedule and press i [Complete].

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving. (☞P. 421)
- Save screen appears.

3 Press 2 カ ABC [Overwrite].

- Save confirmation screen appears.

To save as a new schedule

- Press 1 あ.

4 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not save

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Saving contacts from Received calls and Redial

Save phone numbers from Received calls and Redial as contact information.

1 Select Received call (☞steps 1 and 2 on P. 62) or Redial (☞steps 1 and 2 on P. 52) and press 📷 C.

- Schedule saving screen appears.

Contents of schedule

	Received calls	Redial
Date	Received date and time	Called date and time
Summary	–	–
Category	No category	
Alarm	OFF	
Image	–	
Contacts	Phone numbers	
Secret	OFF	
Agenda	***No content*** is entered.	

2 Add and save schedules. (☞steps 2 to 14 on P. 422)

Saving contents of i-mode mail

Save contents of received/sent mail as schedule contents.

- Attachments are not saved.

1 Show received messages (☞steps 1 and 2 on P. 273), press ●, select ■*Create schedule* and press ●.

- Schedule saving screen appears.

For sent mail

- Open sent mail and press ● ▼.

Contents of schedule

	Received mail	Sent mail
Date	Received date and time	Sent date and time
Summary	—	—
Category	No category	
Alarm	OFF	
Image	—	
Contacts	First phone number saved in phonebook (Contact is not saved if not saved in phonebook.)	First phone number saved in phonebook (Contact is not saved if not saved in phonebook.)
Secret	OFF	
Agenda	Subject and message (Up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters)	

2 Add and save schedules. (☞steps 2 to 14 on P. 422)

Saving contents of Text memos

Save text from Text memos as Agenda.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8TUV 7PQRS, select folder, press ●, select text memo and press ● 4GHI.

- Schedule saving screen appears.

Contents of schedule

Date	--/--/----
Summary	—
Category	Category of Text memo
Alarm	OFF
Image	—
Contacts	—
Secret	OFF
Agenda	Content of Text memo

2 Add and save schedules. (☞steps 2 to 14 on P. 422)

Saving still pictures from My picture

Save still pictures from My picture of Data box to schedules.

- Movies/i-motion in Data box are not available.

1 Select still picture (☞steps 1 to 3 on P. 330) and press ●7 3 DEF.

- Schedule saving screen appears.

Contents of schedule

Date	Save date and time of still picture
Summary	—
Category	No category
Alarm	OFF
Image	Title of image
Contacts	—
Secret	OFF
Agenda	***No content*** appears.

2 Add and save schedules. (☞steps 2 to 14 on P. 422)

Note

- While previewing a shot still picture, press ●1 3 DEF to save to schedule. Still picture cannot be saved to schedule if save destination is set as miniSD Memory Card. Set save destination to the handset before shooting.
- Still pictures in miniSD Memory Cards are not directly available. Copy to FOMA terminal handset before saving.

Deleting Schedules <Delete Schedules>

Use one of the following to delete schedules.

Delete one	Delete entries individually.
Delete all past	Reset all schedules prior to specified day.
Delete all	Delete all entries.
Delete selected	Delete multiple selected entries collectively.

1 In stand-by, press ●8 TUV 3 DEF, press ●2 ABC, select schedule and press ● 6 MNO.

- When selecting secret schedules for ***Delete one*** or ***Delete selected***, set Secret mode (☞P. 153) to ***ON***.
- To delete selected entries, select in step 2.

To delete all past schedules

- Select entry to start with.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

2 Press 1 [Delete one].

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all past entries

- Press 2, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To delete all entries

- Press 3, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To select entries and delete collectively

- Press 4, select tasks to delete and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected entries. Press ● to switch.
  Select all entries to delete and press ▶ [Complete].
- Select up to 50 entries.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Related Operations

Delete entries from Calendar

1. **In Calendar (☞P. 418), press ○ 8.**
2. **Press 1 [Delete all past].**
   - To delete all: Press 2.
3. **Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●.**

Shortcut Menu

Accessing Functions Quickly

Save frequently used functions as shortcuts for easy access.

Saving to Shortcut Menu

Save up to 18 shortcuts. The following shortcuts are preset. Overwrite them with i-αppli software, bookmarks and other frequently used functions.

1 Press View for 1+ seconds in function with shown to save.

- Some i-αppli cannot start unless the FOMA card that was present during the initial download of the i-αppli is inserted. If that original FOMA card is not inserted, shortcut cannot be saved even if appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 **Select address and press ●.**

- Save confirmation screen appears.

3 **Select *Yes* and press ● to overwrite.**

- Saved as shortcut.

To not save

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- When registered i-αppli software or URL bookmarks are deleted, they are automatically deleted from the Shortcut menu.
- When settings are reset (☞P. 448), shortcuts return to default settings.

Running Shortcut Menu

1 **In stand-by, press ○, select shortcut icon and press ●.**

- Set function activates.

When calendar is set in stand-by

- Press ○ to change month. Press PWR and disable calendar and press ○.

Deleting from Shortcut Menu

1 **In stand-by, press ○, select shortcut icon and press 📷 5 JKL.**

- Delete screen appears.

2 **Press 1 [Delete one].**

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all shortcuts

- Press 2 ABC, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

3 **Select *Yes* and press ●.**

- Selected shortcut is deleted from Shortcut menu. (Shortcut menu is not reset.)

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Moving Shortcut Menu Icons <Move Icon>

Change placement of icons in Shortcut menu.

1 **In stand-by, press ○, select shortcut icon and press 📷 2 ABC.**

- Select destination screen appears.

2 **Select target location and press ●.**

- Shortcuts are switched.

Setting Shortcut Menu Icons <Icon Settings>

Change Shortcut menu icons.

Set two images; one for selected and another for unselected.

- Use 76(W) × 76(H) pixel JPEG images, GIF images or GIF animations.
- Up to three scenes are used for GIF animations. Image for selected icon is not available.

1 In stand-by, press ○, select shortcut icon and press 📷 1.

2 Select folder, press ●, select unselected still picture and press [i] [OK].

- Unselected icon is set.
- Icon settings confirmation screen appears.

To check the still picture

- Select still picture and press ● [Agree]. Press CLR to return.

3 Select *No* and press ●.

To set a different selected icon

- Select ***Yes***, press ●, select folder, press ●, select still picture and press [i] [OK].

When GIF animation is selected in step 2

- Shortcut menu reappears.

Note

- Images that cannot be set to shortcut icons do not appear.
- Icons in the preset Shortcut menu are GIF animations.
- If an image from My picture of Data box is set as a menu icon, even if deleted, the image is retained until the menu icon setting is changed.

Setting Action Focus to Shortcut Menu Icons <Action Focus>

Default setting: Starlight

Set Action focus for Shortcut menu icons.

- Action focus is applied to last image for GIF animations.

Action focus types

Starlight	Rings rotate.	Target	Large square becomes small square.
Mist	Light flashes.	Wheel	Square rotates.
Ripple	Rings move outward.	Stardust	Light sparkles.

1 In stand-by, press ○, and press 📷 3 DEF.

- Action focus screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select Action focus and press ●.

To not set Action focus

- Press 7PQRS.

Setting Shortcut Menu Background <Set Background>

Default setting
メニュー背景 1

Change Shortcut menu background.

- Use JPEG and GIF images. (Flash movies and GIF animation are not available.)

1 In stand-by, press ● and 📷 4GHI.

- My picture of Data box appears.

2 Select folder, press ●, select still picture and press i [OK].

- Background is set.

To check the still picture

- Select still picture and press ● [Agree]. Press CLR to return.

Note

- Still pictures that cannot be set as background images do not appear.
- If a still picture in My picture is set, background image is retained after original still picture is deleted from My picture until changed.

Resetting Shortcut Menu <Reset Icon>

Reset Shortcut menu to default items.

1 In stand-by, press ● and 📷 6MNO.

- Reset confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Settings are reset.

To not reset

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

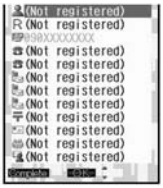
Owner Information

Saving Own Name and Image

Save and edit name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, postal address, birthday, memo and own image.
Save three phone numbers including Own number and three mail addresses.

- Own number is saved by default. Add acquired i-mode mail address.

Items to set



Icon	Item
	Name (up to 32 single-byte/16 double-byte characters)
R	Reading (up to 32 single-byte characters)
	Own number (cannot be edited)
	Phone number (two numbers, 26 digits per number)
	Mail address (three addresses, 50 characters per address)
	Postal code (up to seven single-byte digits*)
	Postal address (up to 100 single-byte/50 double-byte characters)
	Birthday (single-byte*, from January 1, 1900 to December 31, 2099)
	Memo (up to 200 single-byte/100 double-byte characters)
	Own image

* Appears as double-byte characters when entered.

1 In stand-by, press ● [りを ん] and ● [Details].

- Terminal security code entry screen appears.

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Owner information appears.

3 Press [カメラ] [1 あ] [Edit].

- Edit owner information screen appears.

4 Select items with ● and save details.

- Editing procedures are the same as phonebook. Refer to P. 94 to P. 98 for details.
- Screen of step 3 reappears after each item is saved. Continue setting other items.

To delete contents of items

- Press [C CLR] in entry screen for name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal address and memo. Select ***Not set*** for Own image.

5 After saving items, press [i] [Complete].

- Select icon with ● to show saved details.

Note

- Customize i-mode mail address. (☞P. 245)
- Changes to i-mode mail address are not reflected in owner information details. Change mail address manually.

Related Operations

Check i-mode mail address (i-mode registrants only)

1 **In stand-by, press [i] ▶ *i Menu* ▶ 8オプション設定 (Options) ▶ 1メール設定 (Mail Settings) ▶ アドレス確認 (Confirm Address).**

Showing Owner Information Details

Show Owner information details.

- Copy characters from owner information items and paste in other screens.

1 In stand-by, press ● 9 and ● [Details].

- Terminal security code entry screen appears.

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Owner information appears.
- Press 10 to view saved items in order.

To copy Owner information

- Select item to copy with 10 and press 📷 2.
- Names, own number, other phone numbers, mail addresses, postal addresses, and memos can be copied.

Note

- Alternatively, send owner information to other FOMA terminals with Ir exchange. (☞P. 390)

Related Operations

Copy while creating i-mode mail or SMS

1 In stand-by, press 🔒 4 ▶ *Message* ▶ ● ▶ 📷 # ▶ ● [Details].
2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ item ▶ ●.

Voice Memo (During Call)/Voice Memo (Stand-by)

Recording Other's Voice During Call or Own Voice in Stand-by

Record other party's voice during a call (Voice memo (during call)) or own voice in stand-by (Voice memo (stand-by)).

- Use recorded Voice memos for Hold tone and On hold tone. (☞P. 65)
- Record up to three Record messages (voice calls) and Voice memos of 15 seconds each (☞P. 68).
- Record up to two Record messages (video-phone) of 15 seconds each.

Recording Other Party's Voice During a Call <Voice Memo>

1 During a voice call, press ● 2 or press 0 (📼) for 1+ seconds.

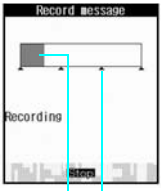
- Notes on recording are the same as for recording own voice in stand-by (☞P. 437).

To stop recording within 15 seconds

- Press 📷. (Recording continues until stopped.)

Recording Own Voice in Stand-by <Stand-by Voice Memo>

1 In stand-by, press ● (📼) 1.



- Recording begins.
- Speak from within approximately 10 cm away.
- ***Unable to record anymore*** appears if three Record messages (voice calls) and Voice memos and two Record messages (video-phone) are recorded. ***You already have 3 voice memos saved*** appears if less than two Record messages (video-phone) are recorded. Delete unnecessary recordings. (☞P. 72)
- Recording ends after approximately 15 seconds.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.

When calendar is set in stand-by

- Press ● (📼) to change month. Press TOOL to disable calendar and press ● (📼) 1 in order.

To stop recording within 15 seconds

- Press ●. (Memo is recorded until stopped.)

Note

- Refer to P. 71 for details on playing/deleting Voice memo during calls and stand-by.
- Voice memos three seconds or less may not be recorded.
- Own voice is not recorded in Voice memo (during call). However, Own voice may be recorded due to network status.
- Messages that indicate outside the service area, changed phone number, etc. cannot be recorded.
- Keypad sound is silenced during Voice memo (stand-by).

When call is received during Voice memo (stand-by)

- Recording is stopped. Press 📞 to answer the call. (Memo is recorded until stopped.)

Keep a separate memo and note recorded memos

- FOMA terminal recordings may be altered or damaged by misuse, static, electronic noise, malfunction, repairs and upgrading of models. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Calculator

Using as Calculator

Add, subtract, multiply, divide, calculate percentages and sales tax.

- Refer to P. 545 for details on calculating.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 8.

- Alternatively, select 📷 (Tools) → ***Calculator*** from Top menu.
- Or, enter numbers to calculate → ● [Quick] → ***Calculator*** in stand-by.
- Calculator appears.

2 Enter numbers to calculate.

- Use the following to enter.

0 to 9	Numbers 0 to 9
*	Decimal point
#	Switch between +/-

- Press CLR to erase all entered numbers. (Press CLR when number is 0 to end.)

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Select calculation.

- Mathematical functions are allotted to guide key.

0	+ Add	0	− Subtract	0	× Multiply	0	÷ Divide

- Also perform the following.

	CM Clear Memory		RM Recall Memory		% Calculate percentage		Calculate tax		M+ Add memory

4 Enter numbers to calculate and press [=].

- Calculation results appear.

To end Calculator

- Press PWR. Stand-by reappears.

Note

- When in Calculator, stand-by reappears when alarm activates for alarm time or schedule alarm.
- Results are retained if memory is used.

Related Operations

Use results in Money calculator (☞P. 439)

1 Press for 1+ seconds during calculation.

Change tax rate

1 In Calculator, press for 1+ seconds ▶ enter tax rate (01 to 99) ▶ .

Calculate tax

1 Display results and press [TAX].

- To calculate amount without tax: Display results and press [TAX] [TAX].

Copy calculation contents

2 Press for 1+ seconds during calculation.

Note

Using in Money calculator

- The amount after the decimal point is not shown.
  Example: Enter 120 + 249 and press for 1+ seconds. ***¥369*** appears in Money calculator.
  Example: Enter 123÷4 and press for 1+ seconds. ***¥30*** appears in Money calculator.

Calculating tax

- The default setting for tax rate is ***5%***.
- The amount after the decimal point is rounded off.
  Example: If 120 [TAX] is pressed, ***5Tax*** appears.

Adding Monetary Amounts

Use money calculator to add amounts automatically. Useful when calculating trip expenses.

- Enter up to 100 entries. (Calculate totals up to 99,999,900 yen. Enter up to 999,999 yen per entry.)

1 In stand-by, press ● 8TUV 8TUV and enter amount or calculation in calculator.

2 Press i for 1+ seconds.

- When ±1,000,000 yen or more is entered, error tone sounds, ***Enter 999,999 yen or less*** appears and Calculator reappears. Error tone does not sound when Keypad sound is set to ***Silent***.
- Only number is saved.
- For 101 or more entries, error tone sounds, ***Unable to calculate*** appears and Calculator reappears. Error tone does not sound when Keypad sound is set to ***Silent***.
- Alternatively, enter amount and press view to start money calculator.

3 Select detail name and press ●.

- Amount entered in Money calculator is added and Calculator reappears.
- Date entered is automatically registered.
- Repeat steps 1 to 3 and enter to add to Money calculator.
- The amount after the decimal point is not shown.

Note

- When Calculator is started from Assistant View, Money calculator is not available.

Keep a separate memo and note details.

- FOMA terminal data may be altered or damaged by misuse, static, electronic noise, malfunction, repairs and upgrading of models. Data may be lost if FOMA terminal is left without battery or with an empty battery for longer than approximately one month. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

Checking Money Calculator

1 In stand-by, press ● 8TUV 9WXYZ.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***Money calculator*** from Top menu.
- Money calculator details appear.
- Press i [Switch] to switch in order of ***This month total*** → ***Current balance*** → ***Grand total***.

To view continuation or total

- Press 0. (Total appears in bottom row.)

Changing Name of Money Calculator Details <Change Details>

Change name of Money calculator details.

- Enter up to ten single-byte (five double-byte) characters per entry.
- ***Other*** cannot be changed.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8TUV 9WXYZ and 📷 7PQRS.

- Current name appears.

To undo new name

- Select detail name to undo, press ●, delete detail name and press ●. Default detail name reappears.

2 Select detail, press ●, enter detail name and press ●.

- Repeat the step to change other detail names.

Entering New Items from Money Calculator

1 In stand-by, press ● 8TUV 9WXYZ and 📷 1.@.

- Date entry screen appears.

2 Enter date and time and press ●.

- Amount input screen appears.

3 Enter amount and press ●.

- Detail name selection screen appears.

4 Select detail name and press ●.

- New item is added to Money calculator.

Editing Money Calculator Items

1 In stand-by, press ● 8TUV 9WXYZ, select a Money calculator item and press 📷 2ABC.

2 Edit date and time, amount and detail name.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on “Entering New Items from Money Calculator” for editing procedures.

3 Press 2ABC [Overwrite].

- Saved contents are changed.

To save edited details as a new item

- Press 1.@.

Displaying Total <Switch Total Display>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8TUV 9WXYZ and 📷 4GHI.

- Press ⓘ [Switch] to switch in order of ***This month total*** → ***Current balance*** → ***Grand total***.

2 Press 1 [This month total].

- Current month's total appears.

To show current month's balance

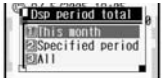
- Press 2.

To show grand total

- Press 3.

Calculating Total for Specified Period by Detail <Display Period Total>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 9 and 5.



2 Press 1 [This month].

- Current month's total appears by detail.
- To copy, press i [Copy] and select range.

To specify time span

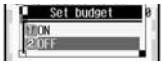
- Press 2, enter date to calculate and press ●.
- Totals for specified time span appears by detail.

To calculate all time spans

- Press 3.
- All totals appear by detail.

Setting Budget <Set Budget>

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 9 and 6.



2 Press 1 [ON: set].

- Budget input screen appears.

To not set a budget

- Press 2.

3 Enter budget and press ●.

- Enter up to 99,999,999 yen.
- If Current balance is selected in Switch total display (☞P. 440), the amount shown is the current month's total subtracted from the amount entered.

Deleting Money Calculator

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 9, select a Money calculator item to delete and press 3.

- Select Money calculator items to delete when deleting more than one item.
- When deleting all items, press i [Switch] to set to ***Total: All***.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Press 1 [Delete one].

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all items

- Press 2, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To delete multiple items

- Press 3, select item and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected items. Press ● to switch. Select items to delete and press ▮ [Complete].

To delete up to previous month

- Press 4, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Talk Time/Charge

Displaying the Call Duration/Charge

Check previous or total call duration/charge for voice calls, video-phone calls, etc. Check the call charges starting from December, 2004.

- Last call duration and digital transmission duration (video-phone call duration + 64K data communication duration) appear. Duration time includes calls made and received.
- Call charge only include calls made. When calls are made to toll-free numbers, ***0YEN*** or ***¥¥¥¥¥¥YEN*** appears.
- Call charge is saved on the FOMA card. If a different FOMA card is inserted, the total call charges (those calculated since December, 2004) stored on the currently inserted card appears.
  ※ Total call charges on a FOMA card cannot be viewed on models released prior to the FOMA 901i series. (However, total charge is saved on the FOMA card.)
- Call duration/charge that appears can be reset.
- Call duration/charge is an estimate and may differ from actual amount. Call charge does not include consumption tax.

Displaying the Call Duration

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 7.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Talk time/cost*** from Top menu.
- Call details settings screen appears.
- If the information has never been reset, ***--/--/----(--):--*** appears for the reset date and time.
- Press ☎ to end viewing.

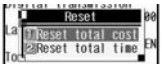
Note

- Transmission duration and charges for i-mode and packet transmissions are not counted. Refer to “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” for details on checking i-mode charge.
- If the previous voice call/digital transmission duration exceeds 9:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- If the total voice call/digital transmission duration exceeds 999:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- Time used receiving or making a call is not counted.

Resetting Call Duration/Call Cost

Recorded previous or total call duration/cost can be reset to ***0***.

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 7 PQRS and press ● [Reset].



2 Press 1 [Reset total cost], enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Reset confirmation screen appears.

To reset total time

- Press 2 ABC, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- The reset month and day are saved in ***reset date***.

To not reset

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Text Memo

Entering Memos

Save frequently used phrases and use them when composing message, schedule and ToDo list. Create *Security memo* to hide personal entries.

- Save ten memos and ten Security memos. Sort them into 20 types.

1 In stand-by, press ● 8 TUV 7 PQRS.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → ***Text memo*** from Top menu.
- Text memo screen appears.

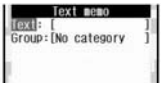
2 Select *Default folder* and press ●.

Text memo list

To create Security memo

- Select ***Security folder***, press ●, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

3 Press [New] or 1 [New].



To check memo

- Select memo and press ● [Show].

When ten are already saved

- ***Unable to save anymore*** appears.

4 Select *Text*, press ●, enter message and press ●.

- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters.

Continued on next page ▶▶

5 Select *Group*, press ●, select category icon and press ●.

- Select category from 20 types. Refer to P. 423 for categories.
- Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.

6 Press i [Complete].

- Save confirmation screen appears.

7 Select *Yes* and press ●.

Note

Ir exchange

- Send (☞P. 390) and receive Text memos saved on FOMA terminal handsets using Ir exchange (☞P. 390).
- Security memos cannot be sent with Ir exchange.

miniSD Memory Card

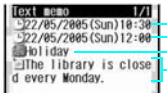
- Copy Text memos saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 372) or view Text memos saved on miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 376).
- Security memos cannot be copied.
- Copy Text memos saved on miniSD Memory Cards to FOMA terminal handset (☞P. 377).

Note information saved in Text memos separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards (☞P. 369) or Data Link Software (☞P. 549).

Using Memos

Use saved memos when composing message, schedule or ToDo list.

1 In text memo list (☞P. 443), select memo and press ●.



Date created
Last edit date
Category
Agenda

2 Press 📷 2 [Compose message].

- Compose message screen appears. Content of memo is entered in ***Text***.

To use Schedule

- Press 📷 3.
- Task saving screen appears. Content of memo is entered in ***Agenda*** and memo type is entered in ***Ctgry***.

To use ToDo list

- Press 📷 4.
- Task saving screen appears. Content of memo is entered in ***Agenda*** and memo type is entered in ***Ctgry***.

Note

- Press view during a voice call or while composing message to recall text memo and copy. (☞P. 406)

 ※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Editing Saved Memos

1 In text memo list (☞P. 443), select memo and press ● 2カ.

- Memo editing screen appears.

2 Edit memo.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving. (☞P. 443)

3 When finished editing, press (i) [Complete] and 2カ [Overwrite].

- Editing screen appears.

When ten are already saved

- ***Unable to save anymore*** appears.

To save a new text memo

- Press 1あ.

Deleting Memos

1 In text memo list (☞P. 443), select memo and press ● 6は.

- Delete screen appears.

2 Press 1あ [Delete one].

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all memos

- Press 2カ, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

To delete multiple memos

- Press 3さ, select memo and press ●. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected data. Press ● to switch. Select all memos to delete and press (i) [Complete].

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Connect flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) to earphone/microphone terminal to call numbers saved in phonebook or answer voice/video-phone calls with switch. Also use switch as camera shutter. (☞P. 184)

- Use earphone/microphone individually or in conjunction with the following.
  - Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch
  - Earphone/microphone with switch + Earphone plug adapter P001
  - Stereo earphone set P001 + Earphone plug adapter P001
  - Earphone terminal P001 + Earphone plug adapter P001
    (Separate stereo earphones are required.)
- Use FOMA terminal keys to place video-phone calls.

Saving phone number

Place voice calls to person saved as memory number 000 (☞P. 94) by pressing button on earphone/microphone with switch. (Available even when FOMA terminal is closed.)

- Video-phone is not available from switch.

Placing Voice Calls with Switch

1 Connect earphone/microphone with switch.

- Insert plug of earphone/microphone with switch into earphone/microphone terminal.

2 In stand-by, press switch for 2+ seconds.

- The phone number saved for memory number 000 in the phonebook is dialed automatically.
- If multiple phone numbers are saved for memory number 000 in the phonebook, the first phone number saved is called. If the slot for the first phone number is empty, then the second phone number is called. If the slot for the second phone number is empty, then the third phone number is called.

3 Press switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

- The call is disconnected. (Alternatively, press PWR on FOMA terminal to disconnect.)

Note

- To call secret phonebook entries, set Secret mode to ***ON*** before using switch.
- Calls may be placed accidentally if FOMA terminal is carried in bags with earphone/microphone with switch connected. Disconnect when not in use.
- Calls cannot be placed while phonebook PIM is locked.
- Calls may be placed if earphone/microphone without switch is rapidly inserted and removed.
- Keypad sounds are output to earphone/microphone with switch when connected.
- The volume for earphone is the same as set in Earpiece volume (☞P. 64).
- Do not forcefully pull rubber earphone/microphone terminal cover. May damage cover.

Answering Calls with Switch

1 Connect earphone/microphone with switch.

- Insert plug of earphone/microphone with switch into earphone/microphone terminal.

2 Ring tone sounds when call is received.

- Ring tone sounds from the device set for Ring output (☞P. 119).

3 Press switch for 2+ seconds.

- Call is connected. (Alternatively, press on FOMA terminal to connect.)

When a video-phone call is received

- Press switch to send image set in Substitute image (☞P. 85). Press [Me] on FOMA terminal to switch and send camera image. (☞P. 83)

4 Press switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

- The call is disconnected. (Alternatively, press PWR on FOMA terminal to disconnect.)

Note

- Call may be answered accidentally if connected while ring tone is ringing. Disconnect when not in use.
- Do not press switch repeatedly. Call may be placed and received automatically.
- Do not wrap cord for earphone/microphone with switch around FOMA terminal handset. Internal antenna may not work properly.
- Placing cord for earphone/microphone with switch near internal antenna causes noise.
- Secure plug. Sound may not be audible if not completely inserted.
- A beep sounds when plug is inserted only halfway during a call. This is not a malfunction.
- A pop may sound when power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.
- Do not forcefully pull rubber earphone/microphone terminal cover. May damage cover.

Auto Answer Set

Answering Calls Automatically with Earphone

Default setting: OFF

Automatically connect voice/video-phone calls received while flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- Set time before call is automatically connected (Receive time).
- Auto answer set is not available when earphone/microphone with switch is not connected.

1 In stand-by, press ● 5 JKL 7 PQRS.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Phone settings*** → ***Auto answer set*** from Top menu.
- Auto answer set screen appears.

2 Press 1 [ON: set].

- Receive time entry screen appears.

To disable

- Press 2 ABC.

3 Enter Receive time (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) and press ●.

- Call is automatically answered after two seconds if ● is pressed without entering time. (The default setting is ***2 seconds***.)
- Calls are answered without ringing or vibrating when set to ***000 seconds***.

Note

- Calls from those set for Reject calls or Accept calls are not answered automatically.
- Set different Auto answer set and Record message ring times (☞P. 70).
- Voice Mail Service (☞P. 452) and Call Forwarding Service (☞P. 456) may be prioritized if Auto answer set is set to same time.
  To prioritize Auto answer set, set Receive time shorter than for Record message, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- For video-phone calls, the image set in Substitute image (☞P. 85) is sent to the other party. Setting can be switched to send camera image instead. (☞P. 83)

Resetting Settings

Restore default values.

- Refer to “Menu Lists” on P. 528 to P. 533 for default settings.

1 In stand-by, press ●, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Reset settings*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Reset confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not reset

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

When reset

- The following are not reset (deleted/changed). Refer to respective pages to reset.

Date settings (☞P. 46)	ToDo list (☞P. 417)
Terminal security code (☞P. 140)	Screen memo (☞P. 220)
Owner information (☞P. 434)	Sent/Received and Unsent mail (☞P. 279)
Accept calls list (☞P. 154)	Saved signature (☞P. 288)
Reject calls list (☞P. 156)	Network service settings (☞ P. 452 to P. 466)
Recordings such as Record message (☞P. 68)	Phonebook entries (☞P. 109)
Data box data (☞P. 346, P. 365 and P. 385)	miniSD Memory Card data (☞P. 380)
Camera images (☞P. 346 and P. 385)	Text memo (☞P. 445)
Select language (☞P. 45)	Money calculator (☞P. 441)
Alarm (☞P. 413)	User dictionary (☞P. 523)
Schedule (☞P. 430)	Download dictionary (☞P. 524)

- Refer to P. 230 for details on resetting i-mode.
- Refer to P. 292 for details on resetting mail settings.

Deleting All Saved Data

Delete all saved data and return all functions to default settings.

- Terminal security code returns to default number (***0000***).
- Protected data in FOMA terminal is also deleted.
- Other functions are not available while deleting. Alarms and receiving calls/mail are also not available while deleting.
- Recharge battery before deleting data. If battery level is low, data may not be completely deleted.
- Do not turn off handset when deleting.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

● Melodies in ***Pre-install*** folder in Melody of Data box and still pictures, GIF animations, and Flash movies in ***Pre-install*** folder in My picture of Data box are not deleted. However, i-αppli, Chara-den, i-motion and Deco-mail images are deleted.

Deleted data	Phonebook, still picture/movie/melody/Chara-den of Data box, i-αppli, mail, Message R/F, bookmarks, screen memo, download dictionary, Record message, Voice memo, Text memo, ToDo list, Alarm settings, money calculator, Received calls, Redial, Mail history, URL history, signature, User dictionary, e-book bookmarks, folders*, chat mail, SMS, i-αppli mail (Dimo) data, mail templates, Record messages (including recorded voice guidance), data read by Bar code reader, schedules (including saved/changed holidays)
Data not deleted (returns to default settings)	Functions that can be reset (☞P. 448) and the following functions return to default settings. ● Stand-by display, ring tone, Record message reply message, folder name, phrases, memory term item, general settings, terminal security code, Date settings, Top menu icons, Shortcut menu, call duration, Personalize setting, reply message, USSD, owner information (excluding own number), mail member, entered URL, Last URL, international prefix, i-αppli history, My picture of Data box, i-motion, melodies, Chara-den setting, mail setting, i-mode setting, i-αppli setting

* Preset folders are not deleted but folder names return to default settings.

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 MNO 8 TUV 1 .,@.

● Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Security*** → ***Delete all data*** → ***Delete user data*** from Top menu.
● Security code entry screen appears.

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits), press ●, select *Yes* and press ●.

To not delete

● Select ***No*** and press ●.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

● ***Delete and restart. OK?*** appears.

To cancel operation

● Select ***No*** and press ●.

4 Select *Yes* and press ●.

● FOMA terminal restarts after deleting.

To cancel operation

● Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

● Download preset i-αppli, Chara-den, i-motion and Deco-mail images from the iMenu site ***SH-MODE***. Packet transmission charges apply when downloading. (☞P. 221, P. 224, P. 310, P. 327)
● Data saved/registered/set in FOMA card or miniSD Memory Card is not deleted.
● Other functions are not available while deleting.
● More time may be required when deleting large amounts of data collectively.

Deleting Secret Data Collectively <Delete All Secret Data>

Delete secret phonebooks, schedules and ToDo lists collectively.

- Available regardless of Secret mode settings.

1 In stand-by, press ● 6 MNO 8 TUV 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Security*** → ***Delete all data*** → ***Del secret data*** from Top menu.
- Security code entry screen appears.

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Delete confirmation screen appears.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Network Services

- Using Network Services from the FOMA Terminal. 452
- Using Voice Mail Service . . . . . <Voice Mail Service>452
- Using Call Waiting Service. . . . . <Call Waiting Service>455
- Using Call Forwarding Service. . . . . <Call Forwarding Service>456
- Using Nuisance Call Barring Service . . . . . <Nuisance Call Barring Service>459
- Sending Handset Number . . . . . <Notify Caller ID Service>459
- Using Caller ID Request Service . . . . . <Caller ID Request Service>460
- Using Dual Network Service. . . . . <Dual Network Service>461
- Switching Guidance Language. . . . . <English Guidance>462
- Using Service Numbers . . . . . <Service Number>463
- Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Call . . . . . <Setting Arrival Call Act>463
- Activating/Deactivating Arrival Actions. . . . . <Set Arrival Act>464
- Setting Remote Control . . . . . <Remote Control>464
- Using Multi Number (Not Yet Available) (Not Yet Available) . . . . . <Multi Number>465
- Using Saved Services . . . . . <Additional Services (USSD)>465

Using Network Services from the FOMA Terminal

Use the following network services on the FOMA terminal.
Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

Service Name	Registration	Fee per month	Page
Voice Mail Service	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 452
Call Waiting Service	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 455
Call Forwarding Service	Necessary	Free	P. 456
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 459
Notify Caller ID Service	Not necessary	Free	P. 459
Caller ID Request Service	Not necessary	Free	P. 460
Call Duration/Fee Display	Not necessary	Free	P. 442
Dual Network Service	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 461
English Guidance	Not necessary	Free	P. 462
Service Number	Not necessary	Free	P. 463
Setting Arrival Call Act	Not necessary	Free	P. 463
Set Arrival Act	Not necessary	Free	P. 464
Remote Control	Not necessary	Free	P. 464

※ Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Barring Service, Dual Network Service all require registration. Refer to the back of this manual for information on registration.

Note

- Network services are operated by connecting to the network service center and are not available while handset is outside the service area.
- Add services to the menu when new network services become available from DoCoMo. (☞P. 465)

Voice Mail Service

Using Voice Mail Service

Stores messages while handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off. Reply message answers incoming voice calls.

- Voice Mail Service is a paid option that requires registration.
- Access recorded messages from anywhere in Japan.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

Note

- Record up to 20 messages of three minutes each.
- Messages are saved for 72 hours.
- Messages simply stating unavailability are also available. Set in Voice Mail Service settings. (☞P. 453)
- Voice calls are regularly available when Voice Mail Service is set to ***Activate***. Video phone is available regardless of Voice Mail Service settings.
- Ring tone sounds for approximately 10 seconds (may be changed: ☞P. 453) when Voice Mail Service is set to ***Activate***. Answer while ringing to connect call. Calls are automatically connected to Voice Mail Service center after set time. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by (☞P. 67) and saved in Received calls (☞P. 62). However, when ringing time is set to ***0 seconds***, they are not saved in Received calls.
- Forward calls manually to Voice Mail Service center by pressing ●5 [Auto forward] while receiving.
- Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by (☞P. 67) and Received calls (☞P. 62).
- Voice Mail Service is automatically stopped if Call Forwarding Service (☞P. 456) is set to ***Activate***.
- Access to Voice Mail Service from FOMA terminal is not available from outside the service area. In such cases, access Voice Mail Services from touch-tone telephones and payphones using Network security code. Remote control settings (☞P. 464) must be set in advance.
- Message requesting caller ID is played when User unset calls are received while Caller ID Request is set to ***Activate***.
- Press # while Reply message is playing to skip the message and switch to record voice memo.
- If Record message is also set, set ring duration for Voice Mail Service shorter to prioritize Voice Mail Service.
- Transmission fees to play messages are required in addition to monthly Voice Mail Service fee.
- When video-phone call is received, even if Voice Mail Service is set to ***Activate***, video-phone call is not connected to Voice Mail Service center and video-phone call is received.

Basic Flow of Voice Mail Service

STEP 1 Activate Voice Mail Service.
STEP 2 Voice call is received.
STEP 3 Connected to Voice Mail Service center if voice call is not answered.
STEP 4 Caller records a message.
STEP 5 Play back message.

Activating/Deactivating Voice Mail Service <Activate/ Deactivate>

Activating Voice Mail Service

- The default setting for ringing time is ***10 seconds***. Ringing time can be changed when first setting Voice mail.

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 1 あ 3 DEF.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Activate*** from Top menu.
- Activate voice mail screen appears.

2 Press 1 あ [Activate].

- Activating confirmation screen appears.

To set ringing time before activating

- Press 2 か, enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) and press ●.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Voice Mail Service is activated and message appears.

To not activate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Deactivating Voice Mail Service

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 1 あ 5 JKL.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Deactivate*** from Top menu.
- Deactivate confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Voice Mail Service is deactivated and message appears.

To not deactivate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Play Back Messages <Play Messages>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 1 あ 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Play messages*** from Top menu.
- Playback confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not play

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

3 Play back messages according to voice guidance.

Note

- When ***** voice mail(s)*** is shown, press ● twice to play back message. If i-αppli is set as stand-by, message disappears when ● is pressed.
- Number that appears is the number of new messages notified by guidance when playing back. Saved messages are not included.
- This function is not available during calls.
- Pressing PWR NO may not end calls after operating according to voice guidance. In such cases, press PWR NO again.

Setting Voice Mail Service Using Voice Guidance <Voice Mail Settings>

Set Voice Mail Service according to voice guidance.

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 1 あ 7 PQRS.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Voice mail settings*** from Top menu.
- Voice mail setting screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not set

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

3 Set Voice Mail Service according to voice guidance.

Note

- This function is not available during calls.
- Pressing PWR NO may not end calls after operating according to voice guidance. In such cases, press PWR NO again.
- If a GIF animation or Flash movie is set for stand-by, 📞 does not appear until animation ends.

Checking for New Messages <Check Messages>

Check the Voice Mail Service center for new messages.

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI 1 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Check messages*** from Top menu.
- After checking, message appears.
- If there are new messages, ***** voice mail(s)*** and 📠 appear in stand-by.

Note

- This function may not recognize messages received after checking for messages.
- Number that appears is the number of new messages notified by guidance when playing back. Saved messages are not included.

Checking and Changing Voice Mail Service Settings <Status Request>

Check Voice Mail Service settings and change activation, deactivation and ringing time settings.

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI 1 6MNO.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Status request*** from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

2 Press ⓒ and enter function number (1 to 3DEF).

To activate

- Press 1 1, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

To change ringing time and start

- Press 1 2, enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) and press ●.

To deactivate

- Press 2, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

To change ringing time

- Press 3, enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) and press ●.

Sounding Alarm when New Message is Stored <Voice Mail Alarm>

Sound ring tone when new message is received.

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI 1 8TUV.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Voice mail alarm*** from Top menu.
- Voice mail alarm setting screen appears.

2 Press 1 [ON: set].

- Alarm is set.

To disable

- Press 2.

Note

- Ring tone set for SMS sounds. (☞P. 113)

Deleting New Message Icon <Delete Display>

Delete 📠 that appears when new message is received.

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI 1 9WXYZ.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Delete display*** from Top menu.
- Delete display setting screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- 📠 disappears.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- If messages are still stored at Voice Mail center, even if 📠 disappears, these messages are not deleted. 📠 reappears when message is checked.

Using Voice Mail Notification Function

Receive SMS (Short message) notifying missed calls received while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.

- Although the Voice mail notification function is one part of the Voice Mail Service, start/stop operations must be performed separately. (Even if Voice Mail Service is stopped, Voice mail notification is still available.)

Activating Voice mail notification

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI 1 0.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Start notification*** from Top menu.
- Start notification screen appears.

2 Select *Yes*, press ●, select *Yes* and press ●.

- Voice mail notification is activated and message appears.

Deactivating Voice mail notification

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 1 あ /.@ ✕ ･°･.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Stop notification*** from Top menu.
- Stop notification screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Voice mail notification is deactivated and message appears.

Checking Voice mail notification settings

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 1 あ /.@ # ﾏﾅｰ.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Voice mail*** → ***Confirm status*** from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

Note

- SMS are received free of charge.
- Up to five Voice mail notification SMS can be received at once.
- Even if a call is received from a caller saved in the phonebook, the phone number is displayed instead of the name.
- Refer to “Network Services Operation Guide” for details.

Call Waiting Service

Using Call Waiting Service

A series of beeps during a call notifies you of another call. Place the current call on hold while answering the other call.

- Call Waiting Service is a paid option that requires registration.
- Cannot be operated from outside the service area.
- Call Waiting is not available for the following.
  - When connected to 110, 119, 118, 117 and 104
  - While dialing or ringing other party
  - When Voice Mail Service is set to ***Activate*** and call is connected to Service center
  - When Call Forwarding Service is set to ***Activate*** and call is being forwarded
- Refer to “Network Services Operation Guide” for details.

Note

- Charges are incurred by caller when call is on hold.
- Beeps sound when call is received during another call, but call cannot be answered unless registered for Call Waiting Service.
- Message requesting caller ID is played when User unset calls are received while Caller ID Request is set to ***Activate***.

Activating/Deactivating Call Waiting Service <Activate/Deactivate>

Activating Call Waiting Service

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 2 ABC 1 あ /.@.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Call waiting*** → ***Activate*** from Top menu.
- Activate call waiting screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Message indicating activation appears.

To not activate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Deactivating Call Waiting Service

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 2 ABC 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Call waiting*** → ***Deactivate*** from Top menu.
- Deactivate call waiting screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Call Waiting Service is deactivated and message appears.

To not deactivate

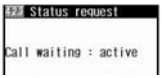
- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- To use Call Waiting, set Arrival call action (☞P. 463) to ***Answer***. If set differently, Call Waiting Service is not available even if Call Waiting Service is set to ***Activate***.

Viewing settings

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 2 ABC 3 DEF.



When active

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Call waiting*** → ***Status request*** from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

Placing current call on hold and answering a voice call

1 When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press .

- Original call is placed on hold and incoming call is connected.

2 Press when finished.

- Original call is reconnected.
- Press to switch between callers.

To end the call on hold

- Press .

Note

- Video-phone calls cannot be placed on hold to answer incoming voice/video-phone calls.
- Voice calls cannot be placed on hold to answer incoming video-phone calls.

Disconnecting current call and answering a voice call

1 When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press .

- Ring tone for incoming call sounds. Call is automatically forwarded to Voice Mail center if Voice Mail Service is set to ***Activate***. Press to forward call manually.

2 Press .

- Incoming call is connected.

Note

- Video-phone calls cannot be disconnected to answer incoming voice/video-phone calls.

Placing current call on hold and placing a separate call

Place the current call on hold and place a separate call to another person.

1 Dial other person's phone number during a call.

- Alternatively, use phonebook.

2 Press .

- Speak to the caller of the incoming call.
- Original call is automatically placed on hold.
- Press to switch between calls.

3 Press when finished with the new call.

- New call is disconnected.
- Press to reconnect original call.

Note

- Video-phone calls cannot be placed on hold to place a new call.
- Voice calls cannot be placed on hold to place a new video-phone call.

Call Forwarding Service

Using Call Forwarding Service

Forward voice/video-phone calls received on FOMA terminal to a designated phone number (for landline phones, mobile phones or video-phones, etc.) while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.

- Call Forwarding Service is a free option that requires registration.
- Calls are automatically forwarded while handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.
- Toll-free numbers and three-digit numbers such as 110 are not available as forwarding destinations.
- Forwarding for video-phone calls are only available for video-phones that comply with 3G-324M (☞P. 74).
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

Note

- Set one forwarding destination.
- Voice/Video-phone calls are regularly available when Call Forwarding Service is set to ***Activate***.
- For video-phone calls, the caller sees a message that the call is being forwarded. The forward guidance is not played.
- Ring tone sounds for approximately seven seconds (can be changed) when Call Forwarding Service is set to ***Activate***. Answer while ringing to connect call. Calls are automatically forwarded to the set destination after set time passes. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by and saved in Received calls. Calls are not saved in Received calls if ringing time is set to ***0 seconds***.

Note

- Collect calls (receiver accepts charges) are not connected when Call Forwarding Service is set to ***Activate***.
- Press ● 3 [Forward calls] while receiving to forward calls manually.
- Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded.
- Call Forwarding is automatically stopped if Voice Mail Service (☞P. 452) is set to ***Activate***.
- Access to Call Forwarding Service from FOMA terminal is not available from outside the service area. In such cases, access Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone telephones and payphones using network security code. Remote control settings (☞P. 464) must be set in advance.
- Message requesting caller ID is played when User unset calls are received while Caller ID Request is set to ***Activate***.

Basic Flow of Call Forwarding Service

STEP 1 Register forwarding destination.
STEP 2 Activate Call Forwarding Service.
STEP 3 Call is received.
STEP 4 Call is automatically forwarded to the destination if not answered.

Activating/Deactivating Call Forwarding Service <Activate/Deactivate>

Activating Call Forwarding Service

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 3 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Call forwarding*** → ***Activate*** from Top menu.
- Activate call forwarding screen appears.

2 Press 3 [Forwarding number].

- Select phone number entry screen appears.

3 Press 1 [Input directly].

- Phone number entry screen appears.

To enter from phonebook

- Press 2, select from phonebook and press ●.

4 Enter phone number and press ●.

5 Press 2 [Set ringing time].

- Ringing time entry screen appears.

6 Enter ringing time (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) and press ●.

- The default setting is ***7 seconds***.

7 Press 1 [Activate].

- Activate confirmation screen appears.

8 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Call Forwarding Service is activated and message appears.

To not activate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- Call costs stemming from forwarding calls from the registered area to destination is charged to the subscriber. Charges may increase if forwarding destination is set and FOMA terminal is left turned off.
- Video-phone calls can only be forwarded to 3G-324M (☞P. 74) compliant devices. Check before setting.
- Calls are automatically forwarded without sounding ring tone while handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off. Call cost for forwarding to destination is charged to the subscriber.
- Forwarding is discontinued if requested from destination and deemed necessary by DoCoMo.
- Calls forwarded to PBX systems, pagers* and faxes may confuse the caller.
- Answer while ring tone is ringing to connect call.

* As of January 2001, DoCoMo paging service is named "QUICKCAST".

Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

1 **In stand-by, press ● 4 3 2.**

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Call forwarding*** → ***Deactivate*** from Top menu.
- Deactivate confirmation screen appears.

2 **Select *Yes* and press ●.**

- Call Forwarding Service is deactivated and message appears.

To not deactivate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Forwarding calls received during calls

Forward calls received during calls (or during i-mode stand-by) to forwarding destinations.

1 **During a call, press ● 3.**

- Received call is forwarded to set destination.

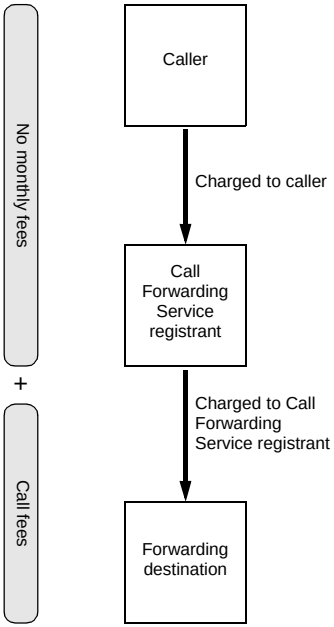
Forwarding call while ring tone is sounding

1 **While ring tone is sounding, press ● 3.**

- Received call is forwarded to set destination.

Call Forwarding Service fees

■ Call fees



※ Operations for setting destination, activating and deactivating are not charged.

Changing Forwarding Destination <Register Number>

1 **In stand-by, press ● 4 3 3.**

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Call forwarding*** → ***Register number*** from Top menu.

2 **Press 1 [Input directly].**

- Phone number entry screen appears.

To enter from phonebook

- Press 2, select from phonebook and press ●.

3 **Edit forwarding number and press ●.**

- Change forwarding number confirmation screen appears.

4 **Press 1 [Change number].**

- Forwarding number is changed.

To change forwarding number before activating

- Press 2.

Using Voice Mail Service <Forwarded Party Busy>

- Registration for Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply) is required.

1 **In stand-by, press ● 4 3 4.**

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Call forwarding*** → ***Forwarded party busy*** from Top menu.

2 **Select *Yes* and press ●.**

- Voice Mail Service for Forwarded party busy is activated and message appears.

To not set

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- When video-phone call is received, even if Voice Mail Service is set to ***Activate***, video-phone call is not connected to Voice Mail Service center and busy signal sounds.

Checking Call Forwarding Service Settings

1 **In stand-by, press ● 4 3 5.**

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Call forwarding*** → ***Status request*** from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

Nuisance Call Barring Service

Using Nuisance Call Barring Service

Bar prank calls, persistent sales calls, and other calls from specified individuals. Save up to 30 callers.

- Nuisance Call Barring Service is a paid option that requires registration.
- Cannot be operated from outside the service area.
- Refer to “Network Services Operation Guide” for details.

Barring Last Caller <Register Caller>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 4 GHI 1 あ/.@.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Bar nuisance calls*** → ***Register caller*** from Top menu.
- Register confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Phone number is set and message appears.
- Last caller is registered for Nuisance Call Barring Service.

When 30 numbers are already saved

- ***Exceeds limit. Delete oldest entry and save new one?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to overwrite.

Deleting All Saved Numbers <Delete All Entries>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 4 GHI 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Bar nuisance calls*** → ***Delete all entries*** from Top menu.
- Delete confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Phone numbers are deleted and message appears.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Deleting last saved number

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 4 GHI 3 DEF.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Bar nuisance calls*** → ***Delete last entry*** from Top menu.
- Delete confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Phone number is deleted and message appears.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- Use ***Delete all entries*** or ***Delete last entry*** to delete phone numbers. Deleting only specified numbers cannot be performed.

When other services are active

The following actions are taken when various services are activated.

Service	Response
Voice Mail Service	Rejection message is played. Message is not recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Rejection message is played. Call is not forwarded.
Call Waiting Service	Rejection message is played.
Caller ID Request Service	Rejection message is played.

Note

- Barring can only be registered for the caller of the last received call. Alternatively, follow guidance.
- Reject callers with no ID.
- Calls are disconnected without guidance when video-phone calls are received from rejected callers.
- International calls cannot be rejected.
- Rejected numbers cannot be checked. Keep a separate memo and note rejected numbers.
- Calls from rejected callers are not recorded in Received calls.

Notify Caller ID Service

Sending Handset Number

Send handset number with outgoing calls. Handset number is important personal information. Use caution when setting.

- Cannot be operated from outside the service area.
- The default setting is ***Set to unsend***.
- Refer to “Network Services Operation Guide” for details.

Sending Handset Number <Notify Caller ID>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 5 2.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Notify caller ID*** → ***Notify caller ID*** from Top menu.
- Network security code entry screen appears.

2 Enter network security code (four digits).

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Notify caller ID is set and message appears.

To not send

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- Caller ID Service is only available for compliant phone devices.
- Handset number is important personal information. Use caution when setting.
- Set caller ID settings when phone number is entered or shown using phonebook, Redial or Received calls.
- If guidance requesting caller ID is played when calling, set Notify caller ID to ***Set to send*** and call again.

Confirming Settings <Status Request>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 5 1.

When set to not send

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Notify caller ID*** → ***Status request*** from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

Caller ID Request Service

Using Caller ID Request Service

Play *Caller ID Request* and automatically disconnect unknown callers. Know who's calling.

- Caller ID Request Service does not require registration.
- Service is only available when callers have intentionally withheld their caller ID. (Excludes ***Reject payphone*** and ***Reject not support***.)
- Caller is charged for duration of guidance message.
- Cannot be operated from outside the service area.
- The default setting is ***Deactivate***.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

Note

- Caller ID request message is played to unidentified callers.
- Caller ID Request Service settings are only available from handset with contracted FOMA card inserted. Remote operation is not available. Transmission/Calling charges are not incurred when activating/deactivating.
- User unset voice calls received are not recorded in Received calls or missed calls when Caller ID Request is set to ***Activate***.
- Caller ID Request Service is prioritized when set together with Reject by reason of non-disclosure (☞P. 158).

When other services are active

The following actions are taken when Caller ID Request Service is set along with the various services.

Service	Response to unidentified callers
Voice Mail Service	Caller ID request message is played. Message is not recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Caller ID request message is played. Call is not forwarded.
Call Waiting Service	Caller ID request message is played.
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Rejection message is played when called by a rejected nuisance number.

Activating Caller ID Request Service <Activate>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 6 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Caller ID request*** → ***Activate*** from Top menu.
- Activate confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Caller ID Request Service is activated and message appears.

To not activate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Deactivating Caller ID Request Service <Deactivate>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 6 MNO 2 ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Caller ID request*** → ***Deactivate*** from Top menu.
- Deactivate confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Caller ID Request Service is deactivated and message appears.

To not deactivate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Confirming Settings <Status Request>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI 6 MNO 3 DEF.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings)→ ***Services*** → ***Caller ID request*** → ***Status request*** from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

Dual Network Service

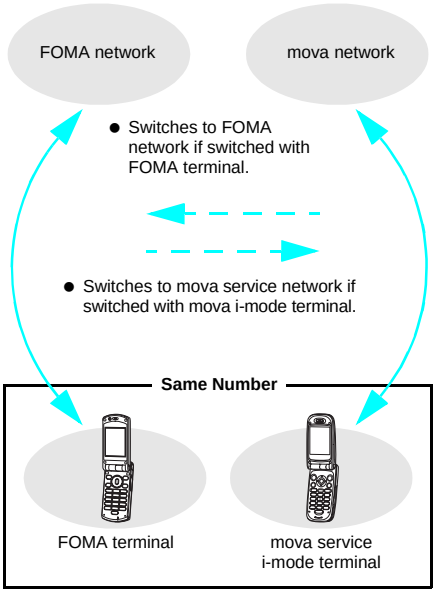
Using Dual Network Service

Selectively use high quality FOMA services and wide range mova i-mode services with the same phone number.

- Dual Network Service is a paid option that requires registration.
- Switch among all networks including i-mode center and network services center with Dual Network Service.
- Cannot be operated from outside the service area.
- Refer to “Network Services Operation Guide” for details.
- Operations after switching with FOMA terminal are unavailable.

Switching Dual Network Service

Switch between networks using unavailable FOMA terminal or mova service i-mode terminal in the service area.



※ Certain services are restricted.
※ FOMA and mova cannot be used simultaneously.

Note

- FOMA i-mode is available from FOMA terminal. i-mode is also available from mova. However, certain services are restricted. Other restrictions and cautions may apply for various i-mode services when using FOMA terminal or mova. Refer to “Network Services Operation Guide” for details.

Switching to FOMA Network

Switch handset to FOMA network.

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI ✕ 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Dual network*** → ***Switching*** from Top menu.
- Network security code entry screen appears.

2 Enter network security code (four digits).

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Network switch confirmation screen appears.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Network is switched.

To not switch

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Check signal status before switching. indicates signal strength, not availability of network service.

Confirming Settings <Status Request>

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI 2ABC.

- Alternatively, select (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Dual network*** → ***Status request*** from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

English Guidance

Switching Guidance Language

Change language of audio guidance for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and other services. Also set language of guidances played when called, such as Caller ID Request Service.

- Japanese and English are available.
- Set for outgoing and incoming calls.
- Cannot be operated from outside the service area.
- If sender is subscribed to this service, sender's settings are prioritized.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

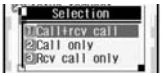
Available guidances

	Language	Details
Outgoing (Played when setting network services)	Japanese	All guidances in Japanese.
	English	All guidances in English.
Incoming (Played when called)	Japanese	All guidances in Japanese.
	Japanese+ English	English follows Japanese guidance. (English only is not available.)*
	English+ Japanese	Japanese follows English guidance.*

- The default settings are ***Japanese***.

* If between DoCoMo mobile phones, outgoing guidance settings are prioritized.

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI #1.



- Alternatively, select (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***English guidance*** → ***Guidance setting*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1あ [Call+rcv call].

- Outgoing guidance selection screen.

To set only outgoing guidances

- Press 2ABC.

To set only incoming guidances

- Press 3さ. Proceed to step 4.

3 Press 2ABC [English].

- Set guidance for outgoing settings to English.
- Incoming guidance selection screen.

To set Japanese guidance

- Press 1あ.

4 Press 2ABC [Japanese+English].

- Set guidance for incoming settings to Japanese+English.
- Does not appear if 2ABC [Call only] is selected in step 2.
- Guidance is set.

To set Japanese guidance

- Press 1あ.

To set English guidance first

- Press 3さ.

Confirming Settings <Status Request>

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI #マナー 2ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***English guidance*** → ***Status request*** from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

Service Number

Using Service Numbers

Phone numbers for *Repair enquiries* and *General enquiries* are stored in FOMA card phonebook by default. Use menu operations to call.

Repair Enquiries

Refer to “Troubleshooting” (☞P. 550 to P. 551) before requesting repairs.

Note

- If contact numbers for General enquiries or Repair enquiries are not stored on the FOMA card, this function is not available.
- The displayed screen or number to dial may vary depending on the FOMA card.

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI i 0わを 1あ.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Service number*** → **ドコモ故障問合せ** (Repair enquiries) from Top menu.

General Enquiries

- Refer to back of this manual for service numbers.

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI i 0わを 2ABC.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Service number*** → **ドコモ総合案内・受付** (General enquiries) from Top menu.

Setting Arrival Call Act

Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Call

Select actions for calls that are received while engaged in another call. Useful if not registered for Call Waiting Service.

- Set arrival actions to ***Activate*** to receive calls during another call. (☞P. 464)
- Refer to “Network Services Operation Guide” for details.

Available actions

Voice mail	Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center regardless of Call Waiting Service settings. Messages are stored regardless of Voice Mail Service settings.
Call forwarding	Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded regardless of Call Waiting Service settings. Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded regardless of Call Forwarding Service settings.
Call rejection	Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically rejected.
Answer	Follows Call Waiting Service settings if activated. If deactivated, one of the following applies. ● Disconnect current voice call and answer incoming voice call. ● Manually connect incoming voice calls to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or reject. ● Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service settings are used if set.

- To use Call Waiting Service, set Arrival call action to ***Answer***.
- Received calls are noted in call histories if ***Voice mail***, ***Call forwarding***, or ***Call rejection*** is set.
- The default setting is ***Answer***.

1 In stand-by, press ●4GHI 9WXYZ.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Arrival call act*** from Top menu.
- Arrival call action setting screen appears.

2 Press service number (1あ to 4GHI).

Note

- Settings are not applied during video-phone calls, while receiving video-phone call, or during 64K data communications.

Set Arrival Act

Activating/Deactivating Arrival Actions

Set arrival actions to *Activate* to activate settings made in Arrival call actions (☞P. 463).

- Manually connect incoming voice calls to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- Activate/Deactivate/Check for arrival actions settings are not available from outside the service area.
- The default setting is ***Deactivate***.

Activating Arrival Actions <Activate>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 8 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Set arrival act*** → ***Activate*** from Top menu.
- Activate confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Arrival action is activated and message appears.

To not activate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Deactivating Arrival Actions <Deactivate>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 8 2.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Set arrival act*** → ***Deactivate*** from Top menu.
- Deactivate confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Arrival action is deactivated and message appears.

To not deactivate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Confirming Settings <Status Request>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 8 3.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Set arrival act*** → ***Status request*** from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

Remote Control

Setting Remote Control

Set Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service remotely from landline phones and NTT payphones. Remote control is also available from outside the FOMA service area. To perform remote operations, set Remote control to *Activate* in advance.

- Activate/Deactivate/Check for remote control settings are not available from outside the service area.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

Activating Remote Control <Activate>

Set to activate remote control.

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 0 1.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Remote control*** → ***Activate*** from Top menu.
- Activate confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Remote control is activated and message appears.

To not activate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Deactivating Remote Control <Deactivate>

Set to deactivate remote control.

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 0 2.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Remote control*** → ***Deactivate*** from Top menu.
- Deactivate confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- Remote control is deactivated and message appears.

To not deactivate

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Confirming Settings <Status Request>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 0 3.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Remote control*** → ***Status request*** from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

Accessing network services from other phones

Set Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service remotely from landline phones, NTT payphones, DoCoMo mobile phones and car phones using FOMA terminal phone number and four-digit network security code.

- Set Remote control to ***Activate*** in advance.

1 Dial the following number.

090-310-XXXX

- Replace XXXX with one of the following four digits.

Voice Mail Service
- Activate 1411
- Deactivate 1410
- Play back new message 1417
- Play back saved message, set service 1416
- Set ring time 1419

Call Forwarding Service
- Various service settings 1429
- Activate (Set forwarding destination) 1421
- Deactivate 1420

2 Set following guidance.

- Follow guidance and enter FOMA terminal phone number and network security code.

Multi Number

Using Multi Number (Not Yet Available)

As of February 2005, this service is not yet available.

Additional Services (USSD)

Using Saved Services

Save up to 10 new DoCoMo network services and use.

Special numbers and service codes (USSD)

- Special numbers or service codes for new services are notified when new services are available.
- Save these new service special numbers or codes in the FOMA terminal.
- When there is a service code, it is saved as a USSD on the FOMA terminal.

Saving Services <USSD>

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI, select ■*Additional service*, and press ●. Then press 1 あ.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Additional service*** → ***USSD*** from Top menu.
- Save USSD screen appears.

2 Press 📷 1 あ [Edit].

- Service name entry screen appears.

3 Enter service name and press ●.

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- Command entry screen appears.

4 Enter special number or service code.

5 Press ●.

- New service is added.

Using Saved Services

1 In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI, select ■*Additional service* and press ●. Then press 1 あ.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Additional service*** → ***USSD*** from Top menu.
- Save USSD screen appears.

2 Select service and press ● [Call].

Deleting Registered Services

1 **In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI, select ■*Additional service* and press ●. Then press 1 あ.**

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Additional service*** → ***USSD*** from Top menu.
- Save USSD screen appears.

2 **Select service to delete and press 📷 2 ABC [Delete one].**

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all services

- Press 📷 3 さ, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

3 **Select *Yes* and press ●.**

- Service is deleted.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Changing Receive Display for Saved Service <Reply Message>

1 **In stand-by, press ● 4 GHI, select ■*Additional service* and press ●. Then press 2 ABC.**

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***Services*** → ***Additional service*** → ***Reply message*** from Top menu.
- USSD reply message registering screen appears.

2 **Select Receive display and press 📷 1 あ [Edit].**

- Received display name entry screen appears.

To delete one

- Press 📷 2 ABC, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

To delete all

- Press 📷 3 さ, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

3 **Enter Receive display name and press ●.**

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- Command entry screen appears.

4 **Enter special number or service code and press ●.**

- New name is added or changed.

Data Communication

- Data Communication 468
- General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication 469
- Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC 470
- Installing the Communication Setting File 471
- Communications Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software 475
- Communications Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software 485
- Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX) 495
- AT Command List. 497

Data Communication

Data Communication Available from the FOMA Terminal

FOMA terminal communication formats fall into three categories: packet transmission, 64K data communications, and data transfer.

- The FOMA terminal does not support FAX transmissions.
- The FOMA terminal supports data communication with musea™, sigmarion ® II and sigmarion ® III. Update musea™ and sigmarion ® II before using. Refer to the DoCoMo web page for details on how to update.

Packet transmission

Charges incurred are based on the amount of data sent and received. When you are only connected to the network and are not sending or receiving data, no communication charges are incurred. Remain connected to the network, with no charge, and only send or receive data when necessary. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA packet transmission, such as the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service ***mopera***, and send and receive data at speeds up to 64kbps and 384kbps, respectively (connections are made on a best-effort basis and may vary depending on communication environment and network traffic).

For packet transmission, connect the FOMA terminal to a PC and perform appropriate settings. This is best suited for when sending mail text data or other relatively small amounts of data at high speeds.

Sending or receiving large files will lead to higher transmission charges.

Making voice calls while performing packet transmissions with a PC or other devices is possible. (☞P. 404)

64K data communications

Charges incurred are based on the connection time. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA 64K data communications, such as the DoCoMo Internet Communication Service ***mopera***, or a synchronous ISDN 64K access point.

Perform appropriate settings and connect the FOMA terminal to your PC to use 64K data communications. Best suited for sending and receiving comparatively large amounts of data, such as downloading Data box contents.

Data transfer

Transfer or exchange data using a FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or Ir exchange. Charges are not incurred. Send or receive data such as phonebook entries, sent/received messages, and bookmarks.

Use infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to another terminal or mobile phone. Use either the FOMA USB cable or infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC.

Things to Keep in Mind

Internet service provider fees

When using the Internet, usage fees are charged by the Internet service provider. These usage fees, paid to the Internet service provider, are separate from the FOMA service fee. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about usage fees.

The DoCoMo Internet Connection Service ***mopera*** requires no subscription and charges no monthly usage fee.

Host (Internet service provider, etc.) settings

Hosts for packet transmission and 64K data communications differ. For packet transmission, use a host that supports FOMA packet transmission, and for 64K data communications, use a host that supports FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is not possible.
- Connecting to PHS 64K/32K data communication data access points (such as PIAFS) is not possible.

User authentication

Depending on the host, user authentication (ID and password) may be necessary when connecting. In such cases, enter your ID and password using communication software (dial-up network) to connect. Your ID and password are provided by your host Internet service provider or host network administrator. Contact them for more information.

Packet transmission and 64K data communications conditions

The following conditions are necessary for communication using the FOMA terminal.

- PC must support FOMA USB cable.
- Must be within the FOMA service area.
- For packet transmission, access point must be compatible with FOMA packet transmission.
- For 64K data communications, host must support FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communications.

However, even if above conditions are met, communication may not be possible due to a busy base station or poor signal conditions.

Note

- When performing packet transmission, the device connected to your FOMA terminal must be a JATE (Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Equipment) authorized product.

Data communication terminology

APN (Access Point Name)
Character string identifying an Internet service provider or internal company LAN. ***mopera.ne.jp*** is the APN for mopera.

cid (Context Identifier)
Registration number assigned when an APN is registered to the FOMA terminal. On the FOMA terminal, numbers 1 to 10 can be used.

DNS (Domain Name System)
System that converts domain names (for example, ***mopera.ne.jp***) into IP addresses used on the computer.

IrDA (Infrared Data Association)
Organization that establishes the standard for infrared exchange.

IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)
Standard created for the purpose of transferring data between mobile phones or PDAs (mobile data terminals). Exchange phone numbers and schedules between mobile phones or PDAs with IrMC-compliant infrared terminals.

OBEX (Object Exchange)
One of the international data communication standards. Enables sending and receiving data between OBEX-compatible devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)
Service quality. Technology for using lines as the user intends, during communication. Set communication speed for connection, etc. on the FOMA terminal. (☞P. 500, P. 506, P. 507)

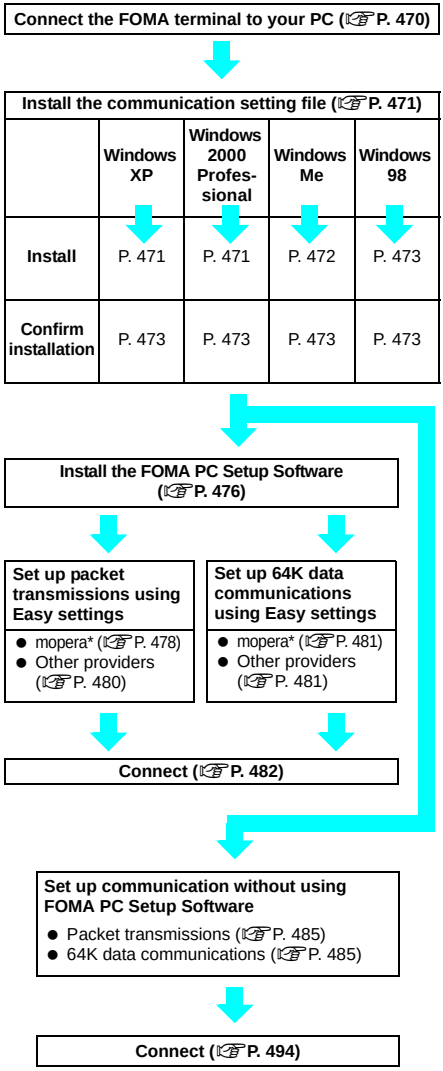
W-CDMA
One of the third-generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000) recognized as a global standard. The FOMA terminal is compliant with the W-CDMA standard.

W-TCP
A TCP parameter for maximizing TCP/IP transfer capabilities when using packet transmission on the FOMA network. Use this communication setting to maximize the communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

Users with PC administrator authority
Authority that makes access to all OS systems possible, when using Windows XP and Windows 2000 Professional. On a single PC, at least one person is set as a user with PC administrator authority. Normally, users without PC administrator authority cannot install drivers.

General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication

This section describes the preparation required to connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, and use packet transmission and 64K data communications. The general flow is as shown below.



* ***mopera*** is the Internet Connection Service provided by DoCoMo. Users who wish for simple Internet connection are recommended to set up communication using ***mopera***.

Communication Setting File

To connect the FOMA terminal to your PC for data communication, installation of the communication setting file from the included CD-ROM is required. (☞P. 471 to P. 473)

Note

- If installation fails and ***FOMA SH700i*** is not listed in the screens of step 3 on P. 474, uninstall the communication setting file (☞P. 474) and install again.
- If, for some reason, the PC is unable to recognize the FOMA terminal, uninstall the communication setting file (☞P. 474) and install again.
- If the wrong OS driver is installed using auto-search settings, it will not run properly. First uninstall the communication setting file, and then install it again correctly.

FOMA PC Setup Software/ FirstPass PC Software

Install the FOMA PC Setup Software from the included CD-ROM to PC and make a variety of necessary settings to perform packet transmission and 64K data communications connecting the FOMA terminal to PC. (☞P. 475)
FirstPass PC Software enables access to FirstPass supported sites via a PC Web browser with user certificates obtained by the FOMA terminal.
Refer to FirstPassManual on the CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format). Download the newest version of Adobe Reader from the Adobe Systems Incorporated web page if not installed (additional transmission fees are charged). Refer to the Adobe web page for details.

Confirming the Operating Environment

Communication setting file and FOMA PC Setup Software have the following system requirements.

Item	System requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible
OS	Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP (all Japanese versions)
Required memory*2	Windows 98, Windows Me: At least 32 MB Windows 2000 Professional: At least 64 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB
Hard disk*2	At least 5MB free space

*1 A USB port (USB specification 1.1/2.0-compliant) is required.

*2 Required memory and hard disk are for the FOMA PC Setup Software operating environment. May differ depending on the PC system configuration.

The FirstPass PC Software has the following system requirements.

Item	System requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible
OS	Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP (all Japanese versions) (not compatible with Windows 98)
Required memory*1	Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional: At least 32 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB
Hard disk*1	At least 10 MB free space
Browser	Internet Explorer 5.5 and above ※ Internet Explorer 6.0 and above for Windows XP

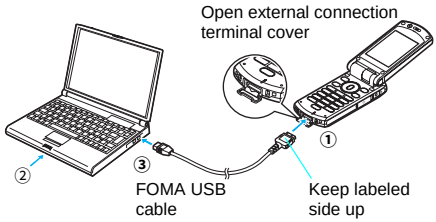
*1 Required memory and hard disk space may vary depending on system configuration.

- Depending on the operating environment, use of the software may not be possible. DoCoMo holds no responsibility for responding to inquiries or guaranteeing operation in environments other than those specified above.

Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC with both devices turned on. If the communication setting file is already installed, appears on the FOMA terminal screen.

Connecting Using the FOMA USB Cable



1 Insert the FOMA side of the FOMA USB cable into the external connection terminal on the FOMA terminal (①).

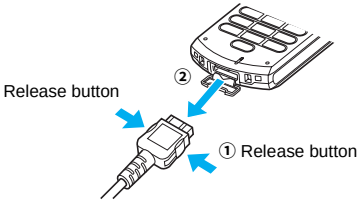
2 Insert the included CD-ROM into your PC (②).

3 Insert the PC side of the FOMA USB cable into the PC USB connector (③).

- When connecting for the first time, the PC automatically recognizes that the FOMA USB cable is connected and displays a wizard screen.

How to remove

1 Press the release buttons on the FOMA terminal side of the FOMA USB cable (①), and pull out from the FOMA terminal (②).



2 Pull the FOMA USB cable out from the PC.

Note

- Connecting the FOMA terminal while charging in the desktop holder is also possible.

Installing the Communication Setting File

Installing the Communication Setting File (Driver)

Installing on Windows XP

Install on the PC using a user with administrator authority.

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.

- A wizard startup screen appears.

2 Select 一覧または特定の場所からインストールする（詳細） (Install from the list or a particular location (Advanced)) and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen to specify the search location appears.

3 Specify the search location.

1 Select 次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する (Find best driver in the next location).
2 Select 次の場所を含める (Include next location) and click 参照 (Browse).
Specify the directory below.
<CD-ROM drive name>:¥USBDRV
3 Click 次へ (Next).
Installation begins. When installation is completed, the finish screen of the search wizard appears.

4 If 新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了 (Search wizard for new hardware completed) appears, click 完了 (Finish).

- Installation finishes, and the search window for the next driver appears.

5 Continue to install other drivers.

- Repeat steps 2 to 4 above, and install the following drivers in order.
①Modem driver ②OBEX port driver
③Command port driver
When installation of all the drivers is completed, a pop-up screen with the message 新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました (New hardware has been installed and is ready to be used) appears from the task bar indicator for several seconds.
- Confirm the types and names of the devices to be installed. (☞P. 473)

Installing on Windows 2000 Professional

Install on the PC using a user with administrator authority.

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC and click 次へ (Next).

- Search method selection screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

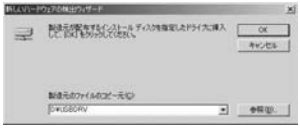
2 Select デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）(Find the best driver for this device (Recommended)) and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen to specify the search location appears.

3 Select 場所を指定 (Specify location) and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen to specify the location to copy from appears.

4 Specify the location to copy from and click *OK*.



- A search completed screen appears.
- Specify the directory below as the location to copy from.
  <CD-ROM drive name>:¥USBDRV
- When **参照** (Browse) is clicked, select any file from the directory above and click **開く** (Open).

5 If ドライバファイルの検索 ハードウェアデバイスのドライバファイル検索が終了しました。(Driver file search for hardware device completed) appears, click 次へ (Next).

- Installation begins. When installation is completed, the finish screen of the search wizard appears.
- The folder name that appears will differ depending on the PC you are using.

6 Click 完了 (Finish).

- Installation finishes, and the search window for the next driver appears.

7 Continue to install other drivers.

- Repeat steps 2 to 6 above, and install the following drivers in order.
  ①Modem driver ②OBEX port driver
  ③Command port driver
- Confirm the types and names of the devices to be installed. (☞P. 473)

Installing on Windows Me

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, select ドライバの場所を指定する（詳しい知識のある方向け）(Specify the driver location (For experienced users)) and click 次へ (Next).

- Search location screen appears.

2 Specify the search location.

1. Select **使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）** (Find the best driver for the devices in use (Recommended)).
2. Select **検索場所の指定** (Look in) and click **参照** (Browse).
   Specify the directory below.
   <CD-ROM drive name>:¥USBDRV
3. Click **次へ** (Next).
   A screen indicating the completion of installation preparation appears.

3 If 新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの開始 (Start search wizard for new hardware) appears, click 次へ (Next).

- Installation begins. When installation is completed, the finish screen of the search wizard appears.
- The folder name that appears will differ depending on the PC you are using.

4 Click 完了 (Finish).

- Installation finishes, and the search window for the next driver appears.

5 Continue to install other drivers.

- Repeat steps 2 to 4 above, and install the following drivers in order.
  ①Modem driver ②OBEX port driver
  ③Command port driver
- Confirm the types and names of the devices to be installed. (☞P. 473)

Installing on Windows 98

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC and click 次へ (Next).

- Search method selection screen appears.

2 Select 使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨） (Find the best driver for the devices in use (Recommended)) and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen to specify the search location appears.

3 Specify the search location.

1. Select **検索場所の指定** (Look in) and click **参照** (Browse).
   Specify the directory below.
   <CD-ROM drive name>:¥USBDRV
2. Click **次へ** (Next).
   An installation confirmation screen appears.

4 Select 更新されたドライバ（推奨） (Updated drivers (Recommended)) and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen indicating the completion of installation preparation appears.

5 If 次のデバイス用のドライバファイルを検索します。 (Search driver file for next device) appears, click 次へ (Next).

- Installation begins.
- The folder name that appears will differ depending on the PC you are using.

6 If 新しいハードウェアデバイスに必要なソフトウェアがインストールされました。 (Software required for new hardware device installed.) appears, click 完了 (Finish).

- Installation finishes, and the search window for the next driver appears.

7 次の新しいドライバを検索しています： (Searching for next new driver:) appears. Press 次へ (Next) and install other drivers.

- Repeat steps 2 to 6 above, and install the following drivers in order.
  ①Modem driver ②OBEX port driver
  ③Command port driver
- Confirm the types and names of the devices to be installed.

Confirming the Installed Communication Setting File (Driver)

If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, set up and communications are not possible.
Example: Confirming Windows XP drivers.

1 Click スタート (Start) menu → コントロールパネル (Control Panel), and then click the パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and Maintenance) icon → システム (System) icon.

- System properties screen appears.

On Windows 2000 Professional, Me, and 98

- Select **スタート** (Start) menu → **設定** (Settings) → **コントロールパネル** (Control Panel), and then double-click the **システム** (System) icon.

2 Click the ハードウェア (Hardware) tab and then click デバイスマネージャ (Device Manager).

- The device manager screen appears.

On Windows 2000 Professional

- Click the **ハードウェア** (Hardware) tab and then click **デバイスマネージャ** (Device Manager).
  The device manager screen appears.

On Windows Me and 98

- Click the **デバイスマネージャ** (Device Manager) tab.
  The device manager screen appears.

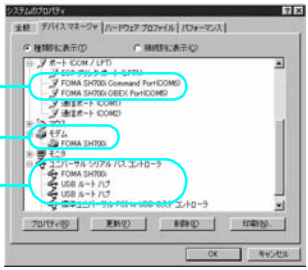
Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Click on each device, and confirm the name of the installed device.

Confirm that the names of all the installed devices are displayed for **ポート（COMとLPT）** (Ports (COM & LPT)) or **ポート（COM／LPT）** (Ports (COM/LPT)), **ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ** (Universal Serial Bus controllers) or USB（Universal Serial Bus）**コントローラ** (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers), and **モデム** (Modems).

Windows XP

Windows 2000 Professional



Windows Me and 98

If recognized, they will appear in this manner.

- The following drivers are installed when the communication setting file is installed.

Device Type	Device Name
Ports (COM/LPT)	● FOMA SH700i Command Port (COMx) ● FOMA SH700i OBEX Port (COMx) (COMx differs depending on the PC used)
Modem	● FOMA SH700i
USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers	● FOMA SH700i

Related Operations

If installation fails or *FOMA SH700i* does not appear in the screen for step 3

- Uninstall the file, and then install again.

1 Click ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run) in the スタート (Start) menu ▶ specify <CD-ROM drive name>:¥*USBDRV¥sh700iu.EXE* ▶ click *OK*.

Uninstalling the Communication Setting File (Driver)

This section describes how to uninstall the communication setting file. Screens differ depending on the OS.

- When uninstalling the Communication Setting File on Windows XP or Windows 2000 Professional, be sure to use a user with administrator authority. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software.
  Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrative rights setting.

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP.

1 Insert the included CD-ROM into your PC.

2 Click ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run) in the スタート (Start) menu.

- The **ファイル名を指定して実行** (Run) screen appears.

3 **Enter <CD-ROM Driver Name>*:¥USBDRV¥sh700iu.EXE*** **and click *OK*.**

4 **When アンインストールを開始しますか？ (Start uninstalling?) appears, click はい (Yes).**

- Uninstallation of the communication setting file begins.

5 **When アンインストールが完了しました。(Uninstallation completed.) appears, click *OK*.**

- Uninstallation of the communication setting file finishes.

On Windows 98

- If **今すぐ再起動しますか？** (Restart now?) appears, click **はい** (Yes), and restart your PC.

Note

- After uninstalling the communication setting file from Windows Me, depending on the PC environment, proper communication may not be possible when using data communication after immediate reinstallation of the file. In such cases, remove the FOMA USB cable once, insert it again, and then use data communication.

Communications Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software

FOMA PC Setup Software

Various network settings are required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to send packet transmissions and 64K data communications. Use the FOMA PC Setup Software to easily make the following settings.

Easy settings

Follow instructions to create dial-up settings for FOMA data transmissions and to automatically configure the W-TCP setting.

W-TCP settings

This optimizes the network settings in the PC before using ***FOMA packet transmission***. Use the ***W-TCP settings*** to optimize the transmission settings and fully utilize the transmission performance.

Host (APN) settings

This configures the host (APN) required for packet transmissions.

The host for FOMA packet transmissions differs from that of 64K data communications in that a telephone number is not used. A host name, called an APN (Access Point Name), is registered to the FOMA terminal for each host in advance. The registration number (cid) of the APN is assigned to the host telephone number field and a connection is established. The APN ***mopera.ne.jp*** is registered in the first cid, as a standard, for connection to mopera. Configure a separate APN to connect to another provider or a corporate LAN.

cid (Context Identifier) .....

This number corresponds to the host (APN) for packet transmissions. This is configured when an APN is registered in the FOMA terminal.

Note

- Alternatively, configure packet transmissions and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC Setup Software. (☞P. 485)

From installing the FOMA PC Setup Software to connecting to the Internet

Check the operating environment of the FOMA PC Setup Software. (☞P. 470)

STEP 1 Install the FOMA PC Setup Software (☞P. 476)

If the W-TCP System Setup Software (earlier version W-TCP Setup Software) or FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software (earlier version FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software) supplied in the FOMA terminals listed below is installed in the PC, uninstall this software in advance. (FOMA N2001, FOMA N2002, FOMA P2401, FOMA P2002, FOMA F2611, FOMA T2101V)

The FOMA PC Setup Software can be used with all FOMA terminals enabled for data transmission.

STEP 2 Setup preparations

Check the following before making any settings.

- The FOMA terminal is connected to a PC (☞P. 470)
- The FOMA terminal is recognized on the PC (☞P. 473)

Continued on next page ▶▶

STEP 3 Use Easy settings to configure the network

- Packet transmissions using mopera (☞P. 478)
- Packet transmissions using other providers (☞P. 480)
- 64K data communications using mopera (☞P. 481)
- 64K data communications using other providers (☞P. 481)

Refer to P. 485 and following pages for other settings.

STEP 4 Establish a connection (☞P. 482) Connect to the Internet.

Note

- When the FOMA terminal is recognized as a number larger than COM20, host (APN) information cannot be acquired or read in the Host (APN) Setting.

Installing the FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

- To install the FOMA PC Setup Software on a PC running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software.
  Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrative rights setting.
- Close all other programs before beginning installation. If other programs are running, click ***Cancel*** on the FOMA PC Setup Software screen, close all other programs after saving, then restart installation.

Example: Installing to Windows XP.

- The screens are different for other operating systems.

1 Place the supplied CD-ROM in the PC and activate SETUP.EXE.

1 Click **ファイル名を指定して実行** (Run) in the **スタート** (Start) menu.
2 Specify ***<CD-ROM driver name>***: ***¥FOMA_PCSET¥SETUP.EXE*** and click ***OK***.

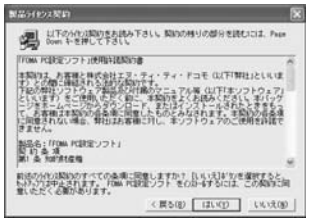
To install FirstPass PC Software

- In 2, specify ***<CD-ROM drive name>***: ***¥FirstPassPCSoft¥FirstPassPCSetup.exe*** and click ***OK***.
- Follow the instructions in ***FirstPassManual*** found in the FirstPassPCSoft folder of the CD-ROM to install.

2 In the ようこそ (Welcome) screen, click 次へ (Next).

- Refer to P. 477 if a screen appears, stating that an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, an earlier version of FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software or the FOMA PC Setup Software is already installed.

3 Read the licensing agreement and click はい (Yes) to agree.



- This is the user licensing agreement for the FOMA PC Setup Software. Clicking **いいえ** (No) cancels the installation.

4 Make sure that タスクトレイに常駐する (Resident in task tray) is checked ☑ and click 次へ (Next).

- After setup, the W-TCP Settings icon is added to the task tray. (☞P. 483)
  Adding the icon to the task tray is recommended, as it enables optimization setting of W-TCP transmissions.
  This icon can be removed or added after installation.

5 Confirm the destination program folder and click 次へ (Next).

- To change the destination program folder, click **参照** (Browse), select a destination for installation and click **次へ** (Next).

6 Confirm the program folder name and click 次へ (Next).

- To change, enter new folder name and click **次へ** (Next).

7 Click 完了 (Finish) on the セットアップの完了 (Setup complete) screen.

- The FOMA PC Setup Software restarts. Now configure the settings. (☞P. 478)

Notes about installing the FOMA PC Setup Software

- **If an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software is installed**

If an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software is installed, a warning screen appears. Delete the software, using **アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除** (Add/Remove application (programs)).

- **If an earlier version of FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software is installed**

If an earlier version of FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software is installed, an inquiry screen appears. Click **はい** (Yes) to automatically uninstall the software, and then install FOMA PC Setup Software.

- **If the FOMA PC Setup Software is already installed**

If the FOMA PC Setup Software is already installed, an inquiry screen appears. Click **はい** (Yes) to automatically uninstall and reinstall the FOMA PC Setup Software.

- **If キャンセル (Cancel) is clicked during installation**

The setup cancellation screen appears if **キャンセル** (Cancel) or **いいえ** (No) is clicked during setup to cancel installation. To continue with the installation, click **継続** (Continue). To cancel the installation, click **中止** (Cancel).

Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software/First Pass PC Software

Before uninstalling the software

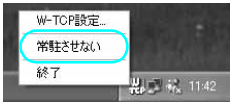
Return the transmission settings changed for the FOMA back to their original settings before uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software.

- To uninstall the FOMA PC Setup Software on a PC running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, the PC user must have administrator authority. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software.
  Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrative rights setting.

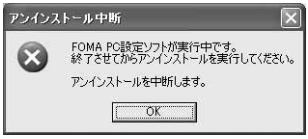
1 Right-click in the task tray and click 常駐させない (Do not stay resident).

Right-click

Click



2 End any programs that are running.



- The above screen will appear when attempting to uninstall, while FOMA PC Setup Software or W-TCP Setup Software are running. Cancel the uninstallation program and close the running programs.

Uninstalling the software

The screens in this example are for uninstallation in Windows XP.

1 Click スタート (Start) menu → コントロールパネル (Control panel) and click the プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs) icon.

- The add/remove programs screen appears.

On Windows 2000 Professional, Me and 98

- Click **スタート** (Start) menu → **設定** (Settings) → **コントロールパネル** (Control panel) and double-click the **アプリケーションの追加と削除** (Add/Remove programs) icon.
  The add/remove programs screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software) and click 変更と削除 (Change/Remove).

Select NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC**設定ソフト** (FOMA PC Setup Software).

Click here

To uninstall FirstPass PC Software

- Select FirstPass PC**ソフト** (FirstPass PC Software) and click **変更と削除** (Change/Remove).

On Windows Me and 98 SE

- Click **追加と削除** (Add/Remove).

3 Confirm the program name to delete and click はい (Yes).

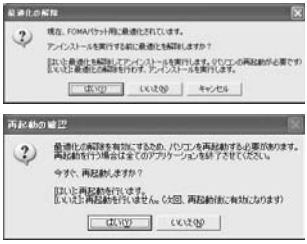
- Uninstallation of the FOMA PC Setup Software begins.

4 Click *OK* on the コンピュータからプログラム削除 (Remove programs from your PC) screen.

- Uninstallation of the FOMA PC Setup Software is completed.

Disabling W-TCP optimization

- The screen below appears when W-TCP is being optimized.
- Click **はい** (Yes) to uninstall.
  W-TCP optimization is disabled after the PC is restarted.



Setting Up Communication

Use this setup software to easily create a dial-up setting for FOMA data communications.

- Check that the FOMA terminal is correctly connected to the PC before making any settings. (☞P. 470)

1 Start the program.

- Click **スタート** (Start) menu → **プログラム** (Programs) (for Windows XP, select **すべてのプログラム** (All Programs)) → FOMA PC**設定ソフト** (FOMA PC Setup Software).
  The screen above appears when FOMA PC Setup Software starts.

To use the W-TCP setting icon in the task tray

- Click W-TCP in the task tray to start W-TCP settings. (☞P. 483)

Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera)

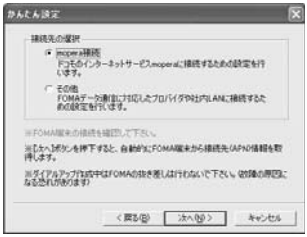
The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions* at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. ***mopera***, DoCoMo's Internet connection service, is used as the provider.

* High-speed Packet Transmissions: Charges are assessed according to the amount of data sent or received. Transmit data without worrying about the connection time. Receive high-speed packet transmissions at a maximum speed of 384 kbps and send at a maximum speed of 64 kbps (with the exception of some models in both cases). A best-effort connection is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions. Using packet transmissions to browse web sites with images and sending and receiving large volumes of data, such as downloading data, may incur high transmission charges.

1 Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click かんたん設定 (Easy settings).

2 Select パケット通信 (Packet transmission) and click 次へ (Next).

3 Select *mopera*接続 (mopera connection) and click 次へ (Next).



- Using another provider (☞P. 480)

4 Click *OK* on the *FOMA*端末設定取得 (FOMA terminal setting acquisition) screen.

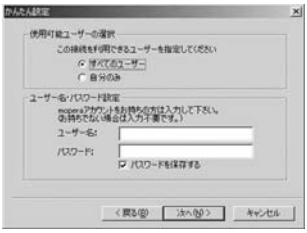
- The Host (APN) setting is acquired from the FOMA terminal connected to the PC. Wait until acquisition is complete.

5 Enter the connection name and click 次へ (Next).

- Enter a name in the **接続名** (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.
  ¥ / : * ? ! < > | "

6 Click 次へ (Next).

- When the host is mopera, user name and password are not required.
- If the PC is running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



Windows XP and 2000 Professional

Windows Me and 98

7 Make sure that 最適化を行う (Optimize) is checked ☑ and click 次へ (Next).

- The W-TCP setting required for packet transmissions is optimized. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized.

8 Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.
  If **デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する** (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.
  To change the settings, click **戻る** (Back).

9 Click *OK* on the 完了 (Complete) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changed settings. Click **はい** (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (☞P. 482)

Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions* at a maximum speed of 384 kbps.

* High-speed packet transmissions (☞P. 478)

1 Follow steps 1 to 4 on P. 478.

- Select **その他** (Other) for the host in step 3.

2 Enter the connection name and click 接続先 *(APN)* 設定 (Host (APN) settings).

- Enter a name in the **接続名** (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.
  ¥ / : ＊ ? ! < > | ”
- For **接続先 *(APN)* の選択** (Selected host (APN)), ***mopera.ne.jp*** is already set as the host (APN) for connecting to mopera.
- If **発信者番号通知を行う** (Send caller ID) is checked ☑, the caller ID is sent when transmission is executed.

Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

- Click **詳細情報の設定** (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

3 Configure the host (APN).

- For Number (cid1*), ***mopera.ne.jp*** is already set as the host (APN) for connecting to mopera.
  1. Click **追加** (Add).
     The Add host (APN) screen appears.
  2. Properly enter the FOMA packet transmission supported host name (APN) for the provider in the **接続先（APN）** (Host (APN)) field, and click ***OK***.
     The Host (APN) setting screen reappears.
- Enter only single-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) or period(.) for **接続先（APN）** (Host (APN)).

* Register up to ten cids.

4 Click *OK* on the 接続先 *(APN)* 設定 (Host (APN) settings) screen.

- The screen in step 2 reappears. The host (APN) set in step 3 appears in **接続先（APN）の選択** (Selected host (APN)).

5 Check the host name (APN) in 接続先 *(APN)* の選択 (Selected host (APN)) and click 次へ (Next).

6 Enter the user name and password and click 次へ (Next).

- Enter the user name and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- If the PC is running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, specify the users to whom rights are granted.

Windows XP and 2000 Professional

Windows Me and 98

7 Make sure that 最適化を行う (Optimize) is checked ☑ and click 次へ (Next).

- The W-TCP setting required for packet transmissions is optimized. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized.

8 Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.
  If **デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する** (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.
  To change the settings, click **戻る** (Back).

9 Click *OK* on the 完了 (Complete) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click **はい** (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (☞P. 482)

Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with mopera)

The setting is made for 64K data communications*. mopera, DoCoMo's Internet connection service, is used for the provider.

* 64K data communications: Charges are assessed according to the connection time. The stable transmission speed of 64 kbps enables more enjoyable Internet access.

1 Follow steps 1 to 4 on P. 478.

- Select ***64K*データ通信** (64K data communications) for the connection method in step 2.

2 Enter the connection name, select a modem and click 次へ (Next).

- Enter a name in the **接続名** (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.
  ¥ / : * ? ! < > | "
- Make sure that ***FOMA SH700i*** is set in **モデムの選択** (Selected modem).

3 Click 次へ (Next).

- When the host is mopera, user name and password are not required.
- If the PC is running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, specify the users to whom rights are granted.

Windows XP and 2000 Professional

Windows Me and 98

4 Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.
  If **デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する** (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.
  To change the settings, click **戻る** (Back).

5 Click *OK* on the 完了 (Complete) screen.

- Sending and receiving transmissions (☞P. 482)

Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for 64K data communications*.

* 64K data communications: Charges are assessed according to the connection time. The stable transmission speed of 64 kbps enables more enjoyable Internet access.

1 Follow steps 1 to 4 on P. 478.

- Select ***64K*データ通信** (64K data communications) in step 2 and **その他** (Other) in step 3.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Make the settings and click 次へ (Next).

- To connect to a provider with an ISDN synchronous 64K access point, make the following settings when creating a dial-up setting.
  - Connection name: Enter a connection name.
  - Selected modem: FOMA SH700i
  - Phone Number: Enter the phone number provided by the provider.
- The following characters can be used. 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D P T W a b c d p t w ! @ $ - . ( ) + ✳ #, & and single-byte space
- If **発信者番号通知を行う** (Send caller ID) is checked ☑, the caller ID is sent when transmission is executed.

Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

- Click **詳細情報の設定** (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

3 Enter the user name and password and click 次へ (Next).

- Enter the user name and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- If the PC is running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, specify the users to whom rights are granted.

Windows XP and 2000 Professional

Windows Me and 98

4 Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.
  If **デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する** (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.
  To change the settings, click **戻る** (Back).

5 Click *OK* on the 完了 (Complete) screen.

Executing the Configured Transmission

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

- Transmission starts.
- The name of the connection icon is the connection name created in the earlier setting.

The icon differs depending on the OS.

2 Establish a connection.

This is the screen in Windows XP. The screens differ for other operating systems.

- When using mopera, leave **ユーザー名** (User name) and **パスワード** (Password) blank and click **ダイヤル** (Dial).
- If a user name and password are entered in step 3 on P. 482, that information is entered automatically into the **ユーザー名** (User name) and **パスワード** (Password) fields.
- When using other providers or dial-up to connect, enter the **ユーザー名** (User name) and **パスワード** (Password) and click **ダイヤル** (Dial).
- When Save user name and password field is checked ☑, the user name and password do not need to be entered next time.

Note

- When there is no connection icon on the desktop (Windows XP)
  Click **スタート** (Start) menu → **すべてのプログラム** (All programs) → **アクセサリ** (Accessories) → **通信** (Communications) → **ネットワーク接続** (Network connections).
  (Windows 2000 Professional)
  Click **スタート** (Start) menu → **プログラム** (All programs) → **アクセサリ** (Accessories) → **通信** (Communications) → **ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続** (Network and dial-up connections).
  (Windows Me, 98)
  Click **スタート** (Start) menu → **プログラム** (All programs) → **アクセサリ** (Accessories) → **通信** (Communications) → **ダイヤルアップネットワーク** (Dial-up networks).
- A screen appears on the FOMA terminal showing the calling for packet transmission or dialing for 64K data communications.
- The transmission speed shown on the PC may differ from the actual transmission speed.

Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the call. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

1 Double-click in the task tray and click 切断 (Disconnect).

- The connection is disconnected.

W-TCP Setting

W-TCP function

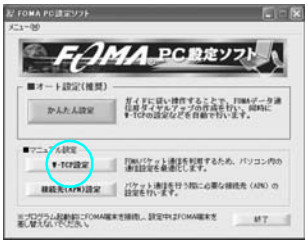
W-TCP Setup software is a TCP parameter setup tool used to optimize the TCP/IP transmission capacity when sending and receiving packet transmissions over the FOMA network. Configure the transmission settings with this software to fully utilize the transmission performance of the FOMA terminal.

Enabling and disabling optimization

● On Windows XP

On Windows XP, configuring optimization for each dial-up setting is possible.

1 Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click *W-TCP*設定 (W-TCP setting).



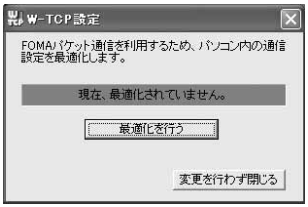
To use the W-TCP setting icon in the task tray

- Click in the task tray to start W-TCP settings.

2 Perform the next operation.

When the system setting is not optimized

- The following screen appears.
  Click **最適化を行う** (Optimize) and the W-TCP setting (Dial-up) screen appears.
  Select the dial-up setting to optimize and click **実行** (Optimize). Optimization of the system setting and dial-up setting begins.
  Follow the instructions on the screen to restart the PC. After the PC is restarted, optimization of the system setting is enabled.



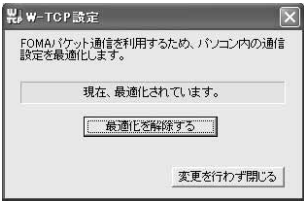
Continued on next page ▶▶

When the system setting is optimized

- The following screen appears.
  Make the necessary changes to the settings. The changes to the settings take effect after the PC is restarted.

Disabling optimization

- Click **システム設定** (System settings) on the W-TCP setting (Dial-up) screen.
  The following screen appears.
  Click **最適化を解除する** (Disable optimization) and follow the instructions on the screen to restart the PC. After the PC is restarted, optimization is disabled.



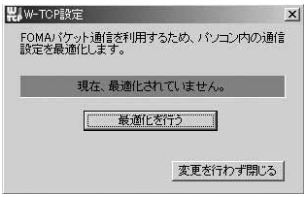
● On Windows 2000 Professional, Me and 98

1 Perform the operation in step 1 of “On Windows XP” on P. 483.

2 Perform the next operation.

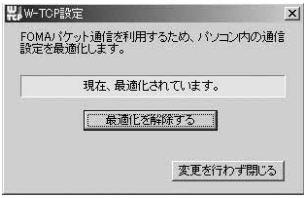
When the system setting is not optimized

- The following screen appears.
  Click **最適化を行う** (Optimize), end all currently running programs and restart the PC to enable the optimization setting.



When the system setting is optimized

- The following screen appears.
  Click **最適化を解除する** (Disable optimization) to disable the setting, for example, in order to send and receive transmissions without the use of the FOMA terminal. The restart confirmation screen appears. End all currently running programs and restart the PC to disable the optimization setting.



Host (APN) Settings

Reading Host (APN) information from the FOMA terminal

Click **接続先 *(APN)* 設定** (Host (APN) settings) and on the retrieve setting from FOMA terminal screen, click ***OK***.
The connected FOMA terminal is accessed automatically and the registered host (APN) information is read. (This operation is not performed if the FOMA terminal is not connected.) The setting information can also be read by selecting from the toolbar **ファイル** (File) → FOMA**端末から設定を取得** (Retrieve setting from FOMA terminal).

Adding, editing or deleting a host (APN)

To add a host (APN)

Click **追加** (Add) on the Host (APN) settings screen.

To edit a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click **編集** (Edit).

To delete a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click **削除** (Delete).

- The host (APN) registered to the first cid cannot be deleted.

Saving to a file

Select **ファイル** (File) from the toolbar to back up the host (APN) settings registered to the FOMA terminal or to save settings being edited.

Loading settings from a file

To load saved host (APN) settings in order to re-edit it or write them onto the FOMA terminal, select the appropriate function from the **ファイル** (File) menu on the toolbar.

Writing host (APN) information onto the FOMA terminal

To write the indicated host (APN) setting to the FOMA terminal, click FOMA**端末へ設定を書き込む** (Write settings onto FOMA terminal) on the Host (APN) setting screen.

Creating dial-up settings

On the host (APN) settings screen, select an added or edited host (APN) and click **ダイヤルアップ作成** (New dial-up). A screen confirming the writing of the setting to the FOMA terminal appears. Click **はい** (Yes). After the setting is written to the host (APN), the New dial-up for packet transmission screen appears.
Enter a connection name and click **アカウント・パスワードの設定** (Set account and password). (Unnecessary for mopera.)
Enter a user name and password (in Windows XP and 2000 Professional, specify the users to whom rights are granted) and click ***OK***.

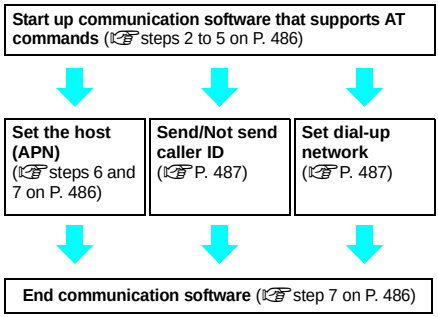
If the IP and DNS information from your provider are available, click **詳細情報の設定** (Advanced), enter the necessary information and click ***OK***.
After entering the information, click FOMA**端末へ設定を書き込む** (Write settings onto FOMA terminal), confirm that the old setting is to be overwritten and then write the settings.

Communications Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software

Setting Communications for Packet Transmissions and 64K Data Communications

This section describes how to set up packet transmission and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC Setup Software. To make the settings, communication software for entering AT commands are required. "Hyper Terminal," which is included as standard with Windows, is used here.

- The flow for setting up with use of AT commands is as follows.
- To use 64K data communications, there is no host (APN) setting.



Note

- Install communication setting file before making settings for packet transmission and 64K data communications. (☞P. 471)
- AT commands are commands for controlling the modem. The FOMA terminal is compliant with AT commands and also supports some extended commands, as well as some unique AT commands.
- Making host (APN) settings is not necessary when using mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service, since it is set as the default.
- Set Notify caller ID setting as necessary (when using mopera, set either ***Send*** or ***Not send***). The default setting is ***Not send***.
- Set other settings as necessary. Use is possible with the default settings.

Setting the Host (APN)

Set the host (APN) for using packet transmission. Register up to 10 numbers. Hosts are managed using cid numbers from 1 to 10 (☞P. 486). APN for connecting to the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service ***mopera*** (***mopera.ne.jp***) is set for cid1. Using numbers 2 to 10 is recommended.
Windows Me is used as an example for how to set the host (APN) in the following explanation. Screens will differ when using a system other than Windows Me, however the method for making the settings is essentially the same.

- The registered cid is the connection number set in the dial-up connection settings.
- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for hosts (APNs) other than mopera.

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ハイパーターミナル (Hyper terminal).

- Hyper terminal starts up.
- When using Windows XP, **すべてのプログラム** (All Programs) appears instead of **プログラム** (Programs).

3 Enter a name in the 名前 (Name) field and click *OK*.

- The advanced settings screen for phone number appears.

4 Select *FOMA SH700i* from 接続方法 (Connection method), enter a temporary number in 電話番号 (Telephone number) field that does not actually exist (such as *0*), and click *OK*.

- For the area code, ***03***, the default setting in Windows, appears. Set any number for the area code, since it is not related to the host (APN) setting.

5 When the connection screen appears, click キャンセル (Cancel).

6 Enter host (APN) and press .

- Enter host (APN) in the format: AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, “PPP”, “APN”. (☞P. 499)
  <cid> : Enter any number from 2 to 10.
  “PPP” : Enter “PPP” as is.
  “APN” : Enter the host (APN) enclosed in “ ”.
- If ***OK*** appears, the APN is set successfully.
- To check the current host (APN) setting, enter AT+CGDCONT?, and the settings appear in a list. (☞P. 487)

7 Confirm that *OK* appears and select ハイパーターミナルの終了 (Exit hyper terminal) from the ファイル (File) menu.

- Hyper terminal ends.
- **セッション×××を保存しますか？** (Save session ×××?) appears, however there is no need to save.

To reset APN settings using AT commands

When reset, <cid>=1 returns to ***mopera.ne.jp*** (default setting), and settings for <cid>=2 to 10 are unregistered.

- AT+CGDCONT=: To reset all the cids
- AT+CGDCONT=<cid>: To reset only specific cids

To confirm APN settings using AT commands

- AT+CGDCONT?↵
  Refer to P. 499 for details on AT commands.

When nothing appears on the screen when AT commands are entered

- ATE1↵
  Refer to P. 502 for details on AT commands.

Setting Send/Not Send Caller ID

Handset number is important personal information. Use caution when setting.

1 Follow steps 1 to 5 on P. 485.

2 Set either Send caller ID (186) or Not send caller ID (184) during packet transmission.

- Enter in the format: AT*DGPIR=<n>. (☞P. 499)
  AT*DGPIR=1↵:
  Adds ***184*** when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).
  AT*DGPIR=2↵:
  Adds ***186*** when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).

3 Confirm that *OK* appears.

Send/Not send setting on dial-up networks

Adding ***186*** (Send) and ***184*** (Not send) to the host number in dial-up networks is also possible. Setting ***186*** (Send) and ***184*** (Not send) in both the *DGPIR command setting and the dial-up network setting results in the following.

Dial-up network setting (when <cid>=1)	Using the *DGPIR command Send/ Not send setting	Send/Not send caller ID
*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Send
	Not send	Not send
	Send	Send
184*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Not send (dial-up network ***184*** is given priority)
	Not send	
	Send	
186*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Send (dial-up network ***186*** is given priority)
	Not send	
	Send	

- To return ***186*** (Send) or ***184*** (Not send) to ***Not set*** (default setting), enter ***AT*DGPIR=0***.
- Set either ***Send*** or ***Not set*** for sending caller ID when using mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

Setting the Dial-up Network

Set the host and TCP/IP protocol. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.

Hosts

For packet transmissions, set the host (APN) in advance. Register numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for the host (APN) in advance, to enable using packet transmission by specifying control numbers. Host (APN) settings are the equivalent to a phonebook for packet transmissions on a PC. Compared to normal phonebook entries, they appear as follows.

In phonebook	In Packet transmission setting
Registered number (memory number)	Control numbers (cids) 1 to 10
Other party's name	Host name (host (APN))
Other party's phone number	*99***<cid> #

For example, when the mopera host (APN), ***mopera.ne.jp***, is registered for cid1, connecting to mopera by specifying the host number ****99***1#*** is possible. Other registered cids can be used similarly.

Continued on next page ▶▶

*99***1#:	Connects to the host (APN) registered in cid1. Alternatively, connect with just ***99#**.
*99***2#:	Connects to the host (APN) registered in cid2.
≀	
*99***10#:	Connects to the host (APN) registered in cid10.

As the default setting, ***mopera.ne.jp***, the host (APN) for connecting to mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service, is already registered for cid1. When connecting to Internet service providers other than mopera or an internal company LAN, register the host using cids2 to 10. (☞P. 486)
For 64K data communications, enter the access point phone number supplied by the Internet service provider or network administrator.

- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.
- Access point phone number is ***9601** when using mopera with 64K data communications.

Setting a dial-up network on Windows XP

On Windows XP, use **ネットワークの接続ウィザード** (Network connection wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol.
Example: Using <cid>=1 to connect to mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

1 Click スタート (Start) menu → すべてのプログラム (All programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ネットワーク接続 (Network connections).

- The network connections screen appears.

2 Click 新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection) in ネットワークタスク (Network tasks).

- A new connection wizard screen appears.

3 Click 次へ (Next).

- The screen to select network connection type appears.

4 Select インターネットに接続する (Dial-up to the Internet) and click 次へ (Next).

- A preparation screen appears.

5 Select 接続を手動でセットアップする (Manually set up Internet connection) and click 次へ (Next).

- The Internet connection screen appears.

6 Select ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Connect through phone line and modem) and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen to specify the device appears.

7 Select モデム－*FOMA SH700i (COMx)* (Modem - FOMA SH700i (COMx)) and click 次へ (Next).

- A number will replace “x”.
- The connection name screen appears.

8 Enter a connection name in the *ISP*名 (ISP name) field and click 次へ (Next).

- The phone number to dial screen appears.

9 Enter the host number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field and click 次へ (Next).

- The Internet account connection information screen appears.

10 Set options in the screen, as shown below, leaving the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields blank, and click 次へ (Next).

- The new connection wizard completed screen appears.
- When connection to the Internet using a provider other than mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the **ユーザー名** (User name) and **パスワード** (Password) fields.

11 If 新しい接続ウィザードの完了 (New connection wizard completed) appears, click 完了 (Finish).

- The newly created connection wizard appears.

12 Confirm the setting information and click キャンセル (Cancel).

- Only confirming the settings without actually connecting.

13 Select icon for host created and select プロパティ (Properties) from the ファイル (File) menu.

- Properties screen for the host appears.

14 Confirm all the settings in the 全般 (General) tab.

- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, make sure that ***FOMA SH700i*** shows ☑ in the **接続方法** (Connect using) field. When ☐ appears instead, change to ☑.
- Confirm that **ダイヤル情報を使う** (Use dialing rules) shows ☐. When ☑ appears instead, change to ☐.

15 Click the ネットワーク (Networking) tab, confirm all settings, and click 設定 (Settings).

- Set **呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類** (Type of dial-up server to call) to ***PPP:Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet***.
- In the **この接続は次の項目を使用します** (Components checked are used by this connection) field, ☑ should appear only for **インターネットプロトコル**（TCP/IP）(Internet protocol (TCP/IP)). Leave QoS**パケットスケジューラ** (QoS packet scheduler) settings as is. No changes are necessary.
- The PPP setting screen appears.
- Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.

16 Check all options to show ☐ and click *OK*.

- Properties screen of the host reappears.

17 Click *OK* on the プロパティ (Properties) screen.

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 494 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

Setting a Dial-up Network on Windows 2000 Professional

On Windows 2000 Professional, use **ネットワークの接続ウィザード** (Network Connection Wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol.

Example: Using <cid>=1 to connect to mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

1 Click スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and Dial-up Connections).

- The network and dial-up connections screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Double-click the 新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection) icon.

- The location information screen appears.
- This screen appears the first time the **新しい接続の作成** (Create new connection) icon is double-clicked.
  For the second and subsequent times, proceed to step 5.

3 Enter 市外局番 (Area code) and click *OK*.

- The phone and modem options screen appears.

4 Click *OK*.

- A network connection wizard screen appears.

5 Click 次へ (Next).

- The screen to select network connection type appears.

6 Select インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Dial-up to the Internet) and 次へ (Next).

- A wizard startup screen appears.

7 Select インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク（LAN）を使って接続します (Connect to Internet manually or through local area network (LAN)) and click 次へ (Next).

- The screen to select the Internet appears.

8 Select 電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect through phone line and modem) and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen to specify the modem appears.

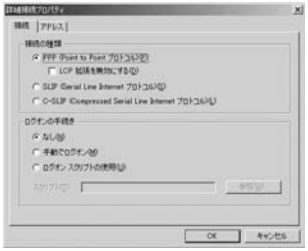
9 Confirm that FOMA SH700i is set in インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select modem to use to connect to the Internet) and click 次へ (Next).

- The Internet account connection information screen appears.
- Set to ***FOMA SH700i*** if not set.
- Screen does not appear when no modems other than ***FOMA SH700i*** are installed.

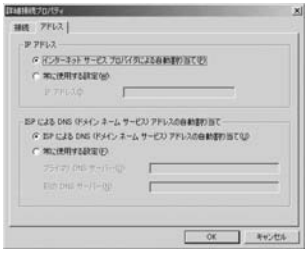
10 Enter the host number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field and click 詳細設定 (Advanced).

- Advanced connection properties screen appears.
- Confirm that **市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う** (Use area code and dial-up information) shows ☐. When ☑ appears instead, change to ☐.

11 Confirm that all settings in the 接続 (Connection) tab are set as shown in the example screen below.



12 Click the アドレス (Addresses) tab and confirm that all settings are set as shown in the example screen below.



- Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.

13 Click *OK*.

- Internet account connection screen reappears.

14 Click 次へ (Next).

- The Internet account login information screen appears.

15 Leave the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields blank, and click 次へ (Next).

- The PC configuration screen appears.
- When connection to the Internet using a provider other than mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the **ユーザー名** (User name) and **パスワード** (Password) fields.

16 Enter a connection name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field and click 次へ (Next).

- The e-mail account configuration screen appears.

17 Select いいえ (No) and click 次へ (Next).

- A Internet connection wizard completed screen appears.

18 Be sure that 今すぐインターネットに接続するにはここを選び ［完了］ をクリックしてください(To connect to the Internet immediately, select this box, and then click Finish) shows ☐ and click 完了 (Finish).

- Network and dial-up connections screen reappears.

19 Select icon for host created and select プロパティ (Properties) from the ファイル (File) menu.

- Properties screen for the host appears.

20 Confirm all the settings in the 全般 (General) tab.

- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, make sure that ***FOMA SH700i*** shows ☑ in the **接続の方法** (Connect using) field. When ☐ appears instead, change to ☑.
- Confirm that **ダイヤル情報を使う** (Use dialing rules) shows ☐. When ☑ appears instead, change to ☐.

21 Click the ネットワーク (Networking) tab and check all the settings.

- Set **呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類** (Type of dial-up server to call) to ***PPP: Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet***.
- Only **インターネットプロトコル** (TCP/IP) (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) should show ☑.

22 Click 設定 (Settings).

- The PPP setting screen appears.

23 Check all options to show ☐ and click *OK*.

- Properties screen of the host reappears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

24 Click *OK*.

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 494 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

Setting a dial-up network on Windows Me

Example: Using <cid>=1 to connect to mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

1 Click スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up Networks).

- When using for the first time, **ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ** (Welcome to dial-up networks) screen appears.
- For the second and subsequent times, this screen will not appear. Proceed to step 3.

2 Click 次へ (Next).

- The dial-up network screen appears.

3 Double-click 新しい接続 (New connection).

- The connection name entry screen appears.

4 Enter a connection name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen for specifying the host phone number appears.
- Make sure that ***FOMA SH700i*** is set in **モデムの選択** (Selected modem). Set to ***FOMA SH700i*** if not set.

5 Enter the host number and click 次へ (Next).

- The dial-up network connection completed screen appears.
- Leave the **市外局番** (Area code) field blank.

6 Confirm the host name and click 完了 (Finish).

- The host is set.

7 Select icon for host created and select プロパティ (Properties) from the ファイル (File) menu.

- The advanced settings screen for the host appears.

8 Confirm all the settings in the 全般 (General) tab.

- Confirm that **市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う** (Use area code and dial-up properties) shows ☐. When ☑ appears instead, change to ☐.
- Make sure that ***FOMA SH700i*** is set in the **接続方法** (Connect using) field. Set to ***FOMA SH700i*** if not set.

9 Click the ネットワーク (Networking) tab and check all the settings.

- Set ***PPP:インターネット、Windows 2000/NT、Windows Me*** (PPP:Internet, Windows2000/NT, Windows Me) in the **ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類** (Type of dial-up server) field.
- Only ***TCP/IP*** in **使用できるネットワークプロトコル** (Internet Protocol) should show ☑.
- Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.

10 Click the セキュリティ (Security) tab, leave the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields blank, and click *OK*.

- TCP/IP is set.
- When connecting to the Internet using a provider other than mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the**ユーザー名** (User name) and **パスワード** (Password) fields.
- Refer to P. 494 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

Setting a dial-up network on Windows 98

Example: Using <cid>=1 to connect to mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

1 Click スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up Networks).

- When using for the first time, a **ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ** (Welcome to dial-up networks) screen appears.
- For the second and subsequent times, this screen will not appear. Proceed to step 3.

2 Click 次へ (Next).

- The dial-up network screen appears.

3 Double-click 新しい接続 (New connection).

- The connection name entry screen appears.

4 Enter a connection name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen for specifying the host phone number appears.
- Make sure that ***FOMA SH700i*** is set in **モデムの選択** (Selected modem). Set to ***FOMA SH700i*** if not set.

5 Enter the host number and click 次へ (Next).

- Complete dial-up network connection screen appears.
- Leave the **市外局番** (Area code) field blank.

Continued on next page ▶▶

6 Confirm the host name and click 完了 (Finish).

- The host is set.

7 Select icon for host created and select プロパティ (Properties) from the ファイル (File) menu.

- The general settings screen for the host appears.

8 Confirm all the settings in the 全般 (General) tab.

- Confirm that **市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う** (Use area code and dial-up properties) shows ☐. When ☑ appears instead, change to ☐.
- Make sure that ***FOMA SH700i*** is set in **接続の方法** (Connect using) field. Set to ***FOMA SH700i*** if not set.

9 Click the サーバーの種類 (Server type) tab and confirm all the settings.

- Set ***PPP:* インターネット、*Windows NT Server*、*Windows 98*** (PPP:Internet, Windows NT Server, Windows 98) in the **ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類** (Type of dial-up server) field.
- Only ***TCP/IP*** in **使用できるネットワークプロトコル** (Internet Protocol) should show ☑.
- Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.

10 Click *OK*.

- TCP/IP is set.

Connecting to the Dial-up Network

Example: Connecting with Windows Me

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.

2 Click スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up Networks).

- The dial-up network screen appears.

3 Double-click the connection icon.

- The connection screen appears.
- Select the host icon and then select **接続** (Connect) in the **接続** (Connect) menu to display the connection screen.

4 Confirm the settings and click 接続 (Connect).

- The FOMA is connected to the host.
- The phone number set in “Setting the Dial-up Network” (☞P. 487) appears in the **電話番号** (Phone number) field.
- When the host is mopera, user name and password are not required.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

1 Double click in the task tray and click 切断 (Disconnect).

- The connection is disconnected.

Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX)

Sending/Receiving FOMA Terminal Data to/from a PC

- The FOMA terminal has OBEX as a data communication protocol. OBEX data communication enables sending and receiving phonebook, owner information from the Own number screen, schedules, ToDo list, sent mail (including SMS), received mail (including SMS), unsent mail (including SMS), text memos, melodies, my picture, i-motion, and bookmark data to and from a PC. The FOMA SH700i is also equipped with an Ir exchange function. Send and receive phonebook entries or data from received mail to/from other FOMA terminals also equipped with the Ir exchange function. Sending and receiving data (for Melody, My picture, i-motion) to/from a PC using cable connection is not supported. Data transfer via miniSD Memory Card is necessary. (☞P. 549)
- Use the following three types of data communication with the FOMA terminal.
  - Send data one item at a time, from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write 1).
  - Send data in bulk, from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write all).
  - Send data in bulk, from a FOMA terminal to a PC (Read all).
  - Send data one item at a time, from a FOMA terminal to a PC (Read 1).
- During data communication, the handset will be outside the service area, and functions such as i-mode, i-mode mail, voice/video-phone call, and packet transmission will not be available.
- Even after completion of data communication, 圏外 (out of service area) may be displayed for a short time.

Note

- Make sure the FOMA terminal is properly connected to the PC. If not connected properly, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Fully charge the FOMA terminal and check whether there is enough remaining battery power. If data communication is performed when the battery level is low or empty, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.

Note

- Check the PC power supply as well. If not turned on, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Perform data communication with the FOMA in stand-by.
- During communication (voice/video-phone call, and data communication) data cannot be sent or received. Also, when sending and receiving data, other data communication cannot be performed. However, receiving a call, right after data communication has begun, may be possible. In such cases, the sending or receiving of data is canceled.
- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent or received.
- During Ir exchange, melodies, still pictures, or i-motion files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or being sent outside the FOMA terminal to a PC cannot be sent. However, still pictures and movies shot with the built-in camera can be sent even if file restrictions are set to ***Restricted***.
- Mail with melody (MFi) data attached, i-motion mail before i-motion acquisition, and mail with i-αppli start up designations can be sent after attached data has been deleted.
- Attached JPEG images 10,001 bytes or more or 500 KB or less are deleted and mail is sent.
- Data such as phonebook data cannot be transmitted while All lock (☞P. 146), PIM lock (☞P. 150), or Self mode (☞P. 149) is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock (☞P. 151) is set.
- Depending on data size, data communication may take some time. In addition, the FOMA terminal may not be able to receive data due to data size.
- When receiving phonebook data, data will be added from memory number ***010*** for single entries, or in accordance with memory number information when receiving all entries.
- When receiving all phonebook entries, Owner information (excluding first phone number) registered in Own number will be overwritten.
- Phonebook entries are sent in memory number order.
- When sending all phonebook entries, Owner information from own number screen is also sent.

Devices required for data communication (OBEX)

- To perform data communication, downloading OBEX-compliant data transfer software from the Internet (☞P. 549), and installing this software to your PC is necessary. Refer to the software manual for information on operating environment and installation methods. In addition, installation of the FOMA SH700i Communication setting file (☞P. 471 to P. 473) is necessary beforehand.
- A FOMA USB cable is required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.

Note

- The FOMA terminal data communication function (OBEX) conforms with IrMC1.1. However, depending on the application, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC1.1.

Sending One Data Item (Write One)

- Send data from a PC to a FOMA terminal one item at a time.
- Sending one item at a time from a FOMA terminal to a PC is not possible.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

1 Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Write one).

- Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.

Note

- When phonebook data is sent (from a PC to the FOMA terminal handset) one entry at a time, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number from ***010*** to ***499***. If all memory numbers from ***010*** to ***499*** are already used, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number between ***000*** and ***009*** (2-touch dialing ☞P. 110).
- When phonebook data is received and 500 entries (names, phone numbers, or mail addresses) are already registered, or more than 500 entries have been registered, a message appears notifying that no further entries can be saved.

Sending All Data (Write All/Read All)

- Send and receive all data at once, between a PC and the FOMA terminal.
- ***Write all*** and ***Read all*** operations require data transfer software and your FOMA terminal authentication password.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

1 Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Forward all).

- Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.
- Entering your authentication password on the PC will be necessary.
- Enter your authentication password (four digits).

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and the authentication password (four digits).

3 Start data transmission.

Note

- Performing Write all from a PC to your FOMA terminal replaces all data stored in the FOMA terminal. All data previously stored in your FOMA terminal will be deleted. This includes phonebook, schedule, and protected mail data saved as secret data.
- If an error occurs during data transmission from a PC to the FOMA terminal, all data stored in the FOMA terminal may be deleted. Check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal battery level, and the PC power supply before performing Write all. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.
- Depending on the connected device, the transmission status (bar display) may not appear.

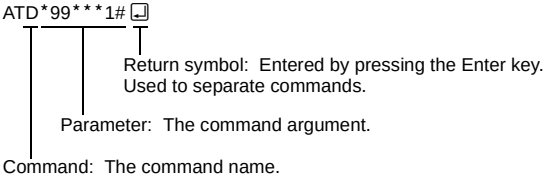
AT Command List

AT Commands

AT commands are commands used to set FOMA terminal functions from a PC. When AT commands are entered from a PC, the FOMA terminal performs the corresponding operations.

AT command input format

AT commands must always start with “AT”. Enter in single-byte alphanumeric characters. Below is an input example.



Each AT command and parameter (number or symbol) following the command must be entered on a single line. A single line means the characters from the first character until the character directly before the ↵ is pressed. Up to 160 characters (including “AT”) can be entered.

AT command input modes

To operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands, set the PC to terminal mode. In terminal mode, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate the FOMA terminal.

- Offline mode
  The FOMA terminal is in stand-by. Normally, this mode is used to operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands.
- Online data mode
  The FOMA terminal is connected and performing data communication. When a AT command is entered in this mode, the characters are sent directly to the receiver, and may cause the receiver’s modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands in this mode.
- Online command mode
  Even when the FOMA terminal is connected and performing communication, with special operations (described below), operation by AT commands is possible. When in this mode, AT commands are executed while remaining connected to the receiver, and communications can be resumed after the operation is completed.

Note

- Terminal mode enables a single PC to operate like a communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

Switching between online data mode and online command mode

Use either of the following methods to switch the FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode.

- Enter “+++” command, or enter the set code in the “S2” register.
- Turn the RS-232C* ER signal OFF when set to “AT&D1”.

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter “ATO ↵”.

* USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, enabling RS-232C signal line control by the communication application.

AT Command List

[M]: AT commands that can be used with the FOMA SH700i Modem Port.

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT%V [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2	—	AT%V↵ Ver1.00 OK
AT&C<n> [M]	Sets operating condition for signals sent from circuit CD (DCD) to DTE.*1	n=0: Circuit CD always ON n=1: Circuit CD signal changes according to line connection status (default setting) When “&C1” is set, the CD signal is turned “ON” directly before the CONNECT signal is sent when connection is completed. The CD signal is turned “OFF” right before “NO CARRIER” is sent when the circuit is disconnected.	AT&C1↵ OK
AT&D<n> [M]	Sets mode of terminal when a signal received from DTE changes the circuit ER (DTR) mode from “ON” to “OFF” during online data mode.*1	n=0: Ignore status (always consider signal ON) n=1: Set online command mode when signal changes from ON to OFF n=2: Disconnects line and activates offline mode when signal changes from ON to OFF (default setting)	AT&D1↵ OK
AT&E<n> [M]	Selects speed display specifications when connecting.*1	n=0: Wireless area transmission speed appears. n=1: DTE serial transmission speed appears. (Default setting)	AT&E0↵ OK
AT&F<n> [M]	Resets the FOMA terminal’s AT command settings to their values at time of factory shipment. If this command is entered during communication, the line is disconnected before settings are reset.*2	Can only be set as n=0 (may be omitted).	AT&F↵ OK
AT&S<n> [M]	Controls when the signal of data set ready (DR) is set to DTE.*1	n=0: Always ON (default setting) n=1: DR signal ON when line is connected	AT&S0↵ OK
AT&W<n> [M]	Stores the current settings in the FOMA terminal’s memory.*2, *5	Can only be set as n=0 (may be omitted).	AT&W↵ OK
AT*DANTE [M]	Displays number of antennas on TE.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. *DANTE:<m> <m> 0: Status where outside the service area appears on the FOMA terminal 1: Status where one antenna appears on the FOMA terminal 2: Status where two antennas appears on the FOMA terminal 3: Status where three antennas appears on the FOMA terminal.	AT*DANTE↵ *DANTE:3 OK
AT*DGANSM=<n> [M]	Sets Accept/Reject call modes for incoming packet communications. This setting is only valid for incoming packet communications after entering setup commands.*2	n=0: Set Reject call and Accept call settings to ***OFF*** (Default setting) n=1: Set Reject call settings ***ON*** n=2: Set Accept call settings ***ON***	AT*DGANSM=0↵ OK AT*DGANSM?↵ *DGANSM:0 OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT*DGAPL=<n>[,<cid>] [M]	Sets host (APN) to accept transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by “+CGDCONT”.*2	Add or delete from Accept calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, add (<n>=0) or delete (<n>=1) all of <cid> to list. Add (delete) <cid> not defined with “+CGDCONT” to list with this command. n=0: Add to list (Add APN defined by <cid> to Accept calls list.) n=1: Delete from list (Delete APN defined by <cid> from Accept calls list.)	AT*DGAPL=0,1↵ OK AT*DGAPL?↵ *DGAPL:1 OK
AT*DGARL=<n>[,<cid>] [M]	Sets host (APN) to reject transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by “+CGDCONT”.*2	Add or delete from Reject calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, add (<n>=0) or delete (<n>=1) all of <cid> to list. Add (delete) <cid> not defined with “+CGDCONT” to list with this command. n=0: Add to list (Add APN defined by <cid> to Reject calls list.) n=1: Delete from list (Add APN defined by <cid> to Reject calls list.)	AT*DGARL=0,1↵ OK AT*DGARL?↵ *DGARL:1 OK
AT*DRPW [M]	Displays the current sent from MTF.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. *DRPW:<m> m: 0 to 75 (current)	AT*DRPW↵ *DRPW:0 OK
AT*DGPIR=<n> [M]	Setting this command is valid when establishing communication. Enables adding “186” (send caller ID) and “184” (not send caller ID) to host number. Also possible in dial-up network settings.*2	n=0: When establishing packet transmission, connects to a host (APN) directly (default setting) n=1: When establishing packet transmission, adds “184” and connects to host (APN) n=2: When establishing packet transmission connection, adds “186” and connects to host (APN) When “186” (send caller ID)/“184” (not send caller ID) are set by this command and in the dial-up network settings, refer to the table on P. 487.	AT*DGPIR=0↵ OK AT*DGPIR?↵ *DGPIR:0 OK
+++ [M]	Switches the FOMA terminal mode from online data mode to online command mode. Escape guard interval is fixed at one second.*2	—	(Connected) +++ (Does not appear.) OK
AT+CACM=[<passwd>] [M]	Resets the total cost accumulated and recorded on the UIM.*2	Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM, if the password matches. <passwd>: SIM PIN2 ※Enclose this string parameter with quotation marks (“”) when entering.	AT+CACM=“01 23”↵ OK
AT+CAOC=[<mode>] [M]	Inquires the current accumulated cost.*2	<mode> 0: Inquires the cost of current call. The result from this command is in the following format. +CAOC: “<ccm>”	AT+CAOC↵ +CAOC:“00001E” OK
AT+CEER [M]	Displays disconnection reason for preceding communication session.*2	Refer to “Reasons for Disconnection”. (☞P. 505)	AT+CEER↵ +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT [M]	Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission.*2	Refer to “More on AT Commands”. (☞P. 505)	Refer to “More on AT Commands”. (☞P. 505)

Continued on next page ▶▶

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+CGEQMIN [M]	Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested of network during packet transmission.*2	Refer to “More on AT Commands”. (☞P. 506)	Refer to “More on AT Commands”. (☞P. 506)
AT+CGEQREQ [M]	Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested of network during packet transmission.*2	Refer to “More on AT Commands”. (☞P. 507)	Refer to “More on AT Commands”. (☞P. 507)
AT+CGMR [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2	—	AT+CGMR↵ 123456789012 3456 OK
AT+CGREG=<n> [M]	Sets whether to send network registration status. Service area information (inside/outside) is sent.*1	<n> 0: Do not set (default setting) 1: Set When “AT+CGREG=1” is set, information is sent in the format “+CGREG:<stat>”. “0”, “1”, “4”, or “5” can be set for the <stat> parameter. <stat> 0: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor)	AT+CGREG=1↵ OK (Set to send) AT+CGREG?↵ +CGREG:1,0 OK (Indicates outside area) +CGREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area)
AT+CGSN [M]	Displays the FOMA terminal’s serial number.*2	—	AT+CGSN↵ 123456789012345 OK
AT+CLIP=<n> [M]	Show PC calling number when receiving 64K data communications.*1	<n> 0: Do not output results (default setting) 1: Output results Displays +CLIP:<n>,<m>for “AT+CLIP?” <m> 0: NW setting to not send own number during transmissions 1: NW setting to send own number during transmissions 2: Unknown	AT+ CLIP=0↵ OK AT+CLIP?↵ +CLIP:0,1 OK
AT+CLIR=<n> [M]	Sets whether to send terminal’s phone number when establishing 64K data communications.*2	<n> 0: Use according to service agreement 1: Do not send 2: Send (default setting) When “AT+CLIR?” is set, +CLIR:<n>,<m> is displayed. <m> 0: CLIR is not running (always send) 1: CLIR is always running (never send) 2: Unknown 3: CLIR temporary mode (default setting is do not send) 4: CLIR temporary mode (default setting is send)	AT+CLIR=0↵ OK AT+CLIR?↵ +CLIR:2,3 OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+CMEE=<n> [M]	Sets whether to display FOMA terminal error reports.*1	Sets whether to display errors only as “ERROR”, or to display reason as text or numerical value. <n> 0: Display “ERROR” and no result codes (default setting) 1: Display result codes as numerical values 2: Display result codes as text When reports are set to display by setting “n=1” or “n=2”, they are displayed in the following format: +CME ERROR:xxxx (xxxx is a numerical value or text. Refer to “Error Reports” ☞P. 505.)	AT+CMEE=0↵ OK AT+CNUM↵ ERROR AT+CMEE=1↵ OK AT+CNUM↵ +CME ERROR: 10
AT+CNUM [M]	Displays FOMA terminal phone number.*2	number: Phone number type: 129 or 145 129: Do not include + international access code 145: Include + international access code	AT+CNUM↵ +CNUM:,“+819012345678”,145 OK
AT+CR=<mode> [M]	Sets whether to display packet transmission/64K data communications before “CONNECT” result code is displayed during line connection.*1 “GPRS” is displayed for packet transmission, and “SYNC” is displayed for 64K data communications.	< mode> 0: Do not display when line is connected (default setting) 1: Display when line is connected	AT+CR=1↵ OK ATD*99***1# +CR:GPRS CONNECT
AT+CRC=<n> [M]	Set to use extended results code at reception.*1	n=0: Do not use extended results code (Default setting) n=1: Use extended results code	AT+CRC=0↵ OK
AT+CREG=<n> [M]	Set service area information on or off.*1	When “AT+CREG=1” is set, information is sent in the format “+CREG:<stat>”. “0”, “1”, “4”, or “5” can be set for the <stat> parameter. <n> 0: Do not send (default setting) 1: Send <stat> 0: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor)	AT+CREG=1↵ OK (Set to send) AT+CREG?↵ +CREG:1,0 OK (Indicates outside area) +CREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area)
AT+CUSD=[<n>[,<str>[,<dcs>]]] [M]	Change setting toward net for optional services, etc.*1	<n> 0: Answers OK without intermediate result (default setting) 1: Answers with intermediate result <str> Service code ※ Refer to “Network Services Operation Guide”. <dcs> 0: fixed value	AT+CUSD=0,“×××××”↵ OK
AT+GMI [M]	Displays FOMA terminal maker name in single-byte alphanumeric characters.*2	—	AT+GMI↵ SHARP OK

Continued on next page ▶▶

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+GMM [M]	Displays abbreviated FOMA terminal product name (FOMA SH700i) in alphanumeric characters.*2	—	AT+GMM↵ FOMA SH700i OK
AT+GMR [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2	—	AT+GMR↵ Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC=<n,m> [M]	Sets local flow control format between the PC and FOMA terminal.*1	DCE by DTE (<n>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting) DTE by DCE (<m>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting)	AT+IFC=2,2↵ OK
AT+WS46=<n> [M]	Sets wireless network used to call. Incoming signals are not affected.*1	n=22: FOMA network (fixed value)	AT+WS46=22↵ OK
A/ [M]	Used when re-executing the preceding command executed.*2	—	A/ OK
ATA [M]	Enter during packet reception and 64K data communications to perform incoming processes.*2	Enter “ATA184↵” (anonymous call reception actions) or “ATA186↵” (identified call receiving actions) while receiving packets.	RING ATA↵ CONNECT
ATD

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
ATI<n> [M]	Displays the verification code.*2	n=0: NTT DoCoMo n=1: Display abbreviated product name (FOMA SH700i) n=2: Display the product version in a format such as ***VerX.XX***	ATI0↵ NTT DoCoMo OK
ATO [M]	Returns to online data mode from online command mode during communication.*2	—	ATO↵ CONNECT
ATQ<n> [M]	Sets whether to display result codes.*1	n=0: Display result codes (default setting) n=1: Do not display result codes	ATQ0↵ OK
ATV<n> [M]	Sets manner of displaying result codes.*1	Displays all result codes as numbers or text. n=0: Display result codes as numbers n=1: Display result codes as text (default setting)	ATV1↵ OK
ATX<n>

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
ATS5=<n> [M]	Sets the backspace (BS) character.	When detected while entering an AT command, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. The setting cannot be changed (default setting: n=8).	ATS5=8↵ OK ATS5?↵ 008 OK
ATS6=<n> [M]	Sets pause time (seconds) until dialing.	Sets a register but has no other effect. n: 2 to 10 (default setting: n=5)	ATS6=10↵ OK
ATS7=<n> [M]	Sets connection timeout time (seconds).*1	n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=60) When establishing 64K data communications or packet transmission, if the FOMA terminal cannot send “CONNECT” signal to the PC within the set number of seconds after receiving ATD input from the PC, it returns a “NO CARRIER” result, and proceeds to disconnect. If the value is set between “121” and “255”, the “OK” result is returned, but the timeout time is set to “120”.	ATS7=60↵ OK
ATS8=<n> [M]	Sets pause time (seconds) until comma dialing.	Sets a register but does not affect the pause time (3 seconds). n=0: Do not pause n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=3)	ATS8=3↵ OK
ATS10=<n> [M]	Sets the delay time (seconds) for automatic disconnection (1/10 seconds).*1	Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=1)	ATS10=1↵ OK
ATS30=<n> [M]	Disconnects when no data is sent/received for at least this amount of time.	Only valid during 64K data communications. <n> is set in minutes. n: 0 to 255 (default setting: n=0) n=0 sets inactive timer off.	ATS30=3↵ OK
ATS103=<n> [M]	Sets delimiter used when adding an incoming sub-address to number dialed.	Only valid during 64K data communications. n=0: *Asterisk n=1: /Slash (default setting) n=2: ¥Yen mark or backslash	ATS103=0↵ OK

ATS104=<n>
 	
[M]
	Sets delimiter used when adding an outgoing sub-address to number dialed.	Only valid during 64K data communications.
		n=0: #Pound sign
		n=1: %Percent symbol (default setting)
		n=2: &Ampersand
			ATS104=0↵
			OK

AT¥S [M]	Displays current command and S register settings.*2	—	AT¥S↵ E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V<n> [M]	Selects response code type used during connection.*1	Only valid when the ATX<n> command (☞P. 503) setting is not n=0. n=0: Do not use extended result code (default setting) n=1: Use extended result codes	AT¥V1↵ OK

*1 Stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands.
*2 Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.
*3 Perform Redial with ATDN↵ or ATDL↵.
*4 If the ATZ command is executed before the AT&W command is used, terminal settings return to last written memory, and prior changes are erased.
*5 Settings written into the FOMA terminal's memory using the AT&W command is stored as non-volatile data when power is turned off.

Reasons for Disconnection

Packet transmissions

Value	Reason
27	Host (APN) does not exist, or was incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	No packet transmission subscription.
36	Disconnected properly.

64K data communications

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected properly.
17	Line busy.
18	Number was dialed, but no response received within specified time.
19	Dialed number is making a call.
21	Dialed number refused incoming call.
63	Network service or option is not valid.
65	Transmission capacity not provided was specified.
88	Dialed number of terminal with different terminal attribute, or incoming call was received.

Error Reports

Numerical Display	Text Display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	FOMA card not inserted.
15	SIM wrong	Non-DoCoMo SIM is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Password is incorrect.
100	unknown	Unknown error occurred.

More on AT Commands

Command name: +CGDCONT= [parameter]

Overview

Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission.
Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"]]] ↵

Parameter description

<cid>*: 1 to 10
<APN>*: Any number
<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA. The default setting registers ***mopera.ne.jp***, the host (APN) to connect to mopera, for <cid>=1. <APN> is a user-specified character string for each connection, indicating the host.

Execution example

Command when registering host (APN) name "abc" (for <cid>=3)
AT+CGDCONT=3, "PPP", "abc" ↵
OK

Continued on next page ▶▶

Operation when parameter is omitted

AT+CGDCONT=
Clears all <cid> settings. Resets <cid>=1 setting to its default value.
AT+CGDCONT=<cid>
Clears specified <cid> setting. Resets <cid>=1 setting to its default value.
AT+CGDCONT=?
Displays list of values that can be set.
AT+CGDCONT?
Displays current settings.

Command name: +CGEQMIN= [parameter]

Overview

Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from the network when establishing PPP packet transmission.
The command execution examples below describe the four possible setting patterns.
Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid> [,, <Maximum bitrate UL> [, <Maximum bitrate DL>]]]↵

Parameter description

<cid>*: 1 to 10
<Maximum bitrate UL>*: None (initial setting) or 64
<Maximum bitrate DL>*: None (initial setting) or 384
<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA. ***Maximum bitrate UL*** and ***Maximum bitrate DL*** set the minimum uplink and downlink transmission speed (kbps) between the FOMA and base station. When set to ***None*** (default setting), all speeds are permitted. Note that when set to ***64*** or ***384***, connections established under these speeds are not permitted, so packet transmission connection may not be established.

Execution example

Set using the following four patterns. Setting (1) is the initial setting for all cid.

(1) Command permitting all uplink/downlink speeds (for <cid>=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2↵
OK

(2) Command permitting uplink speeds of at least 64 kbps, and downlink speeds of at least 384 kbps (for <cid>=3)
AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384↵
OK

(3) Command permitting only uplink speeds of at least 64 kbps, and all downlink speeds (for <cid>=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64↵
OK

(4) Command permitting all uplink speeds, and only downlink speeds of at least 384 kbps (for <cid>=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384↵
OK

Operation when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=
Clears all <cid> settings.
AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>
Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting.
AT+CGEQMIN=?
Displays list of values that can be set.
AT+CGEQMIN?
Displays current settings.

Command name: +CGEQREQ= [parameter]

Overview

Sets QoS (Quality of Service) required of the network when establishing PPP packet transmission.
The command execution example below describes the setting pattern which is also set as the initial setting.
Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]↵

Parameter description

This setting is assigned to each cid by default value.
<cid>*: 1 to 10
<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA.
Command when requesting connection at uplink speed of 64 kbps, or downlink speed of 384 kbps

Execution example

for <cid>=3
AT+CGEQREQ=3↵
OK

Operation when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQREQ=
Returns all <cid> settings to default settings.
AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>
Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting.
AT+CGEQREQ=?
Displays list of values that can be set.
AT+CGEQREQ?
Displays current settings.

Result Codes

Result codes

Numerical Display	Text Display	Meaning
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected to number dialed.
2	RING	Call detected.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not accepted.
6	NO DIAL TONE	No dial tone detected.
7	BUSY	Detecting busy tone.
8	NO ANSWER	Connection completed. The server connection timed out.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redial restricted.

Extended result codes

Numerical Display	Text Display	Meaning
5	CONNECT 1200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 1,200bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 2,400bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 4,800bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 7,200bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 9,600bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 14,400bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 19,200bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 38,400bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 57,600bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 115,200bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 230,400bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 460,800bps.

Note

- When n=1 is set for the ATV<n> command (☞P. 503), result codes are displayed as text (default setting). When set to n=0, they are displayed as numerical values.
- Transmission speed is displayed to maintain compatibility with conventional modems connected by RS-232C. However, since the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC via FOMA USB cable, the displayed speed will differ from the actual speed of connection.
- When ***RESTRICTION*** (Number: 100) appears, the transmission network is congested. Try connecting again later.

Communication Protocol Result Codes

Numerical Display	Text Display	Meaning
1	PPPoverUD	Connected with 64K data communications
5	PACKET	Connected with packet transmission

Result code display examples

When ATX0 is set

The CONNECT display appears only when connection is completed, regardless of the AT¥V <n> command (☞P. 504) setting.

Text display example: ATD*99***1#
CONNECT

Numerical display example: ATD*99***1#
1

When ATX1 is set

- When ATX1 and AT¥V0 are set (initial value)

When connection is completed, CONNECT<speed between FOMA terminal and PC> appears in the syntax.

Text display example: ATD*99***1#
CONNECT 460800

Numerical display example: ATD*99***1#
1 21

- When ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set*

When connection is completed, the information below appears in the syntax.

CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> PACKET <host(APN)>/<maximum uplink speed (FOMA terminal to mobile network base station)>/<maximum downlink speed (mobile network base station to FOMA terminal)>

Text display example: ATD*99***1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384
(Indicates terminal connected to ***mopera.ne.jp***, at maximum uplink speed of 64 kbps and maximum downlink speed of 384 kbps.)

Numerical display example: ATD*99***1#
1 21 5

* Dial-up connection may not be processed correctly when ATX1 and AT¥V1 are simultaneously set. Using only AT¥V0 is recommended.

Text Input

- Entering Text . . . . . <Text Input>510
- 5-touch Input Method Text Entry . . . . . <5-touch>511
- Editing/Saving Phrases . . . . . <Saving Phrases>519
- Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text . . . . . <Copy Characters>520
- Inputting Kuten Code . . . . . <Kuten Code Input>521
- Registering Frequently Used Words . . . . . <Registering Words (User Dictionary)>522
- Resetting Memorized Conversion Candidates . . . . . <Clear Memory Terms>523
- Using a Downloaded Dictionary . . . . . <Download Dictionary>523
- Selecting Conversion Method . . . . . <Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess>525
- 2-touch Input Method Text Entry . . . . . <2-touch>525

Entering Text

Enter text for various functions on the FOMA terminal, such as phonebook and text messages.
Before entering text, it is recommended to learn about the text input methods.

Text input methods

5-touch	Each key is assigned multiple characters. Press key multiple times to enter character. Refer to P. 534 and P. 535 for details on key assignment. Press ◁ to scroll backwards through characters.
2-touch	Use two-digit combinations to enter character, as when sending text to pagers*. Refer to P. 536 for details on two-digit combinations.

- Refer to P. 525 for details on selecting input method.
- Each method has input modes for entering different types of characters. (☞P. 514, P. 525)

Types of characters which can be entered

Double-byte	Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols, pictographs
Single-byte	Katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols

- Use double-byte alphanumeric mode to enter double-byte numbers.
- Refer to P. 534 to P. 536 for details.

Quick dictionary and Next word guess

Quick dictionary	For every one to five hiragana characters entered, conversion candidate words starting with those characters appear. Commonly used words are registered in a specialized dictionary.
Next word guess	After characters are confirmed, the next word is predicted from previous input/conversion records, automatically showing candidate characters that follow confirmed characters.

- Both conversion functions are enabled as the default setting. Functions can be turned off separately. (☞P. 525)
- Learned conversion candidates can be reset. (☞P. 523)

Note

- The design of text input screen depends on the function.

5-touch Input Method Text Entry

Enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (Double-byte)

In kanji mode, convert hiragana to kanji, hiragana, katakana (double-byte), and symbols.

1 In text input screen, press the dial key and enter hiragana.

- Enter hiragana with the dial key. Character changes with each press.
- Kanji candidates appear every time a hiragana character is entered.
- When using the same key to enter characters (example: あい), always press 0 to move the cursor before entering.

To enter katakana and alphanumeric characters

- Press ☆ (文字). Switches to input mode each time pressed.

2 Move the cursor to the kanji candidate field with ○, select character and press ●.

- Press CLR to stop selection. The cursor returns to the text input screen.

To display next list screen

- Press ☆ twice. Press once when the cursor is on the last candidate of the list.

To display previous list screen

- Press ☆ twice. Press once when the cursor is on the first candidate of the list.

When the kanji is not available

- When the cursor is on the text input screen, use 0 to change highlighted characters and convert again.
- When the cursor is on the select candidate screen, use ◀ [⇐Reselect] or ▶ [⇒Reselect] to change characters.
- Press 0 for 1-touch conversion. (☞P. 513)

Related Operations

Add dakuten (゛)

1 Enter text ▶ ゛.

Add handakuten (゜)

1 Enter text ▶ ゛゛.

Convert to lower case

1 Enter text ▶ ☆.

Add a space at the end of message

1 Press 0 at the end.

Undo entry <Undo>

1 Enter text ▶ check operation (delete, cut) ▶ C.

Change font size <Font size>

1 In text input screen, press ▶ 9.

2 Press 1 [Large font], 2 [Default] or 3 [Small font].

Check key operation <Key list>

1 In text input screen, press ▶ *Key list* ▶ ●.

* As of January 2001, DoCoMo paging service is named “QUICKCAST”.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Note

Dakuten and handakuten

- For single-byte katakana, press ✱ once for dakuten (゛), twice for handakuten (゜), three times to add a prolonged sound (—) and four times for a line break (↵). Press five times to return to dakuten (゛). The added marks count as one character.

Lower case

- For alphabet, text is converted to lower case. The entry mode is also switched to lower case.

Entering a space

- A single-byte space will be entered regardless of input mode. Each space counts as one character.

Undo operation

- If C is pressed 11+ times, ***Unable to undo anymore*** appears and tenth undo screen reappears. When entering message, undo is available only once. (Error tone sounds when C is pressed twice or more. Error tone does not sound when Keypad sound is set to ***Silent***.)
- After text is edited, operations in memory are cleared.

Font size

- Font size setting is not available in some text entry screens.
- ***Large font*** is 24 pixels, ***Normal*** is 20 pixels and ***Small font*** is 12 pixels.
- In the input screen for i-mode mail address and subject, or compose chat mail/SMS screen, select from ***Large font***, ***Normal*** and ***Small font***. This is also reflected in the message details screen. (Font size cannot be changed while inputting an i-mode mail message.)
- In the input screen for saving to phonebook, select between ***Large font*** and ***Default***.
- Font size remains set even when power is turned off.
- Also set display font width. (☞P. 138)

1-touch conversion

After a kanji has been entered, characters will convert to that kanji next time when the first character is entered.

When the kanji cannot be found <On/Kun conversion>

Enter a single kanji by its on or kun reading.

1 Enter hiragana in the text input screen and press i [On & Kun].

2 Select kanji and press ●.

Note

- Kanji candidate display order varies depending on the dictionary memory function.
- There are 6,355 kanji available from JIS level-1/level-2 kanji sets.
- Complex kanji are changed in part or excluded.

Quickly specifying character string <1-touch conversion>

Use 1-touch conversion to convert kanji using all the hiragana combinations assigned to each key. The same key does not need to be pressed multiple times for the hiragana.

Example: When entering おはよう

1 In text input screen, press 1 6 8 1.

- 1-touch conversion works best with nouns.
- In 1-touch conversion, the cursor turns blue.
- Press ◁ or ▷ in 1-touch conversion status (blue cursor) to change the characters to convert. Further conversion is 1-touch conversion.
- The character strings used most frequently appear first.
- When kanji candidates appear, press C to return to hiragana. If 0 is pressed, normal conversion candidates appear.
- For characters with dakuten/handakuten marks, press the key for the original character once, then enter the dakuten/handakuten mark.
  (Example: for べんきょう, enter 5 * 0 2 8 1)
- Reading is not automatically entered if 1-touch conversion is used to enter name when adding to phonebook.

2 Press 0.

3 Select candidate and press ●.

Predictive headword conversion

In 1-touch conversion, words that start with the characters assigned to the entered key (words starting with あ, い, う, え, お when あ is entered) appear according to the time of day.

- Displayed words are already registered.
- Displayed words are grouped into the following times: 5:00 to 10:59, 11:00 to 16:59, 17:00 to 22:59, and 23:00 to 4:59.

1-touch single-character memory

If the first character for a character string previously used in 1-touch conversion is entered (example: あ when あたあさわ was converted into お父さん), the previously converted word (お父さん) appears.

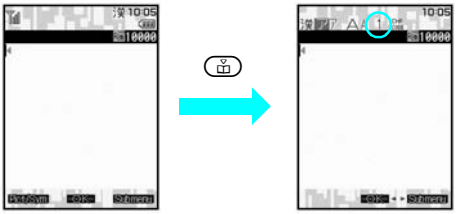
Switching Between Input Modes in 5-touch Input

Switch input modes to enter various types of text.

Input mode

- Kanji/hiragana
- Double-byte alphanumeric characters
- Kuten code
- Double-byte katakana
- Single-byte alphanumeric characters
- Single-byte katakana
- Single-byte numbers

1 In text input screen, press (文字).



- When pressing , 1 (single-byte numbers) →CHR CODE (kuten code) →漢 (kanji, hiragana) →ｱ (double-byte katakana) →ｱ (single-byte katakana) →Ａ (double-byte alphanumeric) →A (single-byte alphanumeric) cycles through in this order.
- After pressing , pressing 0 will switch the input modes in the same way. Press 0 to switch modes in the reverse order.

Note

Canceling text input

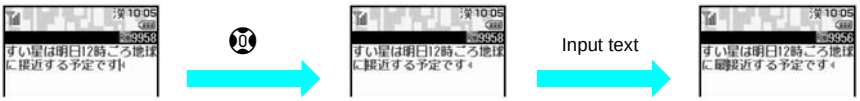
- When ***Pict/Sym*** appears on text input screen, press [Pict/Sym] to switch to pictograph or symbol mode. (☞P. 518)
- Press CLR to cancel text input and return to previous screen. If text is already entered, press CLR to delete all text (☞P. 515), and press CLR again.
  If cursor is in middle of text, press CLR for 1+ seconds twice.

Editing Text

Adding characters

1 Move cursor to location to add characters.

Example: When entering 最 in front of 接近

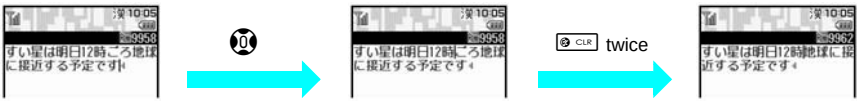


Deleting characters

1 Move cursor to the left of the character to delete and press CLR.

- The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.

Example: When deleting ごろ



Move the cursor

Characters are deleted

- Press CLR for 1+ seconds to delete multiple characters complying to the location of the cursor.

When there are characters before and after the cursor/only after the cursor

- All characters at and after the cursor are deleted.

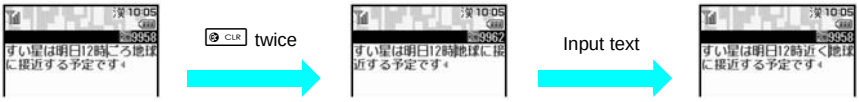
When there are characters only before the cursor

- All characters before the cursor are deleted.

Changing characters

1 Delete and re-enter characters.

Example: When changing ごろ to 近く



Move the cursor

Characters are deleted

Characters are added

Entering Katakana (Single-byte)

1 Press (文字) multiple times and ｱ appears.

2 Press the dial key to input single-byte katakana.

- Enter next character or press ◁ or ▷ to confirm.
- When inputting text for i-mode mail, press ● to confirm.
- When using the same key to enter characters (example: アイ), always press ▷ to move the cursor before entering.

Related Operations

Convert hiragana to katakana (double- and single-byte) <Kana/Alphanumerics>

1 Enter hiragana ▶ [kanaABC123] ▶ Double-byte katakana/single-byte katakana ▶ ●.

Entering Alphanumeric Characters

Entering alphabet

1 Press (文字) multiple times and Ａ or ａ appears.

- Enter double-byte alphanumerics when Ａ is showing and single-byte alphanumerics when ａ is showing.
- Press # to switch between upper case and lower case. Press # after entering characters to convert one by one.

Upper case　　Lower case

2 Press the dial key to input alphabet.

- Enter next character or press 6 or 4 to confirm.
- When inputting text for i-mode mail, press ● to confirm.
- When using the same key to enter characters (example: AB, ab), press 4 to move cursor before entering.
- If an English word is entered in kanji mode (example: はうす), single-byte English (example: House, house) appears in the conversion candidates.
- If hiragana is entered in kanji mode (example: ひとみ), single-byte English (example: hitomi, etc.) appears in the conversion candidates.

Entering numbers

1 Press (文字) multiple times and １ appears.

2 Press the dial key to input numbers.

- Confirms automatically.
- In double-byte alphanumeric mode (upper/lower case), press key multiple times for number.
  Example: For ***1*** → Press 1 five times.
  For ***2*** → Press 2 seven times (upper case)/press 2 four times (lower case).
- In kanji mode, enter hiragana and select double-byte numbers from conversion candidates.

Related Operations

Convert hiragana to alphabet/numbers <Kana/Alphanumerics>

1 Enter hiragana ▶ # [kanaABC123] ▶ alphabet/number ▶ ●.

Note

- Enter text and press # [kanaABC123] to convert in the following way.
  (The same applies to lower case letters and characters with dakuten/handakuten marks.)

■あ line...1　■か line...2　■さ line...3　■た line...4　■な line...5　■は line...6
■ま line...7　■や line...8　■ら line...9　■わ/を/ん/space...0

Using Bar Code to Enter Characters

Enter text read from bar codes (JAN codes/QR codes) in text input fields while connected to i-mode. (☞"Entering text and selecting items in sites/web pages" on P. 209)

1 **In text input fields on sites and Internet web pages, press [📷][9 WXYZ].**

2 **Show the bar code in the center of the display and press ●.**

- Refer to P. 190 for Bar code reader usage methods.

Using Preset Phrases <Insert Phrase>

Use preset phrases (☞P. 540), original phrases (☞P. 519) and enter mail addresses easily.

1 **In text input screen, press [📷][5 JKL].**

To display all phrases

- Press [i] [Switch].

2 **Select phrase category, press ●, select phrase and press ●.**

- Phrase confirmation screen appears.

3 **Confirm the phrase and press ●.**

Inputting mail address easily

- Mail addresses use single-byte characters.

1 **In text input screen, press [0] for 1+ seconds, select preset phrase and press ●.**

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Alternatively, press [5] for 1+ seconds in the text input screen to display phrase screen.
- The most recently used phrases appear first if [i] is pressed to display all phrases in insert phrase screen.

Entering Symbols <Symbol Input>

1 In text input screen, press [i] [Pict/Sym] [i] [Symbol].

To show the next list screen

- Press [3] twice. When cursor is on the last symbol of the list, press once.

To show the previous list screen

- Press [5] twice. When cursor is on the first symbol of the list, press once.

2 Select symbol and press [●].

- Enter consecutively.

To switch between single- and double-byte symbols

- Press [0].

To undo

- Press [C].

Note

- Refer to P. 537 for “Symbol/Special Character List” for details on symbols and special characters.
- The ten symbols used most recently appear on the first line.
- Use the same operation for 2-touch input.

Entering Pictographs <Pictograph Input>

1 In text input screen, press [i] [Pict/Sym].

To show the next list screen

- Press [3] twice. When cursor is on the last pictograph of the list, press once.

To show the previous list screen

- Press [5] twice. When cursor is on the first pictograph of the list, press once.

2 Select pictograph and press [●].

- Enter consecutively.

To switch between Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2

- Press [0].

To undo

- Press [C].

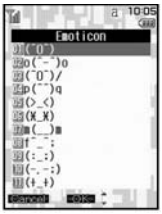
Note

- Convert keywords (reading) to pictographs. Refer to “Pictograph List” on P. 538 and P. 539.
- The ten symbols used most recently appear on the first line.

Entering Emoticons <Emoticon>

Emoticon table (☞P. 539)

1 In text input screen, press ●(4 GHI).



To show the next list screen

- Press ▼ twice. When cursor is on the last line, press once.

To show the previous list screen

- Press ▲ twice. When cursor is on the first line, press once.

2 Enter the two-digit code.

- Alternatively, select emoticon and press ●.

Note

- Enter かお in hiragana and press 0 to see emoticons in the kanji candidates list.

Saving Phrases

Editing/Saving Phrases

Register frequently used original phrases and edit preset phrases.

- Refer to P. 540 for preset phrases.
- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters for each phrase.
- Phrases can be reset to default settings.

1 In stand-by, press ●(3 DEF)(6 MNO).

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Edit phrase*** from Top menu.
- Edit phrase selection screen appears.

2 Press (6 MNO) [Original phrase].

- Original phrase list appears.

Editing preset phrases

- Select (1 あ) [Greetings] to (5 な) [Internet].

3 Select number to register and press ▼ [Edit].

- Edit phrase screen appears.

4 Enter phrase and press ●.

Resetting to default phrases <Reset>

Reset phrases to their default settings.

The following reset commands are available.

Reset one	Reset one phrase at a time.
Reset folder	Reset all phrases in one category.
Reset all	Reset all phrases.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Reset one/folder <Reset one/Reset folder>

1 **In stand-by, press ● 3 6 ▶ category ▶ ● ▶ phrase ▶ ●.**
- Sub menu does not appear for folder not being edited.

2 **Press 1 [Reset one].**
- To reset all phrases in a folder: Press 2.

3 **Select *Yes* ▶ ●.**
- To not reset: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Reset all phrases <Reset all>

1 **In stand-by, press ● 3 6 ▶ ●.**

2 **Select *Yes* ▶ ●.**
- To not reset: Select ***No*** ▶ ●.

Copy Characters

Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text

Copy/cut a character string and paste it to a different location.

- Paste text onto the same screen or in another text input screen. (Cannot paste to a screen in which Submenu is not displayed.)
- Cut text is deleted from its original location.
- Cut/copy up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters.
- Only one character string can be copied/cut at a time. Copying/cutting again will replace the old text with the new text.

Copying/Cutting Text

Example: When copying text

1 In text input screen, move cursor to the first character to copy.

2 Press C for 1+ seconds.

From the menu
- Press ● 1 and ●.

To cut
- Press # for 1+ seconds.
- From the menu, press ● 2 and ●.

3 Move cursor to the last character and press ●.
- Selected text to copy will be highlighted.
- Press 0 for 1+ seconds to select all characters after character selected in step 1.
- Press 0 for 1+ seconds to select all characters before character selected in step 1.

Copying the Contents of Mail

Example: When copying message text

1 Open received mail and press [●] [5 JKL].

- Copy selection screen appears.

For sent mail

- Press [●] [3 DEF].

For unsent mail

- In message entry screen (☞P. 252), press [●] [1 ,@]. Proceed to step 3.

2 Press [3 DEF].

- Copy screen appears.

To copy address

- Press [1 ,@].

To copy subject

- Press [2 ABC].

3 Move the cursor to the first character to copy and press ● [Start].

4 Move the cursor to the last character to copy and press ● [Copy].

Pasting Text

1 In the screen to paste, press [●] [3 DEF].

- Paste text screen appears.

2 Move cursor to the paste location and press ●.

- Character string in memory is inserted.

Note

- In fields that accept only single-byte characters such as the ***Reading*** field in the phonebook, only single-byte characters are pasted. Depending on the location, only the allowed number of characters are pasted.
- Text stays in memory until new text is copied/cut or power is turned off.
- Press [C CLR] to return to the previous screen in step 1 of "Pasting Text."

Kuten Code Input

Inputting Kuten Code

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols, and alphanumeric characters.

- Each kuten code corresponds to a specific character.
  Refer to “Kuten code list” on P. 541 to P. 544 for details on kuten codes and the associated characters.

1 In text input screen, press [*] (文字) multiple times to display CHR CODE.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Enter four-digit kuten code.

- After the fourth digit is entered, the character appears.

When kuten code is incorrect

- Before the fourth digit is entered, press [CLR] to clear the numbers. Re-enter correct code.

Registering Words (User Dictionary)

Registering Frequently Used Words

Register up to 100 frequently used words with a short keyword (up to eight double-byte hiragana) for easy retrieval. When a keyword is entered, the registered word appears in the kanji candidate list and can be easily entered.

- The same keyword can be registered up to five times.

Registering a New Word

1 In stand-by, press ● [3 DEF] [4 GHI].

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***User dictionary*** from Top menu.
- User dictionary list appears.

To switch between word and keyword lists

- Press [i] [Switch].

2 Select *Save new* and press ●.

- User dictionary entry screen appears.

3 Enter word and press ●.

- Enter up to 15 double-byte characters.
- Line breaks cannot be entered.

4 Enter keyword and press ●.

- Input up to eight hiragana.

Editing Registered Words

1 In stand-by, press ● [3 DEF] [4 GHI], select word and press ●.

- User dictionary editing screen appears.

2 Edit word and press ●.

3 Edit keyword and press ●.

- To not edit, press ●.
- Register screen appears.

4 Press [2 ABC] [Overwrite].

To register a new word

- Press [1 ☆]. New word cannot be registered if same keyword is registered five times.

Deleting Registered Words

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF 4 GHI, select word and press 📷 1 あ.

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Clear Memory Terms

Resetting Memorized Conversion Candidates

All conversion candidates memorized through functions such as Quick dictionary and Next word guess can be reset.

- Pictograph and symbol conversion suggestions are also reset.

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF 9 WXYZ, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Clear memory terms*** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

2 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not reset conversion candidates

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Download Dictionary

Using a Downloaded Dictionary

Default setting
No dictionary registered

Save up to five dictionaries for Japanese conversion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages on the FOMA terminal. Use two of these dictionaries for kanji conversion. When dictionaries are downloaded, terms used are saved and appear with the conversion candidates.

- Switching the User dictionary with a downloaded dictionary is possible.
- Refer to P. 223 for details on downloading dictionaries.

Setting/Clearing a Dictionary

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF 5 JKL.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Dwnld dictionary*** from Top menu.
- Registered dictionaries appear. Dictionaries currently in use appear with 📄.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select dictionary to set/clear and press ●1.

If two are already in use

- ***2 dictionaries can be saved*** appears and the screen of step 2 reappears. Clear dictionary currently in use and try again.

To clear a dictionary

- Press 1.

To change the title

- Press 3, edit title and press ●.

To check dictionary contents

- Press 4. Dictionary information (name, author, version, download date, etc.) appears. Press CLR or i [Back] and the previous screen reappears.

Note

- Alternatively, press ● in text input screen and select ***Dwnld dictionary*** to set/clear dictionary.

Checking Dictionary Contents

1 In stand-by, press ●35, select dictionary and press ●.

- A list of words registered in the dictionary appears.
- Press CLR to stop checking.

To check list of keywords

- Press i [Switch]. Press i [Switch] to switch between word and keyword lists.

Deleting a Dictionary

Delete dictionaries individually or all at once.

1 In stand-by, press ●35, select dictionary and press ●5.

- The delete screen appears.

2 Press 1 [Delete one].

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete all dictionaries

- Press 2.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

To not delete

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- If a FOMA card is inserted that is different from the FOMA card that was inserted when the dictionary was downloaded, a FOMA card restriction mark appears next to the dictionary. In such cases, dictionary contents cannot be checked, but can be deleted.

Switching to a Download Dictionary <Download Dictionary>

Switch the User dictionary with a Download dictionary.

1 In stand-by, press ●34 and ●2.

- Save destination setting screen appears.

2 **Select a save destination, press ●, select *Yes*, and press ●.**

To not register as set dictionary

- Select ***No*** and press ●.

Note

- When switching from User dictionary to a Download dictionary, User dictionary is deleted.

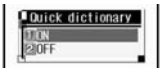
Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess

Selecting Conversion Method

Default setting
Quick dictionary ON
Next word guess ON

Set to enable/disable Quick dictionary (☞P. 510) and Next word guess (☞P. 510).

1 **In text input screen, press 📷 7PQRS.**



To select Next word guess

- Press 📷 9WXYZ.

2 **Press 1 ･/- [ON: use].**

To not use

- Press 2ABC.

2-touch

2-touch Input Method Text Entry

Setting 2-touch Input <Text Entry>

Use 2-touch input to enter hiragana with two keys. This method is recommended for users accustomed to 2-touch character input.

1 **In text input screen, press 📷 6MNO.**

2-touch input screen

- 2-touch input continues until handset is set back to normal input (5-touch).
- The operation for inserting preset phrases is the same for 2-touch and 5-touch.
- Katakana/alphanumeric conversion is not available.

To return to 5-touch input

- In text input screen, press 📷 6MNO [5-touch].

Changing Input Mode

1 **In text input screen, press ⇧.**

- Every time ⇧ is pressed, input modes cycle through the order of Half (single-byte upper case letters) → CHR CODE (kuten code) → Full (double-byte upper case letters).

Note

- Switch to upper/lower case while in single/double-byte mode.
  After entering text, press ⇧ to convert characters one by one. (☞P. 516)
- After pressing ⇧ once on the text input screen, pressing 0 will switch the input modes in the same way. Press 0 to switch modes in the reverse order.

Entering Text

In 2-touch input, enter two digits to specify a character.

1 In text input screen, enter two digits.

Example: 2 ABC 2 ABC ➡ [き]

● Refer to P. 536 for details on character assignments.

Appendix

- Menu List 528
- Dial Key Assignments (5-touch) 534
- Dial Key Assignments (2-touch) 536
- Symbol/Special Character List 537
- Phrase List 540
- JIS Kuten Code List 541
- Using the Calculator 545
- Multiaccess Combinations 546
- Assistant View Combinations 546
- Services Available from the FOMA Terminal . . . . . <Service>547
- Options and Accessories 548
- Use with External Devices 548
- Data Link Software 549

■Troubleshooting

- Troubleshooting 550
- List of Error Messages 552
- Warranty and After-sales Services 557
- Updating Software . . . . . <Software Update>559
- Protecting Your FOMA Terminal from Harmful Files . . . . . <Scanning Function>564
- Main Specifications 567
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) 570

Menu List

Settings Menu

Sound

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
1 Select volume	Phone ring vol	●1 1 1	Phone ring tone, V-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Not support: Volume 3☆	P. 115
	Mail ring vol	●1 1 2	Mail ring tone, Message R ring tone, Message F ring tone, SMS ring tone: Volume 3☆	P. 115
	Chat mail ring vol	●1 1 3	Volume 3☆	P. 115
	Setting sound vol	●1 1 4	Keypad sound, Open sound, Close sound, Charge start sound, Charge end sound, Timer sound: Volume 3☆	P. 116
2 Select sound	Select ring tone	●1 2 1	Phone ring tone: 着信音1/ V-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Not support: Phone ring tone☆	P. 112
	Select mail tone	●1 2 2	Mail ring tone: 着信音2/ Message R ring tone, Message F ring tone, SMS ring tone: Mail ring tone	P. 113
	Chat mail tone	●1 2 3	着信音 2☆	P. 113
	Setting sounds	●1 2 4	Open sound: OP (Default tone)/Close sound: CL (Default tone)/Shutter sound: Default tone/Timer sound: Default tone☆	P. 114 P. 114 P. 185
3 Vibrator	Vibration mode	●1 3 1	OFF☆	P. 117
	Mail vibration	●1 3 2	OFF☆	P. 117
4 Manner mode		●1 4	Normal☆	P. 119
	Original	●1 4 3	Record message, Vibration mode, Mic sensitivity: ON/ Ring tone, mail ring tone, Keypad sound, Low power alarm: OFF☆	P. 121
5 Ring output		●1 5	Earp.+speaker☆	P. 119
6 Mail ring duration		●1 6	ON/3 seconds☆	P. 118
7 Set mute seconds		●1 7	00 seconds/OFF☆	P. 158
8 Hold/On hold tone	On hold tone	●1 8 1	On hold tone 1☆	P. 65
	Hold tone	●1 8 2	Hold melody 1☆	P. 65

● When settings are reset (☞P. 448), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

Display

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
1 Main display	Stand-by display	●2 1 1	待受画面 1☆	P. 122
	Clock display	●2 1 2	ON☆	P. 124
	Calendar display	●2 1 3	OFF☆	P. 123
2 Sub display	Callr ID display	●2 2 1	ON☆	P. 127
	Contrast	●2 2 2	Contrast 3☆	P. 127
3 Font style		●2 3	Bold☆	P. 138
4 Personalize	Picture call set	●2 4 1	ON☆	P. 126
	Pop-up window	●2 4 2	ポップアップ 1☆	P. 131
	Notice window	●2 4 3	お知らせ 1☆	P. 131
	Background	●2 4 4	背景パターン 1☆	P. 130
	Call/Rcv display	●2 4 5	Outgoing voice calls: 電話発信 1/ Incoming voice calls, Incoming video-phone, Payphone, User unset, Not support: 電話着信 1☆	P. 124
	Send/Rcv display	●2 4 6	Send display: メール送信 1/ Receive display: メール受信 1☆	P. 125
	Title & Status color	●2 4 7	Pattern 1☆	P. 132
	Guidance keys	●2 4 8	Left key: 操作ガイド左 1/ Center key: 操作ガイド中央1/ Right key: 操作ガイド右 1☆	P. 132
5 Called LED	Called LED color	●2 5 1	Phone: Green/ Video-phone: Green☆	P. 136
	Mail LED color	●2 5 2	Blue☆	P. 136
	Called LED ON	●2 5 3	Without melody☆	P. 137
	Mail/Msg LED set	●2 5 4	Without melody☆	P. 137
6 Power saver set		●2 6	Normal mode (Display light time: 15 seconds (charging/during i-mode: Same as normal, during video-phone: Always ON)/Screen dsp time: 2 minutes (LED display off)/Screen saver: OFF/Brightness: 12) ☆	P. 127

● When settings are reset (☞P. 448), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

General settings

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
1 Check memory		●3 1	—	P. 387
2 Battery level		●3 2	—	P. 44
3 Check settings	Sound	●3 3 1	—	P. 404
	Display	●3 3 2	—	P. 404
	General settings	●3 3 3	—	P. 404
	Phone settings	●3 3 4	—	P. 404
	Security	●3 3 5	—	P. 404
	i-mode	●3 3 6	—	P. 404
	Mail/Message	●3 3 7	—	P. 404
	i-αppli	●3 3 8	—	P. 404

Continued on next page ▶▶

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
4 User dictionary		●34	—	P. 522
5 Dwnld dictionary		●35	—	P. 523
6 Edit phrase		●36	*1	P. 519
7 Auto power ON/OFF	Auto power ON	●37	OFF☆	P. 407
	Auto power OFF	●37	OFF☆	P. 408
8 Date settings		●38	*2	P. 46
9 Clear memory terms		●39	—	P. 523
0 Select language		●30	日本語	P. 45
✕ Scanning function	Update patterns	●3✕	—	P. 565
	Scanning setting	●3✕	Enable☆	P. 565
	Display version	●3✕	—	P. 566
# Software update		●3#	—	P. 559

● When settings are reset (☞P. 448), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

*1 Refer to P. 540 for preset phrases.

*2 January 1. 2005 00:00

Services

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
1 Voice mail	Check messages	●411	—	P. 454
	Play messages	●412	—	P. 453
	Activate	●413	Ring time: 10 seconds	P. 453
	Set ringing time	●414	Ring time:10 seconds	P. 453
	Deactivate	●415	—	P. 453
	Status request	●416	—	P. 454
	Voice mail settings	●417	—	P. 453
	Voice mail alarm	●418	ON☆	P. 454
	Delete display	●419	—	P. 454
	Start notification	●410	—	P. 454
	Stop notification	●41✕	—	P. 455
	Confirm status	●41#	—	P. 455
2 Call waiting	Activate	●421	—	P. 455
	Deactivate	●422	—	P. 455
	Status request	●423	—	P. 455
3 Call forwarding	Activate	●431	Ring time: 7 seconds	P. 457
	Deactivate	●432	—	P. 458
	Register number	●433	—	P. 458
	Forwarded party busy	●434	—	P. 458
	Status request	●435	—	P. 458
4 Bar nuisance calls	Register caller	●441	—	P. 459
	Delete all entries	●442	—	P. 459
	Delete last entry	●443	—	P. 459

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
5 Notify caller ID	Status request	●4 5 1	Set to unsend	P. 460
	Notify caller ID	●4 5 2	—	P. 460
6 Caller ID request	Activate	●4 6 1	—	P. 460
	Deactivate	●4 6 2	—	P. 461
	Status request	●4 6 3	—	P. 461
7 Talk time/cost		●4 7	—	P. 442
8 Set arrival act	Activate	●4 8 1	—	P. 464
	Deactivate	●4 8 2	—	P. 464
	Status request	●4 8 3	—	P. 464
9 Arrival call act		●4 9	Answer☆	P. 463
0 Remote control	Activate	●4 0 1	—	P. 464
	Deactivate	●4 0 2	—	P. 464
	Status request	●4 0 3	—	P. 464
* Dual network	Switching	●4 * 1	—	P. 461
	Status request	●4 * 2	—	P. 462
# English guidance	Guidance setting	●4 # 1	—	P. 462
	Status request	●4 # 2	—	P. 463
▮ Service number	ドコモ故障問合せ (Repair enquiries)	●4 ▮ 0 1	—	P. 463
	ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General enquiries)	●4 ▮ 0 2	—	P. 463
Additional service	USSD	●4 [■Additional service] 1	—	P. 465
	Reply message	●4 [■Additional service] 2	—	P. 466
Multi number	Multi number (Service not yet available)			

● When settings are reset (☞P. 448), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

Phone settings

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
1 Noise reduction		●5 1	ON☆	P. 58
2 Alarm during call	Reconnect	●5 2 1	Alarm on (high) ☆	P. 58
	Quality alarm	●5 2 2	Alarm on (high) ☆	P. 118
3 Video-phone set	Redial voicecall	●5 3 1	OFF☆	P. 89
	Set sending image	●5 3 2	*3☆	P. 85
	Screen size	●5 3 3	Large☆	P. 87
	Display setting	●5 3 4	Show me small☆	P. 87
	Subscreen position	●5 3 5	Upper left☆	P. 87
	Image quality	●5 3 6	Normal☆	P. 86
4 Record message	Record message	●5 4 1	OFF☆	P. 68
	Answering duration	●5 4 2	8 seconds☆	P. 70
	Reply message	●5 4 3	Reply message 1☆	P. 70
	V-phone reply image	●5 4 4	伝言メモ画像☆	P. 81

Continued on next page ▶▶

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
5 Close operation		●5JKL5JKL	Finish call☆	P. 61
6 Any key answer		●5JKL6MNO	ON☆	P. 61
7 Auto answer set		●5JKL7PQRS	OFF☆	P. 447
8 Self mode		●5JKL8TUV	OFF☆	P. 149
9 Int'l prefix		●5JKL9WXYZ	First entry: 009130-010☆	P. 56
0 Sub address		●5JKL0	ON☆	P. 57
* Int'l calling	Auto assist set	●5JKL*+1	ON☆	P. 57
	IDD prefix setting	●5JKL*+2ABC	World call 009130-010☆	P. 56

● When settings are reset (☞P. 448), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

*3 Substitute image: ブンブン ***(Dimo)***, Camera image sending: ***ON***, On hold image: 応答保留画像, Hold image: 保留画像

Security

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
1 Secret mode		●6MNO1	OFF No auto disable☆	P. 153
2 UIM settings	PIN code input set	●6MNO2ABC1	OFF	P. 142
	Change PIN code	●6MNO2ABC2ABC	—	P. 143
	Change PIN2 code	●6MNO2ABC3DEF	—	P. 143
3 Accept/Reject calls	Accept calls	●6MNO3DEF1	OFF☆	P. 155
	Reject calls	●6MNO3DEF2ABC	OFF☆	P. 157
	Reject unknown	●6MNO3DEF3DEF	Accept☆	P. 159
	Reject user unset	●6MNO3DEF4GHI	Accept☆	P. 158
	Reject payphone	●6MNO3DEF5JKL	Accept☆	P. 158
	Reject not support	●6MNO3DEF6MNO	Accept☆	P. 158
4 Show call/received	Show rcvd calls	●6MNO4GHI1	ON☆	P. 152
	Show redial	●6MNO4GHI2ABC	ON☆	P. 152
5 Show sent/received	Show sent messages	●6MNO5JKL1	ON☆	P. 153
	Show rcvd messages	●6MNO5JKL2ABC	ON☆	P. 153
6 Lock settings	All lock	●6MNO6MNO1	—	P. 146
	Keypad dial lock	●6MNO6MNO2ABC	OFF☆	P. 151
	PIM lock	●6MNO6MNO3DEF	OFF☆	P. 150
	Remote lock all	●6MNO6MNO4GHI	OFF☆	P. 148
7 Change sec code		●6MNO7PQRS	0000	P. 141
8 Delete all data	Delete user data	●6MNO8TUV1	—	P. 448
	Del secret data	●6MNO8TUV2ABC	—	P. 450

● When settings are reset (☞P. 448), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Other settings

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
Own number		●○	Own number	P. 47
Initial settings		●✕	—	P. 46
Reset settings		●#	—	P. 448

Data Box Menu

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
My picture		●7 1	—	P. 330
i-motion		●7 2	—	P. 346
Melody		●7 3	—	P. 366
Chara-den		●7 4	—	P. 359
Print setting(DPOF)		●7 5	—	P. 378

Tools Menu

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
1 Voice recorder		●8 1	—	P. 393
2 Receive Ir data	Receive	●8 2 1	—	P. 390
	Receive all	●8 2 2	—	P. 391
3 Schedule		●8 3	—	P. 418
4 ToDo list		●8 4	—	P. 413
5 Alarm		●8 5	—	P. 410
6 Timer		●8 6	—	P. 409
7 Text memo		●8 7	—	P. 443
8 Calc		●8 8	Tax rate: 5%☆	P. 437
9 Money calc		●8 9	—	P. 439
0 miniSD manager	View miniSD data	●8 0 1	—	P. 376
	Backup/restore	●8 0 2	—	P. 373
	Import	●8 0 3	—	P. 381
	New manager info	●8 0 4	—	P. 380
	Format	●8 0 5	—	P. 378
✕ Bar code reader		●8 ✕	—	P. 190
# Character reader		●8 #	—	P. 193

● When settings are reset (☞P. 448), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

KEITAIViewer

Function menu		Key operation	Default setting	Page
1 e-book		●9	—	P. 396

Dial Key Assignments (5-touch)

Use dial keys to enter text. Each key has multiple characters assigned to it.

- Press the key multiple times to switch characters.

  Example: If 1 is pressed three times in double-byte katakana mode,

  1 [ア] ➡ 1 [イ] ➡ 1 [ウ] appears. (Press ◀ to scroll backwards through characters.)

Double-byte Characters

Key	Kanji (hiragana) input mode	Double-byte katakana input mode	Double-byte alphanumeric input mode		Kuten code mode
			A Upper and lower case	a Lower case	
1	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ	．／_@１(space)	．／_@１(space)	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ＡＢＣａｂｃ２	ａｂｃ２	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	ＤＥＦｄｅｆ３	ｄｅｆ３	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	ＧＨＩｇｈｉ４	ｇｈｉ４	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	ＪＫＬｊｋｌ５	ｊｋｌ５	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	ＭＮＯｍｎｏ６	ｍｎｏ６	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	ＰＱＲＳｐｑｒｓ７	ｐｑｒｓ７	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	ＴＵＶｔｕｖ８	ｔｕｖ８	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	ＷＸＹＺｗｘｙｚ９	ｗｘｙｚ９	9
0	わをん (space)	ワヲン (space)	０(space)	０(space)	0
0 For 1+seconds	＋				n/a
✱	゛ ゜(for characters to which they can be added) ↵ *1		↵ *1		↵
#	Double-byte symbol conversion（ー、。！？・）				n/a
▲	1-touch conversion (previous candidate)	Cursor up			
▼	Normal conversion (next candidate)／↵ *1	Cursor down ／↵ *1			
◀	Cursor left				
▶	Cursor right				
●	Change character input modes				
● For 1+ seconds	Show “Internet” preset phrases				
☆	Conversion to lower case characters (for characters which can be lower case)		Conversion between upper and lower case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	Conversion to upper case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	n/a
☆ For 1+ seconds	Insert phrase				
CLR	Single character deletion, canceling conversion	Single character deletion			Deletion of entered code or single character
CLR For 1+ seconds	Deletion of all characters in front of the cursor *2				
●	Apply, OK	OK			
◀	Show in reverse order or undo				Undo

*1 Press after confirming a character to enter a line break (↵). ↵ appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/Delete new line mark like any other character. Available when inputting text for messages, schedule, ToDo list and Text memo.

*2 When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters on and after the cursor are deleted.

- Some hiragana and katakana with a dakuten mark may be partially omitted.

Single-byte Characters

Key	Single-byte katakana mode	Single-byte alphanumeric mode		Single-byte numeric input mode
		Upper and lower case	Lower case	
1	ｱｲｳｴｵｧｨｩｪｫ	. / _ @ 1 (space)	. / _ @ 1 (space)	1
2	ｶｷｸｹｺ	A B C a b c 2	a b c 2	2
3	ｻｼｽｾｿ	D E F d e f 3	d e f 3	3
4	ﾀﾁﾂﾃﾄｯ	G H I g h i 4	g h i 4	4
5	ﾅﾆﾇﾈﾉ	J K L j k l 5	j k l 5	5
6	ﾊﾋﾌﾍﾎ	M N O m n o 6	m n o 6	6
7	ﾏﾐﾑﾒﾓ	P Q R S p q r s 7	p q r s 7	7
8	ﾔﾕﾖｬｭｮ	T U V t u v 8	t u v 8	8
9	ﾗﾘﾙﾚﾛ	W X Y Z w x y z 9	w x y z 9	9
0	ﾜﾝｦﾝ (space)	0 (space)	0 (space)	0
0 For 1+ seconds	+			
*	゛ ゜ ー ↵	↵ *1		¥
#	Single-byte symbol conversion (-、。!?･~()' "、:;¥&) *3			#
Cursor up	Cursor up			P (during entry of a phone number) ／Cursor up
Cursor down	Cursor down／↵ *1			
Cursor left	Cursor left			
Cursor right	Cursor right			
Change character input modes	Change character input modes			
For 1+ seconds	Show “Internet” preset phrases			
	Conversion to lower case characters (for characters which can be lower case)	Conversion between upper and lower case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	Conversion to upper case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	n/a
For 1+ seconds	Insert phrase			
CLR	Single character deletion			
CLR For 1+ seconds	Deletion of all characters in front of the cursor *2			
	OK			
	Show in reverse order or undo			Undo

*1 A new line (↵) is entered. ↵ appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/delete new line mark like any other character. Available when inputting text for messages, schedule, ToDo list and Text memo.

*2 When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters on and after the cursor are deleted.

*3 During single-byte alphanumeric input (entering mail addresses, URL), 、 , 。 , ・ cannot be entered.

How characters are counted

One double-byte character is counted as two single-byte characters.
A single-byte dakuten/handakuten mark is counted as a single character.

Dial Key Assignments (2-touch)

Double-byte

Upper case mode

1st digit (first key to enter) \ 2nd digit (next key to enter)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	ー	／
7	ま	み	む	め	も	￥	&		☎	
8	や	（	ゆ	）	よ	✱	＃		🖤	*1
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
0	わ	を	ん	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

Lower case mode

1st digit (first key to enter) \ 2nd digit (next key to enter)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
2						f	g	h	i	j
3						k	l	m	n	o
4			っ			p	q	r	s	t
5						u	v	w	x	y
6						z				
7										
8	や		ゆ		よ					*1
9										
0	わ			、	。					

*1 Press [ｶﾅ/ｶﾅ] [ｶﾅ/ｶﾅ] to switch between upper case mode (left) and lower case mode (right).

Single-byte

Upper case mode

1st digit (first key to enter) \ 2nd digit (next key to enter)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｱ	ｲ	ｳ	ｴ	ｵ	A	B	C	D	E
2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F	G	H	I	J
3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K	L	M	N	O
4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P	Q	R	S	T
5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U	V	W	X	Y
6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z	?	!	-	／
7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	￥	&		☎	
8	ﾔ	（	ｭ	）	ﾖ	✱	＃		🖤	*1
9	ﾗ	ﾘ	ﾙ	ﾚ	ﾛ	1	2	3	4	5
0	ﾜ	ｦ	ﾝ	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

Lower case mode

1st digit (first key to enter) \ 2nd digit (next key to enter)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｱ	ｲ	ｳ	ｴ	ｵ	a	b	c	d	e
2						f	g	h	i	j
3						k	l	m	n	o
4			ｯ			p	q	r	s	t
5						u	v	w	x	y
6						z				
7										
8	ﾔ		ｭ		ﾖ					*1
9										
0				,	.					

*1 Press [ｶﾅ/ｶﾅ] [ｶﾅ/ｶﾅ] to switch between upper case mode (left) and lower case mode (right).

*2 ☎ and 🖤 count as two single-byte characters each.

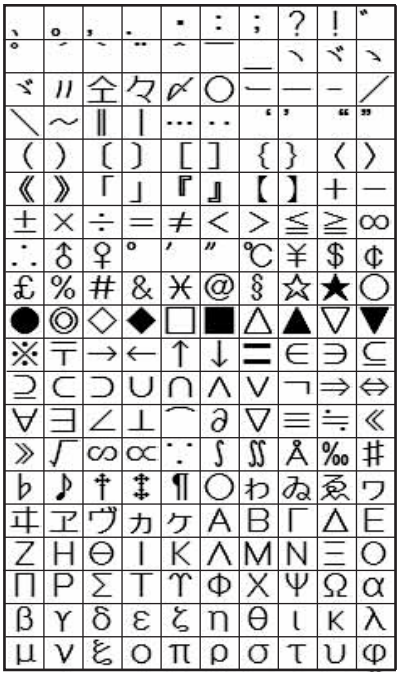
Note

- Empty boxes in charts above indicate spaces.
- For □, press [*] after entering text to switch between upper case and lower case.

Symbol/Special Character List

Press ⓘ in the text input screen to switch between *Symbol* and *Pict*. Press 📷 when inputting symbols to switch from *Half pitch* and *Full pitch*. Press 📷 when inputting pictographs to switch from *Pictograph 2* and *Pictograph 1*.

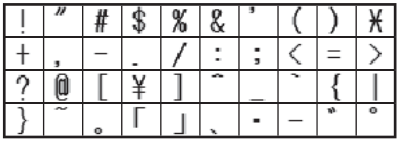
Double-byte symbols/special characters



Special symbols

※ Special characters may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

Single-byte symbols



Pictograph List

Enter reading to convert pictographs.

Pictograph 1

Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph
はれ		ひこうき		ばーすでー		いす		はーと、はあと	
くもり		いえ		でんわ		よる、つき		はーと、はあと	
あめ、かさ		びる		でんわ、けいたい		すーん		しつれん、はーと、はあと	
ゆき		ゆうびんきょく		めも		おん		はーと、はあと	
かみなり		びょういん		てれび		えんど		かお、にこ	
うずまき、たいふう		ぎんこう		げーむ		とけい		かお、むか	
きり		ぎんこう、えーてぃーえむ		しーでぃー		でんわ		かお、かなしい	
こさめ		ほてる		はーと、はあと		めーる		かお、かなしい	
おひつじざ		こんびに		すぺーど		ふぁっくす		かお、ふらふら	
おうしざ		がそりん、すたんど		だいや		あいもーど		やじるし、ぐっど	
ふたござ		ちゅうしゃじょう		くろーばー、くらぶ		あいもーど		おんぷ	
かにざ		しんごう		め		めーる		おんせん	
ししざ		といれ		みみ		どこも		かわいい	
おとめざ		れすとらん		ぐー		どこも		きす	
てんびんざ		きっさてん		ちょき、ぶい		ゆうりょう		びかびか、きらきら	
さそりざ		ばー		ばー		ふりー、むりょう		ひらめき	
いてざ		びーる、さけ		やじるし、みぎした		あいでぃー		むか、いかり	
やぎざ		はんばーがー		やじるし、ひだりうえ		かぎ、しーくれっと、ぱすわーど		ぱんち	
みずがめざ		ぶてぃっく		あし		りたーん		ばくだん	
うおざ		はさみ、びよういん		くつ		くりあ		おんぷ	
すぱーつ		からおけ		めがね		むしめがね、るーぺ、さーち		やじるし、ぱっど	
やきゅう		えいが		くるまいす		にゅー		ねる、ねむい	zzz
ごるふ		やじるし、みぎうえ		しんげつ、つき		はた		びっくり	!
てにす		ゆうえんち		つき		ふりーだいやる		びっくり	!?
さっかー		おんがく		はんげつ、つき		しゃーぷだいやる		びっくり	!!
すきー		あーと		みかづき、つき		もばきゅー		しょうげき、いらいら	
ばすけっと、ばすけ		えんげき		まんげつ、つき		いち	1	あせ	
はた		いべんと		いぬ		に	2	あせ	
ぼけっとべる、ばけべる		ちけっと		ねこ		さん	3	だっしゅ	
でんしゃ		たばこ、きつえん		よっと、りぞーと		よん、し	4	−	
ちかてつ		きんえん		くりすます		ご	5	−	
しんかんせん		かめら		やじるし、ひだりした		ろく	6	おーけー	OK
くるま		かばん		かちんこ		なな、しち	7		
くるま		ほん		ふくろ		はち	8		
ばす		りぼん		べん		きゅー、く	9		
ふね		ぷれぜんと		ひとかげ		ぜろ	0		

- The pictographs above may not appear properly depending on the receiving model. In addition, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

- Pictographs other than ♥, ♥ or ☎ appear as spaces in SMS.
- When keyword (reading) is entered, after the conversion candidate ***Pict-1*** appears. However, even if candidate is selected, the characters ***Pict-1*** are not set.

Pictograph 2

Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph
あいあぶり		すなどけい、とけい		ねこ		やじるし、さゆう		らーめん、どんぶり	
あいあぶり		じてんしゃ		かお、かなしい		やじるし、じょうげ		ばん、しょくばん	
てぃーしゃつ、しゃつ		おちゃ、ゆのみ		かお、なみだ、かなしい		がっこう		かたつむり	
さいふ		うでどけい、とけい		えぬじー	NG	なみ		ひよこ	
くちべに、けしょう		かお		くりっぷ		ふじさん、やま		べんぎん	
じーんず、じーばん、ずぼん		かお、にこ		こぴーらいと		くろーばー		さかな	
すのぼ		かお、あせ		てぃーえむ、とれーどまーく、しょうひょう	™	さくらんぼ、ちぇりー		かお、うまい	
べる、ちゃべる		かお、あせ		はしる、ひと		ちゅーりっぷ、はな		かお	
どあ		かお、むか		まるひ		ばなな		うま	
おかね、どるぶくろ		かお、ぼけ		りさいくる		りんご		ぶた	
ぱそこん		はーと		まるあーる、しょうひょう		め		わいん、さけ	
らぶれたー		おーけー、ぐっど、ないす		きけん、けいこく		もみじ		かお、げっそり、さげび	
れんち、こうぐ		かお、べー		きんし		さくら			
えんぴつ		かお、ういんく		あき、くうしつ、くうせき、くうしゃ		おにぎり、おむすび			
おうかん		かお、にこ、うれしい		ごうかく		けーき			
ゆびわ		かお、がまん、かなしい		まんしつ、まんせき、まんしゃ		とっくり、さけ			

- The pictographs above may not appear properly depending on the receiving model. In addition, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.
- Pictographs other than ♥, ♥ or ☎ appear as spaces in SMS.
- Some of the above pictographs may not appear properly depending on the website.
- When keyword (reading) is entered, after the conversion candidate ***Pict-2*** appears. However, even if candidate is selected, the characters ***Pict-2*** are not set.

Emoticon List

Code	Emoticon	Code	Emoticon	Code	Emoticon	Code	Emoticon
01	(^0^)	14	(T_T)	27	(° ▽ °)	40	(￣▽￣;)
02	o(^-^)o	15	(¥_¥)	28	!(^ ^)!	41	(^^)Y☆Y(^^)
03	(^0^)/	16	(@_@)	29	o(><)o	42	o(^-^o)(o^-^)o
04	p(^^)q	17	(?_?)	30	(。。;)	43	(ノ°0°)ノ
05	(>_<)	18	(;_;)	31	φ(..)	44	(° 0°)＼(-_-)
06	(¥_¥)	19	(0_0)	32	(^人^)	45	(∪o∪)。。。
07	m(__)m	20	(^_^)	33	<(__)>	46	(^ ^)＼(° °)
08	f^_^;	21	(^^ゞ	34	(´Д`)	47	＼^o^／
09	(:_;)	22	(☆_☆)	35	＼(^^::)	48	(┬┬_┬┬)
10	(-.-;)	23	(ノ><)ノ	36	(#^.^#)	49	??(° Q。)??
11	(+_+)	24	(−_−#)	37	(^0)=3	50	(^_-)-☆
12	(-_-)	25	(¨;)	38	(;´・`)		
13	(v_v)	26	(−_−メ)	39	(´～`;)		

Phrase List

Greetings	1	おはようございます	Reply	1	OKです
	2	おやすみなさい		2	NGです
	3	昨日は､どうもありがとうございました		3	ありがとう
	4	行ってきます		4	ごめんなさい
	5	いってらっしゃい		5	待ってて
	6	お疲れ様でした		6	今忙しい
	7	お世話になっております		7	後で連絡入れます
	8	こんにちは		8	保留です
	9	こんばんは		9	キャンセルです
	0	よろしくお願い致します		0	時間がありません
Business	1	直行します	Internet	1	.ne.jp
	2	直帰します		2	.co.jp
	3	休暇をとります		3	.ac.jp
	4	半休します		4	.or.jp
	5	電車遅延のため、遅れます		5	.go.jp
	6	本日の会議は中止となりました		6	.com
	7	出欠をご連絡ください		7	@docomo.ne.jp
	8	次の指示を待ってください		8	http://
	9	携帯の電源を切ります		9	www.
	0	メールで連絡してください		0	.html
Private	1	遊びに行こう	Original phrase	1	----------
	2	飲みに行きませんか？		2	----------
	3	遅れます		3	----------
	4	変更します		4	----------
	5	中止です		5	----------
	6	先に行きます		6	----------
	7	先に帰ります		7	----------
	8	時間です		8	----------
	9	何してるの？		9	----------
	0	どこにいるの？		0	----------

● Original phrases are not registered in handset at the time of purchase.

JIS Kuten Code List

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols, and alphanumeric characters.

- Each kuten code corresponds to a particular character. Refer to “Inputting Kuten Code” on P. 521 for details.

Kuten 1 to 3	JIS kuten 4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010		Space	。	，	．	：	；	？		
011	！	”	＃	＄	％	＆	’	（	）	＊
012	＋	，	－	．	／	０	１	２	３	４
013	５	６	７	８	９	：	；	＜	＝	＞
014	？	＠	Ａ	Ｂ	Ｃ	Ｄ	Ｅ	Ｆ	Ｇ	Ｈ
015	Ｉ	Ｊ	Ｋ	Ｌ	Ｍ	Ｎ	Ｏ	Ｐ	Ｑ	Ｒ
016	Ｓ	Ｔ	Ｕ	Ｖ	Ｗ	Ｘ	Ｙ	Ｚ	［	＼
017	］	＾	＿	‘	ａ	ｂ	ｃ	ｄ	ｅ	ｆ
018	ｇ	ｈ	ｉ	ｊ	ｋ	ｌ	ｍ	ｎ	ｏ	ｐ
019	ｑ	ｒ	ｓ	ｔ	ｕ	ｖ	ｗ	ｘ	ｙ	ｚ
020	｛	｜	｝	～						
021										
022										
023										
024										
026										
027										
028										
029										
031							０	１	２	３
032	４	５	６	７	８	９				
033				Ａ	Ｂ	Ｃ	Ｄ	Ｅ	Ｆ	Ｇ
034	Ｈ	Ｉ	Ｊ	Ｋ	Ｌ	Ｍ	Ｎ	Ｏ	Ｐ	Ｑ
035	Ｒ	Ｓ	Ｔ	Ｕ	Ｖ	Ｗ	Ｘ	Ｙ	Ｚ	ａ
036						ａ	ｂ	ｃ	ｄ	ｅ
037	ｆ	ｇ	ｈ	ｉ	ｊ	ｋ	ｌ	ｍ	ｎ	ｏ
038	ｐ	ｑ	ｒ	ｓ	ｔ	ｕ	ｖ	ｗ	ｘ	ｙ
039	ｚ									
040										
041										
042										
043										
044										
045										
046										
047										
048										
050										
051										
052										
053										
054										
055										
056										
057										
058										
060										
061										
062										
063										
064										
065										
070										
071										
072										

Kuten 1 to 3	JIS kuten 4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
073	Ь	Э	Ю	Я						а
074										й
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	к
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								
080										
081										
082										
083										
130		①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨
131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲
132	⑳	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ	Ⅴ	Ⅵ	Ⅶ	Ⅷ	Ⅸ
133	Ⅹ	㍍	㍗	㎏	㏄	㎜	㎝	㎞	㎎	㎏
134	㏄	㎜	㎡	㏊	㍻	№	㏍	℡	㊤	㊥
135	㊦	㊧	㊨	㈱	㈲	㈹	㍾	㍽	㍼	∮
136	∑	∟	⊿							
137	∵	∩	∪							
139										
160	亜	唖	娃	阿	哀	愛	挨	姶	逢	
161	葵	茜	穐	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯵
162	梓	圧	斡	扱	宛	姐	虻	飴	絢	綾
163	鮎	或	粟	袷	安	庵	按	暗	案	闇
164	鞍	杏								
164										
165		以	伊	位	依	偉	囲	夷	委	
166	威	尉	惟	意	慰	易	椅	為	畏	異
167	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	遺	医
168	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壱	逸	茨
169	稲	茨	芋	鰯	允	印	咽	員	因	姻
170	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭					
		院	陰	隠	韻					
170										
171										
172										
173										
173										
174										
175										
176										
177										
178										
178										
179										
180										
181										
182										
182										
183										
184										
185										
186										

Kuten 1 to 3	JIS kuten 4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
187										
188										
189										
190										
191										
192										
193										
194										
195										
196										
197										
198										
199										
200										
201										
202										
203										
204										
205										
206										
207										
き										
207										
208										
209										
210										
211										
212										
213										
214										
215										
216										
217										
218										
219										
220										
221										
222										
223										
224										
225										
226										
く										
226										
227										
228										
229										
230										
231										
232										
け										
232										
233										
234										
235										
236										
237										
238										
239										
240										

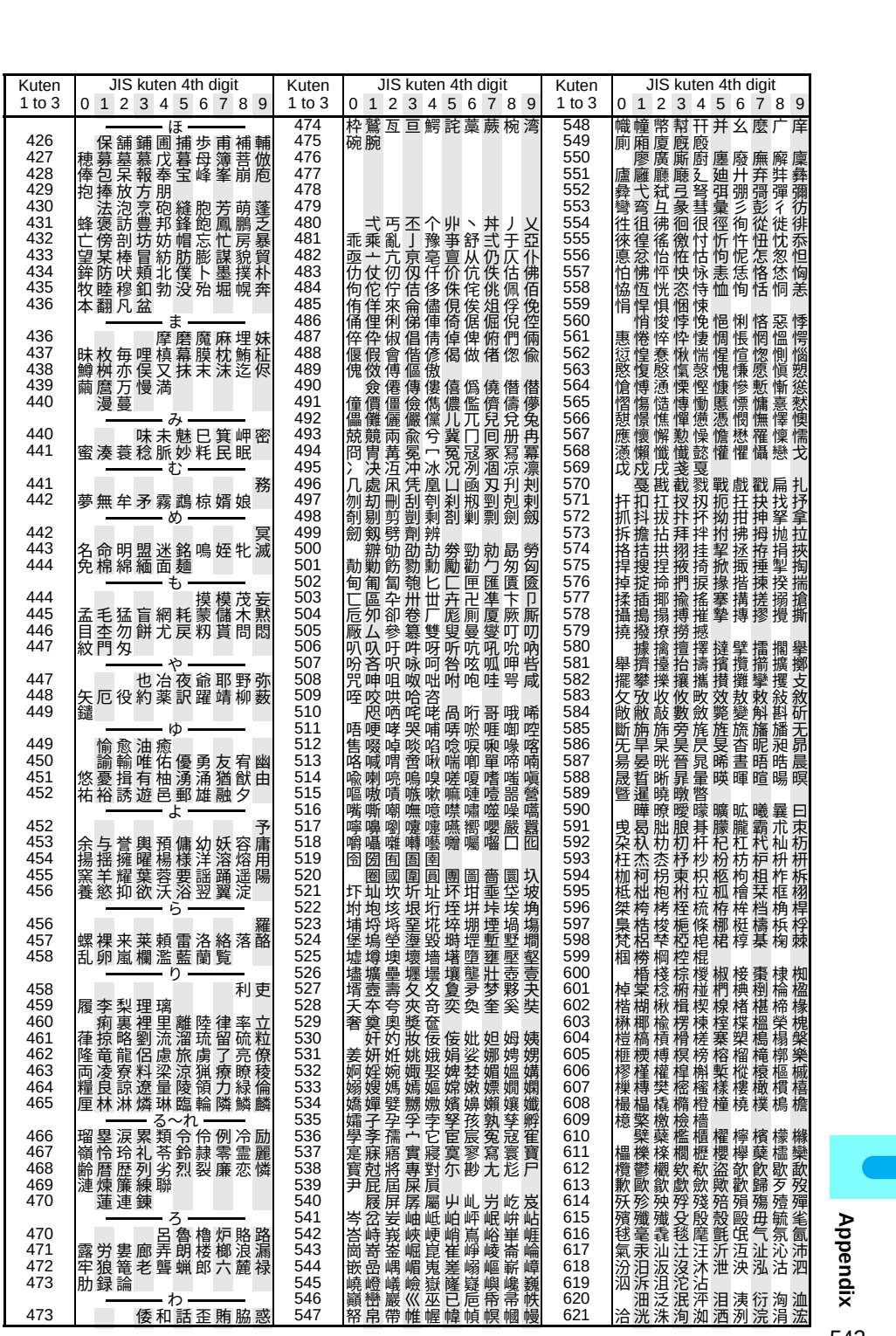
Note

- If an unregistered kuten code is entered, an error alarm will sound (short beeps) and either a space or nothing will be entered. (Error tone does not sound when Keypad sound is set to ***Silent***.)
- Some entries in the kuten code list may differ from on the screen.

Kuten 1 to 3	JIS kuten 4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
241	肩	見	謙	賢	軒	遣	鍵	険	験	
242	顧	元	厳	幻	弦		減	源	頸	現
243	絃		舷	言	限					
244					こ					固
245	姑	孤								狐
246	糊		己	股	五	梧	交	厚	個	故
247	鰹	悟	鯉	交	孝	攻	浩	絞	行	閣
248	効	勾	后	喉	幸	坑	皇	肯	購	高
249										
250			巧	拘	江	紅	航	荒	鋼	合
251										
252										
253										
254										
255										
256										
257										
258										
259										
260										
261										
262										
263										
264										
265										
266										
267										
268										
269										
270										
271										
272										
273										
274										
275										
276										
277										
278										
279										
280										
281										
282										
283										
284										
285										
286										
287										
288										
289										
290										
291										
292										
293										
294										
295										
296										
297										
298										
299										
300										
301										
302										
303										
304										
305										
306										
307										
308										

Kuten 1 to 3	JIS kuten 4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
309	醸	錠		嘱	植	飾				
310			拭		殖	燭				
311		蝕		辱	伸	信	織	職	触	食
312		心		慎	尻	晋	侵	色	嬢	審
313				真	振	森	榛	浸	申	
314		疹		辛	神	臣	芯	薪	診	
315		尋		甚	進	人	仁	刃	壬	
316					す					諏
317								筒	推	錘
318		須		酢	図	吹	垂	帥	錐	水
319				睡	厨	逗	遂	趨		随
320				髄	翠	衰	枢		据	杉
321		瑞		管	崇	数				
322		椙			頗	裾	雀	寸		
323										
324										
325										
326										
327										
328										
329										
330										
331										
332										
333										
334										
335										
336										
337										
338										
339										
340										
341										
342										
343										
344										
345										
346										
347										
348										
349										
350										
351										
352										
353										
354										
355										
356										
357										
358										
359										
360										
361										
362										
363										
364										
365										
366										
367										
368										
369										

Kuten 1 to 3	JIS kuten 4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
370										
371										
372										
373										
373										
374										
375										
376										
377										
378										
379										
380										
381										
382										
383										
384										
385										
386										
386										
387										
388										
388										
389										
390										
390										
391										
392										
393										
393										
394										
395										
396										
397										
398										
399										
400										
401										
402										
403										
404										
405										
405										
406										
407										
408										
409										
410										
411										
412										
413										
414										
415										
415										
416										
417										
418										
419										
420										
421										
422										
422										
423										
424										
425										
426										



Kuten 1 to 3	JIS kuten 4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
622	淵	淸	淨	淳	淌	淦	添	淹	渇	渉
623	渡	渙	渚	減	渟	渠	渥	渦	渭	測
624	渾	渣	渫	渮	渶	渼	湊	湍	湛	湜
625	湧	湫	湮	湲	湟	湩	湯	湳	湾	湿
626	満	溂	溌	溏	源	溘	溙	溜	溝	溟
627	準	溢	溥	溧	溪	溲	溶	溷	溺	溽
628	滁	滂	滄	滅	滉	滋	滌	滍	滎	滏
629	滲	滴	滸	滾	滿	漁	漂	漆	漉	漏
630	漑	漕	漣	漪	漫	漬	漱	漲	漳	漸
631	潁	潔	潜	潟	潤	潦	潭	潮	潯	潰
632	潴	潸	潺	潼	澁	澄	澆	澎	澑	澗
633	澡	澤	澪	澱	濆	濔	濕	濘	濛	濟
634	濠	濡	濤	濫	濬	濮	濯	濱	濶	濾
635	瀉	瀋	瀏	瀑	瀕	瀘	瀛	瀝	瀞	瀟
636	瀦	瀧	瀬	瀲	瀾	灌	灑	灘	灙	灣
637	火	灯	灰	灸	灼	災	炙	炬	炭	炮
638	炯	炳	炷	炸	点	為	烈	烏	烝	烟
639	烱	烹	焉	焔	焙	焚	焜	無	焦	焰
640	煇	煉	煌	煎	煕	煖	煙	煢	煤	煥
641	煦	照	煮	煽	熈	熊	熏	熔	熕	熙
642	熟	熨	熬	燃	燈	燉	燎	燐	燒	燔
643	燕	燗	燙	燠	燥	燦	燧	燬	燭	燵
644	燹	燻	燼	燿	爆	爍	爐	爛	爨	爪
645	爬	爭	爰	爲	爵	父	爺	爼	爽	爾
646	牆	片	版	牌	牒	牘	牙	牛	牝	牟
647	牡	牢	牧	物	牲	牴	特	牽	犀	犂
648	犠	犧	犬	犯	状	狂	狄	狆	狎	狐
649	狗	狙	狛	狩	独	狭	狷	狸	狼	猊
650	猗	猛	猟	猥	猩	猪	猫	献	猴	猶
651	猷	猿	獄	獅	獏	獗	獣	獨	獪	獲
652	獺	獾	玄	率	玉	王	玖	玩	玲	珀
653	珍	珠	珥	珪	班	現	球	理	琉	瑛
654	瑚	瑞	瑠	瑣	瑤	瑩	瑯	瑰	瑳	瑶
655	瑾	璃	璋	璧	環	璽	璿	瓊	瓏	瓔
656	瓜	瓢	瓦	瓩	瓮	瓰	瓲	瓶	甕	甘
657	甜	甦	甫	甬	甯	用	甲	申	男	甸
658	画	畄	畆	畉	畊	畏	畑	畔	留	畜
659	畝	畠	畢	畦	畧	畫	畭	略	畳	畷
660	畸	當	畿	疆	疇	疉	疊	疋	疎	疏
661	疑	疔	疚	疝	疣	疥	疫	疲	疳	疵
662	疸	疹	疼	疽	痂	痍	痒	痔	痕	痘
663	痙	痛	痢	痣	痩	痰	痲	痴	痺	痼
664	痾	瘁	瘉	瘋	瘍	瘓	瘖	瘠	瘡	瘢
665	瘤	瘦	瘧	瘰	瘴	瘻	癆	癇	癈	癌
666	癒	癖	癘	癜	癡	癢	癤	癪	癩	癪
667	癶	発	皀	皃	皆	皇	皈	皐	皎	皓
668	皙	皚	皦	皮	皹	皺	皿	盂	盃	盆
669	盈	益	盍	盒	盗	盛	盞	盟	盡	監
670	盤	盥	盧	盪	目	盲	直	相	盻	盾
671	省	眄	眇	眈	眉	看	県	眛	眞	真
672	眠	眥	眦	睛	睡	督	睦	睨	睫	睹
673	睾	睿	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞥	瞬	瞭	瞰	瞳
674	瞶	瞹	瞻	瞼	瞽	瞿	矇	矍	矗	矚
675	矛	矜	矢	矧	矩	矮	矯	石	砂	砌
676	砒	研	砕	砠	砥	砦	砧	砲	破	砺
677	砿	硅	硝	硫	硬	硯	硲	硴	碁	碆
678	碇	碌	碍	碎	碑	碓	碕	碗	碣	碧
679	碩	碪	碯	碵	碸	確	碼	碾	磁	磅
680	磆	磊	磋	磐	磔	磕	磚	磧	磨	磬
681	磯	磴	磵	磹	磽	礁	礎	礒	礙	礦
682	礪	礫	礬	礰	礴	示	礼	社	祀	祁
683	祇	祈	祉	祓	祕	祖	祗	祚	祝	神
684	祟	祠	祢	祥	票	祷	祿	禀	禁	禄
685	禍	禎	福	禊	禔	禧	禮	禰	禽	禾
686	禿	秀	私	秉	秋	科	秒	秘	租	秣
687	秤	秦	秩	称	移	稀	程	稔	稗	稙
688	稚	稜	稟	稠	種	稱	稲	稷	稼	稽
689	稾	稿	穀	穂	穆	穏	穐	穣	穫	穴
690	究	穿	突	窃	窄	窈	窒	窓	窕	窖
691	窘	窟	窠	窩	窪	窮	窯	窺	竃	竄
692	竅	竇	竈	立	竜	竝	竟	竡	竢	竦
693	竭	竰	竸	端	競	竹	竺	竽	竿	笆
694	笈	笊	笋	笏	笑	笘	笙	笛	笞	笠
695	笥	符	笨	笳	笹	笻	笽	笾	笵	筅

Kuten 1 to 3	JIS kuten 4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
696	繧	繝	繖	繕	繋	繍	繊	纈	纉	纏
697	纒	纓	纔	纖	纛	纜	缸	缺	罐	罅
698	罌	罍	罎	罐	网	罕	罔	罘	罟	罠
699	罧	罨	罩	罫	罰	罵	罷	羃	羅	羆
700	羇	羈	羌	羔	羚	羝	羞	羣	群	羨
701	義	羯	羲	羶	羸	羹	羽	翁	翅	翌
702	翔	翕	翠	翡	翦	翩	翫	翰	翳	翹
703	翻	翼	耀	老	考	耄	者	耆	耋	而
704	耐	耑	耒	耕	耗	耘	耙	耜	耡	耨
705	耳	耶	耽	聆	聊	聒	聖	聘	聚	聞
706	聡	聢	聨	聳	聴	聶	職	聿	肄	肅
707	肆	肇	肉	肋	肌	肓	肖	肘	肚	肛
708	肝	肢	肥	肩	肪	肬	肭	肯	肱	育
709	肴	肺	肼	胃	胄	胆	背	胎	胖	胚
710	胛	胝	胞	胡	胤	胥	胯	胱	胴	胸
711	胼	能	脂	脅	脆	脇	脈	脊	脚	脛
712	脩	脱	脳	脹	腆	腋	腎	腐	腑	腓
713	腔	腕	腟	腥	腦	腫	腮	腰	腱	腴
714	腸	腹	腺	腿	膀	膂	膃	膈	膊	膏
715	膓	膕	膚	膜	膝	膠	膣	膤	膨	膩
716	膰	膵	膸	膺	膽	膾	膿	臀	臂	臆
717	臈	臉	臍	臑	臓	臙	臚	臟	臠	臣
718	臥	臧	臨	自	臭	臯	臺	臻	臼	舁
719	舂	舅	與	舌	舎	舐	舒	舖	舗	舘
720	舛	舜	舞	舟	航	舫	般	舵	舶	舷
721	舸	船	艇	艀	艘	艙	艚	艝	艟	艠
722	艢	艤	艦	艨	艪	艫	艮	良	艱	色
723	艶	艸	艾	芋	芍	芒	芙	芝	芟	芦
724	芥	芭	芯	芳	芹	芻	芽	苅	苑	苒
725	苓	苔	苗	苛	苜	苞	苟	苡	苣	若
726	苦	苫	苴	苺	苻	苾	茂	茄	茅	茆
727	茉	茎	茖	茗	茘	茜	茣	茨	茫	茯
728	茱	茲	茴	茵	茶	茸	茹	荀	荅	荊
729	荏	荐	荒	荘	荳	荵	荷	荻	荼	莅
730	莇	莊	莎	莓	莖	莚	莞	莟	莠	莢
731	莧	莨	菁	菅	菊	菌	菎	菓	菖	菘
732	菜	菟	菠	菩	華	菰	菱	菲	萄	萇
733	萋	萌	萍	萎	萓	萠	萢	萩	萪	萬
734	萱	萵	萸	萼	落	葆	葉	著	葛	葡
735	董	葦	葩	葭	葯	葱	葵	葺	蒂	蒋
736	蒐	蒔	蒙	蒜	蒟	蒡	蒭	蒲	蒸	蒻
737	蒼	蒿	蓁	蓄	蓆	蓉	蓊	蓋	蓍	蓑
738	蓖	蓙	蓚	蓜	蓬	蓮	蓼	蓿	蔀	蔑
739	蔓	蔔	蔕	蔗	蔘	蔚	蔟	蔡	蔣	蔦
740	蔬	蔭	蔵	蔽	蕁	蕃	蕈	蕉	蕊	蕋
741	蕎	蕕	蕗	蕘	蕙	蕚	蕣	蕤	蕨	蕩
742	蕪	蕭	蕷	蕺	蕻	蕾	薀	薄	薇	薈
743	薊	薏	薑	薔	薗	薙	薛	薜	薤	薦
744	薨	薩	薪	薫	薬	薮	薯	薹	薺	藁
745	藉	藍	藏	藐	藕	藜	藝	藤	藥	藪
746	藷	藹	藺	藻	藾	蘂	蘆	蘇	蘊	蘋
747	蘚	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘿	虎	虐	虔	虚	虜
748	虞	虢	虧	虫	虱	虹	虻	虼	虽	虻
749	蚊	蚋	蚌	蚓	蚕	蚣	蚤	蚩	蚪	蚫
750	蚯	蚰	蚶	蚶	蛄	蛆	蛇	蛉	蛋	蛍
751	蛎	蛔	蛙	蛛	蛞	蛟	蛤	蛩	蛭	蛮
752	蛯	蛸	蛹	蛻	蛾	蜀	蜂	蜃	蜆	蜈
753	蜉	蜊	蜍	蜒	蜘	蜚	蜜	蜥	蜩	蜴
754	蜷	蜻	蜿	蝉	蝋	蝌	蝎	蝓	蝕	蝗
755	蝙	蝟	蝠	蝣	蝦	蝨	蝪	蝮	蝴	蝶
756	蝸	蝿	螂	螃	融	螟	螢	螫	螳	螺
757	螻	螽	蟀	蟄	蟆	蟇	蟋	蟐	蟒	蟠
758	蟯	蟲	蟶	蟷	蟹	蟻	蟾	蠅	蠍	蠏
759	蠑	蠕	蠖	蠡	蠢	蠣	蠧	蠱	蠶	蠹
760	蠻	血	衂	衄	衆	行	衍	衒	術	衙
761	街	衛	衝	衞	衡	衢	衣	表	衫	衰
762	衵	衷	衽	衾	衿	袁	袈	袋	袍	袒
763	袖	袙	被	袮	袰	袱	裁	裂	装	裃
764	裄	裏	裔	裕	裘	裙	補	裝	裟	裡
765	裨	裲	裳	裴	裵	裸	裹	製	裾	褂
766	複	褌	褐	褒	褓	褜	褞	褥	褪	褫
767	褶	褻	襁	襄	襖	襞	襟	襠	襤	襦
768	襪	襯	襲	襴	襷	襾	覆	覇	覈	覊
769	覓	覗	規	覚	覦	覧	覩	親	覬	覯

Kuten 1 to 3	JIS kuten 4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
770	覲	観	角	觜	觝	解	触	觧	言	訂
771	訃	訊	訌	訐	訖	訓	訕	訛	訝	訟
772	訣	訥	訪	設	許	訳	訴	訶	診	註
773	証	詆	詐	詔	評	詛	詞	詠	詢	詣
774	試	詩	詫	詬	詭	詮	詰	話	該	詳
775	誂	誄	誅	誇	誉	誌	認	誑	誓	誕
776	誘	誚	語	誠	誡	誣	誤	誥	誦	誨
777	説	読	誰	課	誹	誼	調	談	請	諌
778	諍	諏	諒	論	諚	諛	諜	諞	諠	諡
779	諢	諤	諦	諧	諫	諭	諮	諱	諳	諷
780	諸	諺	諾	謀	謁	謂	謄	謌	謎	謐
781	謗	謙	講	謝	謡	謦	謨	謫	謬	謳
782	謹	謾	譁	譌	譏	譖	識	譚	譜	警
783	譬	譯	議	譲	譴	護	譽	讀	変	讐
784	讒	讓	谷	谺	谿	豁	豆	豈	豊	豎
785	豕	豚	象	豪	豫	豸	貂	貅	貉	貊
786	貍	貎	貔	貘	貝	貞	負	財	貢	貧
787	貨	販	貪	貫	責	貯	貰	貲	貳	貴
788	貶	買	貸	貽	貿	賀	賁	賂	賃	賄
789	賊	資	賈	賑	賓	賛	賜	賞	賠	賢
790	賣	賤	賦	質	賭	賺	賻	購	賽	贄
791	贅	贈	贋	贔	赤	赦	赧	赫	赭	走
792	赳	赴	起	趁	趂	趄	超	越	趙	趣
793	趨	足	趺	趾	跂	跋	跌	跏	跖	跚
794	跛	距	跟	跡	跣	跨	跪	跫	跬	路
795	跳	践	跼	跿	踈	踉	踊	踏	踐	踝
796	踞	踟	踠	踢	踣	踧	踪	踰	踵	踴
797	蹂	蹄	蹇	蹈	蹉	蹊	蹌	蹐	蹕	蹙
798	蹟	蹠	蹣	蹤	蹲	蹴	蹶	蹼	躁	躄
799	躇	躊	躋	躍	躑	躓	躔	躙	躡	躪
800	軀	躯	躰	躱	躾	軅	軈	軋	軌	軍
801	軒	軟	転	軣	軫	軸	軻	軼	軽	軾
802	較	載	輊	輌	輔	輙	輛	輜	輝	輟
803	輦	輩	輪	輯	輳	輸	輻	輾	輿	轂
804	轄	轅	轆	轉	轌	轍	轎	轗	車	轜
805	轡	轢	轣	轤	辛	辜	辞	辟	辣	辧
806	辨	辮	辰	辱	農	辿	迂	迄	迅	迎
807	近	返	迢	迥	迦	迪	迫	迭	迯	述
808	迴	迷	迸	迹	迺	追	退	送	逃	逅
809	逆	逋	逍	透	逐	逓	途	逗	這	通
810	逝	逞	速	造	逢	連	逮	週	進	逸
811	逵	逶	逸	逹	遁	遂	遅	遇	遉	遊
812	運	遍	過	遏	遐	遑	遒	道	達	違
813	遖	遘	遜	遡	遣	遥	遨	遭	遮	遯
814	遵	遶	遷	選	遺	遼	遽	避	邀	邁
815	邂	邃	還	邉	邊	邏	邑	邕	邨	邪
816	邵	邸	邾	郁	郊	郎	郢	郤	部	郭
817	郵	郷	都	鄂	鄒	鄙	鄭	酋	酌	配
818	酎	酒	酔	酢	酣	酥	酩	酪	酬	酵
819	酷	酸	酽	酿	醂	醇	醉	醋	醍	醐
820	醒	醗	醜	醢	醤	醪	醴	醵	醸	醺
821	采	釉	釋	里	重	野	量	金	釘	釜
822	針	釣	釧	釵	釶	鈍	鈎	鈑	鈔	鈕
823	鈞	鈩	鈬	鈴	鈷	鈸	鈹	鈿	鉄	鉅
824	鉈	鉉	鉋	鉗	鉛	鉞	鉢	鉦	鉱	鉾
825	鋏	鋒	鋓	鋙	鋤	鋪	鋭	鋲	鋳	鋸
826	鋺	鋼	錆	錐	錏	錐	錘	錙	錚	錠
827	錣	錦	錨	錫	錬	錯	録	錵	鍄	鍋
828	鍍	鍔	鍖	鍛	鍜	鍠	鍡	鍬	鍮	鍵
829	鍼	鍾	鎂	鎌	鎔	鎖	鎗	鎚	鎧	鎬
830	鎮	鎰	鎳	鏃	鏆	鏈	鏑	鏖	鏘	鏝
831	鏡	鏥	鏨	鏩	鏬	鏰	鏸	鐃	鐇	鐐
832	鐓	鐔	鐘	鐙	鐚	鐡	鐡	鐥	鐦	鐫
833	鐶	鐸	鐺	鑁	鑄	鑊	鑑	鑒	鑓	鑚
834	鑞	鑢	鑪	鑰	鑵	鑷	鑼	鑽	鑾	鑿
835	長	門	閃	閇	閊	閏	閑	閒	間	閖
836	閘	閙	閠	閡	関	閧	閨	閭	閲	閴
837	闇	闊	闌	闍	闔	闕	闖	闘	闡	闢
838	闥	阜	阡	阨	阪	阯	防	阻	阿	陀
839	陂	附	陌	降	限	陛	陜	陞	陟	陥
840	陦	陪	陬	陰	陲	陳	陵	陶	陸	険

Example of various calculations

Example calculations		Operation	Displayed result
Addition, subtraction, multiplication, division	14×3+5=	14[×]3[+]5[=]	47
	(−24)÷4−2=	[−]24[÷]4[−]2[=]	−8
Constants	34+57= 45+57=	34[+]57[=] 45 [=] (The addend becomes the constant.)	91 102
	48−23= 14−23=	48[−]23[=] 14 [=] (The subtrahend becomes the constant.)	25 −9
	68×25= 68×40=	68[×]25[=] 40 [=] (The multiplicand becomes the constant.)	1700 2720
	35÷14= 98÷14=	35[÷]14[=] 98 [=] (The divisor becomes the constant.)	2.5 7
Percentages	What is 10% of 200?	200[×]10[%]	20
	9 is what % of 36?	9[÷]36[%]	25
Consumption Tax calculation	How much tax is included in 3000 yen?	3000[TAX]	142 Tax
	How much is 3000 yen without tax ?	3000[TAX][TAX]	2858−TAX
Premiums, discounts	10% increase of 200?	200[+]10[%] (Or 200[×]10[%][+][=])	220
	20% discount of 500?	500[−]20[%] (Or 500[×]20[%][−][=])	400
Powers	$(4^3)^2$=	4[×][=][=][×][=]	4096
Inverse numbers	1/8=	8[÷][=]	0.125
Memory calculations — Sum	27×5= +)87÷3= +)68+15= (Sum) =	[CM] 27[×]5 [M+] 87[÷]3 [M+] 68[+]15[M+] [RM] ([M+] also function as a [=])	M 135 M 29 M 83 M 247
Memory calculations — Temporary memory	(13+3×4)×(50−45)=	[CM]13[M+]3[×]4[M+]50[−]45[×][RM][=]	M 125
Memory calculations — Constant memory	135×(12+14)= (12+14)÷5 =	[CM] 12[+]14[M+] 135[×][RM][=] [RM][÷]5[=]	M 26 M 3510 M 5.2

● ***M*** appears for any value other than 0.

Note

● Press [CM] to clear the memory before starting.

When *E* appears

● When ***E*** appears as a result, no further calculations can be made. Press [C • CE].
① When dividing by 0 (Example: 5 [÷] 0 [=])
② When the number of integers in the memory exceeds 12 digits (Example: [CM] 999999999999 [M+] 1 [M+])
③ When the number of integers in a calculation result is 12 digits or more (Example: 1000000000 [÷] 0.01 [%])

● Numbers after the decimal point are left off when calculating tax.
Example: If 120 [TAX] is pressed, ***5Tax*** appears.

Multiaccess Combinations

Below are the main combinations of transmission functions operable simultaneously.

Transmission type / Current transmission	Voice call		Video-phone		i-mode	i-mode mail		SMS		Data trans (packet)		Data trans (64K)
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive		Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	
Phone	×*1	×*1	×	×*2	×	×	○*3	×	○*3	○*8	○*8	×
Video-phone	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○*3	×	×	×
i-mode	○*4	○	×*5	×	×	○*6	○*3	×	○*3	×	×	×
i-αppli	×*7	○	×*7	×	×	×	○*3	×	○*3	×	×	×
Transmitting data (packet)	×*9	○*10	×	×	×	×	×	×	○*3	×	×	×
Transmitting data (64K)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○*3	×	×	×

○: Current transmission is retained and new transmission is processed.
×: Current transmission is retained. (Cannot process new transmission.)
*1 Available when registered for Call Waiting Service. (☞P. 455)
*2 Continue voice call or disconnect and receive video-phone.
*3 Check new message/Check new SMS are not available. Auto receive is available.
*4 Calls from Phone To (AV Phone To) are available. (☞P. 225)
*5 Calls from Phone To (AV Phone To) are available but i-mode is disconnected. Previous screen reappears after video-phone ends. (☞P. 225)
*6 Sending from Mail To is available. (☞P. 225)
*7 Download software that supports voice calling and video-phone calling.
*8 During a call, transmitting data (packet) screen appears on FOMA terminal. When ending transmission, first data transmission ends and then phone ends with subsequent ending operations.
*9 Calls can be made hands-free when a hands-free device is connected.
*10 During transmission, phone screen appears. When ☎PWR is pressed, voice call ends and then data transmission (packet) ends with subsequent ending operations. (When ending transmission with a device such as a PC, it is possible to end data transmission (packet) regardless of above.)

Assistant View Combinations

Below are the main combinations of functions operable simultaneously.

		Mail	Phone-book	Schedule	ToDo list	Text memo	Calculator	Support-book	KEITAI Viewer	Money calculator
Original function	Voice call	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*1	○
	i-mode	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	i-mode mail/ SMS	○*2	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Phonebook	○	—	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Schedule	○	○	—	×	○	○	○	○	○
	ToDo list	○	○	×	—	○	○	○	○	○
	Text memo	○	○	○	○	—	○	○	○	○

○: Available ×: Not available —: Same function; not available.
*1 miniSD Memory Card cannot be accessed.
*2 Not available during Chat mail.

Note

- When connecting to URL read from Bar code reader or Character reader, Assistant View may not be available during i-mode. In such cases, bookmark the URL and connect using bookmark. (☞P. 216)

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Services Available from the FOMA Terminal

Available services		Phone numbers
Collect calls (transmission charged to receiver)		(No area code) 106
General landline and DoCoMo mobile phone directory assistance (fees apply) (Phone numbers of customers who decline being listed are not available.)		(No area code) 104
Telegrams (fees apply)	8:00 a.m. to 10:00 p.m.	(No area code) 115
Time tone service (fees apply)		(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (fees apply)		Area code of region + 177
Police emergencies		(No area code) 110
Fire Department/Medical assistance		(No area code) 119
Emergencies and accidents at sea		(No area code) 118
Busy signal inquiries		(No area code) 114
Disaster message (fees apply)		(No area code) 171

Note

- An additional 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) handling fee is charged for each call, when collect calls (106) are made (as of February, 2005).
- An additional 100 yen (105 yen including tax) directory fee is charged when using directory assistance (104). People with disabilities in vision or upper limbs, can receive this service free of charge. For details, call 116 (NTT sales counter) from an ordinary phone (as of February, 2005).
- When calling 110, 119, 118 from your FOMA terminal, your location cannot be pinpointed. For verification purposes, the police or fire stations may return your call. State that you are calling from a mobile phone, and give your phone number and exact location.
  Remain stationary to ensure that you are not disconnected while making an emergency call, and keep handset turned on and able to receive calls for about ten minutes afterwards.
- Depending on the region, calls to the police or fire station may not be connected. In such cases, use the nearest payphone or landline phone.
- If landline phones subscribed to Call Forwarding and Voice Warp services are set to forward calls to mobile phones, the caller may hear the phone ringing even if the mobile phone/car phone is busy, outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off depending on the settings for the landline phone/mobile phone.
- Services such as 116 (NTT sales counter), Dial Q2, message service, and credit card calls, are not available.
  (Automatic credit card calls to a FOMA terminal can be made from a landline telephone or payphone.)

Options and Accessories

Combine the FOMA terminal with various optional accessories (sold separately) for expanded personal and business use.
Some products may not be available in some areas. Contact a DoCoMo retailer for details.
Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details.

- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch P01/P02
- Earphone plug adapter P001
- Earphone/Microphone with switch P001*/P002*
- Stereo earphone set P001*
- Earphone terminal P001*
- FOMA USB cable
- Flat-plug stereo earphone set P01
- In-car holder SH03
- Carrying case SH04
- Overseas-compatible FOMA AC adapter 01

* Earphone/Microphone with switch, Stereo earphone set and Earphone terminal cannot be used without Earphone plug adapter.

Use with External Devices

Using supporting external devices, movies saved on miniSD Memory Cards can be played back on the FOMA terminal.
miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)
Refer to *http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/products/sh700i.shtml* for details on supporting devices available. Or, contact the number below.

Sharp Data Communication Support Center
Phone: 03-5396-2351
Hours: 10:00 a.m. to 12:00 noon, 1:00 p.m. to 5:00 p.m., Monday through Friday
(Closed on weekends, national holidays, and company holidays)

- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

About Movie Player Software

QuickTime™ Player (Free) 6.4 or later (or 6.3+3GPP) provided by Apple Computer, Inc. is required to play back movies on a PC.
QuickTime™ Player can be downloaded from the Apple Computer, Inc. web page.

- To download, a PC connected to the Internet is required. Additional transmission fees are charged for downloading.
- Refer to the Apple Computer, Inc. web page for details on system requirements, downloading, and usage instructions.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Data Link Software

Use SH Series Data Link Software to transfer data, such as phonebook, mail messages, bookmarks, or schedules, between a FOMA terminal and a connected PC. Also transfer data between a miniSD Memory Card and a PC.
miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)
Download Data Link Software from *http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/soft/soft.html*.

Refer to the web page above or the software's help feature, for details on transferable data, operating environment, how to operate, restrictions, etc.

- To download, a PC connected to the Internet is required.
- Additional transmission fees are charged for downloading.
- The FOMA USB cable (sold separately) is required to connect to a PC and to use Data Link Software. Ir exchange is not available.
- Due to copyright laws, information downloaded cannot be transferred from the FOMA terminal, even with use of Data Link Software. Data prohibited from use outside the FOMA terminal cannot be transferred either.

Compatible OS

Microsoft Windows 98 Second Edition/Windows Me/Windows 2000 Professional/
Windows XP Home Edition/Windows XP Professional (all Japanese versions)
※ Above OS compatible PC/AT models

Using Data Link Software

- Copyright
  While Data Link Software is distributed free of charge, the copyright belongs to the Sharp Corporation.
- Disclaimer
  Sharp Corporation assumes no legal liability to provide indemnities for defects (including faulty software operation or failure to operate), and assumes no other warranty liability. Nor does Sharp Corporation warrant the software's merchantability, or its compatibility to any specific user purpose.

Data Link Software technical support

Sharp Data Communication Support Center
TEL 03-5396-2351
Hours: 10:00 a.m. to 12:00 noon, 1:00 p.m. to 5:00 p.m., Monday through Friday
(Closed on weekends, national holidays, and company holidays)

- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Explanation	Page
Does not function	● Is the FOMA terminal turned off?	P. 45
	● Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 44
	● Is the battery pack inserted properly?	P. 39
Does not turn on	● Was ☎ PWR pressed for 2+ seconds?	P. 45
	● Is the battery level sufficient? If handset does not turn on after alert tone sounds, recharge the battery.	P. 44
	● Is the battery pack inserted properly?	P. 39
Power turns off	● Is the IC portion of the FOMA card dirty?	P. 36
	● Is the battery pack connector terminal or FOMA terminal charger terminal dirty?	P. 39
Does not recharge	● Is the battery pack inserted properly?	P. 39
	● Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean terminal with a cotton swab.	—
	● Is the AC adapter connector properly connected to the FOMA terminal and Desktop holder?	P. 42
		P. 43
	● Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder?	P. 43
Handset is recharged but quickly loses power	● Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder?	P. 43
	● Is the battery still usable?	P. 41
	● Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean terminal with a cotton swab.	—
	● Battery duration varies depending on handset use.	P. 41
Keys do not respond	● Is the FOMA terminal turned off?	P. 45
	● Is All lock or Key guard active?	P. 146
		P. 152
圏外 appears and calls cannot be made	● Is the handset outside the service area or in a place with a weak signal?	P. 50
公private appears and calls cannot be made	● Is Self mode set?	P. 149
Calls cannot be made from the phonebook	● Is phonebook PIM locked?	P. 150
	● Is All lock enabled?	P. 146
Calls cannot be made with the dial keys	● Is Keypad dial lock set?	P. 151
	● Is All lock enabled?	P. 146
Call is interrupted or disconnects	● Is the handset in an area with a weak signal?	P. 50
	● Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 44
The other party's voice is too loud or is distorted	● Is the earpiece volume too high?	P. 64
When saving to phonebook, cannot select ***Sent messages*** or ***Received messages***	● Is Show sent messages or Show received messages set to ***OFF***?	P. 153
When a message is received, set ring tone does not sound	● Is In-use mail tone set to ***OFF***?	P. 292
Ring tone does not sound	● Is the earpiece volume set to ***Silent***?	P. 115
	● Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 44
	● Is the FOMA terminal turned off?	P. 45
	● Has the current call finished?	P. 50
	● Is a call on hold?	P. 51
		P. 79

Problem	Explanation	Page
Ring tone does not sound (Continued)	● Is mute seconds set? ● Is Accept calls set? ● Is Reject calls set? ● Is Reject user unset set? ● Is Reject unknown set? ● Is the ring tone set to ***No ring tone***? ● Is the Voice Mail Service active and is the ringing time set to ***0 seconds***? ● Is Drive mode active? ● Is Manner mode active?	P. 158 P. 155 P. 157 P. 158 P. 159 P. 112 P. 453 P. 66 P. 119
When a message is received, a different ring tone sounds	● When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a particular individual, that mail ring tone sounds. ● When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a particular group, that mail ring tone sounds. ● When different mail ring tones are set for both individual and group, the mail ring tone for the individual sounds. ● When multiple messages are received, the specific mail ring tone of the last person sounds. ● When the other party's mail address is ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp***, save only the phone number for the mail address and set a specific mail ring tone. ● Is the sender's mail address saved correctly in the phonebook or is a specific mail ring tone set? ● When SMS is received, specified mail ring tone sounds if set in phonebook. ● Is the phone number saved correctly?	P. 96 P. 102 P. 96 — P. 96 P. 96 — P. 94
Busy signal sounds after dialing	● Was ***090***, ***080***, ***070*** or the area code dialed? ● Does 圏外 appear? ● If the other party's signal is weak, the call may not connect.	P. 50 P. 50 —
Clicks sound during the call	● The FOMA terminal has a weak signal and is switching areas.	—
Service is not registered appears	● Registration is required to use i-mode. ● If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart.	—
The date appears backwards	● Is Select language set to 日本語?	P. 45
Please wait appears	● The line is not in service or extremely congested. Try again later.	—
Cannot make/receive calls, send/receive mail or use i-mode	● Is the battery level sufficient? ● Does 圏外 appear? ● Is Self mode set to ***ON***?	P. 44 P. 50 P. 149
Cannot enter text	● Has the character limit been exceeded?	—
Display is blank	● Is the FOMA terminal turned off? ● Is the battery level sufficient? ● Is Power saver mode active? If ***LED display on*** is set, picture light also flashes.	P. 45 P. 44 P. 129
Message on DoCoMo web page or お知らせ&ヘルプ ***(News & Help)*** on iMenu says software update is necessary	● Software needs to be updated. Update software.	P. 559
Total call charge does not increase	● Total call charge for FOMA card does not increase when maximum limit (approximately 16,770,000 yen) has been reached. Reset total call charge to 0 yen.	P. 443

List of Error Messages

- A three-digit number will also appear with some messages. Some of the numbers are codes used by DoCoMo.

Message	Explanation	Page
Invalid UIM, requested service not available	● Appears when an image or melody protected by a FOMA card restriction is selected. ● Appears when a screen memo or Message R/F protected by a FOMA card restriction is selected.	P. 37 P. 37
Please insert UIM	● Make sure the FOMA card is properly inserted.	P. 36
Security code?	● A restricted operation was attempted while PIM is locked. Enter correct terminal security code (four to eight digits) to temporarily disable PIM lock and continue operation.	P. 150
PIN code locked	● Appears when power is turned on while PIN code is blocked. Enter correct PUK when prompt appears to disable PIN lock.	P. 144
PUK is blocked	● Appears when power is turned on or a FOMA card operation is used while PUK is blocked. Contact a DoCoMo retailer.	P. 144
Memory is full	● Appears when the FOMA terminal handset phonebook has 500 phone numbers or mail addresses saved and another number or address is about to be added.	P. 92
This UIM cannot be recognized	● Appears when a FOMA card not usable by the terminal may have been inserted. ● Appears when FOMA card may be damaged or not properly inserted. Make sure the correct FOMA card is inserted.	P. 36 P. 36
Secret data saved	● Appears when secret data is about to be sent by 2-touch dialing and Secret mode is not active.	P. 109
Self mode	● A restricted operation was attempted while in Self mode.	P. 149
Service unavailable	● Appears when network service is attempted but handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Retry after moving to a location where appears.	P. 452
Unable to use at the moment	● Appears when Video-phone calling is attempted from outside the service area or in a place with no signal.	P. 75
Keypad dial lock	● A restricted operation was attempted while Keypad dial lock is set.	P. 151
Security code is wrong Please enter 4-8 digits	● Appears when an incorrect terminal security code (four to eight digits) is entered. Re-enter correct terminal security code. To prevent the possibility that a terminal security code is changed by anyone else, the FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring identification (a driver's license, etc.) to the DoCoMo retailer in the case of a forgotten security code.	P. 140
Enter correct network security code	● Appears when an incorrect network security code is entered. Re-enter correct network security code. To prevent the possibility that a network security code is changed by anyone else, the FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring identification (a driver's license, etc.) to DoCoMo retailer in the case of a forgotten security code.	P. 141
Unable to renew memory number xxx	● Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores secret data when Secret mode is not active. ● Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores an entry for Accept/Reject call.	P. 109 P. 154 to P. 157
Switching failed - other phone busy	● Appears when other phone terminal is busy and dual network switching is not available. Switch after ending other phone's transmission.	P. 461

Message	Explanation	Page
Please wait	● The line is not in service or extremely congested. Try again later. Press a dial key to erase the message. ● The line is not in service or extremely congested. Try i-mode again later.	— —
Cannot use. Connected to external device	● i-mode can only be disconnected. Other i-mode operations are not available because handset is connected to an external device.	P. 470
Unable to open image	● Flash movie has an error.	—

i-mode

● Numbers encased in brackets ( ) appearing in i-mode error messages are sent from the i-mode center as a code to distinguish between errors.

Message	Explanation	Page
Invalid UIM, requested service not available	● Appears when an image or melody protected by a FOMA card restriction is selected. ● Appears when a screen memo or Message R/F protected by a FOMA card restriction is selected.	P. 37 P. 37
Invalid UIM. Requested software unavailable	● Appears when i-αppli software protected by a FOMA card restriction is selected.	P. 37
SMS is full Unable to copy	● Appears when the maximum number of SMS are saved in the FOMA terminal handset or the FOMA card and no further messages could be copied.	P. 305
"i-αppli To" function is not set.	● Appears when attempting to start software, unauthorized to be linked, from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, or i-mode mail. The software could not be started.	P. 318
Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion	● Appears when i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and cannot be downloaded.	P. 326
Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion	● Appears when i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and downloading could not be completed.	P. 326
This i-motion type is not supported	● Appears when downloading an i-motion of a type that cannot be saved.	—
Service is not registered	● Registration is required to use i-mode. ● If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart.	P. 198
SSL session cannot be established	● Appears when the attempt to connect to a site or Internet web page supporting SSL session failed. Try again later.	P. 206
SSL session failed	● Appears when an error occurs during SSL authentication and the SSL session is disconnected.	P. 206
Root certificate is not valid	● Appears when a certificate is received when Certificates setting is set to ***Disable***. Confirm certificate contents, set Certificates setting to ***Enable***, and then try connecting to the site again.	P. 237
URL is too long to register	● URL exceeds maximum number of characters and cannot be registered as a bookmark.	P. 215
No response (408)	● Transmission disconnected due to no reply from the site or Internet web page. Try connecting again.	P. 210
Cannot use. Connected to external device	● i-mode can only be disconnected. Other i-mode operations are not available because handset is connected to an external device.	P. 470
Failed to connect	● When dialing a video-phone call, the other party has Caller ID Request Service activated. Set to send caller ID and call again.	P. 53

Continued on next page ▶▶

Message	Explanation	Page
Your terminal ID and UIM ID is requested. Send?	● Appears occasionally while browsing sites or Internet web pages. Select ***Yes*** and press ● [Select] to send terminal ID and UIM ID. To not send, select ***No*** and press ● [Select], or press CLR and the contents screen reappears. ● Terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset. ● The Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.	P. 205
Out of service area	● Appears when attempting to use i-mode service when outside the service area or in a place with no signal. To use i-mode service, move to a location where appears.	—
Certificate is rejected (tampered)	● Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.	P. 206
This site is not certified. Do you connect?	● Appears when unsupported SSL certificate is received. To connect, select ***Yes*** and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select ***No*** and press ● [Select].	P. 206
This certificate has expired. Do you connect?	● Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received. To connect, select ***Yes*** and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select ***No*** and press ● [Select].	P. 206
Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?	● Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired. To connect, select ***Yes*** and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select ***No*** and press ● [Select]. Set date and time.	P. 206
This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?	● Appears when the SSL server certificate received contains invalid information. To connect, select ***Yes*** and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select ***No*** and press ● [Select].	P. 206
The data may not be replayed. Obtain?	● Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.	P. 350
Unable to protect anymore	● Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.	P. 220 P. 279
Size of this page is not supported.	● Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed. ● Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.	P. 213 —
URL address changed. (301)	● Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.	P. 215
Connection failed (403)	● Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.	P. 210
An attached file will be deleted	● File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● [Select] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.	P. 261
Page is not found (404)	● Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web page may not exist.	—
No content is available. (204)	● Appears when there is no data to display at the connected site or Internet web page.	—
No requested software	● Appears when attempting to start a non-existent i-αppli software from i-mode mail or Ir exchange function.	P. 318

Message	Explanation	Page
Requested software unavailable	● Appears when attempting to start software from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, i-mode mail, or Ir exchange function, and specified software could not be started.	P. 318
Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)	● Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try connecting again.	P. 210
Software terminated due to security error.	● Invalid action attempted by i-αppli. ● Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.	P. 321 P. 321
Connection interrupted	● i-mode has been disconnected due to a weak signal. Try i-mode again after moving to an area with a strong signal. ● If the signal is strong and appears, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.	P. 50 —
Connection failed	● Appears when host is set incorrectly. Properly re-set ***Host selection*** in i-mode settings. ● Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again.	P. 228 P. 210
Connection is not valid	● Connecting to i-mode is not possible if host number has been changed from the default settings. Restore default settings.	P. 228 P. 240
Time out.	● Time set in ***Connection timeout*** elapsed and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.	P. 228
Transmission failed	● Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location where the signal is strong. When ***Address is not valid*** appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with ***i-mode center is busy***, try sending again later. When ***Server is full*** appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because recipient cannot receive the message.	—
Software updated	● The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be updated.	P. 321
This software contains an error	● i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or updated.	—
This software contains an error. Unable to download.	● i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or updated.	—
This software is not supported by this phone	● Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.	—
Canceled download	● Appears when downloading is canceled.	P. 222 P. 310
Unable to download	● Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible. ● Downloading not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.	P. 222 —
Same address set	● When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete repeated addresses and send.	P. 253
(During Ir exchange) Connection interrupted No response. Retry? Authentication failed. Retry?	● Appears when canceling Ir exchange. ● Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to try again. ● Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to try again.	P. 389 P. 389 P. 389
Too much data was entered	● Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long. Retry after erasing some text.	—
Input error (205)	● Appears when server resets contents after sending text to site or Internet web page. Deletes all text and settings entered on screen. (Contents sent before error message appeared has already been sent.)	—
Authentication type is not supported. (401)	● Appears when authentication is not possible. Returns to previous screen.	—

Continued on next page ▶▶

Message	Explanation	Page
Authentication canceled	● Appears when ***Cancel*** is selected or CLR is pressed in the authentication screen.	—
Password is not correct. (401)	● Appears when authentication is not possible on the authentication screen.	—
Attachable size exceeded. Unable to attach	● File exceeds size limit and cannot be attached. Delete some of message text or send message without attaching the file.	P. 261
URL address is not valid (301) URL address is not valid (302)	● Data received contains error and cannot be displayed. Received data is discarded.	—
Too many unsent/ protected mail	● Number of protected sent and unsent messages exceeds 100. New mail cannot be composed. Disable protected sent messages, send or delete unsent messages, and compose the message again.	P. 251 P. 279
Memory low	● Software cannot be run due to lack of available memory. ● Processing suspended and i-mode terminated due to lack of available memory.	— —

Data box

Message	Explanation	Page
Unable to copy part of data	● Appears when there are files or folders on the miniSD Memory Card that were created on a PC or a handset other than the FOMA SH700i.	P. 371
Unable to delete part of data	● Appears when folders exist in folders such as xxxSHARP/xxxSH_UF/PPLxxx. ● Delete applicable folder with a PC or other device, or format a miniSD Memory Card.	— P. 378
This data cannot be replayed. Delete?	● Appears when attempting to playback i-motion after resetting date and time.	—
This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?	● Appears when attempting to play i-motion that has reached its playback count limit.	P. 327
Replay period has expired. Delete?	● Appears when attempting to play i-motion that has passed its replay period.	P. 327
Replay period has not yet started.	● Appears when attempting to play i-motion before the set replay period.	P. 327
Camera function is not available now	● Appears when camera portion becomes hot from being stored in a hot place or being used for an extended period of time. Use the camera after letting it cool down.	—
Low battery level	● Battery level is low. Camera mode cannot be activated. Use after fully charging the battery.	P. 41
M appears	● Appears when available memory is less than 800 KB. ● Create available memory by sorting out data within Data box and i-αppli.	— —
M appears	● Appears when available memory is less than 100 KB. ● Create available memory by sorting out data within Data box and i-αppli.	— —
Unsupported. Cannot edit	● Image data is invalid and image cannot be edited.	—
Memory is almost full. Delete unneeded images	● Handset memory is low. Delete other pictures to save image with current settings.	—

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Other messages

Message	Explanation	Page
Battery too low. Please recharge and retry	● Appears when battery level is or when updating software. Recharge battery to .	P. 559
Connection failed	● Appears when software could not be updated. Perform software update again.	P. 559
SSL session was terminated	● Appears when FOMA terminal date is not saved correctly when updating software. Set the FOMA terminal date.	P. 559
Root certificate is not valid	● Appears when Root Certificate is not set to valid when updating software. Set certificates one to five in ***Certificates*** to valid.	P. 559
Other functions running. Unable to activate	● Software could not be updated at the set time because other functions are running. Update immediately or set another date and time.	P. 559
Unable to use the main camera at the moment	● Appears when FOMA terminal becomes hot from being stored in a hot place or used for an extended period of time. Use the camera after letting it cool down. ● Appears when using video-phone main camera when battery level is low. Use after charging battery.	— —

Warranty and After-sales Services

Warranty

Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check that the name of the retailer, the date of purchase, and the necessary details have been filled in on the warranty card. Be sure to keep it in a safe place. Contact the retailer if any necessary details on the warranty card are not completed. The warranty period is one year from the date of purchase.

- For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.
- Information registered in your FOMA terminal, such as phonebook entries, may be lost or damaged if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled. It is recommended that a memo be kept of all data stored in the FOMA. If you own a PC (Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional) you can use special Data Link Software (☞P. 549) to transfer and store registered information such as phonebook entries. If the FOMA terminal is repaired, information downloaded using i-mode and i-αppli cannot be transferred (excluding some cases) to a new handset due to copyright law.

After-sales Services

If you have problems with your FOMA

Refer to “Troubleshooting” before requesting repairs.
Contact number listed in “For Repair Inquiries” on the back of this manual if problems persist.

※ If your FOMA needs repairs after contacting DoCoMo

Bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies. However, the repair shop is only open during business hours. Make sure to bring your warranty card with you.

- Refer to “全国サービスステーション一覧” (Service Station List) provided with the FOMA terminal for details.

During the warranty period

The FOMA terminal will be repaired in accordance with the terms of the warranty.

- When bringing the FOMA terminal in for repairs, be sure to bring the warranty card. Even during the warranty period, a fee will be charged for repairs of malfunctions or damage caused by improper handling by the customer, or when no warranty certificate is presented.
- Repairs for damages caused by the use of devices and accessories other than those specified by DoCoMo will also incur a fee.

Repairs may not be possible in the following circumstances

- Repairs to your FOMA terminal may not be possible if the moisture detection seal has reacted, if damage from water, condensation, sweat, or other liquids are found, or if the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed. Even when repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred because the warranty does not cover such damage.

After the warranty period has expired

Where repair work can successfully restore the functionality of the FOMA terminal, charged repairs will be carried out upon request.

Replacement parts

Replacement parts (required to maintain the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of six years following termination of production. Repairs to the FOMA terminal are possible during this period. Repairs may be possible even after this period has passed, depending on the type of malfunction. Contact number listed on the back of this manual for details.

- Refer to “全国サービスステーション一覧” (Service Station List) provided with the FOMA terminal for details.

IMPORTANT!

Never attempt to modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.

- May cause fire, injury, or malfunction.
- Technological standards for the FOMA terminal and FOMA card are established by law to avoid interference and malfunctions of the network. FOMA terminals and FOMA cards that do not meet standards cannot be used.
- If your FOMA terminal has been modified previously (replacement of parts, modification, coating, etc.), it will only be accepted for the repair of a malfunction if it has been restored to its original state (as a standard DoCoMo product). However, repairs may be refused depending on the extent of modification.
- Repairs for any malfunction or damage caused by such modifications will incur fees, even during the warranty period.

Memory dial (Phonebook) and downloaded information

- It is recommended that you keep a separate memo of the information you register on your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in anyway for data that may be modified or lost.
- If you upgrade your mobile/car phone, created data or downloaded data may be modified or deleted. DoCoMo may, at our convenience, exchange your mobile/car phone for a substitute in lieu of repairs. Should this occur, some data may not be transferred. DoCoMo shall not be held responsible.

Do not peel off the model nameplate attached to the FOMA terminal.

- The nameplate seal functions as a certification that the equipment conforms to the prescribed technical standards. If the nameplate is removed or is replaced, repairs may be refused because conformity to the standards cannot be determined.

技術基準適合認証品

Information stored in your FOMA terminal, such as the ON/OFF settings of various functions, or the total call charges, may be cleared or reset if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled.

- If this occurs, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.

If your FOMA terminal gets wet or has been in a humid location, turn off the power, take out the battery immediately, and bring it to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies as soon as possible. However, depending on the condition, repairs may not be possible.

Updating Software

Check for FOMA terminal software updates. If necessary, use packet transmission* to download software and update.

* There is no packet transmission charge for updating software.
Check the DoCoMo web page or お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help) on iMenu for updates.

- When updating, select ***Immediate update*** or ***Reserve update***.
  Immediate update: Update immediately.
  Reserve update: Software updates automatically on set date and time.
- Software is updated even when host for i-mode is changed to a custom host.
- Recharge battery before updating software.
- Software cannot be updated during the following conditions.
  - ■ Date and time are not set
  - ■ Battery icon is or
  - ■ During a call/Outside the service area
  - ■ While in Self mode
  - ■ Connected to an external device
  - ■ All lock is set
  - ■ PIM is locked (except i-mode)
- If PIN code is set to ***ON*** and software is updated, PIN code input screen appears after automatic reload. Correct PIN code must be entered to make/receive calls and use other communications functions.
- Downloading and rewriting software may take time.
- Other functions cannot be used while updating. (Receiving voice calls is possible.)
- While updating software, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- If i-mode mail or Message R/F is held at i-mode center, / / appears but will disappear when software is reloaded after update. In addition, even if Receive option is set to ***ON*** and mail is received during software update, notices may not appear on the display after update is completed. Mail and messages are held at i-mode center.
- During software update, the handset makes an SSL connection with the server (DoCoMo site). Set the Root Certificate to valid. (The default setting is ***Enable*** ☞P. 237.)
- It is recommended to update software at a location with a strong signal (three bars for the antenna icon).
  ※ If signal status becomes weak or download is interrupted when downloading software, update software again in a location with good signal conditions.
- If software has already been uploaded, ***No update is needed. Please continue to use as before*** appears when software update is checked.
- When updating software, information about handset (model and serial number) is sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.
- Do not remove the battery pack while the software is updating. Failure to update software may occur.
- Software can be updated even if handset contains phonebook, camera or download data. However, DoCoMo cannot protect data that could be lost due to malfunction, damage, water leakage and so on. It is recommended that important data be backed up (☞P. 373, P. 549) before updating. (Note that some data, such as downloaded data cannot be backed up.)
- If software update fails, ***Rewrite failed*** appears and operation is not available. In this case, bring FOMA terminal to the repair counter that DoCoMo specifies.

Starting Software Update

1 In stand-by, press .

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Enter security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- The default setting is ***0000***.

3 Press [1] [OK].

When battery level is low

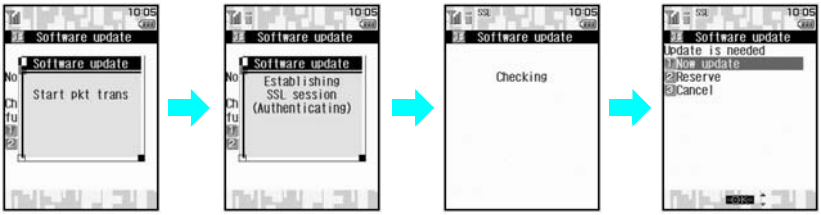
- Press [2] [Cancel]. Fully charge battery and try again.

4 Press [1] [OK].

To not check for software updates

- Press [2] [Cancel].

5 Press [1] [OK].



- When updating software, information about handset (model and serial number) is sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.

When software update is not necessary

- ***No update is needed. Please continue to use as before*** appears. Press ● and resume operations.

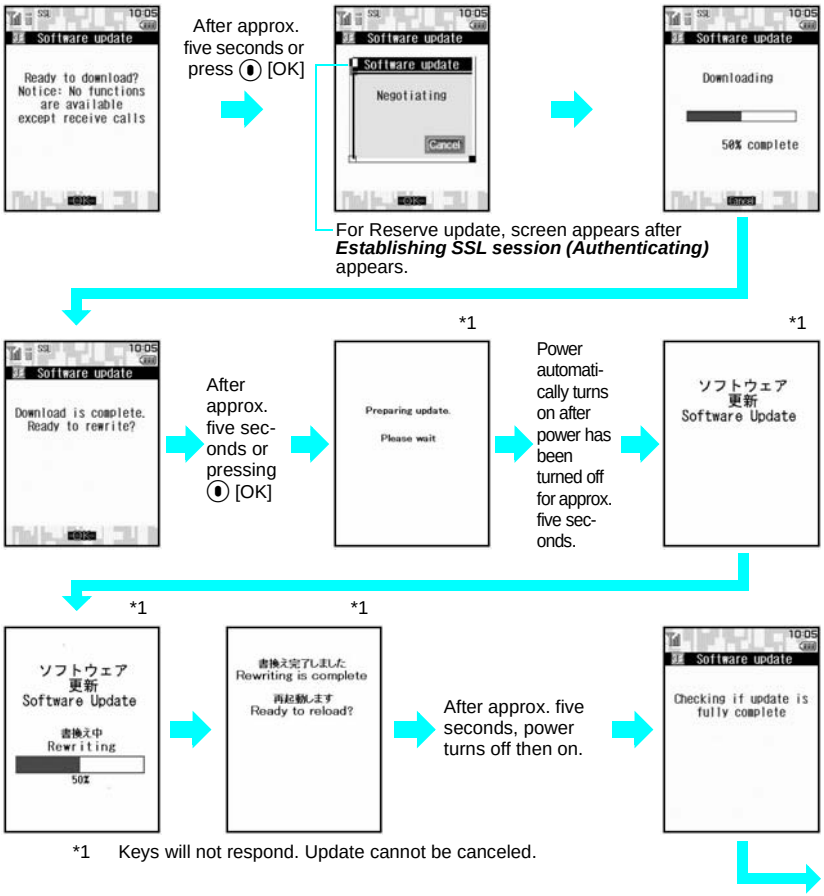
To cancel

- Press [PWR].

1 Start software update. (☞steps 1 to 5 on P. 559)

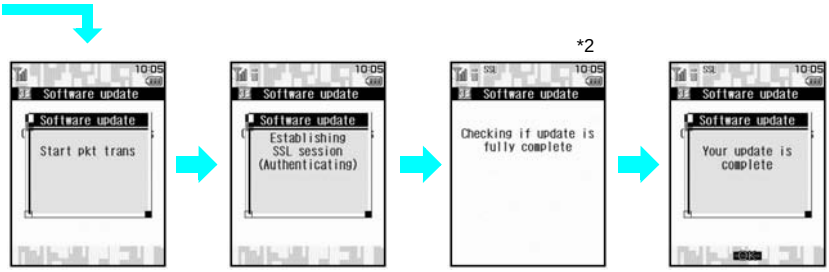
2 Press 1 [Now update].

- Software download starts. Software is automatically updated without selecting menus.
- Press 3 to not update.



*1 Keys will not respond. Update cannot be canceled.

Continued on next page ▶▶



*2

*2 After ***Checking if update is fully complete*** appears, next screen appears immediately.

- A screen asking to end or not appears if ☎ is pressed. If download is aborted, data downloaded up to that point is deleted. (Cannot use during software rewrite.)

When *Server is busy* appears after *Negotiating*

- Press 1 [Reserve].
- Refer to steps 2 to 4 of "Updating Software Later <Reserve Update>" for subsequent steps.
- Press 2 [Cancel] to not reserve. A screen appears prompting to stop. To stop, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

3 Press ●.

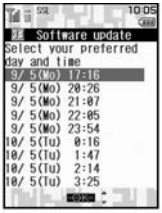
Note

- When ***Preparing update***. ***Please wait***, ***Software update***, ***Software update rewriting*** or ***Rewriting is complete. Ready to reload?*** appears during steps 1 to 3, the handset status is the same as when outside the service area and calls cannot be answered. When these messages are not shown, calls can be answered but Record message is not available. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended.
- During steps 1 to 3, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- When ***Update complete*** or ***Check update*** appears in stand-by after software update, press ●. If terminal security code (four to eight digits) is entered when software update is incomplete, a message stating so appears. Press ● and retry update.

Updating Software Later <Reserve Update>

Set the day and time to update software when downloading takes too much time or the server is extremely congested.

1 Perform steps 1 to 5 on P. 559 and press 2 [Reserve].



- Schedule selection screen appears.
- The time and date are the same as the server time.

To cancel operation

- In steps 1 to 4, press ☎, select ***Yes*** and press ●.

2 Select preferred day/time and press ●.

- Confirmation screen appears.

When choosing *Other date/time* and pressing ●

- Select the day and time. Select the day and press ●, then select the time and press ●. After ***Negotiating*** appears, possible days and times appear. Select a schedule and press ●.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- The preferred day/time is reserved.

4 Press ● [OK].

Note

- Incoming calls can be received during above operation. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended. Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.

When the reserved day and time arrives

The screen on the left appears in the stand-by. Software update will automatically start. Software will not update if the handset is turned off when the reserved time arrives.

Refer to step 2 of “Updating Software Immediately <Immediate Update>” for subsequent operations.

After approximately five seconds or pressing ● [OK], software update automatically starts.

- Before software updates, make sure the handset is in a place with a strong signal. Software is not updated if the battery icon is 📶 or 🪫.
- Software is not updated if the handset is performing functions such as sending mail, i-mode, i-αppli, using menus, connecting to an external device, is in Self mode/All lock/PIM lock (except i-mode), etc. at the reserved day and time. When receiving mail, software update begins after mail reception is completed.
- If the alarm or another function takes place at the same time (any time excluding auto manner mode disable), alarm is prioritized and software is not updated.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off at the reserved date and time for software update or when the FOMA terminal is turned off right after the update starts, the update will be canceled.
- If a call is in progress at the set date and time for software update, software update starts when returning to stand-by within 10 minutes. Software is not updated if 10 minutes pass before returning to stand-by.
- If ***Delete all data (Delete user data)*** (☞P. 448) is performed after reservation is completed, the reservation is canceled. Perform software update again.

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF # ▽ , enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ●.

- Reserved day and time appears.

To confirm

- Press 1 .

To change

- Press 2 ABC and press 1 [OK]. Preferred day screen appears. Refer to "Updating Software Later" (☞steps 1 to 4 on P. 562) for subsequent steps.

To cancel

- Press 3 DEF, select ***Yes***, press ●, and then press 1 [OK]. Press ● after ***The reservation is canceled*** appears.

Note

- Incoming calls can be received during above operation. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended. Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.

Protecting Your FOMA Terminal from Harmful Files

First, renew pattern definitions to bring them up-to-date.

Stop or delete any data or applications that could cause operational malfunctions. These types of data include data or programs that are attached to i-mode mail, or downloaded from sites or external devices.

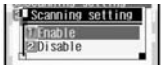
- Pattern definitions are used for checking. When new problems are discovered, pattern definitions are immediately upgraded. Update the pattern definitions. (☞P. 565)
- The scan function helps protect the handset from damage caused by data such as data received from web pages or mail. If the pattern definition corresponding to a particular harmful file is not downloaded or saved, the scan function will not be able to protect the FOMA terminal.
- Pattern definitions vary depending on the phone model. Therefore, DoCoMo may discontinue offering pattern definitions for a particular model three years after the release date.

Setting Scan Functions <Scanning Setting>

Default setting
Enable

When scan function is set to ***Enable***, data and programs are automatically checked when run.

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF ✕ 2 ABC.



- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Scanning function*** → ***Scanning setting*** from Top menu.

2 Press 1 [Enable].

- Setting confirmation screen appears.

To disable

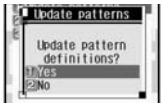
- Press 2 ABC.

3 Select *Yes* and press ●.

- When Scanning function is set and malicious data is detected, security warning appears in five levels. (☞P. 566)
- Select ***No*** and the screen of step 1 reappears.

Updating Pattern Definitions <Update Patterns>

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF ✕ 1.

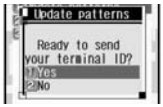


- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Scanning function***→ ***Update patterns*** from Top menu.

To not update

- Press 2 ABC or PWR and press 1.

2 Press 1 [Yes].



To not send terminal ID

- Press 2 ABC or PWR and press 1.

3 Press 1 [Yes].

- Downloading starts.

To cancel download

- Press ● or PWR and press 1.

When updating is not necessary

- ***Pattern definitions are up-to-date.*** appears. Press ● and resume operations.

4 Press ● when updating is completed.

Note

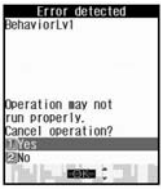
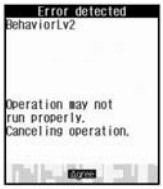
- When updating pattern definitions, information about the handset (model and serial number) is sent to the server (DoCoMo scan function server). Sent information is only used for pattern definition update.
- Correctly set the FOMA terminal date (year/month/day).
- Download may be interrupted if signal is weak.

Displaying Scanned Results

Displaying detected errors

- After scanning, detected errors are ordered by severity in the scanned results screen.
- Up to five detected errors are shown. ***etc***. appears under fifth error if six or more are detected. If same error is detected more than once, it is only listed once.
- Errors are ordered by severity.

Scanned results display

Level 0	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
				
Displaying, activating, and sending is possible. Appears when there was an error previously, but there is no error presently. Press ● [Agree] to show, run or call.	Select ***No*** and press ● to display, activate, or send. Select ***Yes*** and press ● to end.	Displaying, activating, and sending is not possible. Press ● [Agree] to end.	Displaying, activating, and sending are not available. ***Delete data?*** appears. Select ***Yes*** to delete. Select ***No*** and press ● to end without deleting.	Displaying, activating, and sending are not available. ***Deleting data.*** appears. Press ● [Agree] to delete.

Checking Version of Definitions <Display Version>

1 In stand-by, press ● 3 DEF * 3 DEF.

- Alternatively, select ✕ (Settings) → ***General settings*** → ***Scanning function*** → ***Display version*** from Top menu.

※ miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. (☞P. 369)

Main Specifications

Product name		FOMA SH700i
Size (H×W×D)		108 (H) × 48 (W) × 28 (D) mm (Folded) (Thickest)
Weight		Approximately 122 g (with battery pack installed)
LCD	Type	Main display TFT LCD Sub display STN LCD
	Size	Main display 2.2 inches Sub display 0.6 inches
	Pixels	Main display 240×320 pixels Sub display 72×12 pixels
Continuous stand-by time[*1] [*3]		At rest Approximately 370 hours[*4] When mobile Approximately 320 hours[*5]
Consecutive call duration[*2] [*3]		Voice call Approximately 130 minutes Video-phone call Approximately 80 minutes
Maximum output		0.25 W
Battery pack type		Specified lithium ion battery
Voltage		3.7 V
Battery capacity		830 mAh
AC adapter charging time		Approximately 120 minutes
Desktop holder charging time		Approximately 120 minutes
DC adapter charging time		Approximately 120 minutes
Image pickup device	Type	Main camera/CCD[*6], Sub camera/CMOS[*6]
	Size	Main camera Total CCD Pixels: Approximately 1.36 million pixels[*6] Sub camera Total CMOS Pixels: Approximately 120,000 pixels[*6]
Camera	Effective pixels	Main camera 1.26 million pixels Sub camera 110,000 pixels
	Recorded pixels	Main camera 1.23 million pixels Sub camera 100,000 pixels
	Zoom (Digital)	Main camera Up to approximately ×25 Sub camera Up to approximately ×2

*1 Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of the time when the FOMA terminal is folded and in a status where signals are received. Call and stand-by duration may be reduced to about half, depending on function settings such as Battery saver mode, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal, weak signal). i-mode transmissions will also shorten call (transmission)/stand-by duration. In addition, composing messages, downloading i-αppli, and activating the i-αppli stand-by will also shorten call (transmission)/stand-by duration.

*2 Consecutive call duration is an estimate of the time when talking in a location where the signal is normal.

*3 The above mentioned call/stand-by duration times are shortened with the use of data communications, multiaccess, and the camera.

*4 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and in a status where signals are received.

*5 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and in ***At rest***, ***When mobile*** or ***Outside the service area*** status.

*6 A CCD (Charge-Coupled Device) and a CMOS (Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor) are image devices equivalent to the film in conventional cameras.

Main Specifications (Data Box)

The following are estimates of the number of shot still pictures, movie shooting times, and voice recording times that can be saved to the miniSD Memory Card.
miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (☞P. 369)

- Depending on conditions, such as the shooting environment or subject, the number of still pictures and the recording times that can be saved will decrease.

Estimated number of images that can be shot (32 MB)

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
Icon: 76×76	—	1,830 shots	—
sQCIF: 128×96	1,830 shots	920 shots	920 shots
QCIF: 176×144	1,830 shots	920 shots	615 shots
Stand-by: 240×320	920 shots	615 shots	260 shots
CIF: 352×288	920 shots	615 shots	260 shots
VGA: 480×640	615 shots	370 shots	260 shots
Max: 960×1,280	185 shots	90 shots	55 shots

Estimated number of images that can be shot (16 MB)

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
Icon: 76×76	—	860 shots	—
sQCIF: 128×96	860 shots	435 shots	435 shots
QCIF: 176×144	860 shots	435 shots	290 shots
Stand-by: 240×320	435 shots	290 shots	120 shots
CIF: 352×288	435 shots	290 shots	120 shots
VGA: 480×640	290 shots	170 shots	120 shots
Max: 960×1,280	85 shots	40 shots	25 shots

Estimated movie shooting times (32 MB)

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128×96	For mail (short)	Image + Voice	90 seconds	61 seconds	30 seconds	—
		Image only	124 seconds	75 seconds	36 seconds	—
	For mail (long)	Image + Voice	152 seconds	103 seconds	51 seconds	—
		Image only	210 seconds	127 seconds	61 seconds	—
	Unrestricted	Image + Voice	155 minutes	106 minutes	52 minutes	—
		Image only	214 minutes	130 minutes	62 minutes	—
QCIF: 176×144	For mail (short)	Image + Voice	77 seconds	45 seconds	16 seconds	11 seconds
		Image only	102 seconds	52 seconds	18 seconds	11 seconds
	For mail (long)	Image + Voice	131 seconds	77 seconds	28 seconds	19 seconds
		Image only	172 seconds	89 seconds	30 seconds	20 seconds
	Unrestricted	Image + Voice	134 minutes	79 minutes	28 minutes	19 minutes
		Image only	176 minutes	91 minutes	31 minutes	20 minutes
hQVGA: 240×176	For mail (short)	Image + Voice	—	—	—	—
		Image only	—	—	—	—
	For mail (long)	Image + Voice	—	—	—	—
		Image only	—	—	—	—
	Unrestricted	Image + Voice	—	31 minutes	15 minutes	10 minutes
		Image only	—	34 minutes	16 minutes	10 minutes
QVGA: 320×240	For mail (short)	Image + Voice	—	—	—	—
		Image only	—	—	—	—
	For mail (long)	Image + Voice	—	—	—	—
		Image only	—	—	—	—
	Unrestricted	Image + Voice	—	—	—	10 minutes
		Image only	—	—	—	10 minutes

Estimated movie shooting times (16 MB)

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128×96	For mail (short)	Image + Voice	90 seconds	61 seconds	30 seconds	—
		Image only	124 seconds	75 seconds	36 seconds	—
	For mail (long)	Image + Voice	152 seconds	103 seconds	51 seconds	—
		Image only	210 seconds	127 seconds	61 seconds	—
	Unrestricted	Image + Voice	73 minutes	50 minutes	24 minutes	—
		Image only	101 minutes	61 minutes	29 minutes	—
QCIF: 176×144	For mail (short)	Image + Voice	77 seconds	45 seconds	16 seconds	11 seconds
		Image only	102 seconds	52 seconds	18 seconds	11 seconds
	For mail (long)	Image + Voice	131 seconds	77 seconds	28 seconds	19 seconds
		Image only	172 seconds	89 seconds	30 seconds	20 seconds
	Unrestricted	Image + Voice	63 minutes	37 minutes	13 minutes	9 minutes
		Image only	83 minutes	43 minutes	14 minutes	9 minutes
hQVGA: 240×176	For mail (short)	Image + Voice	—	—	—	—
		Image only	—	—	—	—
	For mail (long)	Image + Voice	—	—	—	—
		Image only	—	—	—	—
	Unrestricted	Image + Voice	—	14 minutes	7 minutes	4 minutes
		Image only	—	16 minutes	7 minutes	4 minutes
QVGA: 320×240	For mail (short)	Image + Voice	—	—	—	—
		Image only	—	—	—	—
	For mail (long)	Image + Voice	—	—	—	—
		Image only	—	—	—	—
	Unrestricted	Image + Voice	—	—	—	4 minutes
		Image only	—	—	—	4 minutes

Voice recording times (Voice recorder)

- Up to approximately five hours when using 32 MB. (2 hours and 20 minutes when using 16 MB)

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

This model phone FOMA SH700i meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***. All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.642 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value. For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO)	http://www.who.int/peh-emf/
ICNIRP	http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC	http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html
TELEC	http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm
NTT DoCoMo	http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/ (Japanese only)
SHARP Corporation	http://www.sharp.co.jp/products/menu/joho/cellular/

* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

** The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*** International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

Index/Quick Manual

- Index. 572
- Quick Manual 580

Index

Symbols

✱31#/#31# 53

Numerics

186/184 53
1-touch conversion
1-touch single character memory 513
Predictive headword conversion 513
2-touch dialing. 110
2-touch input 525
Change input mode . . .525
Enter text 526
Key assignments 536
Text input method. 525
5-touch input 511
Key assignments 534

A

AC adapter 42
Accept calls
Disable 156
Save list 154
Setting 155
Add signature 252
Additional services 465
Delete 466
After-sales service 557
Alarm. 410
Schedule alarm 424
Snooze 412
ToDo alarm. 415
All lock. 146
Disable 147
Remote lock all. 147
Answer calls 59
Antenna. 24
Any key answer. 61
Arrival call action. 463
Assistant View. 406
Combinations 406, 546
Auto answer setting 447
Auto power OFF 408
Auto power ON 407

B

Background pattern. 130
Bar code reader. 190
Add to phonebook. . . . 192
Register as bookmark 192
Battery
Battery pack 39
Charging 41
Check battery level 44
Times of use 41
Bookmark 215
Create folder 217
Delete 217
Delete folder 217
Edit folder name 217
Edit title 217
Move 217
Move folder 217
View 216
Bookmark folder 217
Bracket multishot. 171
Brightness 130

C

CA certificate 237
Cache 210
Calculator 437
Calculation example . . 545
Calendar
Cancel set vacations. . 420
Display 418
Go to date 418
Set day color 421
Set holiday 420
Set vacations 419
Switch display 419
Call Forwarding Service 456
Change forward destination 458
Check settings 458
Forward calls. 458
Forward party busy . . . 458
Call/Receive displays . . . 124
Call Waiting 455
Activate/Deactivate . . . 455
Called LED color Illumination 136
Called LED ON 137
Caller ID Request Service 460
Activate 460
Deactivate 461
Status request. 461
Camera 162
Adjust brightness. 176
Auto save mode 188
Auto timer 180
Backlight 183
Bar code reader. 190
Character reader 193
Continuous mode 171
Display indicators 166
Effect shot 182
File size limit 179
Frame 181
Full screen. 185
Image quality. 179
Image size. 164
Key list. 169
Noise reduction 183
Number of recordable images. 165
Original mode 187
Picture light 177
Picture light color. 183
Release setting 184
Retain settings. 189
Save camera settings 188
Save to 187
Screen size 184
Select size. 178
Send message 189
Set ON time. 183
Shoot by scene 182
Shoot movie 174
Shoot still picture. 170
Shooting type 181
Shutter sound 185
Switch mode 176
Switch camera. 177
Switch image/voice . . . 181
Switch main⇔miniSD 186
Zoom in and out 176
Certificate operations. . . . 237
Change certificate issue (DoCoMo CA Host) . . . 240
Download 239
Invalidate. 239
Issue 239
Site access 238
Chaku-motion 96
Change i-mode password 213
Change security code . . . 141
Character reader 193
Add to phonebook 195

Register as bookmark 195
Search in dictionary ...196
Chara-den.....359
Action list 82, 361
Adjust screen size 360
Change action 82, 361
Change Chara-den.....82
Chara-den call 361
Chara-den player 359
Chara-den settings 96, 360
Delete.....365
Download 224
File properties.....365
Image for call 360
Light up.....360
Play 359
Playback light 360
Protect 365
Save to phonebook ...360
Send substitute image ..81
Shoot movies 362
Shoot still pictures 362
Sort.....365
Substitute image.....360
Chat mail
Auto start 298
Compose/Send...293, 294
Delete.....298
Delete member.....297
Edit member.....297
End.....296
Font size.....298
New mail addresses...296
Receive 294
Set member 293
Start chat mail 296
Update 296
Check available memory..387
Check mail address 435
Check new message 233, 266
Check settings 404
Clear memory terms.....523
Close operation.....61
Component names and functions.....24
Continuous shooting.....171
Copy.....520
Copy entry 109
Copy entry.....109
Copy text.....520
Cut 520
Paste 521
Create/Edit/Delete folder..383
Cut 520

D

Data communication 468
Data Link Software 549
Date settings 46
DC adapter 42
Deco-mail 254
Check message image 272
Open template 258
Save template..... 273
Delete
Bookmark 217
Chara-den..... 365
Download dictionary .. 524
e-dictionary/book..... 402
i-αppli 321
KEITAIViewer 402
Money calculator..... 441
Phonebook data 109
Record message..... 72
Redial 53
Register word 523
Schedule..... 430
Screen memo 220
Shortcut menu..... 432
SMS 306
Text input 515
ToDo list 417
Delete all data 448
Delete secret data collectively 450
Desktop holder 43
Disable PIN lock 144
Disable/Delete/Change alarm settings 413
Display light time..... 128
Download
Chara-den..... 224
Client certificate 239
Deco-mail template... 222
Dictionary file 223
i-αppli 310
i-melody 222
i-motion..... 327
Download dictionary 524
Check 524
Delete 524
Set/Clear..... 523
DPOF (print setting) 378
Drive mode 66
Dual Network Service ... 461
Status request..... 462

E

Earphone/Microphone
Answer calls 446
Auto answer setting... 447
Earphone sending setting 446
Make calls 446
Earphone/Microphone with switch 445
Earpiece volume
Video-phone 78
Voice call..... 64
Edit image 336
Character stamp 344
Combine panorama... 344
Correct image 339
Face effects..... 340
Face stamp 342
Image editing screen.. 336
Image effect..... 340
Image stamp 343
Resize 339
Rotate 337
Show in one screen... 337
Trimming 338
Edit movie 353
Capture still 356
Edit telop 356
Edit voice..... 357
Image cutter 354
Insert effect 358
Movie editing screen .. 353
Resize 358
Show ticker 354
Edit phonebook entries .. 108
Emoticon
Emoticon list 539
Enter 519
English guidance 462
Status request..... 463
Enter alphabet 516
Enter katakana (single-byte) 515
Enter numbers..... 516
Enter PIN code at power on 143
Error messages list 552

F

Flash movies
Play 333
Saved data 229
Sound fx setting..... 227
View..... 208

FOMA card
FOMA card (UIM) settings .142
PIN code/PIN2 code .141
FOMA card phonebook
Copy to FOMA terminal handset phonebook .100
Save .99
FOMA terminal handset phonebook
Copy to FOMA card phonebook .100
Save .92
FOMA terminal security code .140
Change .141
Font style .138
Frame
Shoot with frame .181

G

Group settings
Called LED .102
Edit group name .102
Mail/Message LED .102
Mail ring tone .102
Picture call set .103
Select ring tone .102
Guidance key .27

H

Handling precautions .18
Hands-free
Video-phone .77
Voice call .51
Hands-free mode .59
Hold
Hold .51, 77
On hold .64, 79
Video-phone .77
Voice call .51
Hold tone .65

I

i-αppli
Access phonebook/history .314
Auto start .316
Change ring tone/image .314
i-αppli stand-by .319
Icon information settings .313
Network settings .313
Software description .311
Upgrade .321
i-αppli To .226, 318
Illumination (Called LED color) .136
Image mail
Check/Save .272
Create .226
Send .259
Image viewer .330
i-mode host selection .228
i-mode mail
Save to Schedule .429
i-mode password .141
i-motion .326
Download .327
File properties .328
i-motion auto replay .328
Mail To .328
Phone To (AV Phone To) .328
Save .327
Web To .328
i-motion mail .249, 352
Receive/Replay .271
Import .381
Infrared remote control .393
Initial settings .46
Input
2-touch input .525
Intellectual property .20
International call .55
Auto assist set .57
IDD prefix setting .56
International prefix .56
Select prefix .55
International prefix .56
Internet web page .213
Ir exchange .388
Receive .390
Receive all data .391
Send .390
Send all data .391
ISP connection transmission .228

J

JAN code .190

K

Kana/alphanumeric conversion .516
KEITAIViewer .396
Copy .398
Delete .402
Font size .398
Insert bookmark .398
Link .400
Mail To .400
Mask .401
Move to bookmark .398
Phone To (AV Phone To) .400
Ruby text .398
Save to My picture .401
Search in dictionary .399
Set % move .398
Switch folder .397
Table of contents .398
Text direction .398
To end .398
To top .396
View file properties .402
Web To .400
Key guard .152
Keypad lock .151
Kuten code Input .521
Kuten code list .541

L

Last URL .207
Lock functions .146

M

Mail
Attachment .259
Broadcast .253
Check attachment .272
Check mail settings .292
Check new messages .288
Delete .281
Folder list .274
Font size .285
Forward .269
i-mode mail .245
i-motion mail .249, 352
In use mail tone set .292
Inbox .273
Mail member .289
Mail ring duration .118
Message list layout .276
Message view layout .276
Outbox .273
Protect/Disable .281
Quick reply .268
Quick reply mail .291
Receive attachment .291
Receive image mail .271
Receive option .265
Receive option setting .289
Reply .267

Reset mail settings 292
Save 262
Save to phonebook . . .269
Signature 288
SMS 250
Sort. 281
Sort rules 286
Mail LED color. 136
Mail member
Delete 290
Edit member name 290
Save address 289
Mail/Message LED 136
Mail To 225
Main display setting 122
Calendar display. 123
Clock display 124
i-αppli stand-by. 319
Movie/i-motion 353
Stand-by display. 122
Make calls. 50
Manner mode
Auto disable 121
Disable 120
Mic sensitivity 120
Original manner mode
. 121
Setting 120
Melody auto replay 290
Melody player 366
Adjust volume. 366
Continuous play 368
Melody settings 369
Play 366
Send mail 368
Set equalizer 367
Start position 368
Memory number 95
Menu list 528
Data box menu 533
KEITAIViewer 533
Settings menu 528
Tool menu 533
Menu selections 31
Function number 32
Sub menu 34
Top menu 31
Zoom menu 33
Message 231
Auto message display
. 232
Check file 235
Delete 236
Message F 231
Message R 231
Protect/Cancel 236
Receive 231
Reload image 235
Sort 236
View 234
Message service 231
miniSD Memory Card . . . 369
Backup/Restore 373
Copy from miniSD. . . . 377
Copy to miniSD. 372
Format. 378
New manager information
. 380
View data 376
Missed calls. 67
Money calculator 439
Change details 440
Check 439
Delete 441
Display period total . . . 441
Set budget 441
Switch total display . . . 440
Multiaccess 404, 546
Combinations . . . 404, 546
Multi-guide key 27
Multimedia
PIM lock 150
My menu 212

N

Network security code . . . 141
Network service
Additional services . . . 465
Arrival call action. 463
Call Forwarding Service
. 456
Call Waiting Service . . 455
Caller ID Request Service
. 460
Dual Network Service
. 461
English guidance. 462
Notify Caller ID 459
Nuisance Call Barring
Service 459
Remote control 464
Set arrival action 464
Voice Mail Service . . . 452
Network services from the
FOMA terminal 452
Next word guess 510
Noise reduction 58
Notice window 131
Notify caller ID 459, 460
Status request. 460
Nuisance Call Barring Service
. 459
Delete all entries 459
Register caller. 459

O

OCR. 193
On hold
Video-phone 79
Voice call. 64
On hold tone 65
One-touch operations . . . 169
Options and accessories
. 548
Original manner mode . . . 121
Outside the service area . . 50
Overlap 172
Owner information 434

P

Paging service . . 54, 457, 510
Paste 521
Pause dial 54
Personalize
Background 130
Call/Receive display . . 124
Guidance keys. 132
Notice window. 131
Picture call set. 126
Pop-up window 131
Send/Receive display
. 125
Title and status color . . 132
Phone ring volume. 115
Mail ring volume 115
Phone To (AV Phone To)
. 225
Phonebook (handset)
Birthday. 96
Called LED 96
Chara-den settings 96
Copy entry. 109
Copy from FOMA card
. 100
Copy to FOMA card. . . 100
Delete 109
Dialing speed. 107
Image transfer. 107
Mail ring tone. 96
Mail/Message LED 96
Make calls 104
Memo 96
Phonebook entry screen
. 93
Picture call. 96
Postal address. 96
Postal code 96
Ring tone. 96
Save 92
Save to FOMA card. . . . 99

Search by 104
Secret code 96
Set groups 96
Switch view mode. 107
Video-phone image . . .107
Phrase
Edit 519
Insert 517
Phrase list. 540
Reset 519
Save 519
Pictograph
Input 518
Pictograph list. 538
Picture call set. 126
Picture light 177
PIM lock 150
PIN code input setting. . . .142
PIN code/PIN2 code 141
Change. 143
Disable lock 144
FOMA card (UIM) settings 142
PIN code input setting 142
Play melody 366
Pop-up window 131
Power on/off 45
Power saver mode 127
Print setting (DPOF) 378

Q

QR code 190
Quality alarm. 118
Quick alarm. 411
Quick dictionary 510
Quick manual 580
Quick silent 59, 121
QUICKCAST. . . .54, 457, 510

R

Receive
Chat mail 294
i-mode mail. 263
i-motion mail 271
Inbox. 273
Received messages . . .282
SMS 301
Receive option (mail) 265
Received calls. 62
Received messages 282
Save to phonebook . . .284
Send message 283
Reconnect. 58
Record
Voice memo (during call) 436
Voice memo (stand-by) 437
Record message
Answering duration 70
Delete 72
Disabling 68
Play. 71
Quick message (voice call) 71
Reply message 70
Setting. 68
Video-phone 80
Video-phone reply image 81
Record voice 393
Redial 52
Delete 53
Save to phonebook (handset). 101
Register word
Delete 523
Edit 522
Register. 522
Reject by reason of non-disclosure 158
Reason 158
Reject calls
Disable 157
Save list 156
Setting. 157
Reject payphone 158
Reject unknown. 159
Reject unsupported ID. . . 158
Reject user unset 158
Remote control 464
Activate 464
Deactivate. 464
Status request. 464
Reset i-mode. 230
Reset settings 448
Ring output 119

S

Safety precautions. 8
SAR. 570
Save original phrase 519
Save task. 413
Saved data 229
Schedule
Change alarm tone . . . 425
Change alarm volume 425
Check 426
Check all schedules . . 427
Create i-mode mail . . . 427
Delete 430
Edit 428
Make calls 427
Quick alarm 411
Save 421
Save from 1 month icon calendar. 421
Save from mail 429
Save from My picture 430
Save from Received calls 428
Save from text memo 429
Search My picture 427
Secret data 425
Show by category 427
Show by contact 427
View money calculator 427
Screen display time 129
Screen memo 218
Delete 220
Edit title 220
File properties . . . 219, 221
Protect. 220
Save 218
Sort 221
View. 219
Screen settings 335
Screensaver. 129
Search in dictionary 399
Character reader 401
Search phonebook
By group 105
By memory number . . . 106
By reading 104
Secret code 246
Secret mode 153
Cancel 153, 154
Setting 153
Security code. 140
Change 141
Security scan (Scanning function). 564
Security settings 139
Accept/reject calls 154, 156
All lock. 146
Change PIN/PIN2 code 143
Changing security code 141
Keypad dial lock 151
PIM lock. 150

Secret mode 153
Set PIN code 142
Show called/received . .152
Show sent/received . . .153
Select language 45
Select prefix 55
Select ring tone
Mail ring tone 113
Not support. 112
Payphone ring tone . . .112
Phone ring tone 112
User unset 112
Video-phone ring tone 112
Select volume
Earpiece volume. . .64, 116
Ring tone volume 115
Self mode 149
Send
Chat mail 293
i-motion. 259
Movie/i-motion 352
Sent messages history 251
SMS 299
Still picture 335
Send/Receive display 125
Sent messages history . . .282
Send message 284
Service number. 463
Services available from the FOMA terminal 547
Set alarm. 410
Set arrival action
Activate. 464
Deactivate 464
Status request 464
Set mute seconds 158
Set secret
Secret data 110
Set sounds/volume
Charge end sound 116
Charge start sound 116
Close sound 114, 116
Keypad sound 116
Open sound 114, 116
Shutter sound 185
Timer sound 114
Shoot movie 174
Shoot still picture. 170
Shot image list 172
Shortcut menu
Action focus 433
Delete 432
Icon settings 433
Move icon 432
Reset icon 434
Save 431
Set background. 434
Show by contact (Schedule) 427
Show called/received 52, 62, 152
Save to Schedule 428
Show sent/received 153
Shutter sound 185
Select sound 185
Signature
Save signature 288
Silent 61
Slideshow 334
SMS. 250
Check new SMS 302
Copy to FOMA card . . 305
Copy to FOMA terminal 305
Create/Send 299
Delete 306
Edit/Send 300
Receive. 301
Reply. 303
Report request 304
Save 300
SMS center 303
SMS expiry 304
View 302
Software update 559
Sound fx setting
Flash movie. 227
Specific Absorption Rate 570
SPEEDYLAB 336, 353
Standard Parts Packaged with Unit and Main Optional Parts 22
Still picture
Download 221
View 330
Structure of this manual . . . 1
Sub address settings. 57
Sub display settings 126
Caller ID display 127
Contrast 127
Sub menu 34
Supportbook 35
Switch display (Select language) 45
Symbol/Special character
Input 518
List 537

T

Talk time/charge 442
Display. 442
Reset. 443
Text input. 510, 519
1-touch conversion 512, 513
1-touch single character memory 513
2-touch 525
5-touch 511
Add space 511
Alphabet 516
Alphanumeric characters 516
Change character 515
Clear memory terms . . 523
Copy 520
Cut. 520
Dakuten/Handakuten mark 511
Delete 515
Edit 514
Font size 511
Insert phrase 517
Katakana (single-byte) 515
Kuten code 521
Lower case 511
Next word guess 510, 525
Numbers 516
On/Kun conversion . . . 512
Pictograph 518
Predictive headword conversion. 513
Quick dictionary. . 510, 525
Register word 522
Symbol input 518
Text input methods . . . 510
Undo 511
Text input methods 510
Text memo. 443
Delete 445
Edit 445
Save to Schedule 429
Time. 46
Timer 409
Title and status color 132
ToDo list
Change status 416
Check 416
Delete 417
Edit 417
Save 413
Secret data 415
Set alarm. 415
Show by category 416

Show by status 416
Top menu
Action focus 134
Background 134
Display icon name 135
Icon settings 133
Move icon 135
Preset themes 133
Reset icon 135
Touch-tone signals 54
Trace info 322
Troubleshooting 550

U

Undo 511
URL
Delete 215
History 214
Last URL 207
User dictionary 522
Delete 523
Download dictionary . . .524
Edit 522
Register 522

V

Vanity mirror 75
Vibrator 117
Video player 346
Change playback size 348
Continuous play 351
Frame rate 348
Light up. 348
Playback light 348
Playback volume 348
Repeat 348
Resume settings. 348
Video-phone 74
Adjust brightness 87
Dialing speed 88, 107
Display setting 87
Earpiece volume. 78
File playback 84
Hands-free 77
Hold 51, 77
Hold image 85
Image quality 86
Lighting. 87
Making video-phone calls 75
On hold. 79
On hold image 85
Picture memo 89
Receiving video-phone calls 78
Record message (video-phone). 80
Redial voicecall. 89
Self-portrait 88
Send own image 84
Send substitute image 83
Set screen size 87
Subscreen position 87
Substitute image 85
Switching cameras 84
Video-phone image 85, 107
Video-phone reply image 81
Zoom. 84
View sites 204
Add to phonebook. . . . 211
Bookmark 215
Certification. 238
Character code 214
FirstPass center 238
i-melody 222
i-motion 326
Reload. 210
Save image. 221
Screen memo 218
Set connection timeout 228
Set image display 230
URL. 211
URL history 214
View Flash movie 208
View URL 211
Viewing the display 28
Voice Mail Service. 452
Activate/Deactivate . . . 453
Check messages 454
Delete display 454
Play messages 453
Status request. 454
Voice mail alarm 454
Voice mail settings . . . 453
Voice memo 71, 436
Delete 72
Play. 71
Voice memo (during call) 436
Voice memo (stand-by) 437
Voice recorder. 393
Settings. 395

W

Web To 227
WORLD CALL. 55

Z

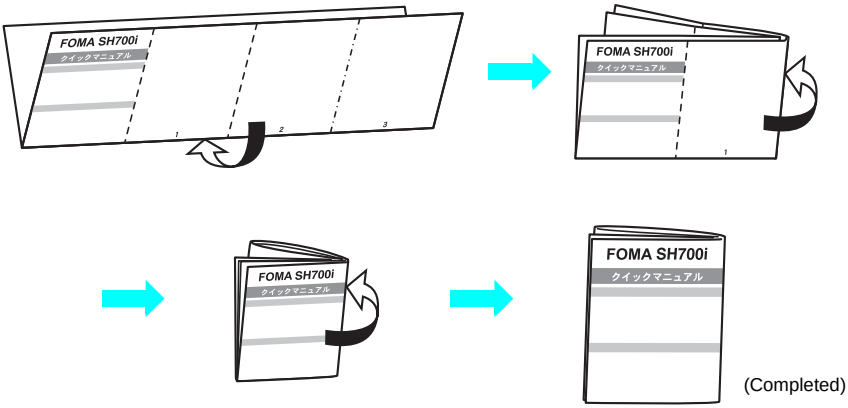
Zoom
Camera 176

▶MEMO◀

Quick Manual

Remove the Quick Manual by cutting along the perforated marks starting on the next page.

Folding the Quick manual



(Completed)

Warning

- Be careful of injuries when cutting out Quick manual.

This manual is produced of recyclable material. Please recycle when no longer needed.

FOMA SH700i

Quick Manual

Registration/Contacts

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center
When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones:
151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)
※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
For inquiries
When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:
0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)
※ You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
● Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

If you have problems with your FOMA

General contact for the DoCoMo group companies
When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones:
113 (no area code) (toll free)
※ You cannot call this number from an ordinar (landline) phone.
When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:
0120-800-000 (toll free)
※ You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
● Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
● Refer to "全国サービスステーション一覧" (Service Station List) provided with the FOMA terminal for details.

Entering pictographs/symbols

1 In text input screen, press [Pict/Sym].
Switch between modes.

Deleting text

1 Move cursor to text, and press .
To erase all text: Press for 1+ seconds.

Using phrases

1 In text input screen, press for 1+ seconds.
2 Select phrase ▶ .

Entering emoticons

1 In text input screen, press ▶ emoticon ▶ .

Example

Ex.) [今日のテニス3時🍉]

1 In text input screen, press twice ▶ ▶ 今日 ▶ .

● Enter hiragana with the dial key. Every time the key is pressed, the character changes.
● Select conversion candidates even from partial words.
● Press for lower case.

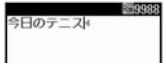
Add to Phonebook

1 In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds ▶ [Main] or [UIM].
2 Select name ▶ ▶ or * ▶ ▶ phone number ▶ ▶ phone number type ▶ ▶ or * ▶ ▶ mail address ▶ ▶ mail address type ▶ .
* For FOMA cards
3 Press [Complete] ▶ memory number (not available for FOMA card).

Items to add

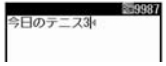
Icon	Item	Details
	Name	Up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte). For FOMA card, up to 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
R	Reading	Automatically entered. (Up to 32 single-byte katakana. For FOMA card, up to 12 double-byte katakana.)
	Group	20 types. For FOMA card, 11 types.
	Phone number	Three entries. For FOMA card, one entry.

2 Press ▶ の ▶ .
3 Press ▶ ▶ .



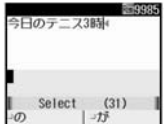
● Use for 1-touch conversion.

4 Press five times ▶ .



● Press five times for single-byte numeric mode.

5 Press twice ▶ twice ▶ ▶ ▶ 時 ▶ .



● Use for dakuten mark.

6 Press [Pict/Sym] ▶ ▶ ▶ .

Icon	Item	Details
	Phone number type	Seven types. For FOMA card, one type.
	Mail address	Three entries. For FOMA card, one entry.
	Mail address type	Four types. For FOMA card, one type.
	Postal code*	Seven single-byte characters
	Postal address*	Up to 100 single-byte (50 double-byte) characters
	Birthday*	Only single-byte numbers
	Memo*	Up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters
	Secret*	Not displayed
	Secret code*	Four digits number
	Select ring tone*	—
	Mail ring tone*	—
	Called LED*	—
	Mail/Message LED*	—
	Picture call set*	One
	Chara-den settings*	—

* Cannot be saved to FOMA card.

Camera - Still Pictures

1 In stand-by, press .
2 Press .
3 Press [Save].

Camera - Movies

1 In stand-by, press ( ).
2 Press ( ) [Rec] ▶ (Record).
3 Press ( ) [Stop].
4 Press ( ) [Save].

Viewing Still Pictures

1 In stand-by, press ▶ ▶ folder ▶ ▶ still picture ▶ .

Edit Entries

1 In stand-by, press ▶ name ▶ ▶ item ▶ ▶ edit.

Making Calls from Phonebook Entries

1 In stand-by, press .
To change search method: Press ▶ search method ▶ .
2 Enter name ▶ .
3 Press or .

Text Input

Changing input mode

1 In text input screen, press .
Press to switch from ｱ (double-byte katakana) → ｱ (single-byte katakana) → A (double-byte alphanumerics) → A (single-byte alphanumerics) → 1 (single-byte numbers) → (kuten code) → 漢 (kanji/hiragana).

Entering lower case letters

1 In double-byte/single-byte alphanumeric mode, press .
Lower case input mode is enabled.
To convert to lower case after entering text: Press .

1-touch conversion

1 After entering text, press .

Viewing Movies

1 In stand-by, press ▶ ▶ folder ▶ ▶ movie ▶ .

Recording with Voice Recorder

1 In stand-by, press ▶ ▶ [Rec] ▶ (Record) ▶ [Stop] ▶ [Save].

Video-phone

Making video-phone calls

1 In stand-by, enter phone number ▶ press .

Receiving video-phone calls

1 Incoming video-phone ▶ press .

Sending Chara-den as a substitute image during call

1 Press for 1+ seconds ▶ Chara-den ▶ .

KEITAIViewer

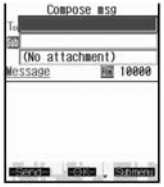
1 In stand-by, press ▶ book/e-dictionary ▶ .
To scroll lines/pages: Press .
To view first/last page: Press or .
To use table of contents: Press ▶ ▶ item ▶ .

<Cut here>

Creating/Sending i-mode Mail

1 **In stand-by, press ● for 1+ seconds ▶ To ▶ ●.**

2 **Press ✉ ▶ address ▶ ●.**
To select from phonebook: Press 1 ▶ recipient ▶ ●.
To select from Sent/ Received messages: Press 3 or 4 ▶ recipient ▶ ● ▶ ●.
To select from mail members: Press 5 ▶ member ▶ ●.



3 **Press ✉ ▶ ● ▶ subject ▶ ● ▶ *Message* ▶ ● ▶ message ▶ ●.**

4 **Press ● [Send].**

Sending Deco-mail

1 **In message input screen, press ● ●.**

2 **Select decoration ▶ press ● [Decoration] ▶ enter text ▶ ●.**

3 **Press ● ▶ ■*Preview* ▶ ●.**

4 **Press ● ▶ ● [Send].**

Sending Images/Melodies

1 **In stand-by, press ● 7 1.**
To send movies/i-motion: Press ● 7 2.
To send melodies: Press ● 7 3.

2 **Select Folder ▶ ● ▶ file ▶ ●.**

3 **Press ● [Mail].**
For movies/i-motion: Press ● [Mail] ▶ Select file size ▶ ●.

Creating/Sending SMS

1 **In stand-by, press ● 5.**

2 **Select To ▶ ● ▶ 2 ▶ address ▶ ● ▶ *Message* ▶ ● ▶ message ▶ ●.**

3 **Press ● [Send].**

Check New Messages

1 **In stand-by, press ● 7.**
For SMS: Press ● 8.

Auto Receive

1 **i-mode mail is automatically received.**

2 **Select *Mail* ▶ ● ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ mail ▶ ●.**

Menu List

Selecting from Top menu

1 **In stand-by, press ●.**

2 **Select Icon from Top menu ▶ ●.**

3 **Select Function ▶ ●.**

Switching Top menu/Shortcut menu/Zoom menu

1 **In stand-by, press ● ▶ ●.**

Recalling function number

1 **In stand-by, press ● ▶ function number.**

Sound

Menu	Function	Function number
Select Volume	Phone ring vol	1 1 1
	Mail ring vol	1 1 2
	Chat mail ring vol	1 1 3
	Setting sound vol	1 1 4
Select sound	Select ring tone	1 2 1
	Select mail tone	1 2 2
	Chat mail tone	1 2 3
	Setting sounds	1 2 4
Vibrator	Vibration mode	1 3 1
	Mail vibration	1 3 2
Manner mode	Normal	1 4 1
	Silent	1 4 2
	Original	1 4 3
Ring output		1 5
Mail ring duration		1 6
Set mute seconds		1 7
Hold/On hold tone	On hold tone	1 8 1
	Hold tone	1 8 2

Display

Menu	Function	Function number
Main display	Stand-by display	2 1 1
	Clock display	2 1 2
	Calendar display	2 1 3
Sub display	Callr ID display	2 2 1
	Contrast	2 2 2
Font style		2 3
Personalize	Picture call set	2 4 1
	Pop-up window	2 4 2
	Notice window	2 4 3
	Background	2 4 4
	Call/Rcv display	2 4 5
	Send/Rcv display	2 4 6
	Title & Status color	2 4 7
	Guidance keys	2 4 8
Called LED	Called LED color	2 5 1
	Mail LED color	2 5 2
	Called LED ON	2 5 3
	Mail/Msg LED set	2 5 4
Power saver set		2 6

General settings

Menu	Function	Function number
Check memory		3 1
Battery level		3 2
Check settings	Sound	3 3 1
	Display	3 3 2
	General settings	3 3 3
	Phone settings	3 3 4
	Security	3 3 5
	i-mode	3 3 6
	Mail/message	3 3 7
	i-αppli	3 3 8
User dictionary		3 4
Dwnld dictionary		3 5
Edit phrase		3 6
Auto power ON/ OFF	Auto power ON	3 7 1
	Auto power OFF	3 7 2
Date settings		3 8
Clear memory terms		3 9
Select language		3 0

Menu	Function	Function number
Scanning function	Update patterns	3 * 1
	Scanning setting	3 * 2
	Display version	3 * 3
Software update		3 #

Services

Menu	Function	Function number
Voice mail	Check messages	4 1 1
	Play messages	4 1 2
	Activate	4 1 3
	Set ringing time	4 1 4
	Deactivate	4 1 5
	Status request	4 1 6
	Voice mail settings	4 1 7
	Voice mail alarm	4 1 8
	Delete display	4 1 9
	Start notification	4 1 0
	Stop notification	4 1 *
	Confirm status	4 1 #

Menu	Function	Function number
Call waiting	Activate	4 2 1
	Deactivate	4 2 2
	Status request	4 2 3
Call forwarding	Activate	4 3 1
	Deactivate	4 3 2
	Register number	4 3 3
	Forwarded party busy	4 3 4
	Status request	4 3 5
Bar nuisance calls	Register caller	4 4 1
	Delete all entries	4 4 2
	Delete last entry	4 4 3
Notify caller ID	Status request	4 5 1
	Notify caller ID	4 5 2
Caller ID Request	Activate	4 6 1
	Deactivate	4 6 2
	Status request	4 6 3
Talk time/cost		4 7
Set arrival act	Activate	4 8 1
	Deactivate	4 8 2
	Status request	4 8 3

<Cut here>

Menu	Function	Function number
Arrival call act	Voice mail	
	Call forwarding	
	Call rejection	
	Answer	
Remote control	Activate	
	Deactivate	
	Status request	
Dual network	Switching	
	Status request	
English guidance	Guidance setting	
	Status request	
Service number	ドコモ故障問合せ (Repair enquiries)	
	ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General enquiries)	
Additional services	USSD	▶ ■*Additional service* ▶
	Reply message	▶ ■*Additional service* ▶

Phone settings

Menu	Function	Function number
Noise reduction		
Alarm during call	Reconnect	
	Quality alarm	
Video-phone set	Redial voicecall	
	Set sending image	
	Screen size	
	Display setting	
	Subscreen position	
	Image quality	
Record message	Record message	
	Answering duration	
	Reply message	
	V-phone reply image	
Close operation		
Any key answer		
Auto answer set		
Self mode		
Int'l prefix		
Sub address		

Menu	Function	Function number
Int'l calling	Auto assist set	
	IDD prefix setting	

Security

Menu	Function	Function number
Secret mode		
UIM settings	PIN code input set	
	Change PIN code	
	Change PIN2 code	
Accept/ Reject calls	Accept calls	
	Reject calls	
	Reject unknown	
	Reject user unset	
	Reject payphone	
	Reject not support	
Show call/ received	Show rcvd calls	
	Show redial	
Show sent/ received	Show sent messages	
	Show rcvd messages	

Menu	Function	Function number
Lock settings	All lock	
	Keypad dial lock	
	PIM lock	
	Remote lock all	
Change sec code		
Delete all data	Delete user data	
	Del secret data	

Other settings

Function menu	Function number
Own number	
Initial settings	
Reset settings	

Data box

Function menu	Function number
My picture	
i-motion	
Melody	
Chara-den	
Print setting (DPOF)	

Tool menu

Menu	Function	Function number
Voice recorder		
Receive Ir data	Receive	
	Receive all	
Schedule		
ToDo list		
Alarm		
Timer		
Text memo		
Calc		
Money calc		
miniSD manager	View miniSD data	
	Backup/restore	
	Import	
	New manager info	
	Format	
Bar code reader		
Character reader		

KEITAIViewer

Function menu	Function number
e-book	

Other Functions

Manner mode enable/disable	for 1+ seconds
Drive mode enable/disable	for 1+ seconds
Show redial	
Show rcvd calls	
Display Record message/ Voice memo	
Display Shortcut menu	
Display i-mode menu	
Display i-αppli screen	for 1+ seconds
Display Mail menu	
Display phonebook	
Activate camera mode (still picture mode)	
Activate camera mode (movie mode)	
Display My picture	for 1+ seconds
View i-motion	for 1+ seconds
Supportbook (preset)	
Activate Assistant View	during operations

Register shortcut	for 1+ seconds when appears.
Picture light ON	Close handset and press for 1+ seconds

Network Services

※ In the confirmation screen, select ***Yes*** and press .

Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail Service is a paid option that requires registration.
STEP 1 Start Voice Mail Service.
STEP 2 Voice call is received.
STEP 3 Call is connected to Voice Mail Service center if not answered.
STEP 4 Caller records a message.
STEP 5 Play message.

Activate	In stand-by, press .
Set ring duration before activating	In stand-by, press . ▶ enter ring duration ▶ .
Deactivate	In stand-by, press .
Play messages	In stand-by, press .
Set Voice Mail Service with voice guidance	In stand-by, press .

Check new message	In stand-by, press .
Check and change Voice Mail Service Settings	In stand-by, press . ▶ ▶ setting.
Voice mail alarm	In stand-by, press .
Delete display	In stand-by, press .
Start notification	In stand-by, press .
Stop notification	In stand-by, press .
Confirm status	In stand-by, press .

Call Waiting Service

Call Waiting Service is a paid option that requires registration.

Activate	In stand-by, press .
Deactivate	In stand-by, press .
Status request	In stand-by, press .
Place current call on hold and answer a voice call	Beeps during call ▶ ▶ call ▶ ▶ call.
Disconnect current call and answer a voice call	Beeps during call ▶ ▶ ▶ call.

<Cut here>

Place current call on hold and place a separate call	Dial during call ▶ call ▶ call.

Call Forwarding Service (no monthly fees)

Call Forwarding Service is a free option that requires registration.
STEP 1 Register forwarding destination.
STEP 2 Activate Call Forwarding Service.
STEP 3 Call is received.
STEP 4 Call is automatically forwarded to the destination if not answered.

Activate	In stand-by, press ▶ enter forwarding number ▶ ▶ enter ring time ▶ ▶ .
Deactivate	In stand-by, press .
Register number	In stand-by, press ▶ edit forwarding number ▶ ▶ .
Use Voice Mail Service	In stand-by, press .
Status request	In stand-by, press .

Forwarding calls received while receiving call or during call	While receiving call or during call, press .

Nuisance Call Barring Service (monthly fees apply)

Nuisance Call Barring Service is a paid option that requires registration.

Save last caller for Nuisance Call Barring Service.	In stand-by, press .
Delete all saved numbers	In stand-by, press .

Caller ID Request Service (no monthly fees)

Registration not required (no monthly fees).

Activate	In stand-by, press .
Deactivate	In stand-by, press .

Use Dual Network Service

Dual Network Service is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires registration.

Switch to FOMA terminal	In stand-by, press ▶ enter network security code (four digits) ▶ .

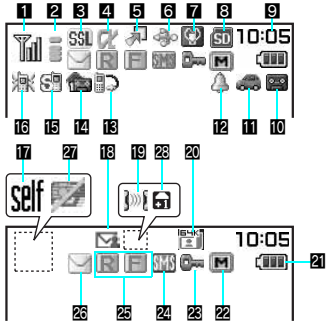
Status request	In stand-by, press .

Using Services from the FOMA Terminal

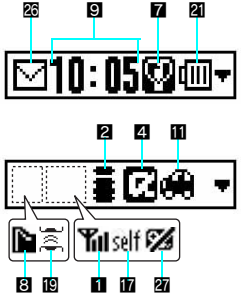
Service	Phone number
Collect call (recipient is charged for call)	(No area code) 106
Standard directory assistance calls or calls to DoCoMo directory assistance for mobile phones (fees apply) (Only registered users appear in directory assistance.)	(No area code) 104
Send telegram (fees apply) 8 AM to 10 PM	(No area code) 115
Time (fees apply)	(No area code) 117
Weather cast (fees apply)	Area code of area to inquire + 177
Police	(No area code) 110
Fire/ambulance	(No area code) 119
Maritime emergency	(No area code) 118
Busy line inquiry	(No area code) 114
Disaster message (fees apply)	(No area code) 171

Icon List

Upper area of display



Sub display



1 : Signal strength indicator
2 : i-mode indicator
3 (SSL): SSL indicator
4 : i-αppli indicator
5 : Shortcut menu registration indicator
6 (green): External device indicator
7 : Manner mode active
8 : miniSD Memory Card indicator
9 Time
10 : Record message set
to : Number of messages (one to four)
11 : Drive mode enabled
12 : Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm/alarm enabled
13 : Earphone/microphone connected
14 : Voice mail message received
15 : Ring tone set to ***Silent***
16 : Vibrator enabled
17 : Self mode enabled
18 Assistant View original function
: ToDo list
: Phonebook
: Text memo
: Schedule
: Mail
: During a call
: During i-mode

19 : Ir exchange/External device indicator
20 : Voice/Video-phone call
21 : Battery level indicator
22 (M) (yellow): Memory is low
(M) (red): Memory is very low
23 : Restriction enabled
24 (red) (black) (blue) (yellow): SMS indicator
25 (R): Message R
(F): Message F
26 Mail indicator
: Unread mail
: Inbox full
: Message is held at center
: Center is full
27 : FOMA card error
: Non-DoCoMo FOMA card is inserted
28 : Video-phone brightness

※ Refer to P. 28 to P. 30 of Manual for detailed explanations on displayed icons.

NTT DoCoMo FOMA SH700i

Quick Manual

Registration/Contacts

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center
When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones:
151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)
※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
For inquiries
When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:
0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)
※ You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
● Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

If you have problems with your FOMA

General contact for the DoCoMo group companies
When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones:
113 (no area code) (toll free)
※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:
0120-800-000 (toll free)
※ You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
● Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
● Refer to "全国サービスステーション一覧" (Service Station List) provided with the FOMA terminal for details.

<Cut here>

Please Follow Proper Etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, please be considerate of those around you.

Turn off Your FOMA Terminal in the Following Places

■ When in an area where use is prohibited

There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Be sure to turn off your FOMA terminal in the following places.

★On an airplane ★In a hospital

※ There are people outside hospital wards who also use electric medical equipment. Please make sure that your FOMA terminal is turned off in the lobby and waiting room.

■ While driving

Talking on your FOMA terminal while driving is dangerous and may result in an accident.

※Please pull over to a safe place and use your FOMA terminal or set Drive mode.

■ When in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator

Your FOMA terminal may affect the operation of such equipment.

■ When in public places such as theaters, movie theaters, or museums

Use of your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will annoy others.

Be Careful of Where You Use Your FOMA Terminal and the Volume of Your Voice and the Ring Tone

■ When using your FOMA terminal in a restaurant or a hotel lobby, lower your voice.

■ In crowded places, be careful not to obstruct other pedestrians.

Be Considerate of the Privacy of the Individuals Around You

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

The Following Functions Will Help You to Keep Your Manners in Public

There are useful functions you can use to set your FOMA terminal not to answer incoming calls, and to silence all sounds.

●Manner mode (☞P. 119) /Original manner mode (☞P. 121)

Silences the keypad sound and all the sounds from the FOMA terminal, and Record message is set (Manner mode). When in Manner mode, automatically set functions (Record message, Vibration mode, Mic sensitivity, ring tone, mail ring tone, keypad sound, Low power alarm) can be set to ON (enable) or OFF (disable). (Original manner mode)

●Drive mode (☞P. 66)

The caller hears a guidance message that informs callers that the receiver is driving and unable to answer. The call then disconnects. Your FOMA terminal does not sound even when it receives calls, so you can drive safely.

●Vibrator (☞P. 117)

Notifies incoming calls by vibration.

●Record message (☞P. 68)

When you are unable to take a call, the Record message function records the caller's message.

※ You can also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service (☞P. 452) and Call Forwarding Service (☞P. 456).

Register for ***Voice Mail Service***, ***Call Waiting Service***, ***Call Forwarding Service***, ***Nuisance Call Barring Service***, ***WORLD CALL***, and ***WORLD WING*** at**ドコモeサイト** (DoCoMo's e-site).

● From i-mode **i Menu ▶□ 料金&お申込 ▶■ドコモeサイト** no packet charge

● From PC **http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/ ▶オンライン手続き/照会サービス ▶ドコモｅサイト**
or go to **http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/**

※ DoCoMo registered ***Network Security Code*** is required to access from i-mode.
※ When accessed by i-mode, packet charges are free. Portions may be charged.
※ ***User ID*** and ***Password*** are required to access from PCs.
※ Contact below for lost or new issuance of ***Network Security Code*** and ***User ID/Password***.
※ Depending on licensing agreement, some services may be unavailable.
※ Services may not be available due to system maintenance.

For General Inquiries (DoCoMo Information Center)

■ **For DoCoMo mobile phones/PHS**

151 **(no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)**

※ Cannot be accessed from ordinary phones.

■ **For ordinary phones**

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※ Can be accessed from DoCoMo mobile phones/PHS.

● Confirm phone number before calling.

For Repair Inquiries

■ **For DoCoMo mobile phones/PHS**

113 **(no area code) (toll free)**

※ Cannot be accessed from ordinary phones.

■ **For ordinary phones**

0120-800-000

※ Can be accessed from DoCoMo mobile phones/PHS.

● Confirm phone number before calling.
● For details, refer to " 全国サービスステーション一覧 " (Service Station List) provided with the FOMA terminal.

Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc. **NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.** **NTT DoCoMo, Inc.**
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc. **NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.** **NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.**
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc. **NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.** **NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.**

Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation

Li-ion
To protect the environment, return used batteries to NTT DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailer, or a recycling agency.

This manual is made of 100% recycled paper.

PRINTED WITH SOY INK
This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'05.2 (1st Edition)
TINSEA061AFZZ
05B 4.0 DS SM588①